Plato's Phaedo

Greek Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

Geoffrey Steadman

Plato's Phaedo
Greek Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

First Edition

© 2015 by Geoffrey Steadman

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publisher.

The author has made an online version of this work available online under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 License. The terms of the license can be accessed at creativecommons.org.

Accordingly, you are free to copy, alter, and distribute this work under the following conditions:

(1) You must attribute the work to the author (but not in any way that suggests that the author endorses your alterations to the work).
(2) You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
(3) If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license as this one.

The Greek text is the Oxford Classical Text edition by John Burnet first published in 1903.

ISBN-13: 978-0-9913860-5-5

Published by Geoffrey Steadman
Cover Design: David Steadman

Fonts: Times New Roman, Times-Roman, GFS Porson, New Athena Unicode

geoffreysteadman@gmail.com

Table of Contents

pages

Preface to the Series……...v-vi
Brief Introduction to the Phaedo……vii-viii
How to Use this Commentary……....x
Running Core Vocabulary (10 or more times) ……....xi-xviii
Abbreviations…….…….xix
Nouns, Pronouns, Correlatives...…….226-227
Synopses (regular and -μι verbs)……..228-233
Alphabetized Core Vocabulary (20 or more times) …….....234-238

Text and Commentary[1]

I. Socrates' Reasons for Not Fearing Death
A. 57a-59c Phaedo recalls Socrates' last day for Echecrates……...……....1-7
B. 59c-64a Socrates greets his friends in prison……..…..7-24
C. 64a-69e Socrates: A philosopher seeks death ……24-46

II. Three Arguments for the Immortality of the Soul
A. 69e-72d First Argument: Generation from Opposites……...….46-58
B. 72d-77a Second Argument: Recollection……....58-77
C. 77a-84b Third Argument: Affinity……77-104

III. The Objections of Simmias and Cebes
A. 84c-86e Simmias' Objection: Soul as a Harmony……...…….104-113
B. 86e-88b Cebes' Objection: Weaver Analogy …….....113-118
C. 88c-91c Socrates and the Value of *Logos*……...119-129

IV. Socrates' Responses and the Final Argument
A. 91c-95a Socrates' Reply to Simmias ……...……...……...129-143
B. 95a-107b Socrates' Reply to Cebes: The Final Argument ……...143-188
95e-99d Mechanistic Explanations of Causes
99d-102a Forms as Causes
102a-107a The Forms prove the Soul is Deathless and Indestructible

V. Socrates' Myths of the Afterlife and the True Earth
107b-115a……188-213

VI. Socrates' Death by Hemlock
115b-118a……213-224

[1]Outline from R. S. Bluck's Plato's *Phaedo*

Preface to the Series

The aim of this commentary is to make Plato's *Phaedo* as accessible as possible to intermediate and advanced Greek readers so that they may experience the joy, insight, and lasting influence that comes from reading one of the greatest works in classical antiquity in the original Greek.

Each page of the commentary includes 12 lines of Greek text (Burnet's Oxford Classical Text) with all corresponding vocabulary and grammar notes below the Greek on the same page. The vocabulary contains all words occurring 19 or fewer times, arranged alphabetically in two columns. The grammatical notes are organized according to line numbers and likewise arranged in two columns. The advantage of this format is that it allows me to include as much information as possible on a single page and yet insure that entries are distinct and readily accessible to readers.

To complement the vocabulary within the commentary, I have added a list of words occurring 10 more times at the beginning of this book and recommend that readers review this list before they read each section. An alphabetized form of the core list can be found in the glossary. Together, this book has been designed in such a way that, once readers have mastered the core list, they will be able to rely solely on the Greek text and commentary and not need to turn a page or consult dictionaries as they read.

The grammatical notes are designed to help beginning readers read the text, and so I have passed over detailed literary and philosophical explanations in favor of short, concise, and frequent entries that focus exclusively on grammar and morphology. The notes are intended to complement, not replace, an advanced-level commentary, and so I recommend that readers consult an advanced-level commentary after each reading from this book. Assuming that readers finish elementary Greek with varying levels of ability, I draw attention to subjunctive and optative constructions, identify unusual aorist and perfect forms, and in general explain aspects of the Greek that they should have encountered in first year study but perhaps forgotten. As a rule, I prefer to offer too much assistance rather than too little.

Better Vocabulary-Building Strategies

One of the virtues of this commentary is that it eliminates time-consuming dictionary work. While there are many occasions where a dictionary is absolutely necessary for developing a nuanced reading of the Greek, in most instances any advantage that may come from looking up a word and exploring alternative meanings is outweighed by the time and effort spent in the process. Many continue to defend this practice, but I am convinced that such work has little pedagogical value for intermediate and advanced students and that the time saved by avoiding such drudgery can be better spent reading more Greek, reviewing morphology, memorizing vocabulary, mastering principal parts of verbs, and reading advanced-level commentaries and secondary literature.

As an alternative to dictionary work, I recommend that readers review the core vocabulary lists. In addition to the running list of words occurring 20 or more times in this volume, there is a running list of words occurring 10 or more times on the website. I encourage readers to single out, drill, and memorize these common words before they encounter them in the reading and devote comparatively little attention to words that occur once or twice. Altogether, I am confident that readers who follow this regimen will learn the *Phaedo's* vocabulary more efficiently and develop fluency more quickly than with traditional methods.

Print on Demand Books

Finally, this volume is a self-published, print-on-demand (POD) book, and as such it gives its author distinct freedoms not available in traditional publications. Since this book is no more than a pdf file waiting to be printed, I am able to respond very quickly to readers' recommended changes and create an revised edition that is available for sale within 24 hours. If you would like to suggest changes or download a free .pdf copy of this commentary, please see one of the addresses below. All criticisms are welcome, and I would be very grateful for your help.

Geoffrey Steadman Ph.D.
geoffreysteadman@gmail.com
www.geoffreysteadman.com

An Overview of the *Phaedo*

The dialogue opens in the town of Phlius in the northeast Peloponnessus as Phaedo, the dialogue's namesake, recent from Athens encounters Echecrates and agrees to offer a first-hand account of Socrates' final day and execution. The remainder of the conversation is Phaedo's recollection of that day.

As Phaedo recounts, a group of Socrates' friends enter the prison at daybreak with the knowledge that Socrates' death will be imminent. Every year the Athenians garland a ship and send it to Delos, an island sacred to Apollo, to commemorate Theseus' victory over the Minotaur, and during this time the city is not allowed to perform executions. Since Socrates' trial occurred just as the ship set sail, Socrates has remained in prison for as many as thirty days awaiting his own execution. Now that the ship has returned, the Athenians will proceed as planned.

As the group enters, they find that Socrates has just been released from his shackles and that his wife Xanthippe, who has been sitting beside him with a child in her arms, is being led from the room in tears. When Socrates remarks that he has been spending time putting Aesop's fables into verse, Cebes asks why, and Socrates explains that he repeatedly received a dream encouraging him to pursue a musical life. While he had always assumed that the dream was urging him to pursue philosophy and had lived accordingly, he wanted to try his hand at verse just in case he had misinterpreted the vision. During the course of this reply, Socrates makes the provocative suggestion that philosophers wish to die as soon as possible, even though they are not permitted to end their own lives. Cebes and Simmias are greatly dismayed by Socrates' remarks, and, when pressed, Socrates suggests that there may be something more rewarding after death.

It is at this point that the dialogue takes a turn that requires considerable more attention and mental effort from readers than the conversation to this point. Socrates departs from his usual method of questioning-and-answering and offers not one but three lengthy arguments for the immortality of the soul, which we today call the Cyclical argument (or Argument from Opposites), the Argument from Recollection, and the Affinity Argument.

Under the circumstances we expect Socrates' friends to listen attentively, nod approvingly, and provide Socrates whatever solace they can to make his last moments as comfortable as possible, but Cebes and Simmias will not be silenced. Neither man is convinced by Socrates' arguments, which suggests that we readers should not be persuaded either. At first with gentle laughter and whispers and later in open disagreement, the two young men offer lengthy objections of their own. Simmias proposes that, contrary to Socrates' arguments, the soul is nothing more than a harmony of the body, which dissipates shortly after death, and Cebes argues that the soul is analogous to a garment, which is renewed by the weaver while he is alive but will not survive once the weaver perishes.

As if expressing the collective disappointment of all present in the prison, Echecrates interrupts Phaedo's narrative to lament how Socrates' arguments, which seemed so persuasive, have now fallen into doubt. Far from being unaware of the sollemnity that the occasion requires, Simmias and Cebes have shown themselves to be earnest participants in the inquiry, and Socrates celebrates their efforts. He warns the others not to be misologists, who hate *logos* and are quickly deterred from rational discussion. Socrates is well aware of the Herculean task that lies ahead but insists on the need for courage and a desire for soundness (90e) when an argument fails. He urges Simmias and Cebes to "give little thought to Socrates and much more to truth" (91c).

Socrates replies first to Simmias' objection and then to Cebes' and in doing so adds the most detailed argument yet for the immortality of the soul, the so-called Final Argument, which involves a discussion of the nature of causes, explanations, and Platonic Forms and ends with the identification of the soul as the imperishable Form of life. Then, Socrates unexpectedly concludes with an elaborate myth of the afterlife, which promises rewards for the virtuous—if their souls are truly immortal.

Readers eager to learn of any objections are soon disappointed: there is simply no more time to talk. While Socrates removes himself to visit his family one last time, his friends discuss what has been said. Readers, however, are not privy to their replies. When Socrates rejoins the group, they marvel at how calmly and cheerfully he drinks the hemlock (117c). The task to continue the inquiry is left to us.

Characters

Outer Frame

Phaedo of Elis (b. 419/8): In the dialogue, Phaedo was a close associate of Socrates and present at the philosopher's execution. According to a later account, Phaedo became a slave in Athens when his native city of Elis in the northwest Peloponnesus was captured during Athens' war with Sparta. It was shortly after this time that he met Socrates and was freed—perhaps even at Socrates' behest. Phaedo later formed a school of philosophy in Elis and was said to have written his own dialogues.

Echecrates of Phlius (fl. 399-): We know very little about Echecrates except what is mentioned in the *Phaedo*. Diogenes Laertius (VIII.46) says that Echercrates was a member of a community of Pythagoreans in Phlius. If true, Echecrates is a suitable choice to listen attentively as Phaedo recalls Socrates' arguments on immortality.

Inner Frame

Simmias of Thebes (b. 430s's): Xenophon, a contemporary of Plato, describes Simmias, along with Crito, Phaedo, and Cebes, as an associate (ὁμιλητής) of Socrates (*Mem*. 1.2.48). In the *Crito*, Simmias and Cebes offer to provide the funds necessary to help Socrates escape from prison (45b), and in the *Phaedrus* Socrates notes that Simmias is particularly fond of *logoi* (242b). Later accounts claim that both Simmias and Cebes associated with the Pythagorean teachers Philolaus and Eurytus, but Simmias' advocacy of the non-Pythagorean view of the soul-as-a-harmony may cast some doubt on this identification.

Cebes of Thebes (430s's – 350's): Mentioned in several of Plato's works along with Simmias, Cebes is described in the *Phaedo* as a "young man" (νεανίσκος, 89a) who speaks in a dialect peculiar to Thebes (62a).

Crito of Athens (~70 years old, b. 469): Crito is an intimate friend of the same age as Socrates. In the *Apology*, Crito offers to pay Socrates' fine (38b), and in the *Crito* he promises to use his own influence to help Socrates escape execution (44b-46a). In the *Phaedo*, Crito is silent throughout much of the discussion but remains close by Socrates' side when the philosopher finally sends away his friends, visits his family one last time, and consumes the hemlock.

Socrates of Athens (70 yrs. old; 470-399)

Xanthippe of Athens (b. ~440): Mentioned no where else in Plato's work, Xanthippe was the young wife of Socrates, with whom she had three children: Lamprocles, Sophroniscus and Menexenus. The ages of the boys, one teenager and two children (μειράκιον...παιδία, *Ap*. 34d), suggest that Xanthippe was between 30 and 45. The fact that the eldest son was named after his maternal grandfather rather than after his paternal grandfather, as was the custom in Athens, suggests that Xanthippe's family enjoyed a higher status in Athenian society than Socrates'.

How to Use this Commentary

Research shows that, as we learn how to read in a second language, a combination of reading and direct vocabulary instruction is statistically superior to reading alone. One of the purposes of this book is to encourage active acquisition of vocabulary.

1. Master the list of words occurring 10 or more times as soon as possible.

A. Develop a daily regimen for memorizing vocabulary before you begin reading. Review and memorize the words in the running list that occur 10 or more times *before* you read the corresponding pages in Greek.

B. Download and use the digital flashcards available online in ppt or jpg formats. Research has shown that you must review new words at least seven to nine times before you are able to commit them to long term memory, and flashcards are efficient at promoting repetition. Develop the habit of deleting flashcards that you have mastered and focus your efforts on the remaining words.

2. Read actively and make lots of educated guesses

One of the benefits of traditional dictionary work is that it gives readers an interval between the time they encounter a questionable word or form and the time they find the dictionary entry. That span of time often compels readers to make educated guesses and actively seek out understanding of the Greek.

Despite the benefits of corresponding vocabulary lists there is a risk that without that interval of time you will become complacent in your reading habits and treat the Greek as a puzzle to be decoded rather than a language to be learned. *Your challenge, therefore, is to develop the habit of making an educated guess under your breath each time before you consult the commentary.* If you guess correctly, the vocabulary and notes will reaffirm your understanding of the Greek. If you answer incorrectly, you will become more aware of your weaknesses and therefore more capable of correcting them.

3. Reread a passage immediately after you have completed it.

Repeated readings not only help you commit Greek to memory but also promote your ability to read the Greek as Greek. You learned to read in your first language through repeated readings of the same books. Greek is no different. The more comfortable you are with older passages, the more easily you will read new ones.

4. Reread the most recent passage immediately before you begin a new one.

This additional repetition will strengthen your ability to recognize vocabulary, forms, and syntax quickly, bolster your confidence, and most importantly provide you with much-needed context as you begin the next selection in the text.

5. Consult an advanced-level commentary for a more nuanced interpretation

After your initial reading of a passage and as time permits, consult the highly readable notes in books by Rowe. Your initial reading will allow you to better understand the advanced commentary, which in turn will provide a more insightful literary analysis than is possible in this volume.

Plato's *Phaedo*
Core Vocabulary (10 or more times)

The following is a running list of all 297 words that occur ten or more times in *Phaedo*. All words occurring twenty or more times are not included elsewhere in the commentary. Words occurring 10-19 times, however, are found in this list as well as in all corresponding vocabulary lists throughout the book. The number of occurrences, indicated at the end of the dictionary entry, were tabulated by the author. The left column indicates the page number where the word first occurs.

01 **ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, ἀκήκοα, ἠκούσθην**: to hear, listen to, 42
01 **ἄλλος, -η, -ο**: othother, 200
01 **ἄν**: modal adv., 264
01 **ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ**: a man, 31
01 **ἀπο-θνῄσκω, -θανοῦμαι, -έθανον, -τέθνηκα**: to die off, perish, 39
01 **ἄρα**: then, therefore, it seems, it turns out, 51
01 **αὐτός, -ή, -ό**: -self; he, she, it; the same, 455
01 **ἀφ-ικνέομαι, ἀφίξομαι, ἀφικόμην, —, ἀφῖγμαι, —**: to come, arrive, 32
01 **γάρ**: for, since, 322
01 **γε**: at least, at any rate; indeed, 172
01 **γίγνομαι, γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην, γέγονα**: come to be, be born, 143
01 **δέ**: but, and, on the other hand, 474
01 **δή**: indeed, surely, really, certainly, just, 169
01 **δίκη, ἡ**: justice; lawsuit, trial, penalty, 11
01 **ἐγώ**: I, 201
01 **εἰμί, ἔσομαι**: to be, exist, 680
01 **εἶπον**: *aor*. said, spoke (aor. **λέγω, φημί**), 41
01 **ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ον**: that, those, 109
01 **ἐν**: in, on, among. (+ dat.), 179
01 **Ἐχεκράτης, ὁ**: Echecrates, 24
01 **ἔχω, ἕξω, ἔσχον, ἔσχηκα**:: have, hold, possess; be able; be disposed, 161
01 **ἤ**: or (either...or); than, 265
01 **ἡμεῖς**: we, 139
01 **θάνατος, ὁ**: death, 35
01 **καί**: and; also, even, too, in fact, 1371
01 **νῦν**: now; as it is, 55
01 **ὁ, ἡ, τό**: the, 2279
01 **οἷος, -α, -ον**: of what sort, as, 56
01 **ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι**: whoever, whichever, whatever, 30
01 **ὅτι**: that; because, 116
01 **οὐ-δέ**: and not, but not, nor, not even, 73
01 **οὔ-τε**: and not, neither...nor, 34
01 **οὐδ-είς, οὐδε-μία, οὐδ-έν**: no one, nothing, 94
01 **οὖν**: and so, then; at all events, 130

01 **οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο**: this, these, 459
01 **πάνυ**: quite, entirely, exceedingly, 70
01 **παρα-γίγνομαι, -γενήσομαι, -εγενόμην**: to come near, be present, 11
01 **περί**: around, about, concerning, 123
01 **πίνω, πίομαι, ἔπιον, πέπτωκα, πέπομαι, ἐπόθην**: to drink, 16
01 **πρό**: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 13
01 **πῶς**: how? in what way?, 34γίγνομαι
01 **σαφής, -ές**: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
01 **Σωκράτης, -ους, ὁ**: Socrates, 117
01 **τελευτάω, τελευτήσω, ἐτελεύτησα, τετελεύτηκα**: to end, finish, die, 31
01 **τις, τι**: anyone, anything, someone, -thing, 283
01 **τίς, τί**: who? which? 117
01 **τρόπος, ὁ**: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17
01 **Φαίδων, -ωνος, ὁ**: Phaedo, 31
01 **φάρμακον, τό**: medicine, remedy, drug, 10
01 **χρόνος, ὁ**: time, 47
01 **ὦ**: O! oh! 164
02 **ἄγω, ἄξω, ἤγαγον, ἦχα, ἦγμαι, ἤχθην:** to lead, bring, carry, convey, 13
02 **ἀεί**: always, forever, in every case, 47
02 **δῆλος, -η, -ον**: clear, evident, conspicuous, 14
02 **εἰ**: if, whether, 138
02 **εἰς**: into, to, in regard to (+ acc.), 102
02 **ἐκ, ἐξ**: out of, from (+ gen.), 106
02 **ἕκαστος, -η, -ον**: each, every one, 42
02 **ἔτι**: still, besides, further, 56
02 **κατά**: down from (gen), down along (acc), 78
02 **λέγω, λέξω (ἐρέω), ἔλεξα (εἶπον), εἴλοχα, ἐλέγην**: to say, speak, 214
02 **μέν**: on the one hand, 214
02 **ναί**: yes, yea, 15
02 **οἴχομαι**: to go, go off, depart, 14
02 **πάλαι**: for some time, long ago, of old, 13
02 **πολύς, πολλά, πολύ**: much, many, 102
02 **ποτέ**: ever, at some time, once, 27
02 **τότε**: then, at that time, 30
02 **τυγχάνω, τεύξομαι, ἔτυχον, τετύχημα**: chance upon, attain; happen, 51
02 **ὕστερος, -α, -ον**: later, last; *adv*. later 17
02 **φαίνω, φανῶ, ἔφηνα, ἐφάνθην (ἐφάνην)**: show; *mid*. appear, seem, 46
02 **φημί, φήσω, ἔφησα**: to say, claim, assert, 304
02 **ὡς**: as, thus, so, that; when, since, 166
03 **ἄρχω**: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 12
03 **διά**: through (gen), on account of, because of (acc), 89
03 **ἐπειδάν**: whenever, 29

03 **θεός, ὁ**: a god, divinity, 32
03 **μηδ-είς, μηδ-εμία, μηδ-έν**: no one, nothing, 24
03 **ὅταν**: ὅτε ἄν, whenever, 28
03 **πάλιν**: again, once more; back, backwards, 26
03 **πράττω**: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12
03 **πρίν**: until, before, 28
03 **ὥσπερ**: as, just as, as if, 81
04 **ἀλλά**: but; well, 217
04 **δύναμαι, δυνήσομαι,,, δεδύνημαι, ἐδυνήθην**: to be able, can, 15
04 **ἔγω-γε**: I for my part, 39
04 **ἕτερος, -α, -ον**: one of two, other, different, 58
04 **μή**: not, lest, 151
04 **μήν**: truly, surely, certainly, 22
04 **οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ**: not, 306
04 **οὐδαμῶς**: in no way, not at all, 11
04 **πάρ-ειμι, -έσομαι**: to be near, be present, be at hand, 29
04 **πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν**: every, all, the whole, 122
04 **πάσχω, πείσομαι, ἔπαθον, πέπονθα**: to suffer, experience, 43
04 **πειράω**: to try, attempt, endeavor, 11
04 **προ-θυμέομαι**: to be eager, zealous, ready, 12
04 **σύ**: you, 112
04 **τοιοῦτος, -αύτη, -οῦτο**: such, 103
04 **ὑμεῖς**: you, 28
05 **Ἅιδης, -ου ὁ**: Hades, 15
05 **ἀπό**: from, away from. (+ gen.), 31
05 **αὖ**: again, once more; further, moreover, 42
05 **δοκέω, δόξω, ἔδοξα, δέδογμαι**: to seem (good), think, imagine, 109
05 **εἴ-περ**: if really, if that is to say (to imply doubt), 20
05 **εἰκός, ότος, τό**: likely, probable, reasonable 18
05 **εἷς, μία, ἕν**: one, single, alone, 25
05 **εἴωθα**: to be accustomed, 12
05 **ἐκεῖ-σε**: thither, to that place, 10
05 **ἔρχομαι, εἶμι, ἦλθον, ἐληλυθα, —, —**: to come or go, 31
05 **εὖ**: well, 19
05 **ἡδονή, ἡ**: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17
05 **θεῖος, -α, -ον**: divine, sent by the gods, 15
05 **λόγος ὁ**: word, speech, discourse, account 115
05 **μέλλω, μελλήσω, ἐμέλησα**: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
05 **μη-δέ**: and not, but not, nor, 20
05 **οἶδα**: to know, 38
05 **οἴομαι (οἶμαι), οἰήσομαι, ᾠήθην**: to suppose, think, imagine, 71
05 **οὕτως**: in this way, thus, so, 104

05 **πάθος, -εος, τό**: suffering, misfortune 11
05 **πού**: somewhere, I suppose, 48
05 **τε**: and, both, 152
05 **τοί-νυν**: well then; therefore, accordingly, 21
05 **φιλο-σοφία, ἡ**: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13
05 **ὥστε**: so that, that, so as to, 23
06 **Κέβης, Κέβητος ὁ**: Cebes, 90
06 **παντά-πασι**: all in all, absolutely 15
06 **παρά**: from, beside, alongside; in respect to 36
06 **Σιμμίας, Σιμμίου, ὁ**: Simmias, 85
07 **πρόσθεν**: before, 10
08 **ἀλλήλος, -α, -ον**: one another, 28
08 **ἐπειδή**: when, since, after, 24
08 **ἕως**: until, as long as, 15
08 **ἥκω**: to have come, be present, 14
08 **ἡμέρα, ἡ**: day,
08 **μετά**: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 30
08 **ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε**: this, this here, 45
08 **ὅπως**: how, in what way; in order that, that 10
08 **ὅσπερ, ἥπερ, ὅπερ**: the very one who, very thing which, 42
08 **πρότερος, -α, -ον**: before, previous; earlier, 29
09 **γιγνώσκω, γνώσομαι, ἔγνων, ἔγνωκα**: learn, know, recognize 12
09 **ὁράω, ὄψομαι, εἶδον, ἑώρακα, ἑώραμαι, ὤφθην**: to see, behold, 135
09 **Κρίτων, Κρίτωνος ὁ**: Crito, 22
10 **ἅμα**: at once, at the same time; along with, 26
10 **ἀναγκάζω, ἀναγκάσω, ἠναγκάσα**: to force, compel, require, 10
10 **ἄνθρωπος, ὁ**: human being, 66
10 **βούλομαι, βουλήσομαι, -, -, βεβούλημαι, ἐβουλήθην**: wish, want, 28
10 **δύο**: two, 23
10 **ἐάν**: εἰ ἄν, if (+ subj.), 30
10 **(ἐ)θέλω ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα, ἠθέληκα, —, —**: to be willing, wish, 17
10 **ἐν-νοέω, -νοήσω, νόησα, νενόηκα,, ἐνοήθην**: to notice, consider, 18
10 **ἐναντίος, -α, -ον**: opposite, contrary, 63
10 **ἔοικα**: to be like, seem likely (dat.), 24
10 **καλέω, καλέω, ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην**: call, summon, 24
10 **λαμβάνω, λήσω, ἔλαθον, λέληθα**: to take, receive, catch, grasp, 29
10 **πρός**: to (acc), near, in addition to (dat), 62
10 **ὑπό**: by, because of, from (gen), under (dat)50
10 **φύω, φύσω, ἔφυν (ἔφυσα), πέφυκα**: bring forth; grow; be by nature, 14
11 **ἀληθής, -ές**: true, 63
11 **ἀνα-μιμνήσκω,-μνήσω, -έμνησα**: to remind, recall (acc. gen.) 16
11 **ἀπο-κρίνομαι, ἀπο-κρινοῦμαι, ἀπ-εκρίθη**: to answer, reply, 13

11 **ἐρωτάω, ἐρωτήσω, ἠρόμην**: to ask, inquire, question, 12
11 **Ζεύς, ὁ**: Zeus, 11
11 **ἤδη**: already, now, at this time, 16
11 **νή**: by…(+ acc, invoking a god), 14
11 **ποιέω, ποιήσω, ἐποίησα, πεποίηκα, πεποίημαι, ἐποιήθην**: do, make, 64
11 **χρή**: it is necessary, is fitting; must, ought, 23
12 **βίος, ὁ**: life, 28
12 **ὅς, ἥ, ὅ**: who, which, that, 360
12 **πολλάκις**: many times, often, frequently, 14
12 **τοιόσδε, -άδε, -όνδε**: such, 20
13 **ἀπ-έρχομαι, -ειμι, -ηλθον, -έληλυθα, —, —**: to go away, depart, 14
13 **δεῖ**: it is necessary, must, ought (+ inf.), 37
13 **ἐπίσταμαι, ἐπιστήσομαι, ἠπιστήθην**: know, know how, understand, 13
13 **πείθω, πείσω, ἔπεισα, πέποιθα, πέπεισμαι, ἐπείσθην**: persuade; obey 29
13 **πρῶτος, -η, -ον**: first, earliest, 25
14 **αἰσθάνομαι, αἰσθήσομαι, ᾐσθόμην,,ᾔσθημαι**: perceive, feel, realize, 11
14 **ἄξιος, -α, -ον**: worthy of, deserving of, 15
14 **αὑτοῦ (ἑαυτοῦ), -ῆς, -οῦ**: himself, herself, itself, themselves, 37
14 **γῆ, γῆς ἡ**: earth, land, ground, 44
14 **δια-λέγομαι, -λέξομαι, -ελεξάμην,,, -ελέχθην**: converse with, discuss, 13
14 **ἐπί**: near, at (gen.), to (acc), near, at (dat.), 51
14 **ἠμί**: to say, (ἦ δ’ ὅς – ‘he said’), 57
14 **ἴσος, -η, -ον**: equal to, the same as, like, 30
14 **μέντοι**: however, nevertheless; certainly, 37
14 **πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό**: deed, act; matter, affair, 18
14 **φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ**: pursuer of wisdom, 18
15 **ἑαυτοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ**: himself, herself, itself, themselves, 24 see also **αὑτοῦ**
15 **ἐκεῖ**: there, in that place, 17
15 **ἔρομαι, ἐρήσομαι, ἠρόμην**: to ask, enquire, question, 12
15 **ἴσως**: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 19
15 **μάλιστα**: most of all; certainly, especially, 28
16 **ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν**: every, quite all, 14
16 **ζάω, ζήσω, ἔξησα, ἔξηκα**: to live, 35
16 **θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν**: wonderful, marvelous, strange, 11
16 **θνῄσκω, θανοῦμαι, ἔθανον, τέθνηκα**: to die, 31
16 **μόνος, -η, -ον**: alone, only, solitary, 28
16 **νυν-δὴ**: just now, 15
16 **οὐδέ-ποτε**: not ever, never, 11
17 **μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα**: big, great, important, 25
18 **ἀνάγκη, ἡ**: necessity, force, constraint, 36
18 **οὐκοῦν**: therefore, then, accordingly, 42
19 **ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν**: good, brave, capable, 28

19 **ἀγανακτέω, ἀγανακτήσω, ἠγανάκτησα**: to be annoyed, be troubled, 12
19 **ἀμείνων, -ον (-ονος)**: better, 10
19 **ἐπι-θυμέω, ἐπιθυμήσω, ἐπεθύμησα,,, ἐπιθυμήθην**: to desire, long for, 10
19 **νοῦς, ὁ**: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14
19 **φεύγω, φεύξομαι, ἔφυγον, πέφευγα, —, —:**: to flee, escape, 10
20 **ἀπ-αλλάττω**: escape, release; set free, 15
20 **δίκαιος, -α, -ον**: just, right(eous), fair, 13
20 **ὁμο-λογέω**: to agree, acknowledge, 25
20 **φέρω, οἴσω, ἤνεκγκα, ἐνήνοχα, ἠνέχθην**: to bear, carry, bring, convey 20
20 **χαίρω**: to rejoice, be glad, enjoy; fare well, 12
21 **ἅπτω**: fasten, grasp (gen); kindle, set fire; 11
21 **δίδωμι, δώσω, ἔδωκα, δέδωκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθην**: give, offer, grant, 15
21 **ἐν-θάδε**: hither, thither, 17
21 **ἔπ-ειτα**: then, next, secondly, 20
21 **ὁμοῖος, -α, -ον**: similar, resembling, 24
21 **παρ-έχω, -εξω, -εσχον, -εσχηκα**: to provide, furnish, supply, 16
22 **κακός, -ή, -όν**: bad, base, cowardly, evil, 20
23 **μᾶλλον**: more, rather, 38
24 **ἐρέω**: will speak (fut. **λέγω**), 24
24 **ὀρθός, -ή, -όν**: straight, upright, right, 25
24 **ὅσος -η -ον**: as many as; all who, all which 22
25 **ἆρα**: introduces a yes/no question, 37
25 **ἡγέομαι, ἡγήσομαι, ἡγησάμην,, ἡγήθην**: lead; consider, believe (dat) 23
25 **σῶμα, -ατος, τό**: the body, 104
25 **ψυχή, ἡ**: breath, life, spirit, soul, 138
26 **σκοπέω (**for ther tenses, use **σκέπτομαι)**: to look at, examine, consider 30
27 **μετ-έχω, -εξω, -εσχον, -εσχηκα**: to partake of, have share in (gen) 13
27 **πότερος, -α, -ον**: which of the two? whether?, 19
28 **φρόνησις, -εως, ἡ**: intelligence, wisdom, prudence, 15
29 **αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ**: sensation, perception, 19
29 **μή-τε**: and not, neither...nor, 15
31 **καλός, -ή, -όν**: beautiful, fair, noble, fine, 32
31 **μέγεθος, -εος, τό**: size, magnitude, height, 17
32 **καθαρός, -ά, -όν**: clean, pure, spotless, 22
32 **χράομαι, χρήσομαι, ἐχρησάμην,,, ἐχρήσθην**: to use, employ, enjoy, 11
33 **ἀναγκαῖος, -α, -ον**: necessary, inevitable, 20
33 **ἐπιθυμία, ἡ**: desire, longing, yearning, 10
33 **ἱκανός, -ή, -όν**: enough, sufficient; capable, 27
34 **ἑταῖρος, ὁ**: a comrade, companion, mate, 11
34 **φόβος, ὁ**: fear, terror, panic, 10
34 **φύσις, -εως, ἡ**: nature, character; form, 11
37 **ἕνεκα**: for the sake of, because of, for (gen.) 13

37 **οἰκέω, οἰκήσω, ᾤκησα, ᾤκηκα, ᾤκημαι, ᾠκήθην**: inhabit, dwell, live, 15
39 **φοβέω, φοβήσω, ἐφόβησα,,ἐφοβήθην**: put to flight, terrify, frighten, 15
40 **σφόδρα**: very much, exceedingly, earnestly 18
41 **δείδω, δείσω, ἔδεισα, δέδοικα**: fear, dread, shrink from, feel awe, 11
41 **μάλα**: very, very much, exceedingly, 10
41 **προσ-ήκει**: be at hand; it belongs to, befits 15
42 **μείζων, μείζον**: larger, greater, 26
43 **ὅμως**: nevertheless, however, yet, 13
44 **ἐλάττων, -ον**: smaller, fewer; less, 26
46 **ἧττων, -ον**: less, weaker, inferior, 16
46 **καλῶς**: well; beautifully, 11
46 **ὀλίγος, -η, -ον**: few, little, small, 15
47 **ἀπ-όλλυμι, -ολῶ, -ώλεσα, -όλωλα**: to destroy, kill, ruin; die, 43
47 **φρόνησις, -εως, ἡ**: intelligence, wisdom, prudence, 15
48 **εἴ-τε**: either...or; whether...or, 13
49 **γένεσις, -εως, ἡ**: origin, beginning, generation, 16
49 **μανθάνω, μαθήσομαι, ἔμαθον, μεμάθηκα, —, —**: to learn, understand, 12
57 **ἀπο-δείκνυμι, -δέξω, -έδεξα, -δέδεχα,, -εδέχθην**: demonstrate, prove 11
57 **κύκλος, ὁ**: a circle, round, ring, 10
59 **ἀνά-μνησις, -εως, ἡ**: recollection, recall, 11
59 **εἶδος, -εος, τό**: form, shape, figure, 17
60 **ἐπιστήμη, ἡ**: knowledge, understand, 20
63 **λύρα, ἡ**: lyre, 11
75 **ἐμαυτοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ**: myself, 20
76 **ἄλλως**: otherwise, in another way, 14
83 **ὅστις-οῦν, ἥτισουν, ὅτι-οῦν**: whosoever, 11
84 **ἀιδής, -ές**: unseen, invisible, 12
84 **ὁρατός, -ή, -όν**: to be seen, visible, 17
84 **τίθημι, θήσω, ἔθηκα, τέθηκα, τέθειμαι, ἐτέθην**: set, put, place, arrange, 10
86 **ἀ-θάνατος, -ον**: undying, immortal, 28
86 **ἀ-όρατος, -ον**: unseen, invisible, 12
88 **συγ-χωρέω, χωρήσω, ἐχώρησα, κεχώρηκα**: come together; concede 13
91 **τόπος, ὁ**: a place, region, 22
97 **βέλτιστος, -η, -ον**: best, 14
98 **ὅπῃ**: where; in what way, how, 11
105 **σμικρός, -ά, -όν**: small, little, 19
109 **ἁρμονία, ἡ**: harmony, a fastening, joint, 44
111 **θερμός, -ή, -όν**: hot, warm; subst. heat, 11
111 **ψυχρός, -ά, -όν**: cold, chill, frigid, 10
116 **δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην, δέδεγμαι, ἐδέχθην**: to receive, accept, 26
116 **ῥέω, ῥυήσομαι, ἐρρύην, ἐρρύηκα, —, —:**: to flow, run, stream, 10
117 **πλέων, -ον**: more, greater, 17

118 **ἀν-ώλεθρος, -α, -ον**: indestructible, 12
127 **αἰτία, ἡπ**: cause, responsibility, blame, 31
146 **προσ-τίθημι, θήσω, ἔθηκα, τέθηκα,, ἐτέθην**: to add, attribute, 10
147 **ἀήρ, ἀέρος** m.: air, mist 16
147 **πῦρ, πυρός, τό**: fire, 14
148 **οὐρανός, ὁ**: sky, heaven, 10
154 **ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό**: water, 14
162 **σμικρότης, -τητος, ἡ**: smallness, 10
174 **περιττός -ή -όν**: odd, remarkable, 15
175 **ἄρτιος, -α, -ον**: even, suitable, 14
194 **θάλαττα, ἡ**: the sea, 12

Abbreviations

abs.	absolute	impf.	imperfect	pl.	plural
acc.	accusative	imper.	impersonal	plpf.	pluperfect
act.	active	indic.	indicative	pred.	predicate
adj.	adjective	i.o.	indirect object	prep.	preposition
adv.	adverb	inf.	infinitive	pres.	present
aor.	aorist	inter.	interrogative	pron.	pronoun
app.	appositive	m.	masculine	ptw	place to which
comp.	comparative	n(eut.)	neuter	pw	place where
dat.	dative	nom.	nominative	reflex.	reflexive
dep.	deponent	obj.	object	rel.	relative
d.o.	direct object	opt.	optative	seq.	sequence
f.	feminine	pple.	participle	sg.	singular
fut.	future	pass.	passive	subj.	subject
gen.	genitive	pf.	perfect	superl.	superlative
imper.	imperative	pfw	place from which	voc.	vocative

1s, 2s, 3s denote 1st, 2nd, and 3rd singular. 1p, 2p, 3p denote 1st, 2nd, and 3rd plural.

Stephanus Page Numbers

The universal method for referring to pages in any of Plato's dialogues is through Stephanus page numbers. This paging system was developed by Henri Estienne (Lat., *Stephanus*), who published a multi-volume edition of Plato's dialogues in 1578. Stephanus divided each page in his edition into roughly equal sections, which he labeled with the letters a, b, c, d, and e. This system allowed his readers to locate a particular passage not only by the page number but by the section letter as well (e.g. 58a, 58b, 58c, 58d, 58e, 59a…). Many modern editions, including the Greek text in this volume, have adopted this system and gone one step further by dividing the sections into individual lines (e.g. 327a1, 327a2, 327a3…). This paging system offers the same advantages as chapters and verses in the Bible. Since most editions of Plato include the Stephanus page numbers in the margins of the text, a reader can pick up any volume of Plato—in Greek or in translation—and easily locate a particular passage in the dialogue.

Because Stephanus placed the *Phaedo* on pages 57-118 in his first volume of Plato, the *Phaedo* begins on Stephanus page 57a1 and ends on page 118a17. In this commentary all of the grammatical notes are arranged and labeled according to this paging system. Since most of the entries on a given page of commentary have the same Stephanus page number, I have identified the page number only once and labeled all subsequent grammatical note entries by the section letter and line number (e.g. 327a1, a2, a3…b1, b2, b3, b4…).

But what's it made of? It's made of neurons. It's made of lots of tiny robots. And we can actually explain the structure and operation of that kind of soul, whereas an eternal, immortal, immaterial soul is just a metaphysical rug under which you sweep your embarrassment for not having any explanation.

- Daniel Dennett

If you can't explain consciousness in terms of the existing fundamentals — space, time, mass, charge — then as a matter of logic, you need to expand the list. The natural thing to do is to postulate consciousness itself as something fundamental, a fundamental building block of nature.

- David Chalmers

To make the ancients speak, we must feed them with our own blood.

- von Wilamowitz-Moellendorff

ΕΧ. *αὐτός, ὦ Φαίδων, παρεγένου Σωκράτει ἐκείνῃ τῇ* **a**
ἡμέρᾳ ᾗ τὸ φάρμακον ἔπιεν ἐν τῷ δεσμωτηρίῳ, ἢ ἄλλου του
ἤκουσας;

ΦΑΙΔ. *αὐτός, ὦ Ἐχέκρατες.*

ΕΧ. *τί οὖν δή ἐστιν ἅττα εἶπεν ὁ ἀνὴρ πρὸ τοῦ θανά-* 5
του; καὶ πῶς ἐτελεύτα; ἡδέως γὰρ ἂν ἐγὼ ἀκούσαιμι. καὶ
γὰρ οὔτε τῶν πολιτῶν Φλειασίων οὐδεὶς πάνυ τι ἐπιχωριάζει
τὰ νῦν Ἀθήναζε, οὔτε τις ξένος ἀφῖκται χρόνου συχνοῦ
ἐκεῖθεν ὅστις ἂν ἡμῖν σαφές τι ἀγγεῖλαι οἷός τ' ἦν περὶ **b**
τούτων, πλήν γε δὴ ὅτι φάρμακον πιὼν ἀποθάνοι· τῶν δὲ
ἄλλων οὐδὲν εἶχεν φράζειν.

ΦΑΙΔ. *οὐδὲ τὰ περὶ τῆς δίκης ἄρα ἐπύθεσθε ὃν τρόπον* **58**
ἐγένετο;

ἀγγέλλω: to announce, proclaim, report, 3
Ἀθήνα-δε : to Athens, 1
δεσμωτήριον, τό: prison, 6
δίκη, ἡ: justice; lawsuit, trial; penalty, 11
ἐκεῖ-θεν: thence, from that place, 3
ἐπι-χωριάζω: to (be accustomed) to visit, 1
ἡδέως: sweetly, pleasantly, gladly, 6
ἡμέρα, ἡ: day, 7
ξένος, ὁ: guest-friend, friend, stranger, 3
παρα-γίγνομαι: to come near, be present, 11
πίνω: to drink, 16
πλήν: except, but (+ gen.), 7
πολίτης, ὁ: citizen, 1
πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 13
πυνθάνομαι: to learn by inquiry or hearsay, 3
σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
συχνός, -ή, -όν: long, much, great, 4
τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17
Φαίδων, -ωνος, ὁ: Phaedo, 31
φάρμακον, τό: medicine, remedy, drug, 10
Φλειάσιος, -α, -ον: Phliasian, 1
φράζω: to point out, tell, indicate, 6

57a1 **αὐτός**: *(You) yourself*; intensive, 2s
παρεγένε(σ)ο: 2s aor. παρα-γίγνομαι
Σωκράτει: dat. of compound verb
ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ: *on*…; dat. of time when
2 **ᾗ**: *on which*…; time when
ἔπιεν: 2nd aorist (stem πι-), πίνω
ἄλλου του: *from someone else*; alternative for the indefinite τινός; gen. of source
4 **αὐτός**: *(I) myself (was present)*; repeating the question is a common form of assent
5 **τί οὖν δή**: *What exactly then, just what then*
ἅττα: *the things which*; alternative to τίνα
6 **ἂν…ἀκούσαιμι**: *I would…*; potential opt.
καὶ γὰρ: *for in fact*; καί is adverbial
7 **πανύ τι**: *quite at all*; τι is an adverbial acc.
τὰ νῦν: *now*; adverbial acc. equiv. to νῦν
8 **ἀφῖκται**: pf. mid. ἀφικνέομαι
χρόνου συχνοῦ: *during…*; gen. time within
b1 **σαφές τι**: *anything reliable*; acc. object
ἀγγεῖλαι: aor. inf.
ἂν…οἷος τ ἦν: *would be able, could*; 'be the sort to…' οἷος τε εἰμί is an idiom for 'I am able;' ἄν + impf. indicative (3s εἰμί) suggests a unrealized present potential
2 **πλὴν γε δὴ**: *except of course*….; γε is emphatic and may be left untranslated
πιὼν: *by…*; causal nom. sg. aor. pple πίνω
ἀποθάνοι: aor. opt. ἀποθνήσκω in ind. disc. in secondary sequence
3 **εἶχεν**: *he was able*; impf. ἔχω + inf.
58a1 **τὰ περὶ**: *the (matters) concerning…*
ἄρα: *then,* therefore; resumptive
ἐπύθεσθε: aor. πυνθάνομαι + acc.
ὃν τρόπον: *(and) in what way*; adv. acc.

ΕΧ. *ναί, ταῦτα μὲν ἡμῖν ἤγγειλέ τις, καὶ ἐθαυμάζομέν γε ὅτι πάλαι γενομένης αὐτῆς πολλῷ ὕστερον φαίνεται ἀποθανών. τί οὖν ἦν τοῦτο, ὦ Φαίδων;*

ΦΑΙΔ. *τύχη τις αὐτῷ, ὦ Ἐχέκρατες, συνέβη· ἔτυχεν γὰρ τῇ προτεραίᾳ τῆς δίκης ἡ πρύμνα ἐστεμμένη τοῦ πλοίου ὃ εἰς Δῆλον Ἀθηναῖοι πέμπουσιν.*

ΕΧ. *τοῦτο δὲ δὴ τί ἐστιν;*

ΦΑΙΔ. *τοῦτ᾽ ἔστι τὸ πλοῖον, ὥς φασιν Ἀθηναῖοι, ἐν ᾧ Θησεύς ποτε εἰς Κρήτην τοὺς ‘δὶς ἑπτὰ’ ἐκείνους ᾤχετο* b *ἄγων καὶ ἔσωσέ τε καὶ αὐτὸς ἐσώθη. τῷ οὖν Ἀπόλλωνι ηὔξαντο ὡς λέγεται τότε, εἰ σωθεῖεν, ἑκάστου ἔτους θεωρίαν ἀπάξειν εἰς Δῆλον· ἣν δὴ ἀεὶ καὶ νῦν ἔτι ἐξ ἐκείνου κατ᾽*

ἀγγέλλω: to announce, proclaim, report, 3
ἄγω: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 12
Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον: Athenian, of Athens, 6
ἀπ-άγω: to bring back, lead away, 2
Ἀπόλλω, Ἀπόλλωνος, ὁ: Apollo, 4
δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 14
δίκη, ἡ: justice; lawsuit, trial; penalty, 11
δίς: twice, doubly, 3
ἑπτά: seven, 1
ἔτος, -εως, τό: a year, 2
εὔχομαι: to pray, vow; boast, 3
θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel, be amazed at, 7
θεωρία, ἡ: voyage, spectacle, sight-seeing, 3
Θησεύς, ὁ: Theseus, 1
Κρήτη, ἡ: Crete, 1
ναί: yes, yea, 15
οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 14
πάλαι: for some time, long ago, of old, 13
πέμπω: to send, conduct, convey, dispatch, 2
πλοῖον, τό: vessel, ship, 5
προτεραῖος, -α, -ον: on the day before, 3
πρύμνα, ἡ: stern, back of the boat, 2
στρέφω: to crown, wreath, put around, 2
συμ-βαίνω: to happen, occur, result, 8
σῴζω: to save, keep, preserve, 4
ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; *adv*. later 17

3 **ἡμῖν**: dat. pl. ind. object, ἡμεῖς
καὶ…γε: *and…in fact*; emphasizes the intervening word
4 **πάλαι γενομένης αὐτῆς**: *while this…*; gen. absolute, concessive in sense
πολλῷ: *far*; ‘by much,’ dat. of degree of difference
ὕστερον: *later*; adv. acc.
5 **ἀποθανών**: aor. pple ἀποθνήσκω
6 **αὐτῷ**: *to him*; interest
συνέβη: 3rd sg. asigmatic aor. συμβαίνω
ἔτυχεν…ἐστεμμένη: τυγχάνω, here aor., + pple often translates as ‘happens to…’; here with the pf. pass pple στρέφω
7 **τῇ προτεραίᾳ**: *on…*; time when
τῆς δίκης: *the trial*; gen. of comparison with προτεραίᾳ, i.e. ‘earlier than the trial’
9 **τοῦτο…δὴ**: *precisely this*; pred. of ἐστίν
10 **φασιν**: 3s pres. φημί
11 **τοὺς…ἐκείνους**: *those…*; i.e. ‘the famous’
ᾤχετο: 3s impf. mid. οἴχομαι
b1 **ἔσωσε…ἐσώθη**: 3s aor. active and passive respectively, σῴζω
2 **ηὔξαντο**: aor. εὔχομαι; add οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι
ὡς…τότε: *as it is said…*; parenthetical
εἰ σωθεῖεν…ἀπάξειν: *that, if they…, they would bring back;* equiv. to fut. more vivid, (εἰ ἂν subj., fut.), aor. pass. opt. replaces aor. pass. subj. in secondary sequence
ἑκάστου ἔτους: gen. of time within
3 **ἣν δὴ**: *which very (spectacle)*; relative
ἐξ ἐκείνου (χρόνου): denoting time
κατ(ὰ) ἐνιαυτὸν: *yearly*; ‘year by year,’ κατά is distributive in sense

ἐνιαυτὸν τῷ θεῷ πέμπουσιν. ἐπειδὰν οὖν ἄρξωνται τῆς θεωρίας, νόμος ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς ἐν τῷ χρόνῳ τούτῳ καθαρεύειν τὴν πόλιν καὶ δημοσίᾳ μηδένα ἀποκτεινύναι, πρὶν ἂν εἰς Δῆλόν τε ἀφίκηται τὸ πλοῖον καὶ πάλιν δεῦρο· τοῦτο δ' ἐνίοτε ἐν πολλῷ χρόνῳ γίγνεται, ὅταν τύχωσιν ἄνεμοι ἀπολαβόντες αὐτούς. ἀρχὴ δ' ἐστὶ τῆς θεωρίας ἐπειδὰν ὁ ἱερεὺς τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος στέψῃ τὴν πρύμναν τοῦ πλοίου· τοῦτο δ' ἔτυχεν, ὥσπερ λέγω, τῇ προτεραίᾳ τῆς δίκης γεγονός. διὰ ταῦτα καὶ πολὺς χρόνος ἐγένετο τῷ Σωκράτει ἐν τῷ δεσμωτηρίῳ ὁ μεταξὺ τῆς δίκης τε καὶ τοῦ θανάτου.

ΕΧ. τί δὲ δὴ τὰ περὶ αὐτὸν τὸν θάνατον, ὦ Φαίδων; τί ἦν τὰ λεχθέντα καὶ πραχθέντα, καὶ τίνες οἱ παραγενόμενοι

ἄνεμος, -ου, ὁ: wind, 4
ἀπο-κτείνω: to kill, slay, 5
ἀπο-λαμβάνω: take away or apart, cut off 1
Ἀπόλλω, Ἀπόλλωνος, ὁ: Apollo, 4
ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning; rule, office, 8
ἄρχω: to begin; rule, be leader of (gen) 12
δεσμωτήριον, τό: prison, 6
δεῦρο: here, to this point, hither, 7
δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 14
δημόσιος, -α, -ον: public, of the people, 1
δίκη, ἡ: justice; lawsuit, trial; penalty, 11
ἐνιαυτός, ὁ: long period of time, year, 1
ἐνί-οτε: sometimes, 7
θεωρία, ἡ: voyage, spectacle, sight-seeing, 3
ἱερεύς, -έως, ὁ: a priest, sacrificer, 1
καθαρεύω: to be pure, be clean, 2
μεταξύ: between, betwixt, 6
νόμος, ὁ: law, custom, 1
παρα-γίγνομαι: to come near, be present, 11
πέμπω: to send, conduct, convey, dispatch, 2
πλοῖον, τό: vessel, ship, 5
πόλις, ἡ: a city, 1
πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12
προτεραῖος, -α, -ον: on the day before, 3
πρύμνα, ἡ: stern, back of the boat, 2
στρέφω: to crown, wreath, put around, 2

b4 **ἄρξωνται**: indefinite temporal clause governing a pres. subjunctive
αὐτοῖς: *for them…*; dat. of possession
5 **τὴν πόλιν…**: *that the city…*; acc. subject in ind. disc. governing two infinitives; μηδένα is acc. object of present inf. ἀποκτείνω
6 **δημοσίᾳ**: *at public (expense)*
πρίν ἄν…ἀφίκηται: *until*…; governs ἄν + aor. subj. in a general temporal clause
8 **ἐν πολλῷ χρόνῳ**: *over a long time*
τύχωσιν…: *the winds happen…*; i.e. contrary winds, general temporal clause; τυγχάνω, here aor., governs a pple
c2 **στέψῃ**: 3s aor. subjunctive στρέφω in a general temporal clause
ἔτυχεν…γεγονός: see b8 above; neut. nom. sg. pf. pple γίγνομαι
3 **τῇ προτεραίᾳ**: *on*…; time when
τῆς δίκης: *the trial*; gen. of comparison with προτεραίᾳ
4 **καὶ**: *in fact, actually*; with preceding demonstrative (GP 308)
ἐγένετο ᾧ Σωκράτει: i.e. Socrates came to have…; dat. of possession
5 **ὁ μεταξὺ…(χρόνος)**: prepositional phase in the attributive position modifying χρόνος
6 **τί δὲ δὴ**: *and what precisely (were)…*
τὰ…: *the circumstances, the matters*
7 **λεχθέντα, πραχθέντα**: neut. pl. aor.. pass. pples, λέγω, πράττω
τίνες…: *who (were)*; supply linking verb

τῶν ἐπιτηδείων τῷ ἀνδρί; ἢ οὐκ εἴων οἱ ἄρχοντες παρεῖναι, ἀλλ᾽ ἔρημος ἐτελεύτα φίλων;

d ΦΑΙΔ. *οὐδαμῶς, ἀλλὰ παρῆσάν τινες, καὶ πολλοί γε.*

ΕΧ. *ταῦτα δὴ πάντα προθυμήθητι ὡς σαφέστατα ἡμῖν ἀπαγγεῖλαι, εἰ μή τίς σοι ἀσχολία τυγχάνει οὖσα.*

ΦΑΙΔ. *ἀλλὰ σχολάζω γε καὶ πειράσομαι ὑμῖν διηγήσασθαι· καὶ γὰρ τὸ μεμνῆσθαι Σωκράτους καὶ αὐτὸν λέγοντα καὶ ἄλλου ἀκούοντα ἔμοιγε ἀεὶ πάντων ἥδιστον.*

ΕΧ. *ἀλλὰ μήν, ὦ Φαίδων, καὶ τοὺς ἀκουσομένους γε τοιούτους ἑτέρους ἔχεις· ἀλλὰ πειρῶ ὡς ἂν δύνῃ ἀκριβέστατα διεξελθεῖν πάντα.*

e ΦΑΙΔ. *καὶ μὴν ἔγωγε θαυμάσια ἔπαθον παραγενόμενος.*

ἀκριβής, -ές: exact, accurate, precise, 5
ἀπ-αγγέλλω: to report, announce, 1
ἄρχω: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 12
ἀ-σχολία, ἡ: business, occupation, 3
δι-εξ-έρχομαι: to pass through, go through 5
δι-ηγέομαι: set out in detail, relate, narrate, 3
δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 15
ἐάω: to permit, allow, let be, suffer, 9
ἐπιτήδειος, -η, -ον: fitting, favorable; friend 3
ἔρημος, -ον: alone, desolate, bereft of (gen) 2
ἡδύς, -εῖα, -ύ: sweet, pleasant, glad, 5
θαυμάσιος, -α, -ον: wonderful, marvelous, 3
μιμνήσκω: to remind, recall, recollect, 6
οὐδαμῶς: in no way, not at all, 11
παρα-γίγνομαι: to come near, be present, 11
πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 11
προ-θυμέομαι: to be eager, zealous, ready, 12
σχολάζω: to have leisure, devote oneself to 1
φίλος -η -ον: dear, friendly; *noun* friend, kin 8

c8 **τῶν ἐπιτηδείων**: *among*…; partitive gen.
τῷ ἀνδρί: dat. obj. of compound verb
εἴων: εἴα-ον, 3p impf. ἐάω
παρεῖναι: inf. πάρειμι, add subject φίλους
9 **ἐτελεύτα**: ἐτελεύτα-ε, α-contract verb
d1 **παρῆσαν** : impf. πάρειμι
καὶ...γε : *actually…in fact*; elsewhere ‘and…in fact,’ emphatic, GP 147
2 **ταῦτα δὴ**: *these very things*, *precisely these*
προθυμήθητι: imperative, aor. mid/pass.
ὡς…: *as…as possible*; + superlative adv.
3 **ἀπαγγεῖλαι**: aor. inf.
τίς…ἀσχολία: *any*…; τις before an enclitic
σοι: dat. of possession
τυγχάνει: *happens to*; + pple, fem. sg. εἰμί
4 **ἀλλὰ…γε**: *well…in fact*; or ‘well, yes…’ both articles are expressing assent, GP 131
5 **καὶ γὰρ**: *for in fact*; καί is adverbial
τὸ μεμνῆσθαι: articular inf. as subject, pf. mid. inf. μιμνήσκω + gen.
Σωκράτους: Σωκράτε-ος, gen. sg.
καὶ…λέγοντα…καὶ ἀκούοντα: *both while…and while…*; participles agree with implied acc. subject of μεμνῆσθαι
αὐτὸν: i.e. Socrates, obj. of λέγοντα
6 **ἄλλου**: gen. of source with ἀκούοντα
πάντων: partitive gen. with ἥδιστον
(ἐστίν) ἥδιστον: predicate, supply ἐστίν
7 **ἀλλὰ μήν**: *well, certainly*; in assent GP 343
τοὺς…ἑτέρους: *others (here) of this sort intent on listening in fact*; emphatic γε
8 **πειρῶ**: πειρά(σ)ο, mid. imperative
ὡς…δύνῃ...: *as accurately as you are able*; ‘however…you are able’ indefinite relative with ἄν + 2s pres. mid. subj. δύναμαι
e1 **καὶ μὴν**: *and certainly, and to be sure*; an assent in response to a request, GP 355
ἔπαθον: 1s aor. πάσχω

οὔτε γὰρ ὡς θανάτῳ παρόντα με ἀνδρὸς ἐπιτηδείου ἔλεος εἰσῄει· εὐδαίμων γάρ μοι ἀνὴρ ἐφαίνετο, ὦ Ἐχέκρατες, καὶ τοῦ τρόπου καὶ τῶν λόγων, ὡς ἀδεῶς καὶ γενναίως ἐτελεύτα, ὥστε μοι ἐκεῖνον παρίστασθαι μηδ' εἰς Ἅιδου ἰόντα ἄνευ θείας μοίρας ἰέναι, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκεῖσε ἀφικόμενον εὖ πράξειν εἴπερ τις πώποτε καὶ ἄλλος. διὰ δὴ ταῦτα οὐδὲν πάνυ μοι ἐλεινὸν εἰσῄει, ὡς εἰκὸς ἂν δόξειεν εἶναι παρόντι πένθει, οὔτε αὖ ἡδονὴ ὡς ἐν φιλοσοφίᾳ ἡμῶν ὄντων ὥσπερ εἰώθεμεν —καὶ γὰρ οἱ λόγοι τοιοῦτοί τινες ἦσαν—ἀλλ' ἀτεχνῶς ἄτοπόν τί μοι πάθος παρῆν καί τις ἀήθης κρᾶσις ἀπό τε τῆς ἡδονῆς συγκεκραμένη ὁμοῦ καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς λύπης, ἐνθυμουμένῳ ὅτι αὐτίκα ἐκεῖνος ἔμελλε τελευτᾶν. καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες

ἀ-δέης, -ες: fearless, 1
ἀ-ήθης, -ες: unaccustomed, 1
Ἅιδης, -ου ὁ: Hades, 15
ἄνευ: without, 9
ἀ-τεχνῶς: simply, absolutely, really, 6
ἄ-τοπος, -ον: strange, odd, extraordinary, 9
αὐτίκα: straightway, at once; presently, 2
γενναῖος, -α, -ον: noble, well-bred, 4
εἰσ-έρχομαι: to go in, enter, 6
εἴωθα: to be accustomed, 12
ἐκεῖ-σε: thither, to that place, 10
ἐλεινός, -ή, -όν: piteous, pitied, pitiable, 1
ἔλεος, ὁ: pity, mercy, compassion, 1
ἐν-θυμέομαι: to take to heart, ponder, 2
ἐπιτήδειος, -η, -ον: fitting, favorable; friend 3
εὐ-δαίμων, -ον: happy, fortunate, blessed, 5
ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17
θεῖος, -α, -ον: divine, sent by the gods, 15
κρᾶσις, -εως, ἡ: mixing, blending, 4
λύπη, ἡ: pain, grief, 8
μοῖρα, ἡ: due measure, portion, one's lot, 2
ὁμοῦ: at the same place or time, together, 3
πάθος -εος τό: experience incident passion 11
παρ-ίστημι: to present, offer, set near, 3
πένθος, -εος, τό: woe, grief, sadness, 1
πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12
πώ-ποτε: ever yet, ever, 6
συγ-κεράννυμι: to mix up together, blend, 1
τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17
φιλο-σοφία, ἡ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13

e2 **ὡς…παρόντα**: *as if being present at…*; + dat., ὡς + pple expresses alleged cause
ἀνδρὸς ἐπιτηδείου: subjective gen. with θανάτῳ, dat. of compound verb
3 **εἰσῄει**: impf. εἰσ-έρχομαι
εὐδαίμων…ἀνήρ: nom. predicate
4 **τοῦ τρόπου...τῶν λόγων**: *both in manner and in words*; with εὐδαίμων, which governs a gen. (S 1412) .
ὡς: *how…!*; exclamatory
5 **ὥστε μοι ἐκεῖνον…παρίστασθαι…**: *so that it comes to me that that one…*; + inf., a result clause; παρίστασθαι is impersonal
εἰς Ἅιδου…: *to (the house) of Hades*
μηδ`…ἄνευ: *not without...*; i.e. 'with…'
ἰόντα, ἰέναι: acc. sg. pple and inf. ἔρχομαι
6 **ἀλλὰ καὶ**: *but in fact (that he…)*
εὖ πράξειν: *will fare well*; fut. πράττω
7 **εἴπερ…ἄλλος**: *if anyone else ever in fact (fared well in the underworld)*
59a1 **δὴ ταῦτα**: *these very things*; emphatic
οὐδὲν πάνυ ἐλεινὸν: *not quite any pity*
2 **ὡς…ἂν δόξειεν**: *as it would seem…*; potential aor. opt.
παρόντι πένθει: *for one present in grief*
οὔτε...ἡδονὴ: *nor again was there pleasure*
3 **ὡς…ὄντων**: *on the grounds of…*; gen. abs.
4 **καὶ γὰρ**: *for in fact*
6 **συγκεκραμένη**: pf. pass. pple with κρᾶσις
ἐνθυμουμένῳ ὅτι: *thinking that*; with μοι

σχεδόν τι οὕτω διεκείμεθα, τοτὲ μὲν γελῶντες, ἐνίοτε δὲ δακρύοντες, εἷς δὲ ἡμῶν καὶ διαφερόντως, Ἀπολλόδωρος—
b *οἶσθα γάρ που τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ τὸν τρόπον αὐτοῦ.*

ΕΧ. *πῶς γὰρ οὔ;*

ΦΑΙΔ. *ἐκεῖνός τε τοίνυν παντάπασιν οὕτως εἶχεν, καὶ αὐτὸς ἔγωγε ἐτεταράγμην καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι.*

ΕΧ. *ἔτυχον δέ, ὦ Φαίδων, τίνες παραγενόμενοι;*

ΦΑΙΔ. *οὗτός τε δὴ ὁ Ἀπολλόδωρος τῶν ἐπιχωρίων παρῆν καὶ Κριτόβουλος καὶ ὁ πατὴρ αὐτοῦ καὶ ἔτι Ἑρμογένης καὶ Ἐπιγένης καὶ Αἰσχίνης καὶ Ἀντισθένης· ἦν δὲ καὶ Κτήσιππος ὁ Παιανιεὺς καὶ Μενέξενος καὶ ἄλλοι τινὲς τῶν ἐπιχωρίων. Πλάτων δὲ οἶμαι ἠσθένει.*

Αἰσχίνης, ὁ: Aeschines, 1
Ἀντισθένης, ὁ: Antisthenes, 1
Ἀπολλόδωρος, ὁ: Apollodorus, 3
ἀ-σθενέω: to be ill, weak; be not strong, 1
γελάω: to laugh, 6
δακρύω: to weep, shed tears, 4
διά-κειμαι: to be disposed, be affected, 3
δια-φερόντως: especially; differently, 4
ἐνί-οτε: sometimes, 7
ἐπι-χώριος, -α, -ον: local, native, 5
Ἐπιγένης, ὁ: Epigenes, 1
Ἑρμογένης: Hermogenes, 1
Κριτόβουλος, ὁ: Critoboulus, 1
Κτήσιππος, ὁ: Ctesippus, 1
Μενέξενος, ὁ: Menexenus, 1
Παιανιεύς, ὁ: Paeanieus, 1
παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15
παρα-γίγνομαι: to come near, be present, 11
πατήρ, ὁ: a father, 3
Πλάτων, ὁ: Plato, 1
σχεδόν: nearly, almost, just about, 8
ταράττω: to trouble, stir, agitate, 6
τοτέ: sometimes, at some time, 4
τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17

8 **σχεδόν τι**: *pretty much*; τι, *'by some,'* is an adverbial acc. (acc. of extent of degree)
τοτὲ μὲν…ἐνίοτε δὲ: *at times…some times*
9 **καὶ διαφερόντως**: *especially in fact*
b1 **οἶσθα**: 2s οἶδα, pf. but pres. in sense
2 **πῶς γὰρ οὔ**: *how could (I) not?*; 'yes for how not?' γὰρ offer assent: '(yes) for…'
3 **εἶχεν**: *was so*; impf., ἔχω ('is disposed') +. is often equiv. to εἰμί + predicate
4 **ἐτεταρράγμην**: plpf. pass. ταράττω
5 **ἔτυχον...**: *happened to*…; τυγχάνω (here aor.) + supplementary pple, παραγίγνομαι
6 **οὗτος δὴ**: *this very…, precisely this…*
τῶν ἐπιχωρίων: *among…*; partitive gen.
7 **παρῆν**: impf. πάρ-ειμι
τῶν ἐπιχωρίων: *among…*; partitive gen.
8 **ἦν δὲ**: *and there was…*; subject is plural
10 **οἶμαι**: οἴομαι, parenthetical comment

φημί, φήσω, ἔφησα: to say, claim and ἠμί: to say

	Present		Imperfect		Present		Imperfect	
1st	φημί	φαμέν[13]	ἔφην[3]	ἔφαμεν[2]	ἠμί	- -	ἦν[4 times]	- -
2nd	φῂς[3 times]	φατέ	ἔφης	ἔφατε	- -	- -	- -	- -
3rd	φῆσιν[4]	φασί(ν)	ἔφη[247]	ἔφασαν	ἠσί	- -	ἦ[53 times]	- -

ΕΧ. *ξένοι δέ τινες παρῆσαν;*

ΦΑΙΔ. *ναί, Σιμμίας τέ γε ὁ Θηβαῖος καὶ Κέβης καὶ* c
Φαιδώνδης καὶ Μεγαρόθεν Εὐκλείδης τε καὶ Τερψίων.

ΕΧ. *τί δέ; Ἀρίστιππος καὶ Κλεόμβροτος παρεγένοντο;*

ΦΑΙΔ. *οὐ δῆτα· ἐν Αἰγίνῃ γὰρ ἐλέγοντο εἶναι.*

ΕΧ. *ἄλλος δέ τις παρῆν;* 5

ΦΑΙΔ. *σχεδόν τι οἶμαι τούτους παραγενέσθαι.*

ΕΧ. *τί οὖν δή; τίνες φῂς ἦσαν οἱ λόγοι;*

ΦΑΙΔ. *ἐγώ σοι ἐξ ἀρχῆς πάντα πειράσομαι διηγήσα-*
σθαι. ἀεὶ γὰρ δὴ καὶ τὰς πρόσθεν ἡμέρας εἰώθεμεν φοιτᾶν d
καὶ ἐγὼ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι παρὰ τὸν Σωκράτη, συλλεγόμενοι
ἕωθεν εἰς τὸ δικαστήριον ἐν ᾧ καὶ ἡ δίκη ἐγένετο· πλησίον

Αἰγίνη, ἡ: Aegina, 1
Ἀρίστιππος, ὁ: Aristippus, 1
ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning; rule, office, 8
δῆτα: certainly, to be sure, of course, 5
δι-ηγέομαι: set out in detail, relate, narrate, 3
δικαστήριον, τό: court, 2
δίκη, ἡ: justice; lawsuit, trial; penalty, 11
εἴωθα: to be accustomed, 12
Εὐκλείδης, ὁ: Eucleides, 1
ἕω-θεν: from dawn, at dawn, 1
ἡμέρα, ἡ: day, 7
Θηβαῖος, -η, -ον: Theban, 2
Κλεόμβροτος, ὁ: Cleombrotus, 1
Μεγαρό-θεν: from Megara, 1
ναί: yes, yea, 15
ξένος, ὁ: guest-friend, friend, stranger, 3
παρα-γίγνομαι: to come near, be present, 11
πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 11
πλησίος, -η, -ον: near, close to, (gen) 4
πρόσθεν: before, previous, 10
συλ-λέγω: to collect, gather, 4
σχεδόν: nearly, almost, just about, 8
Τερψίων, ὁ: Terpsion, 1
Φαιδώνης, ὁ: Phaedonides, 1
φοιτάω: to go to and fro, visit, 2

11 **παρῆσαν**: 3p impf. πάρ-ειμι
c1 **ναί...γε**: *yes indeed*; γε adds assent
2 **τί δέ;**: *What?*; 'what about this?' expresses surprise and precedes a follow-up question
6 **σχεδόν τι**: *pretty much*; or 'just about' as often in approximations
7 **τί οὖν δή**: *What then*
φῂς: 2s pres. φημί
ἦσαν: from εἰμί, see p. 232
d1 **γὰρ δὴ**: *for indeed*; here opening a narrative and in assent to a question
τὰς...ἡμέρας: *during…*; acc. of duration
2 **καὶ...καὶ**: *both…and*
παρὰ: *to the side of…*; acc. place to which
3 **ἐν ᾧ**: *in which (court)*; relative pronoun
ἡ δίκη: *the trial*

Two Common Translations of ἔχω

ἔχω + infinitive	→	to be able + inf.	εἶχεν φράζειν 57b3	*he was able to say*
			ἔχω ἕλεσθαι 76b3	*I am able to choose*
ἔχω + adverb	→	to be + adjective	οὕτως εἶχεν 59b3	*he was so*
‘		*-holds, -is disposed*	ἔχει οὕτως 68c3	*it is so*

γὰρ ἦν τοῦ δεσμωτηρίου. περιεμένομεν οὖν ἑκάστοτε ἕως
5 ἀνοιχθείη τὸ δεσμωτήριον, διατρίβοντες μετ᾽ ἀλλήλων, ἀνεῴ-
γετο γὰρ οὐ πρῴ· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀνοιχθείη, εἰσῇμεν παρὰ τὸν
Σωκράτη καὶ τὰ πολλὰ διημερεύομεν μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ. καὶ δὴ καὶ
τότε πρῳαίτερον συνελέγημεν· τῇ γὰρ προτεραίᾳ [ἡμέρᾳ]
e ἐπειδὴ ἐξήλθομεν ἐκ τοῦ δεσμωτηρίου ἑσπέρας, ἐπυθόμεθα
ὅτι τὸ πλοῖον ἐκ Δήλου ἀφιγμένον εἴη. παρηγγείλαμεν οὖν
ἀλλήλοις ἥκειν ὡς πρῳαίτατα εἰς τὸ εἰωθός. καὶ ἥκομεν καὶ
ἡμῖν ἐξελθὼν ὁ θυρωρός, ὅσπερ εἰώθει ὑπακούειν, εἶπεν περι-
5 μένειν καὶ μὴ πρότερον παριέναι ἕως ἂν αὐτὸς κελεύσῃ·
‘λύουσι γάρ,’ ἔφη, ‘οἱ ἕνδεκα Σωκράτη καὶ παραγγέλλουσιν
ὅπως ἂν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τελευτᾷ.’ οὐ πολὺν δ᾽ οὖν χρόνον

ἀν-οίγνυμι: to open, open up, 3
δεσμωτήριον, τό: prison, 6
Δῆλος, -η, -ον: Delos, 2
δια-τρίβω: to spend time, waste time, 5
δι-ημερευομαι: to pass the day, 1
εἰσ-έρχομαι: to go in, enter, 6
εἴωθα: to be accustomed, 12
ἑκάστ-οτε: each time, on each occasion, 4
ἕν-δεκα: eleven, 3
ἐξ-έρχομαι: to go out, come out, 5
ἑσπέρα, ἡ: evening, eve, 1
ἕως: until, as long as, 15
ἥκω: to have come, be present, 14
ἡμέρα, ἡ: day, 7
θυρωρός, ὁ: door-keeper, doorman, 1
κελεύω: to bid, order, command, exhort, 8
λύω: to loosen, dissolve, break up, 7
ὅπως: how, in what way; in order that, that 10
παρ-αγγέλλω: to pass word along, order 4
παρ-έρχομαι: to go pass, enter, 5
περι-μένω: to wait for or around, await, 6
πλοῖον, τό: vessel, ship, 5
προτεραῖος, -α, -ον: on the day before, 3
πρῴ: early in the morning, 3
πυνθάνομαι: to learn by inquiry or hearsay, 3
συλ-λέγω: to collect, gather, 4
ὑπ-ακούω: to listen, heed, give ear, 1

4 **ἕως ἀνοιχθείη**: *until… was opened*; aor. pass. opt. ἀν-οίγνυμι, replacing an ἄν + subjunctive in secondary seq., here the indefinite temporal clause implies purpose
5 **ἀνεῴγετο;**: *would be opened*; customary (iterative) impf. pass. ἀν-οίγνυμι
6 **ἀνοιχθείη**: *it was opened*; same as above
εἰσῇμεν: *would…*; customary (iterative) impf εἰσέρχομαι
7 **τὰ πολλὰ**: *many (times)*; adverbial acc.
καὶ δὴ καὶ: *and especially*, ‘and indeed also’
8 **πρῳαίτερον**: comparative adv. πρῳ
e1 **ἑσπέρας**: *during…*; gen. of time within
ἐπυθόμεθα: aor. πυνθάνομαι
2 **ἀφιγμένον εἴη**: periphrastic plpf. opt (pf. pass. pple ἀφ-ικνέομαι + opt. εἰμί); the opt. is replacing an indicative in secondary seq.
3 **ἀλλήλοις**: *to one another*; ind. object
ὡς...: *as…as possible*; + superlative adv. πρῳ
τὸ εἰωθός: *the accustomed (place)*; neut. sg. pf. pple εἴωθα
4 **εἶπεν**: *told*; i.e. commanded, + dat. ind. obj.
5 **μὴ...**: μή replaces οὐ in a wish or command
αὐτὸς: *he himself*; intensive
ἂν κελεύσῃ: aor. subj. indefinite temporal
6 **λύουσι**: *are freeing (him)*; i.e. from chains
7 **ὅπως...**: *that…*; ἄν + 3s aor. subj.as an indirect command

ἐπισχὼν ἦκεν καὶ ἐκέλευεν ἡμᾶς εἰσιέναι. εἰσιόντες οὖν κατελαμβάνομεν τὸν μὲν Σωκράτη ἄρτι λελυμένον, τὴν δὲ 60
Ξανθίππην—γιγνώσκεις γάρ—ἔχουσάν τε τὸ παιδίον αὐτοῦ καὶ παρακαθημένην. ὡς οὖν εἶδεν ἡμᾶς ἡ Ξανθίππη, ἀνηυφήμησέ τε καὶ τοιαῦτ' ἄττα εἶπεν, οἷα δὴ εἰώθασιν αἱ γυναῖκες, ὅτι '*ὦ* Σώκρατες, ὕστατον δή σε προσεροῦσι νῦν 5
οἱ ἐπιτήδειοι καὶ σὺ τούτους.' καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης βλέψας εἰς τὸν Κρίτωνα, '*ὦ* Κρίτων,' ἔφη, 'ἀπαγέτω τις αὐτὴν οἴκαδε.'

καὶ ἐκείνην μὲν ἀπῆγόν τινες τῶν τοῦ Κρίτωνος βοῶσάν τε καὶ κοπτομένην· ὁ δὲ Σωκράτης ἀνακαθιζόμενος εἰς τὴν b
κλίνην συνέκαμψέ τε τὸ σκέλος καὶ ἐξέτριψε τῇ χειρί, καὶ

ἀνα-καθίζω: to set up: *mid*. sit up, 1
ἀν-ευφημέω: shriek, cry aloud; break silence 1
ἀπ-άγω: to lead away, carry off, 2
ἄρτι: just, exactly, 4
βλέπτω: to look at, see, 3
βοάω: to cry aloud, to shout, 3
γιγνώσκω: learn to know, to learn, realize 12
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman, wife, 6
εἰσ-έρχομαι: to go in, enter, 6
εἴωθα: to be accustomed, 12
ἐκ-τρίβω: to rub, rub thoroughly, 1
ἐπ-ίσχω: hold up, restrain; wait, stop, 4
ἐπιτήδειος, -η, -ον: fitting, favorable; friend 3
ἥκω: to have come, be present, 14
κατα-λαμβάνω: to seize, lay hold of, find, 1
κελεύω: to bid, order, command, exhort, 8
κλίνη, ἡ: couch, 2
κόπτω: to knock, beat, wail, 1
λύω: to loosen, dissolve, break up, 7
Ξανθίππη, ἡ: Xanthippe (Socrates' wife) 2
οἴκα-δε: homeward, home, 1
παιδίον, τό: a little or young child, child, 2
παρα-κάθ-ημαι:: to sit down beside, 1
προσ-ερέω: will address, will speak to, 1
σκέλος, -εος, τό: leg, 6
συγ-κάμπτω: to bend, bend together, 2
ὕστατος, -η, -ον: latter, last, 1
χείρ, χειρός, ἡ: hand, 1

8 **ἐπισχὼν**: *waiting*
εἰσιέναι, εἰσιόντες;: inf., pple εἰσ-έρχομαι
60a1 **λελυμένον**: *released*; pf. pass. pple λύω
2 **αὐτοῦ**: *his*; i.e. Socrates'
3 **ὡς...εἶδεν**: *when*…; temporal, aor. ὁράω
4 **τοιαῦτ(α) ἄττα**: *some such things*; ἄττα is an alternative to indefinite neuter pl. τινά
οἷα δὴ: *precisely which sort of things*…; relative clause; δή is emphatic
εἰώθασιν: 3p pf. with present sense, εἴωθα
5 **ὅτι**: *(namely) that*…; ind. discourse
ὕστατον δή: *for the very last time*; superlative adverb
6 **σὺ τούτους**: supply προσεροῦσι
βλέψας: nom. sg. aor. pple βλέπτω
7 **ἔφη**: 3s impf. φημί
ἀπαγέτω: *let…lead away*; 3rd person imperative
τῶν τοῦ Κρίτωνος: *of Crito's (men)*
9 **βοῶσαν**: acc. sg. pres. pple, βοάω
b1 **κοπτομένην**: *wailing*
τῇ χειρί: *with*…; means, χείρ

ἦ δὲ ὅς – 'and this one said'

Over 50 times, Plato uses the 3rd sg. impf. ἠμί and demonstrative ὅς to change speakers.

τρίβων ἅμα, ὡς ἄτοπον, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἔοικέ τι εἶναι τοῦτο ὃ καλοῦσιν οἱ ἄνθρωποι ἡδύ· ὡς θαυμασίως πέφυκε πρὸς τὸ δοκοῦν ἐναντίον εἶναι, τὸ λυπηρόν, τὸ ἅμα μὲν αὐτὼ μὴ 'θέλειν παραγίγνεσθαι τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ, ἐὰν δέ τις διώκῃ τὸ ἕτερον καὶ λαμβάνῃ, σχεδόν τι ἀναγκάζεσθαι ἀεὶ λαμβάνειν καὶ τὸ ἕτερον, ὥσπερ ἐκ μιᾶς κορυφῆς ἡμμένω δύ' ὄντε. καί μοι δοκεῖ, ἔφη, εἰ ἐνενόησεν αὐτὰ Αἴσωπος, μῦθον ἂν συνθεῖναι ὡς ὁ θεὸς βουλόμενος αὐτὰ διαλλάξαι πολεμοῦντα, ἐπειδὴ οὐκ ἐδύνατο, συνῆψεν εἰς ταὐτὸν αὐτοῖς τὰς κορυφάς, καὶ διὰ ταῦτα ᾧ ἂν τὸ ἕτερον παραγένηται ἐπακολουθεῖ ὕστερον καὶ τὸ ἕτερον. ὥσπερ οὖν καὶ αὐτῷ μοι ἔοικεν· ἐπειδὴ ὑπὸ τοῦ δεσμοῦ ἦν ἐν τῷ σκέλει τὸ ἀλγεινόν,

---

Αἴσωπος, ὁ: Aesop, 3
ἀλγεινός, -ή, -όν: painful, grievous, 1
ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 10
ἄ-τοπος, -ον: strange, odd, extraordinary, 9
δεσμός, ὁ: a binding, bond, fetter, 2
δι-αλλάττω: reconcile, give in exchange, 1
διώκω: to pursue, follow; prosecute, 2
δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 15
ἐθέλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17
ἐπ-ακολουθέω: to follow after, pursue, 3
ἡδύς, -εῖα, -ύ: sweet, pleasant, glad, 5
θαυμάσιος, -α, -ον: wonderful, strange, 3
κορυφή, ἡ: top, head, 2
λυπηρός, -ή, -όν: painful, distressing, 1
μῦθος, ὁ: story, word, speech, 7
παρα-γίγνομαι: to come near, be present, 11
πολεμέω: wage war, make war, (+ dat.), 1
σκέλος, -εος, τό: leg, 6
συν-άπτω: to fasten or join together, unite, 1
συν-τίθημι: to put together, combine, 7
σχεδόν: nearly, almost, just about, 8
τρίβω: to rub, knead; wear out, 5
ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; *adv*. later 17
φύω: bring forth, beget; be by nature, 14

3 **τρίβων ἅμα**: i.e. the parts of his body where the bindings were removed
ὡς ἄτοπον...τι: *how strange a thing*; in exclamation; neuter pred. of inf. εἰμί
4 **τοῦτο ὅ**: *this thing which*; subject of ἔοικε
ὡς θαυμασίως: *how amazing*
πέφυκε: *it is (by nature)*; pf. φύω
5 **πρὸς**: *with regard to…*; or 'in relation to'
τὸ δοκοῦν...τὸ λυπηρόν: *that seeming to be (its) opposite, the painful*; pple δοκέω
τὸ...αὐτὼ μή (ἐ)θέλειν: *in respect to those two not being willing…*; the articular inf. is an acc. of respect; αὐτὼ is dual acc. subj.
6 **τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ**: *in a person*; dat. of compound verb
ἐὰν...λαμβάνῃ: *and if…*; 3rd sg. subjunctive in a pres. general condition (εἰ + ἄν + subj., pres. indicative), the apodosis is an inf.
7 **τὸ ἕτερον...τὸ ἕτερον**: *the one…the other*; i.e. pleasure and pain, respectively
σχεδόν τι: *pretty much, just about*
ἀναγκάζεσθαι: *(one) is compelled*; supply an acc. subject referring to τις above
8 **ἡμμένω**: *attached*; dual pf. pass. ἅπτω
c1 **δύ(ο) ὄντε**: *although…*; dual nom. pple εἰμί
εἰ ἐνενόησεν...ἂν συνθεῖναι: *if…had…he would have composed*; past contrafactual
3 **συνῆψεν**: 3s aor. συν-άπτω + dat.
εἰς ταὐτὸν: *in the same (place)*; τὸ αὐτὸν
4 **τὰς κορυφάς.**: *by their heads*; acc. respect
ᾧ ἄν: *in whomever*; dat. of compound verb in an indefinite relative clause (ἄν + subj.)
5 **αὐτῷ μοι**: *to me myself*; intensive pronoun
6 **ὑπὸ...**: *because of*.; gen. of cause; impf. εἰμί
τὸ ἀλγεινόν: equiv. to τὸ λυπηρόν above

ἥκειν δὴ φαίνεται ἐπακολουθοῦν τὸ ἡδύ.

ὁ οὖν Κέβης ὑπολαβών, νὴ τὸν Δία, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔφη, εὖ γ' ἐποίησας ἀναμνήσας με. περὶ γάρ τοι τῶν ποιημάτων ὧν πεποίηκας ἐντείνας τοὺς τοῦ Αἰσώπου λόγους καὶ τὸ εἰς τὸν Ἀπόλλω προοίμιον καὶ ἄλλοι τινές με ἤδη ἤροντο, ἀτὰρ καὶ Εὔηνος πρῴην, ὅτι ποτὲ διανοηθείς, ἐπειδὴ δεῦρο ἦλθες, ἐποίησας αὐτά, πρότερον οὐδὲν πώποτε ποιήσας. εἰ οὖν τί σοι μέλει τοῦ ἔχειν ἐμὲ Εὐήνῳ ἀποκρίνασθαι ὅταν με αὖθις ἐρωτᾷ—εὖ οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι ἐρήσεται—εἰπὲ τί χρὴ λέγειν.

λέγε τοίνυν, ἔφη, αὐτῷ, ὦ Κέβης, τἀληθῆ, ὅτι οὐκ ἐκείνῳ βουλόμενος οὐδὲ τοῖς ποιήμασιν αὐτοῦ ἀντίτεχνος

Αἴσωπος, ὁ: Aesop, 3
ἀνα-μιμνήσκω: remind, recall (acc. gen.) 16
ἀντί-τεχνος, -ον: rival in an art (+ dat), 1
ἀπο-κρίνομαι: to answer, reply, 13
Ἀπόλλω, Ἀπόλλωνος, ὁ: Apollo, 4
ἀτάρ: but, yet; still, 1
αὖθις: back again, later, 9
δεῦρο: here, to this point, hither, 7
δια-νοέομαι: to think, consider, intend, 6
ἐν-τείνω: to stretch, strain tight, 3
ἐπ-ακολουθέω: to follow after, pursue, 3
ἔρομαι: to ask, enquire, question, 12
ἐρωτάω: to ask, inquire, question, 10
Εὔηνος, ὁ: Evenus, 6
Ζεύς, ὁ: Zeus, 11
ἤδη: already, now, at this time, 16
ἡδύς, -εῖα, -ύ: sweet, pleasant, glad, 5
ἥκω: to have come, be present, 14
μέλει: there is a care for (dat.) for (gen.), 4
νή: by…(+ acc, invoking a god), 14
ποίημα, -ατος, τό: poem; product, 3
προοίμιον, τό: hymn (short poem), proem, 1
πρῴος, -η, -ον: early; day before yesterday, 1
πώ-ποτε: ever yet, ever, 6
ὑπο-λαμβάνω: to take up, reply; suppose, 8

7 **δὴ**: *then*; temporal
ἐπακολουθοῦν: neut. sg. pres. pple
τὸ ἡδύ: *pleasure*; 'the pleasant'
8 **ὑπολαβών**: nom. sg. aor. pple
τὸν Δία: acc. sg. Ζεύς
9 **εὖ γ(ε)**: *well indeed*; emphatic
ἐποίησας: 2s aor.
ἀναμνήσας: nom. aor. pple ἀναμιμνήσκω
τοι: *you know*; particle (GP 547-8)
d1 **ὧν...προοίμιον**: *(these)…which..*; τούτων ἃ, relative clause, an acc. pronoun attracted into the gen. pl. of the missing antecedent
ἐντείνας: *setting to music*; nom. sg. aor. pple ἐν-τείνω
2 **τὸ...προοίμιον**: *a hymn to Apollo*
καὶ...ἀτὰρ καὶ: *both…and also*
ἄλλοι τινές: *some other people*
3 **ἤροντο**: iterative impf. ἔρομαι
πρῴην: *day before yesterday*; adv. acc.
ὅτι ποτὲ διανοηθείς: *thinking what in the world…*; i.e. 'what in the world were you thinking;' nom. aor. dep. pple διανοέομαι; ὅτι ποτὲ expresses surprise in ind. question
4 **αὐτά**: *these things*; 'them,' i.e. the poems
5 **τί σοι μέλει τοῦ ἔχειν**: *there is any care for you for being able*; τι is an inner acc.; ἔχειν is an articular infinitive that often means 'is capable or able' when governing an inf.
ἐρωτᾷ: 3s pres. subj. α-contract verb in an indefinite temporal clause
6 **ἐρήσεται**: fut. deponent ἔρομαι
8 **τοίνυν**: *Well…*; in reply (GP 571)
τὰ ἀληθῆ, ὅτι: *the truth, (namely) that…*
9 **οὐκ...οὐδὲ**: *a rival not of….and not of...*

e *εἶναι ἐποίησα ταῦτα—ἤδη γὰρ ὡς οὐ ῥᾴδιον εἴη—ἀλλ' ἐνυπνίων τινῶν ἀποπειρώμενος τί λέγοι, καὶ ἀφοσιούμενος εἰ ἄρα πολλάκις ταύτην τὴν μουσικήν μοι ἐπιτάττοι ποιεῖν. ἦν γὰρ δὴ ἄττα τοιάδε· πολλάκις μοι φοιτῶν τὸ αὐτὸ ἐν-*
5 *ύπνιον ἐν τῷ παρελθόντι βίῳ, ἄλλοτ' ἐν ἄλλῃ ὄψει φαινόμενον, τὰ αὐτὰ δὲ λέγον, 'ὦ Σώκρατες,' ἔφη, 'μουσικὴν ποίει καὶ ἐργάζου.' καὶ ἐγὼ ἔν γε τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ ὅπερ ἔπραττον τοῦτο ὑπελάμβανον αὐτό μοι παρακελεύεσθαί τε*
61 *καὶ ἐπικελεύειν, ὥσπερ οἱ τοῖς θέουσι διακελευόμενοι, καὶ ἐμοὶ οὕτω τὸ ἐνύπνιον ὅπερ ἔπραττον τοῦτο ἐπικελεύειν, μουσικὴν ποιεῖν, ὡς φιλοσοφίας μὲν οὔσης μεγίστης μουσικῆς, ἐμοῦ δὲ τοῦτο πράττοντος. νῦν δ' ἐπειδὴ ἥ τε δίκη*

ἄλλ-οτε: at another time, at other times, 4
ἀπο-πειράομαι: to make trial of, test (gen.) 1
ἄρα: then, therefore, it seems, it turns out, 5
ἀφ-οσιόω: attone, expiate, purify, 2
δια-κελεύομαι: encourage one another (dat) 1
δίκη, ἡ: justice; lawsuit, trial; penalty, 11
ἐν-ύπνιον, τό: dream, vision seen in sleep, 5
ἐπι-κελεύω: to encourage besides, 2
ἐπι-τάττω: to order, enjoin, command, 1
ἐργάζομαι: to work, labor, toil, 4
θέω: to run, 1
μεγίστος, -η, -ον: very big, greatest, 6
μουσική, ἡ: music, 5
ὄψις, -εως, ἡ: vision, appearance, form; face, 6
παρ-έρχομαι: to go pass, enter, 5
παρα-κελεύομαι: to order, urge, encourage, 3
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14
πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12
πρόσθεν: before, 10
ῥᾴδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 9
τοιόσδε, -άδε, -όνδε: such, 20
ὑπο-λαμβάνω: to take up, reply; suppose, 8
φιλο-σοφία, ἡ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13
φοιτάω: to go to and fro, visit, 2

e1 **ἤδη**: 1s plpf. οἶδα, simple past in sense
ὡς...εἴη: *that it would be*; 3s opt. εἰμί opt. in secondary sequence
2 **ἐνυπνίων τινῶν...τί λέγοι**: *what certain dreams mean*; lit. 'some dreams, what they mean,' proleptic use of ἐνυπνίων
3 **εἰ...πολλάκις**: *if by chance…*, *if perhaps…*; common idiom for πολλάκις after εἰ
ἐπιτάττοι: *ordered*; opt. replacing indicative in secondary seqeunce
4 **ἦν...ἄττα τοιάδε** *for indeed they were something of this sort*; 3rd sg. impf. with neut. pl. subject; ἄττα is indefinite τινα
φοιτῶν: φοιτάον, neuter sg. pple φοιτάω modifying ἐνύπνιον
τὸ αὐτο ἐνύπνιον: *the same dream*
πάρελθόντι: i.e. the past; dat. sg. aor. pple παρέρχομαι
5 **ἄλλοτε ἐν ἄλλῃ ὄψει**: *sometimes in one vision, at other times in another vision*; as often when two forms of ἄλλος are in junxtaposition
φαινόμενον...λέγον: pres. mid. and active participles modifying ἐνύπνιον
6 **τὰ αὐτὰ**: *the same things*; obj. of pple
7 **ποίει**: ποίε-ε; sg. imperative
ἐργάζε(σ)ο: sg. mid. imperative
γε: *at least*; restricting ἔν...χρόνῳ
ὑπελάβμανον...: *I supposed that* it (αὐτό) *was urging me and encouraging this* (τοῦτο)
61a1 **ὥσπερ...οὕτω**: *just as…so (too)*
τοῖς θέουσι: *those running*; pple θέω
ὡς...ὄυσης...πράττοντος: *on the grounds of…being…and…doing*; ὡς + pple (here, two gen. abs.) expressing alleged cause

ἐγένετο καὶ ἡ τοῦ θεοῦ ἑορτὴ διεκώλυέ με ἀποθνῄσκειν, ἔδοξε
χρῆναι, εἰ ἄρα πολλάκις μοι προστάττοι τὸ ἐνύπνιον ταύτην
τὴν δημώδη μουσικὴν ποιεῖν, μὴ ἀπειθῆσαι αὐτῷ ἀλλὰ
ποιεῖν· ἀσφαλέστερον γὰρ εἶναι μὴ ἀπιέναι πρὶν ἀφοσιώ-
σασθαι ποιήσαντα ποιήματα καὶ πιθόμενον τῷ ἐνυπνίῳ. **b**
οὕτω δὴ πρῶτον μὲν εἰς τὸν θεὸν ἐποίησα οὗ ἦν ἡ παροῦσα
θυσία· μετὰ δὲ τὸν θεόν, ἐννοήσας ὅτι τὸν ποιητὴν δέοι,
εἴπερ μέλλοι ποιητὴς εἶναι, ποιεῖν μύθους ἀλλ᾽ οὐ λόγους,
καὶ αὐτὸς οὐκ ἦ μυθολογικός, διὰ ταῦτα δὴ οἷς προχείρους
εἶχον μύθους καὶ ἠπιστάμην τοὺς Αἰσώπου, τούτων ἐποίησα
οἷς πρώτοις ἐνέτυχον. ταῦτα οὖν, ὦ Κέβης, Εὐήνῳ φράζε,
καὶ ἐρρῶσθαι καί, ἂν σωφρονῇ, ἐμὲ διώκειν ὡς τάχιστα.

Αἴσωπος, ὁ: Aesop, 3
ἀ-πειθέω: to be disobedient, disobey (dat.) 1
ἀπ-έρχομαι: to go away, depart, 14
ἀ-σφαλής, -ές: safe, secure, not liable to fall 6
ἀφ-οσιόω: attone, expiate, purify, 2
δημώδης, ές: of the people, popular, 1
δια-κωλύω: to hinder, prevent, 1
διώκω: to pursue, follow; prosecute, 2
ἐν-νοέω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
ἐν-τυγχάνω: to chance upon, encounter, 5
ἐν-ύπνιον, τό: dream, vision seen in sleep, 5
ἑορτή, ἡ: a feast, festival, 1
ἐπίσταμαι: know, know how, understand, 13
Εὔηνος, ὁ: Evenus, 6
θυσία, ἡ: sacrifice, offering, 2
μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
μουσικός,-ή -όν: musical, educated, cultured 1
μυθο-λογικός, -ή, -όν: poetical, inventive, 1
μῦθος, ὁ: story, word, speech, 7
ποίημα, -ατος, τό: poem; product, 3
ποιητής, οῦ, ὁ: maker, creator, poet, 6
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14
προ-χείρος, -ον: at hand, ready, 1
προσ-τάττω: to order, assign, appoint, 5
ῥώννυμι: make strong; ἔρρωσο, good-bye, 1
σωφρονέω: to be wise, be sound, temperate 1
ταχύς, εῖα, ύ: quick, swift, hastily, 9
φράζω: to point out, tell, indicate, 6

5 **ἔδοξε**: *it seemed (to me)*; supply μοι
6 **χρῆναι**: inf. χρή
εἰ...πολλάκις: *if by chance…, if perhaps…*
προστάττοι: *ordered*; opt., secondary seq.
7 **δημώδη**: δημώδε-α, acc. sg., 3rd decl. adj.
ἀπειθῆσαι: aor. inf. ἀ-πειθέω
8 **ἀσφαλέστερον...εἶναι**: *for it was…*; inf. εἰμί governed by ἔδοξε; comparative adj.
μὴ ἀπιέναι: *not to depart*; i.e. in death, the inf. ἀπ-έρχομαι is the subject of εἶναι
b1 **πιθόμενον**: aor. mid. pple. πείθω
2 **οὕτω δὴ**: *in just this way, in precisely this way*; or δή may be inferential: 'then'
πρῶτον μὲν...μετὰ δὲ τὸν θεὸν: *first…and after the god*; adverbial acc.
εἰς τὸν θεὸν: *for the god*
οὗ: *whose*; relative, gen. sg.
παροῦσα: pple πάρ-ειμι
3 **τὸν ποιητὴν**: acc. subject of ποιεῖν
δέοι: *it was necessary that*; opt. δεῖ in secondary seq., governs acc. + inf.
4 **μέλλοι**: *one was going…*; opt.
5 **αὐτός**: *I myself…*; intensive, 1s impf. εἰμί
οἷς...μύθους: *what myths…*; relative adj.
τοὺς Αἰσώπου (μύθους): add noun
6 **τούτων**: *among these*; partitive gen.
7 **οἷς**: *(those) which*; dat. of compound
ταῦτα...ἐρρῶσθαι: *these things, (namely) both to fare well and…*; pf. mid. inf., the pf. imper. ἐρρώσο is used to say goodbye
ἂν: *if…*; εἰ ἂν + 3s pres. subj.
ὡς...: *as…as possible*; ὡς + superlative

c *ἄπειμι δέ, ὡς ἔοικε, τήμερον· κελεύουσι γὰρ Ἀθηναῖοι.*

καὶ ὁ Σιμμίας, οἷον παρακελεύῃ, ἔφη, τοῦτο, ὦ Σώκρατες, Εὐήνῳ. πολλὰ γὰρ ἤδη ἐντετύχηκα τῷ ἀνδρί· σχεδὸν οὖν ἐξ ὧν ἐγὼ ἤσθημαι οὐδ' ὁπωστιοῦν σοι ἑκὼν
5 *εἶναι πείσεται.*

τί δέ; ἦ δ' ὅς, οὐ φιλόσοφος Εὔηνος;

ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας.

ἐθελήσει τοίνυν καὶ Εὔηνος καὶ πᾶς ὅτῳ ἀξίως τούτου τοῦ πράγματος μέτεστιν. οὐ μέντοι ἴσως βιάσεται αὑτόν·
10 *οὐ γάρ φασι θεμιτὸν εἶναι. καὶ ἅμα λέγων ταῦτα καθῆκε*
d *τὰ σκέλη ἐπὶ τὴν γῆν, καὶ καθεζόμενος οὕτως ἤδη τὰ λοιπὰ διελέγετο.*

Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον: Athenian, of Athens, 6
αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 11
ἄξιος, -α, -ον: worthy of, deserving of, 15
ἀπ-έρχομαι: to go away, depart, 14
βιάζω: to do violence to, force, overpower, 2
δια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 13
ἐθέλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17
ἑκών, ἑκοῦσα, ἑκόν: willing, intentionally, 3
ἐν-τυγχάνω: chance upon, encounter (dat) 5
Εὔηνος, ὁ: Evenus, 6
ἤδη: already, now, at this time, 16
θεμιτός, -ή, -όν: lawful, right, righteous, 4
καθ-έζομαι: to sit down, 2
καθ-ίημι: to let down, send down, 2
κελεύω: to bid, order, command, exhort, 8
λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest, 3
μέτ-εστιν: there is a share of (gen) for (dat), 1
ὁπωστιοῦν: in any way whatever, 5
παρα-κελεύομαι: order, urge, encourage dat 3
πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18
σκέλος, -εος, τό: leg, 6
σχεδόν: nearly, almost, just about, 8
τήμερον: today, 2
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18

c1 **ἄπειμι**: 1s fut. ἀπ-έρχομαι
ὡς: *as*…; parenthetical
οἷον παρακελεύῃ...τοῦτο: *what a thing this (is) you encourage…!*; in exclamation, 2s pres. mid., παρακελεύ(σ)αι
2 **ἔφη**: 3s impf. φημί
3 **πολλὰ**: *many times*; i.e. often; adv. acc.
ἐντετύχηκα: 1st sg. pf. ἐντυγχάνω
4 **ἐξ ὧν**: *from (the things) which*; 'from what,' ἐξ (τουτῶν) ἅ, acc. pl. relative attracted into gen. of missing antecedent
ἤσθημαι: impf. αἰσθάνομαι
ἑκὼν εἶναι: *so as to be willing*; or just 'willingly,' a common infinitive absolute
5 **πείσεται**: fut. mid. πείθω
6 **τί δέ**: *What (then)?*; expresses surprise and precedes a follow-up question
ἦ δ'ὅς: see note on pg. 9
οὐ (ἐστιν): *Is…not…?*; add verb
7 **καὶ...καὶ**: *both…and*
ὅτῳ...μέτεστι: *to whomever*…; relative, alternative to ᾧτινι, dat. sg. of ὅστις,
9 **πράγματος**: i.e. being a φιλόσοφος
ἴσως: *perhaps*; adv. ἴσος
βιάσεται: fut. mid., i.e. commit suicide
αὑτὸν: ἑαυτὸν, reflexive pronoun
10 **φασι**: *(people) say*; 3p pres. φημί
θεμιτὸν εἶναι: *that it*…; ind. discourse
καθῆκε: aor. καθ-ίημι
d1 **τὰ λοιπὰ**: *the rest, the rest (of things)*

ἤρετο οὖν αὐτὸν ὁ Κέβης· πῶς τοῦτο λέγεις, ὦ Σώκρατες, τὸ μὴ θεμιτὸν εἶναι ἑαυτὸν βιάζεσθαι, ἐθέλειν δ' ἂν τῷ ἀποθνῄσκοντι τὸν φιλόσοφον ἕπεσθαι;

τί δέ, ὦ Κέβης; οὐκ ἀκηκόατε σύ τε καὶ Σιμμίας περὶ τῶν τοιούτων Φιλολάῳ συγγεγονότες;

οὐδέν γε σαφές, ὦ Σώκρατες.

ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ ἐγὼ ἐξ ἀκοῆς περὶ αὐτῶν λέγω· ἃ μὲν οὖν τυγχάνω ἀκηκοὼς φθόνος οὐδεὶς λέγειν. καὶ γὰρ ἴσως καὶ μάλιστα πρέπει μέλλοντα ἐκεῖσε ἀποδημεῖν διασκοπεῖν τε καὶ μυθολογεῖν περὶ τῆς ἀποδημίας τῆς ἐκεῖ, ποίαν τινὰ αὐτὴν οἰόμεθα εἶναι· τί γὰρ ἄν τις καὶ ποιοῖ ἄλλο ἐν τῷ μέχρι ἡλίου δυσμῶν χρόνῳ;

ἀκοή, ἡ: hearing, 1
ἀπο-δημέω: to be away (from home), 1
ἀπο-δημία, ἡ: being abroad, going abroad, 2
βιάζω: to force, overpower, 2
δια-σκοπέω: to examine or consider well, 2
δυσμή, ἡ: setting, 2
ἐθέλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
ἐκεῖ-σε: thither, to that place, 10
ἕπομαι: to follow, accompany, escort, 9
ἔρομαι: to ask, enquire, question, 12
ἥλιος, ὁ: the sun, 7
θεμιτός, -ή, -όν: lawful, right, righteous, 4
Κέβης, Κέβητος ὁ: Cebes, 85 + 5 lower case
μέχρι: up to; until, as long as (+ gen.), 5
μυθο-λογέω: to tell stories or tales, 1
ποῖος, -α, -ον: what sort of? what kind of?, 9
πρέπει: it is fitting, it is suitable (impers.) 8
σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
συγ-γίγνομαι: to be with, associate with, 2
φθόνος ὁ: ill-will, refusal from ill-will +inf. 1
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18
Φιλολάος, ὁ: Philolaus, 2

d3 **ἤρετο**: aor. ἔρομαι
πῶς...λέγεις: *How do you say this...?*; or possibly "what do you mean by this…"
4 **τὸ...εἶναι**: *(namely) that it is…*; articular inf. in apposition to τοῦτο
βιάζεσθαι: *to harm oneself*; the mid. is reflexive, ἑαυτὸν is acc. subject
ἐθέλειν δ'...ἂν: *but that…would be willing…*; τὸν φιλόσοφον is the acc. subject. an inf. + ἄν in place of a pres. opt. + ἄν (potential opt.) in direct speech
τῷ ἀποθνῄσκοντι: dat. pple. with ἕπεσθαι
6 **τί δέ;**: *What?*; 'what about this?' expresses surprise and precedes a follow-up question
ἀκηκόατε: 2nd pl. pf. ἀκούω
7 **συγγεγονότες**: *while…*; pf. pple governs a dat. of compound verb; συγ-γίγνομαι
8 **γε**: *at least, at any rate*; restrictive
9 **ἀλλὰ μὴν**: *but certainly, but surely*; strong adversative often after a negative; cf. 63a4
καὶ: *also, too*; adverbial with ἐγώ
ἃ μὲν: *(the things) which…*; (ταῦτα) ἅ, the missing antecedent is obj. of λέγειν
10 **τυγχάνω ἀκηκοὼς**: *I happen to have…*; complementary pple, pf. ἀκούω
φθόνος οὐδεὶς: *(there is) no…*; supply a linking verb, λέγειν is an explanatory inf.
καῖ γὰρ ἴσως: *for in fact perhaps*
e1 **καὶ μάλιστα πρέπει**: *it is even especially fitting*; καὶ emphasizes adv. of intensity
2 **ποίαν τινὰ**: *(namely) what sort…*; ind. question, in apposition; αὐτὴν,'it,' refers to fem. ἀποδημία and is acc. subj. of εἶναι
ἂν...ποιοῖ: *could one do…*; potential opt.

κατὰ τί δὴ οὖν ποτε οὔ φασι θεμιτὸν εἶναι αὐτὸν ἑαυτὸν ἀποκτεινύναι, ὦ Σώκρατες; ἤδη γὰρ ἔγωγε, ὅπερ νυνδὴ σὺ ἤρου, καὶ Φιλολάου ἤκουσα, ὅτε παρ' ἡμῖν διῃτᾶτο, ἤδη δὲ καὶ ἄλλων τινῶν, ὡς οὐ δέοι τοῦτο ποιεῖν· σαφὲς δὲ περὶ αὐτῶν οὐδενὸς πώποτε οὐδὲν ἀκήκοα.

62 *ἀλλὰ προθυμεῖσθαι χρή, ἔφη· τάχα γὰρ ἂν καὶ ἀκούσαις. ἴσως μέντοι θαυμαστόν σοι φανεῖται εἰ τοῦτο μόνον τῶν ἄλλων ἁπάντων ἁπλοῦν ἐστιν, καὶ οὐδέποτε τυγχάνει τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ, ὥσπερ καὶ τἆλλα, ἔστιν ὅτε καὶ οἷς βέλτιον ὂν τεθνάναι ἢ ζῆν, οἷς δὲ βέλτιον τεθνάναι, θαυμαστὸν ἴσως σοι φαίνεται εἰ τούτοις τοῖς ἀνθρώποις μὴ ὅσιον αὐτοὺς ἑαυτοὺς εὖ ποιεῖν, ἀλλὰ ἄλλον δεῖ περιμένειν εὐεργέτην.*

ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: every, quite all, 14
ἁπλ(ό)ος, η, ον: single, simple, plain, 3
ἀπο-κτείνω: to kill, slay, 5
βελτίων, -ον (-ονος): better, 7
δι-αιτάω: to diet; *mid*. live, 1
ἔρομαι: to ask, enquire, question, 12
εὐ-εργέτης, -ου, ὁ: benefactor, good-doer, 1
ἤδη: already, now, at this time, 16
θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wonderful, strange, 11
θεμιτός, -ή, -όν: lawful, right, righteous, 4
νυν-δὴ: just now, 15
ὅσιος, -α, -ον: hallowed, sacred, ordained, 4
ὅτε: when, at some time, 7
οὐδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 11
περι-μένω: to wait for, await, 6
προ-θυμέομαι: to be eager, zealous, ready, 12
πώ-ποτε: ever yet, ever, 6
σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
τάχα: presently, quickly; perhaps, 2
Φιλολάος, ὁ: Philolaus, 2

5 **κατὰ τί...ποτε**: *why in the world…*; "according to what…' ποτε intensifies τί, δὴ οὖν are both inferential and emphasize one another: 'precisely then'
οὔ φασι: *do they say that…not*; οὐ negates the ind. statement; 3p φημί
εἶναι: *that it is…*; impersonal, ind. disc.
αὐτὸν ἑαυτὸν: acc. subj. and obj. of inf.
6 **ὅπερ**: *the very thing which…*; the missing antecedent is object of ἤκουσα
7 **ἤρου**: ἤρε(σ)ο, 2s aor. mid. ἔρομαι
Φιλολάου: *from…*; gen. of source
παρὰ ἡμῖν: *among us*; or 'by our side'
διῃτᾶτο: 3rd sg. impf. mid. δι-αιτάω
8 **καὶ ἄλλων τινῶν**: *from…also*; source
ὡς: *(namely) that it was…necessary*; opt. in ind. discourse in secondary seq.
9 **οὐδενὸς**: *from…*; gen. of source
ἀκήκοα: 1s pf. ἀκούω
62a1 **ἔφη**: 3s impf. φημί
ἂν...ἀκούσαις: *you may hear*; potential
2 **φανεῖται**: impersonal fut. φαίνομαι
3 **τῶν...ἁμάντων**: *of all other (principles)*
τυγχάνει...ὂν: *it happens...to be*; common translation for complementary pple εἰμί
τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ: *for…*; dat. of interest
4 **ὥσπερ καὶ τ(ὰ) ἄλλα**: *just as respect to other things also*; acc. of respect
ἔστιν ὅτε...(ἔστιν) οἷς: *at any time and for anyone*; idioms, the original expressions had missing antecedents: 'there is (a time) when and there are (those) for whom' (S 2513-15)
5 **τεθνάναι**: *to be dead*; pf. inf. θνήσκω
ἢ: *than*; following comparative βέλτιον
οἷς δὲ: *but to whomever (it happens to be)*..; the antecedent is ἀντρώποις below
6 **εἰ...μὴ ὅσιον**: *if (it is) not righteous that…*
εὖ ποιεῖν: *to treat well* + acc.; i.e. suicide
ἄλλον εὐεργέτην: acc. obj. of inf.

καὶ ὁ Κέβης ἠρέμα ἐπιγελάσας, Ἴττω Ζεύς, ἔφη, τῇ αὐτοῦ φωνῇ εἰπών.

καὶ γὰρ ἂν δόξειεν, ἔφη ὁ Σωκράτης, οὕτω γ᾽ εἶναι **b** ἄλογον· οὐ μέντοι ἀλλ᾽ ἴσως γ᾽ ἔχει τινὰ λόγον. ὁ μὲν οὖν ἐν ἀπορρήτοις λεγόμενος περὶ αὐτῶν λόγος, ὡς ἔν τινι φρουρᾷ ἐσμεν οἱ ἄνθρωποι καὶ οὐ δεῖ δὴ ἑαυτὸν ἐκ ταύτης λύειν οὐδ᾽ ἀποδιδράσκειν, μέγας τέ τίς μοι φαίνεται καὶ οὐ 5 ῥᾴδιος διιδεῖν· οὐ μέντοι ἀλλὰ τόδε γέ μοι δοκεῖ, ὦ Κέβης, εὖ λέγεσθαι, τὸ θεοὺς εἶναι ἡμῶν τοὺς ἐπιμελουμένους καὶ ἡμᾶς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἓν τῶν κτημάτων τοῖς θεοῖς εἶναι. ἢ σοὶ οὐ δοκεῖ οὕτως;

ἔμοιγε, φησὶν ὁ Κέβης.

ἄ-λογος, -ον: unreasonable, of no account, 3
ἀπο-διδράσκω: to run away, flee, escape, 2
ἀπορρήτος, -ον: unspeakable, forbidden 1
δι-εῖδον: to see through (aor. ὁράω), 1
ἐπι-γελάω: to laugh or smile (at), 2
ἐπι-μελέομαι: take care of, take care that, 4
εὖ: well, 19
Ζεύς, ὁ: Zeus, 11
ἠρέμα: gently, softly, quietly, 3
ἴσως: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 19
Κέβης, Κέβητος ὁ: Cebes, 85 + 5 lower case
κτῆμα, -ατος, τό: possession, property, 3
λύω: to free, loosen, dissolve, break up, 7
ῥᾴδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 9
φρουρά, ἡ: prison; guard, watch, 1
φωνή, ἡ: speech, voice, 2

8 **Ἴττω Ζεύς**: *may Zeus be witness*;'let Zeus know,' 3s pf. imperative οἶδα, in the Boeotian dialect (Attic, ἴστω)
ἔφη: impf. φημί
τῇ...φωνῇ: *in his own speech*; Cebes speaks in a Boeotian dialect
b1 **καὶ γὰρ**: *(yes), for indeed*; adverbial καί
ἂν δόξειεν: *it would seem*; impersonal potential opt. δοκέω
οὕτω γ(ε): *(mentioned) in this way, at least*
2 **οὐ μέντοι ἀλλὰ**: *no, but surely…*; i.e. nevertheless
γ(ε): *indeed*; intensive
ἔχει...λόγον: *has some account*; in contrast to ἄλογον
μὲν οὖν: *certainly*; no corresponding δέ
3 **ἐν ἀπορρήτοις**: i.e. in secret
ὡς: *(namely) that..*; in apposition to αὐτῶν
4 **ἐσμεν**: 1p pres. εἰμί
οὐ δεῖ: *it is necessary that (one) not…*
5 **μέγας...τις**: *something important*; pred.
6 **διιδεῖν**: explanatory aor. inf. δι-εῖδον
οὐ μέντοι ἀλλὰ: *no, but surely…*; i.e. nevertheless
τόδε γε: *this at least*; i.e. the following
7 **τὸ...εἶναι...(τὸ) εἶναι**: *(namely) that...are and that…are*; articular infinitives in apposition to τόδε, θεοὺς is acc. subject
ἡμᾶς...ἀνθρώπους: acc. subject of second inf. of εἰμί
8 **ἓν**: *one*…; neuter acc. predicate
τοῖς θεοῖς: dat. possession or interest

c *οὐκοῦν, ἦ δ' ὅς, καὶ σὺ ἂν τῶν σαυτοῦ κτημάτων εἴ τι αὐτὸ ἑαυτὸ ἀποκτεινύοι, μὴ σημήναντός σου ὅτι βούλει αὐτὸ τεθνάναι, χαλεπαίνοις ἂν αὐτῷ καί, εἴ τινα ἔχοις τιμωρίαν, τιμωροῖο ἄν;*

πάνυ γ', ἔφη.

ἴσως τοίνυν ταύτῃ οὐκ ἄλογον μὴ πρότερον αὐτὸν ἀποκτεινύναι δεῖν, πρὶν ἀνάγκην τινὰ θεὸς ἐπιπέμψῃ, ὥσπερ καὶ τὴν νῦν ἡμῖν παροῦσαν.

ἀλλ' εἰκός, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, τοῦτό γε φαίνεται. ὃ μέντοι νυνδὴ ἔλεγες, τὸ τοὺς φιλοσόφους ῥᾳδίως ἂν ἐθέλειν **d** *ἀποθνῄσκειν, ἔοικεν τοῦτο, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἀτόπῳ, εἴπερ ὃ νυνδὴ ἐλέγομεν εὐλόγως ἔχει, τὸ θεόν τε εἶναι τὸν ἐπιμε-*

ἄ-λογος, -ον: unreasonable, of no account, 3
ἀπο-κτείνω: to kill, slay, 5
ἄ-τοπος, -ον: strange, odd, extraordinary, 9
ἐθέλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17
εἰκός, ότος, τό: likely, probable, reasonable 18
ἐπι-μελέομαι: take care of or that, (gen) 4
ἐπι-πέμπω: to send (to), 1
εὔ-λογος, -ον: reasonable, sensible, 1
ἴσως: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 19
κτῆμα, -ατος, τό: possession, property, 3
νυν-δή: just now, 15
ῥᾴδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 9
σαυτοῦ (σεαυτοῦ), -ῆ, -οῦ: yourself, 4
σημαίνω: show by a sign, indicate, point out 2
τιμωρέω: to seek vengeance, exact revenge, 1
τιμωρία, ἡ: vengeance, retribution, 1
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18
χαλεπαίνω: to be sore, angry, grievous, 3

c1 **οὐκοῦν**: *well then*; inferential
ἦ δ'ὅς: see note on pg. 9
καὶ σὺ ἂν...εἴ...ἀποκτεινύοι,...χαλεπαίοις ἄν: *if…should kill…, would you also be sore…*; duplicated ἄν emphasizes what intervenes, a fut. less vivid condition (εἴ opt., ἄν + opt.)
τῶν...κτημάτων: partitive gen. that belongs within the protasis with τι αὐτὸ
2 **τι αὐτὸ**: *some one*; subject, though neuter, the possession, κτῆμα, refers to a slave
ἑαυτὸ: direct object, neuter reflexive
μὴ σημήναντός σου: *(if) you…not;* gen. abs. is conditional (hence μή, not οὐ)
βούλει: 2s pres. βούλομαι
3 **τεθνάναι**: *to be dead*; pf. θνήσκω
αὐτῷ: i.e. the possession/slave, dat. object of χαλεπαίνοις
εἴ...ἔχοις, τιμωροῖ(σ)ο ἄν: *if…should, would*; fut. less vivid, 2s opt., act. and mid.
5 **πάνυ γε**: *quite so, quite indeed*; affirmative
6 **ταύτῃ**: *in this way*; dat. of manner
οὐκ ἄλογον: *(it is) not unreasonable*
μὴ πρότερον...δεῖν: *that it is necessary that (one) not earlier…*; comparative adv., the reflexive (ἑ)αυτὸν is an acc. object
7 **πρὶν...ἐπιπέμψῃ**: *until…*; 3s aor. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause
8 **τὴν...παροῦσαν (ἀνάγκην)**: *the necessity at hand*; pres. pple πάρ-ειμι
9 **ἀλλ(ὰ)**: *well…*; in response
τοῦτό γε: *this, at least*; nom. subject
ὃ...ἔλεγες: *that which*; antecedent is τοῦτο
10 **τὸ...ἂν ἐθέλειν**: *(namely) that…would*; articular inf. + ἄν denotes potential opt.
d1 **ἀτόπῳ**: object of ἔοικεν
2 **εὐλόγως ἔχει**: *is well-reasoned*; ἔχω, '*is disposed*,' + adv. (p. 7)

λούμενον ἡμῶν καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐκείνου κτήματα εἶναι. τὸ γὰρ μὴ ἀγανακτεῖν τοὺς φρονιμωτάτους ἐκ ταύτης τῆς θεραπείας ἀπιόντας, ἐν ᾗ ἐπιστατοῦσιν αὐτῶν οἵπερ ἄριστοί εἰσιν τῶν ὄντων ἐπιστάται, θεοί, οὐκ ἔχει λόγον· οὐ γάρ που αὐτός γε αὑτοῦ οἴεται ἄμεινον ἐπιμελήσεσθαι ἐλεύθερος γενόμενος. ἀλλ᾽ ἀνόητος μὲν ἄνθρωπος τάχ᾽ ἂν οἰηθείη ταῦτα, φευκτέον εἶναι ἀπὸ τοῦ δεσπότου, καὶ οὐκ ἂν λογίζοιτο ὅτι οὐ δεῖ ἀπό γε τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ φεύγειν ἀλλ᾽ ὅτι μάλιστα παραμένειν, διὸ ἀλογίστως ἂν φεύγοι· ὁ δὲ νοῦν ἔχων ἐπιθυμοῖ που ἂν ἀεὶ εἶναι παρὰ τῷ αὑτοῦ βελτίονι. καίτοι οὕτως, ὦ Σώκρατες, τοὐναντίον εἶναι εἰκὸς ἢ ὃ νυνδὴ ἐλέγετο· τοὺς μὲν γὰρ φρονίμους ἀγανακτεῖν ἀποθνήσκοντας πρέπει, τοὺς δὲ ἄφρονας

ἀγανακτέω: to be annoyed, be troubled at, 12
ἀ-λογίστος, -ον: unreasonable, thoughtless, 1
ἀμείνων, -ον (-ονος): better, 10
ἀ-νόητος, -ον: foolish, unintelligent, 5
ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent, 6
ἄφρων, -οντος: senseless, foolish, 1
βελτίων, -ον (-ονος): better, 7
δεσπότης, ὁ: master, lord, 6
διό: δι᾽ ὅ, on account of which, on which account, 4
εἰκός, ὁτος, τό: likely, probable, reasonable 18
ἐλεύθερος, -η, -ον: free, 1
ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for, 10
ἐπι-μελέομαι: take care of or that, (gen) 4
ἐπι-στατέω: be in charge over, be set over, 1
ἐπιστατης, ὁ: overseer, one set in charge, 1
θεραπεία, ἡ: service; care, fostering, 1
καίτοι: and yet, and indeed, and further, 8
κτῆμα, -ατος, τό: possession, property, 3
λογίζομαι: to reason, calculate, count, 9
νοῦς, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14
νυν-δὴ: just now, 15
παρα-μένω: to abide, remain, 2
πρέπει: it is fitting, it is suitable (impers.) 8
τάχα: presently, quickly; perhaps, 2
φευκτέος, ον: to be fled, to be escaped, 1
φρόνιμος, -ον: sensible, wise, prudent, 8

3 **ἡμῶν**: obj. of ἐπιμελούμενον
τὸ...ἀγανακτεῖν: *that…not be aggravated*; the articular inf. is subject of ἔχει below
4 **τοὺς φρονιμωτάτους**: *those*…; superlative
5 **ἀπιόντας**: acc. pl. pple ἀπ-έρχομαι
οἵπερ: *those who*…; missing antecedent is subject of 3p pres. ἐπιστατοῦσιν
6 **τῶν ὄντων**: *of the things existing*
οὐκ ἔχει λόγον: *has no account*; i.e. is not reasonable
αὐτός γε: *(the most sensible) himself at least*; intensive pronoun
7 **αὑτοῦ**: ἑαυτοῦ, obj. of fut. ἐπιμελήσεσθαι
γενόμενος: aor. pple γίγνομαι
8 **ἂν οἰηθείη**: *would*…; potential opt. (3s aor. pass. deponent οἴομαι)
φευκτέον εἶναι: *namely that (he) must flee*; 'it is to be fled (by him)' impersonal verbal adj. + εἰμί expresses obligation, here with missing dat. of agent
e1 **ἂν λογίζοιτο**: potential opt., pres. mid.
2 **ὅτι μάλιστα**: *as…as possible*; as often when preceding a superlative (here adv.)
3 **ὁ δὲ νοῦν ἔχων**: *one having sense*; the same person as the ὁ φρόνιμος above
4 **παρὰ...**: *beside*…; dat. of place where
αὑτοῦ: *than*...; ἑαυτοῦ, gen. comparison.
5 **τὸ (ἐ)ναντίον...ἢ**: *(it is) likely to be the opposite of*...; 'opposition than'
6 **πρέπει**: *it is fitting*

χαίρειν.

63 ἀκούσας οὖν ὁ Σωκράτης ἡσθῆναί τέ μοι ἔδοξε τῇ τοῦ Κέβητος πραγματείᾳ, καὶ ἐπιβλέψας εἰς ἡμᾶς, ἀεί τοι, ἔφη, ὁ Κέβης λόγους τινὰς ἀνερευνᾷ, καὶ οὐ πάνυ εὐθέως ἐθέλει πείθεσθαι ὅτι ἄν τις εἴπῃ.

καὶ ὁ Σιμμίας, ἀλλὰ μήν, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες, νῦν γέ μοι δοκεῖ τι καὶ αὐτῷ λέγειν Κέβης· τί γὰρ ἂν βουλόμενοι ἄνδρες σοφοὶ ὡς ἀληθῶς δεσπότας ἀμείνους αὐτῶν φεύγοιεν καὶ ῥᾳδίως ἀπαλλάττοιντο αὐτῶν; καί μοι δοκεῖ Κέβης εἰς σὲ τείνειν τὸν λόγον, ὅτι οὕτω ῥᾳδίως φέρεις καὶ ἡμᾶς ἀπολείπων καὶ ἄρχοντας ἀγαθούς, ὡς αὐτὸς ὁμολογεῖς, θεούς.

b δίκαια, ἔφη, λέγετε· οἶμαι γὰρ ὑμᾶς λέγειν ὅτι χρή με

ἀμείνων, -ον (-ονος): better, 10
ἀν-ερευνάω: to examine, investigate, 1
ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15
ἀπο-λείπω: leave behind, abandon, forsake, 7
ἄρχω: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 12
δεσπότης, ὁ: master, lord, 6
δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right(eous), fair, 13
ἐθέλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17
ἐπι-βλέπω: to look at, 1
εὐθέως: right away, straight away, at once, 1
ἥδομαι: to delight in, be pleased at (dat.) 6
πραγματεία, ἡ: diligent work, business, 3
ῥᾴδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 9
σοφός, -ή, -όν: wise, skilled, 5
τείνω: to stretch, strain, 2
φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 10
χαίρω: to rejoice, be glad, enjoy; fare well 12

63a1 **ἡσθῆναι**: aor. pass. inf. ἥδομαι
3 **ἔφη**: 3s impf. φημί
ἀνερευνᾷ: ἀνερευνάει, pres. α-contract
4 **ὅτι**: *whatever*…; ὅ τι, general relative clause with ἄν + aor. subj. (εἶπον)
ἀλλὰ μὴν: *well certainly, well surely*; else 'but surely,' here a strong assent; cf. 61d9
νῦν γέ: 1s fut. ἀπ-έρχομαι
μοι...καὶ αὐτῷ: *to me myself also*; intensive pronoun, καί is adverbial
5 **τι...λέγειν**: i.e. to say something important, as often when the indefinite follows λέγω
τί: *what*?; object of βουλόμενοι
6 **ὡς ἀληθῶς**: *truly*
αὐτῶν: *than*…; gen. comparison, ἑαυτῶν
ἂν...φεύγοιεν: 3p pres. potential opt.
7 **ἀπαλλάττοιντο (ἄν)**: 3p pres. mid. potential opt.; supply ἄν
αὐτῶν: *from*…; gen. of separation
8 **τείνειν**: *to extend*; i.e. offer
ὡς: *(namely) that*…; apposition to λόγον
φέρεις: i.e. you bear, you endure
9 **ὡς**: *just as*...
αὐτὸς: *you yourself*; intensive pronoun

Two Common Translations for τυγχάνω, τεύξομαι, ἔτυχον		
τυγχάνω 'happen' + participle	τυγχάνει οὖσα	*he happens to be*
τυγχάνω 'attain' + partitive genitive	ἔτυχον τοῦ ὀνοματος	*I attained the name*

πρὸς ταῦτα ἀπολογήσασθαι ὥσπερ ἐν δικαστηρίῳ.

πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας.

φέρε δή, ἦ δ' ὅς, πειραθῶ πιθανώτερον πρὸς ὑμᾶς ἀπολογήσασθαι ἢ πρὸς τοὺς δικαστάς. ἐγὼ γάρ, ἔφη, ὦ Σιμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, εἰ μὲν μὴ ᾤμην ἥξειν πρῶτον μὲν παρὰ θεοὺς ἄλλους σοφούς τε καὶ ἀγαθούς, ἔπειτα καὶ παρ' ἀνθρώπους τετελευτηκότας ἀμείνους τῶν ἐνθάδε, ἠδίκουν ἂν οὐκ ἀγανακτῶν τῷ θανάτῳ· νῦν δὲ εὖ ἴστε ὅτι παρ' ἄνδρας τε ἐλπίζω ἀφίξεσθαι ἀγαθούς—καὶ τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ ἂν πάνυ διισχυρισαίμην—ὅτι μέντοι παρὰ θεοὺς δεσπότας πάνυ ἀγαθοὺς ἥξειν, εὖ ἴστε ὅτι εἴπερ τι ἄλλο τῶν τοιούτων διισχυρισαίμην ἂν καὶ τοῦτο. ὥστε διὰ ταῦτα οὐχ ὁμοίως

ἀγανακτέω: to be annoyed, be troubled at, 12
ἀ-δικέω: to be unjust, do wrong, injure, 3
ἀμείνων, -ον (-ονος): better, 10
ἀπο-λογέομαι: to speak in defense, 3
δεσπότης, ὁ: master, lord, 6
δι-ισχυρίζομαι: affirm confidently; assert, 5
δικαστήριον, τό: court, 2
δικαστής, οῦ, ὁ: a juror, judge, 5
ἐλπίζω: to hope, expect, 2
ἐν-θάδε: here, hither, thither, 17
εὖ: well, 19
ἥκω: to have come, be present, 14
πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 11
πιθανός, -ή, -όν: persuasive, plausible, 3
σοφός, -ή, -όν: wise, skilled, 5

2 **πρὸς**: *against…, in reply to…*
πάνυ μὲν οὖν: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
3 **ἔφη**: impf. φημί
4 **φέρε δή**: *come now*; φέρε is an imperative used to draw attention and introduce an imperative; δή is emphatic
ἦ δ'ὅς: see note on pg. 9
πειραθῶ: *let me attempt*; 1st person imperative
πιθανώτερον: comparative adverb
πρὸς: *toward…*; i.e. in front of…
5 **ἤ**: *than*
6 **εἰ...ᾤμην, ἠδίκουν ἄν**: *if I were not…, I would be wrong*; present contrafactual (εἰ impf., ἄν + impf.), 1s impf. οἴομαι
πρῶτον μὲν...ἔπειτα καὶ: *first…and then*; adverbial acc.
παρὰ...ἀγαθούς: *to…*; place to which
7 **παρ(ὰ)...ἀμείνους**: *to…*; place to which
τετελευτηκότας: *dead*; pf. pple
8 **ἀμείνούς**: ἀμείνο(ν)ες, acc. pl.
τῶν ἐνθάδε: *than those here*; comparison
9 **νῦν δὲ**: *but as it is*; often after contrafactual
εὖ ἴστε: pl. imperative οἶδα
παρ(ὰ): *to…*; acc. place to which
c1 **τε...καὶ..**: connecting the two prepositional phrases παρὰ...παρὰ
ἀγαθούς: with ἄνδρας, but emphatic in position at the end of the clause
τοῦτο: *this*; i.e. the previous statement
2 **οὐκ...πάνυ**: *not too strongly*
ἂν διισχυρισαίμην: *I would…*; potential opt.
3 **ὅτι μέντοι (ἐλπίζω)**: *that however (I) expect that I will come…*;
εἴπερ...τοῦτο: *that if (I were to assert confidently) about any other of such things, I would be confident in this in fact*; τοῦτο refers to ὅτι μέντοι...ἥξειν above

5 ἀγανακτῶ, ἀλλ᾽ εὔελπίς εἰμι εἶναί τι τοῖς τετελευτηκόσι καί, ὥσπερ γε καὶ πάλαι λέγεται, πολὺ ἄμεινον τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς ἢ τοῖς κακοῖς.

τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας, ὦ Σώκρατες; αὐτὸς ἔχων τὴν διάνοιαν ταύτην ἐν νῷ ἔχεις ἀπιέναι, ἢ κἂν ἡμῖν μεταδοίης;

d κοινὸν γὰρ δὴ ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ καὶ ἡμῖν εἶναι ἀγαθὸν τοῦτο, καὶ ἅμα σοι ἡ ἀπολογία ἔσται, ἐὰν ἅπερ λέγεις ἡμᾶς πείσῃς.

ἀλλὰ πειράσομαι, ἔφη. πρῶτον δὲ Κρίτωνα τόνδε σκεψώμεθα τί ἐστιν ὃ βούλεσθαί μοι δοκεῖ πάλαι εἰπεῖν.

5 τί δέ, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔφη ὁ Κρίτων, ἄλλο γε ἢ πάλαι μοι λέγει ὁ μέλλων σοι δώσειν τὸ φάρμακον ὅτι χρή σοι φράζειν ὡς ἐλάχιστα διαλέγεσθαι; φησὶ γὰρ θερμαίνεσθαι

ἀγανακτέω: to be annoyed, be troubled at, 12
ἀμείνων, -ον (-ονος): better, 10
ἀπ-έρχομαι: to go away, depart, 14
ἀπολογία, ἡ: (speech in) defence, 2
δια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 13
διάνοια, ἡ: thought, intention, purpose, 6
δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 15
ἐλάχιστος, -η, -ον: smallest, fewest, least, 1
εὔ-ελπις, -ιδος, ἡ, ὁ: hopeful, cheerful, 2
θερμαίνω: to make hot; *mid*. be warm, hot, 2
κοινός, -ή, -όν: common, ordinary; public, 3
μετα-δίδωμι: give a part of, give a share of, 1
νοῦς, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14
πάλαι: for some time, long ago, of old, 13
πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 11
σκέπτομαι: look at, examine, consider, 9
φάρμακον, τό: medicine, remedy, drug, 10
φράζω: to point out, tell, indicate, 6

5 **εἶναί τι**: *that there is something*; i.e. there is an afterlife
τοῖς τετελευτηκόσι: i.e. the dead; pf. pple, a dat. of interest
6 **ὥσπερ γε**: *just as, at any rate*; restrictive
καὶ πάλαι: *for quite a long time*
λέγεται: *it has been said*; πάλαι + pres. is pf. progressive in sense
τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς...τοῖς κακοῖς: *for the good…for the wicked*; dat. of interest, i.e. some are rewarded, others punished
ἢ: *than*
8 **τί οὖν**: *well then*; 'what then,' inferential, with impatient questions (S 2962)
αὐτὸς: *Do you yourself…*; intensive
ἔχων: i.e. holding on to…; the next line suggests a contract between coveting and sharing
9 **ἐν νῷ**: *in mind*; dat. νοῦς
ἢ: *or…*
καὶ ἂν...μεταδοίης: *in fact would you…*; καί is adverbial, potential aor. opt.
ἡμῖν: dat. of ind. object
d1 **γὰρ δὴ**: *for indeed*; emphatic
καὶ: *also*; adverbial, with ἡμῖν
2 **σοι**: dat. of possession
ἔσται, ἐὰν...πείσῃς: fut. more vivid (εἰ + subj., fut.); fut. εἰμί and aor. subj. πείθω
3 **πειράσομαι**: fut. mid.
πρῶτον: adverbial acc.
4 **σκεψώμεθα***: let us…*; hortatory aor. subj.
ὃ: *(that) which…*; add missing antecedent
βούλεσθαι...πάλαι*: that he has wanted for a long time…*; compare c6 above
δοκεῖ: *he seems*; Crito is subject
5 **τί δέ;**: *What?*; 'what about this?' expresses surprise and precedes a follow-up question
ἄλλο γε ἢ: *(anything) else than…*?
7 **ὡς ἐλάχιστα**: *as as possible*
φησὶ: *he says that those*; i.e poison-bearer

μᾶλλον διαλεγομένους, δεῖν δὲ οὐδὲν τοιοῦτον προσφέρειν τῷ φαρμάκῳ· εἰ δὲ μή, ἐνίοτε ἀναγκάζεσθαι καὶ δὶς καὶ τρὶς πίνειν τούς τι τοιοῦτον ποιοῦντας. e

καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης, ἔα, ἔφη, χαίρειν αὐτόν· ἀλλὰ μόνον τὸ ἑαυτοῦ παρασκευαζέτω ὡς καὶ δὶς δώσων, ἐὰν δὲ δέῃ, καὶ τρίς. 5

ἀλλὰ σχεδὸν μέν τι ᾔδη, ἔφη ὁ Κρίτων· ἀλλά μοι πάλαι πράγματα παρέχει.

ἔα αὐτόν, ἔφη. ἀλλ᾽ ὑμῖν δὴ τοῖς δικασταῖς βούλομαι ἤδη τὸν λόγον ἀποδοῦναι, ὡς μοι φαίνεται εἰκότως ἀνὴρ τῷ ὄντι ἐν φιλοσοφίᾳ διατρίψας τὸν βίον θαρρεῖν μέλλων 10
ἀποθανεῖσθαι καὶ εὔελπις εἶναι ἐκεῖ μέγιστα οἴσεσθαι ἀγαθὰ 64

ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 10
ἀπο-δίδωμι: to give back, return, render, 5
δια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 13
δια-τρίβω: to spend time, waste time, 5
δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 15
δικαστής, οῦ, ὁ: a juror, judge, 5
δίς: twice, doubly, 3
ἐάω: to permit, allow, let be, suffer, 9
εἰκότως: suitably, reasonably, fairly, 5
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
ἐνί-οτε: sometimes, 7
εὖ-ελπις, -ιδος, ἡ, ὁ: hopeful, cheerful, 2
ἤδη: already, now, at this time, 16
θαρρέω: be confident, take courage; 9
μεγίστος, -η, -ον: very big, greatest, 6
μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
πάλαι: for some time, long ago, of old, 13
παρα-σκευάζω: to get ready, prepare, 8
παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16
πίνω: to drink, 16
πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18
προ-φέρω: to bring to, apply, 1
σύν-οιδα: know along with, be conscious of, 1
σχεδόν: nearly, almost, just about, 8
τρίς: three times, thrice, 2
φάρμακον, τό: medicine, remedy, drug, 10
φιλο-σοφία, ἡ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13
χαίρω: to rejoice, be glad, enjoy; fare well 12

8 **διαλεγομένους**: *by…*; modifies missing acc. subject, the pple is causal in sense
δεῖν: *it is necessary*; inf. δεῖ
προσφέρειν: *bring (acc.) to (dat)*; governs an acc. obj. and dative of compound verb
e1 **ἀναγκάζεσθαι**: *that…are compelled*; ind. disc. governed by φησὶ; τοὺς ποιοῦντας is acc. subject
καὶ…καὶ: *both…and*
3 **ἔα χαίρειν αὐτὸν**: *dismiss him*; ‘let him say goodbye’; the sg. imperative ἐάω and inf. for χαῖρε is a common idiom
ἀλλὰ μόνον: *but only*; adverbial acc.
4 **τὸ ἑαυτοῦ (πρᾶγμα)**: *his own affairs*
παρασκευαζέτω: *let him…*; 3rd pers. imperative
ὡς…δώσων: *so that he will give…*; ‘so as going to give…’ ὡς + fut. pple expresses purpose; here, fut. pple of δίδωμι
δέῃ: *it is necessary*; 3s pres. subjunctive δεῖ in a future more vivid condition
6 **σχεδὸν τι**: *pretty much*
ᾔδη: 1s plpf οἶδα, simple past in sense
7 **πράγματα παρέχει**: *he has been causing problems*; a common idiom + dat. interest
8 **ἔα (χαίρειν) αὐτόν**: see line 3 above
ὡς εἰκότως: *how reasonably…*
64a1 **οἴσεσθαι**: *will carry off*; ‘win,’ fut. φέρω

ἐπειδὰν τελευτήσῃ. πῶς ἂν οὖν δὴ τοῦθ' οὕτως ἔχοι, ὦ Σιμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, ἐγὼ πειράσομαι φράσαι.

κινδυνεύουσι γὰρ ὅσοι τυγχάνουσιν ὀρθῶς ἁπτόμενοι
5 *φιλοσοφίας λελῆθέναι τοὺς ἄλλους ὅτι οὐδὲν ἄλλο αὐτοὶ ἐπιτηδεύουσιν ἢ ἀποθνῄσκειν τε καὶ τεθνάναι. εἰ οὖν τοῦτο ἀληθές, ἄτοπον δήπου ἂν εἴη προθυμεῖσθαι μὲν ἐν παντὶ τῷ βίῳ μηδὲν ἄλλο ἢ τοῦτο, ἥκοντος δὲ δὴ αὐτοῦ ἀγανακτεῖν ὃ πάλαι προυθυμοῦντό τε καὶ ἐπετήδευον.*

καὶ ὁ Σιμμίας γελάσας, νὴ τὸν Δία, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες,
b *οὐ πάνυ γέ με νυνδὴ γελασείοντα ἐποίησας γελάσαι. οἶμαι γὰρ ἂν τοὺς πολλοὺς αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἀκούσαντας δοκεῖν εὖ πάνυ εἰρῆσθαι εἰς τοὺς φιλοσοφοῦντας—καὶ συμφάναι ἂν τοὺς μὲν*

ἀγανακτέω: to be annoyed, be troubled at, 12
ἅπτω: fasten, grasp (gen); kindle, set fire; 11
ἄ-τοπος, -ον: strange, odd, out of place, 9
γελασείω: to be ready to laugh, 1
γελάω: to laugh, 6
δή-που: perhaps, I suppose; of course, 8
ἐπιτήδευω: to pursue, practice, 4
εὖ: well, 19
Ζεύς, ὁ: Zeus, 11
ἥκω: to have come, be present, 14
κινδυνεύω: to risk, venture; it is likely, 7
λανθάνω: to escape notice of; forget, 7
νή: by…(+ acc, invoking a god), 14
νυν-δή: just now, 15
πάλαι: for some time, long ago, of old, 13
πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 11
προ-θυμέομαι: to be eager, zealous, ready, 12
σύμ-φημι: to agree, approve, 3
φιλο-σοφέω: seek knowledge, philosophize, 6
φιλο-σοφία, ἡ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13
φράζω: to point out, tell, indicate, 6

2 **τελευτήσῃ**: 3rd sg. aor. subj. + ἄν in an indefinite temporal clause
πῶς οὖν δὴ: *how then indeed...*?
ἂν...οὕτως ἔχοι: *would be so*; 'holds thus,' potential opt.
τοῦθ': τοῦτο, subject
3 **φράσαι**: aor. inf. φράζω
4 **κινδυνεύουσι...λελῆθέναι**: *likely have escaped the notice of others*; 'run the risk to have escaped…,' pf. act. inf. λανθάνω
ὅσοι: *(all those) who…;* missing antecedent is subject of sentence
τυγχάνουσι: + complementary pple (see p. 20); ἅπτω governs a partitive gen.
αὐτοὶ: *(they) themselves*; intensive
6 **ἤ**: *than*
τεθνάναι: *to be dead*; pf. inf. θνῄσκω
ἀληθές: predicate, supply a linking verb
7 **ἂν εἴη**: *it would be*; impers., potential opt.
8 **τοῦτο**: *this*; i.e. death
ἥκοντος δὲ δὴ αὐτοῦ: *but then (when) it comes…*; δὲ δή is an adversative which introduces a new point; gen. absolute, αὐτοῦ refers to death
9 **ὃ...ἐπετήδευον**: *which…*; the antecedent is αὐτοῦ
10 **γελάσας**: *bursting into laughter*; inceptive aor. pple, nom. sg.
τὸν Δία: acc. sg. of Ζεύς
ἔφη: 3rd sg. impf. φημί
b1 **οὐ πάνυ γέ...γελασείοντα**: *(although)…*; pple is concessive in sense
γελάσαι: aor. inf.
οἶμαι: οἴομαι
2 **ἂν δοκεῖν**: *would think (that it)*; potential
3 **εἰρῆσθαι**: pf. pass. inf. λέγω (stem ἐρ-)
εἰς: *with regard to…*
συμφάναι ἂν: *would…*; aor. inf. σύνφημι

παρ᾽ ἡμῖν ἀνθρώπους καὶ πάνυ—ὅτι τῷ ὄντι οἱ φιλοσοφοῦντες θανατῶσι, καὶ σφᾶς γε οὐ λελήθασιν ὅτι ἄξιοί εἰσιν τοῦτο πάσχειν.

καὶ ἀληθῆ γ᾽ ἂν λέγοιεν, ὦ Σιμμία, πλήν γε τοῦ σφᾶς μὴ λεληθέναι. λέληθεν γὰρ αὐτοὺς ἥ τε θανατῶσι καὶ ἧ ἄξιοί εἰσιν θανάτου καὶ οἵου θανάτου οἱ ὡς ἀληθῶς φιλόσοφοι. εἴπωμεν γάρ, ἔφη, πρὸς ἡμᾶς αὐτούς, χαίρειν εἰπόντες ἐκείνοις· ἡγούμεθά τι τὸν θάνατον εἶναι; c

πάνυ γε, ἔφη ὑπολαβὼν ὁ Σιμμίας.

ἆρα μὴ ἄλλο τι ἢ τὴν τῆς ψυχῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ σώματος ἀπαλλαγήν; καὶ εἶναι τοῦτο τὸ τεθνάναι, χωρὶς μὲν ἀπὸ τῆς ψυχῆς ἀπαλλαγὲν αὐτὸ καθ᾽ αὑτὸ τὸ σῶμα γεγονέναι, χωρὶς

ἄξιος, -α, -ον: worthy of, deserving of, 15
ἀπ-αλλαγή, ἡ: escape; release, departure, 7
ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15
θανατάω: to desire to die, 1
λανθάνω: to escape notice of; forget, 7
πλήν: except, but (+ gen.), 7
σφεῖς: they, 4
ὑπο-λαμβάνω: to take up, reply; suppose, 8
φιλο-σοφέω: seek knowledge, philosophize, 6
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18
χαίρω: to rejoice, be glad, enjoy; fare well 12
χωρίς: separately; apart from, without (gen) 6

4 **τοὺς παρ(ὰ) ἡμῖν ἀνθρώπους**: *our people*; ‘people among us’ i.e. Boeotian Greeks, acc. subject
καὶ πάνυ: *quite very much*; καί is adverbial and intensifies πάνυ
τῷ ὄντι: *in reality, really*; ‘in being,’ dat. sg. pple εἰμί is often translated as an adv.
5 **θανατῶσι**: θανατάουσι, 3rd pl. pres.
καὶ...γε: *yes, and…them*; affirmative and perhaps emphasizing the intervening word
σφᾶς: acc. pl. σφεῖς, the Boeotians
λελήθασιν: 3p pf. λάνθανω; philosophers are the understood subject
εἰσιν: *they are*; i.e. philosophers
6 **πάσχειν**: explanatory inf. with ἄξιοι
7 **καὶ...γε**: *yes, and…*; see line 5
ἀληθῆ: *the truth*; ‘true things,’ ἀληθέ-α
ἂν λέγοιεν: *would…*; 3p potential opt.
πλήν γε: *except, in fact…;* emphatic
τοῦ...λεληθέναι: *that it…*; gen. articular inf. (pf. act. λανθάνω) as object of πλήν
8 **λέληθεν**: *it has…*; 3p pf. λανθάνω
ᾗ: *in what way…*; relative, dat. of manner
θανατῶσι: θανατάουσι, 3p pres.
ἄξιοι: governs genitives
9 **οἵου θανάτου (ἄξιοι εἰσιν)**: *and of what sort of death (they are worthy)*
ὡς ἀληθῶς: *truly*
c1 **εἴπωμεν**: *let…*; hortatory aor. subj. εἶπον
ἡμᾶς αὐτούς: *one another*; ‘ourselves’
χαίρειν εἰπόντες: i.e. bidding goodbye
2 **ἡγούμεθα**: i.e. believe
πάνυ γε: *quite indeed*; common affirmative
4 **ἆρα μὴ ἄλλο τι ἢ**: *Surely (it is) not anything other than…*; ἆρα μὴ anticipates a negative response (S 2651), the accusative that follows is in response to the question in c2, ἡγούμεθά τὸν θάνατον εἶναι
5 **τὸ τεθνάναι**: *to be dead*; pf. denotes a state rather than an action, acc. subject
εἶναι: *that…*; governed by ἡγούμεθα
χωρὶς μὲν...: *(namely) that…*; in apposition to τοῦτο, the predicate of εἶναι
6 **ἀπαλλαγὲν**: aor. pass. pple with τοῦτο
αὐτὸ καθ᾽ (ἑ)αυτὸ: *the body itself in itself*
γεγονέναι: pf. inf. γίγνομαι

δὲ τὴν ψυχὴν ἀπὸ τοῦ σώματος ἀπαλλαγεῖσαν αὐτὴν καθ' αὑτὴν εἶναι; ἆρα μὴ ἄλλο τι ᾖ ὁ θάνατος ἢ τοῦτο;

οὔκ, ἀλλὰ τοῦτο, ἔφη.

σκέψαι δή, ὠγαθέ, ἐὰν ἄρα καὶ σοὶ συνδοκῇ ἅπερ ἐμοί· ἐκ γὰρ τούτων μᾶλλον οἶμαι ἡμᾶς εἴσεσθαι περὶ ὧν σκοποῦμεν. φαίνεταί σοι φιλοσόφου ἀνδρὸς εἶναι ἐσπουδακέναι περὶ τὰς ἡδονὰς καλουμένας τὰς τοιάσδε, οἷον σιτίων [τε] καὶ ποτῶν;

ἥκιστα, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας.

τί δὲ τὰς τῶν ἀφροδισίων;

οὐδαμῶς.

τί δὲ τὰς ἄλλας τὰς περὶ τὸ σῶμα θεραπείας; δοκεῖ σοι

ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15
ἀφροδίσιος, -α, -ον: of Aphrodite; sex, 2
ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17
ἥκιστος, -η, -ον: least; not at all, 3
θεραπεία, ἡ: care, service, fostering, 1
οὐδαμῶς: in no way, not at all, 11
ποτός, ὁ: drink, 1
σιτίον, τό: grain, bread; provisions, 2
σκέπτομαι: look at, examine, consider, 9
σπουδάζω: to be eager for, be earnest for, 2
συν-δοκέω: to seem good also, 6
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18

7 **ἀπαλλαγεῖσαν**: acc. fem. aor. pass. pple
αὐτὴν καθ' (ἑ)αυτὴν: *itself in itself*
εἶναι: *exists*
8 **ἆρα μὴ ἄλλο τι ᾖ ὁ θάνατος**: *Surely death is not anything other*; likely, a blending of two grammatical constructions: (1) ἆρα μὴ anticipates a negative response (S 2651) and (2) μὴ + subjunctive (3s pres. εἰμί) for doubtful assertion (S 1801)
ἔφη: impf. φημί
10 **σκέψαι**: aor. imperative σκέπτομαι
δή: *just…*; emphasizing the imperative
ὠ (ἀ)γαθέ: vocative direct address
καὶ: *also*; adverbial
συνδοκῇ: 3rd sg. pres. subjunctive
ἅπερ ἐμοί (συνδοκῇ): *(these things) which*; or 'just as to me,' ellipsis, the antecedent is subject of the main συνδοκῇ
d1 **εἴσεσθαι**: fut. inf. οἶδα
περὶ ὧν: *concerning (the things) which…*; περὶ (τουτῶν) ἃ
2 **φιλοσόφου...εἶναι**: *belongs to a philosopher*; 'to be of a philosophical man' a gen. predicate
ἐσπουδακέναι: pf. act. inf. σπουδάζω, subject of εἶναι
3 **περὶ**: *regarding…*; + acc.
καλουμένας: *so-called*
οἷον: *for example*; acc. respect 'in respect to such'
σιτίων...ποτῶν: (*the pleasures*) *of…*; gen. pl., supply τὰς ἡδονὰς
5 **ἥκιστα**: *not in the least*; superlative adv.
6 **τί δὲ**: *what about…*
τὰς: *those (pleasures)…*; i.e. ἡδονὰς
8 **τί δὲ**: *what about…*
τὰς ἄλλας...θεραπείας: *other cares*; fem. pl. here refers to θεραπείας, not ἡδονὰς
περὶ: *regarding…*; + acc.

Philosophical Vocabulary: αὐτὸ κατ(ὰ) ἑαυτὸ *itself by itself* or *itself in itself*
Plato often combines an intensive (αὐτός) and reflexive (ἑαυτοῦ) to denote separation.

ἐντίμους ἡγεῖσθαι ὁ τοιοῦτος; οἷον ἱματίων διαφερόντων κτήσεις καὶ ὑποδημάτων καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους καλλωπισμοὺς τοὺς περὶ τὸ σῶμα πότερον τιμᾶν δοκεῖ σοι ἢ ἀτιμάζειν, καθ' ὅσον μὴ πολλὴ ἀνάγκη μετέχειν αὐτῶν; **e**

ἀτιμάζειν ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ, ἔφη, ὅ γε ὡς ἀληθῶς φιλόσοφος.

οὐκοῦν ὅλως δοκεῖ σοι, ἔφη, ἡ τοῦ τοιούτου πραγματεία οὐ περὶ τὸ σῶμα εἶναι, ἀλλὰ καθ' ὅσον δύναται ἀφεστάναι αὐτοῦ, πρὸς δὲ τὴν ψυχὴν τετράφθαι;

ἔμοιγε.

ἆρ' οὖν πρῶτον μὲν ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις δῆλός ἐστιν ὁ φιλόσοφος ἀπολύων ὅτι μάλιστα τὴν ψυχὴν ἀπὸ τῆς τοῦ **65**

ἀπο-λύω: to loose from, release, 2
ἀ-τιμάζω: to dishonor, insult, slight, 4
ἀφ-ίστημι: to stand away from, remove; to make revolt, 3
δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 14
δια-φέρω: to carry over; differ, surpass, 8
δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 15
ἔν-τιμος, -ον: honored, honorable, valuable, 1
ἱμάτιον, τό: a cloak or mantle, 7
καλλωπισμός, ὁ: adornment, ornamentation, 1
κτῆσις, -εως, ἡ: possession, acquisition, 3
μετ-έχω: to partake of, have share in (gen) 12
ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 9
πότερος, -α, -ον: (untranslated), whether, 19
πραγματεία, ἡ: diligent work, business, 3
τιμάω: to honour, value, esteem, 1
τρέπω: to turn, 4
ὑπό-δημα, -δημάτος, τό: shoe, 1
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18

9 **δοκεῖ...τοιοῦτος**: *does such (a philosopher) seem to you to consider (these cares regarding the body) valuable?*; ἐντίμους is an acc. predicate
οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to such,' acc. of respect
διαφερόντων: *outstanding*; pres. pple
11 **τοὺς περὶ τὸ σῶμα**: in attributive position with καλλωπισμοὺς
περὶ: *regarding…*; + acc.
πότερον...ἢ: *does it…or*; introducing a set of alternatives, πότερον is untranslated
τιμᾶν: inf. τιμάω
e1 **καθ' ὅσον**: *inasmuch as*; with ἄξιοι
ἀνάγκη: *(there is)…necessity*; supply ἐστίν
ὅ γε...: *the philosopher at least*; restrictive
ὡς ἀληθῶς: *truly*
4 **τοῦ τοιούτου**: i.e. of the philosopher
5 **κατ(ὰ) ὅσον δύναται**: *insofar as…*
6 **ἀφέστάναι**: *to stand apart*; pf. act. inf. ἀφίστημι, parallel to εἶναι, this inf. is not governed by δύναται
αὐτοῦ: *from…*; i.e. σῶμα, gen. separation
τετράφθαι: pf. mid. pple, τρέπω
8 **πρῶτον μὲν**: *first (of all)*; adverbial acc.
δῆλός ἐστιν...: *is clearly (one) separating…*
65a1 **ὅτι μάλιστα**: *as…as possible*; as often when ὅτι is followed by a superlative

Philosophical Vocabulary: μετέχειν *partake of, share in, participate in* + partitive gen.

Plato often uses this key verb to describe the relationship between a object and a form. For example, the number three is odd because three *participates in* or *shares in* (μετέχει) the form oddness. The nature of the participation of objects with forms is a subject of scholarly debate.

σώματος κοινωνίας διαφερόντως τῶν ἄλλων ἀνθρώπων;

φαίνεται.

καὶ δοκεῖ γέ που, ὦ Σιμμία, τοῖς πολλοῖς ἀνθρώποις
5 *ᾧ μηδὲν ἡδὺ τῶν τοιούτων μηδὲ μετέχει αὐτῶν οὐκ ἄξιον εἶναι ζῆν, ἀλλ᾽ ἐγγύς τι τείνειν τοῦ τεθνάναι ὁ μηδὲν φρον-τίζων τῶν ἡδονῶν αἳ διὰ τοῦ σώματός εἰσιν.*

πάνυ μὲν οὖν ἀληθῆ λέγεις.

τί δὲ δὴ περὶ αὐτὴν τὴν τῆς φρονήσεως κτῆσιν; πό-
10 *τερον ἐμπόδιον τὸ σῶμα ἢ οὔ, ἐάν τις αὐτὸ ἐν τῇ ζητήσει*
b *κοινωνὸν συμπαραλαμβάνῃ; οἷον τὸ τοιόνδε λέγω· ἆρα ἔχει ἀλήθειάν τινα ὄψις τε καὶ ἀκοὴ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις, ἢ τά γε τοιαῦτα καὶ οἱ ποιηταὶ ἡμῖν ἀεὶ θρυλοῦσιν, ὅτι οὔτ᾽ ἀκούομεν*

ἀκοή, ἡ: hearing, 1
ἀλήθεια, ἡ: truth, 7
ἄξιος, -α, -ον: worthy of, deserving of, 15
δια-φερόντως: especially; differently, 4
ἐγγύς: near (+ gen.); adv. nearby, 5
ἐμ-πόδιος, -ον: hindering, impeding, 1
ζήτησις, εως, ἡ: seeking, examining, 3
ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17
ἡδύς, -εῖα, -ύ: sweet, pleasant, glad, 5
θρυλέω: chatter about, talk over and over, 2
κοινωνία, ἡ: community, association, 2
κοινωνός, ὁ: partner, associate, companion, 2
κτῆσις, -εως, ἡ: possession, acquisition, 3
μετ-έχω: to partake of, have share in (gen) 12
ὄψις, -εως, ἡ: vision, appearance, form; face, 6
ποιητής, οῦ, ὁ: maker, creator, poet, 6
πότερος, -α, -ον: (untranslated), whether, 19
συμπαραλαμβάνω: take along (as a helper) 2
τείνω: to extend, stretch, strain, 2
φρόνησις, -εως, ἡ: understanding, wisdom, prudence, 15
φροντίζω: think, worry, give heed to (gen) 3

2 **τῶν ἀνθρώπων**: *from…*; gen. comparison
4 **καὶ...γὲ**: *and…indeed*; the particles emphasize the intervening word
τοῖς...ἀνθρώποις: dat. reference with δοκεῖ
5 **ᾧ...αὐτῶν**: *(for the one) to whom none of such things (are) pleasant and there is not a share of them*; the missing antecedent refers to the philosopher and is a dat. of interest with ἄξιον εἶναι; μή is used instead of οὐ in a generalizing relative clause
ἄξιον εἶναι: *to be worthwhile*; after δοκεῖ
6 **ζῆν**: explanatory inf. ζάω with ἄξιον
τοῦ τεθνάναι: *being dead*; articular pf. inf. θνήσκω, gen. object of ἐγγύς
τι τείνειν (δοκεῖ): *(seems) to strive somewhat*; inner acc.
ὁ μηδὲν φροντίζων: *the one giving no heed to*; + gen., μηδὲν is an inner acc., as in l. 5, μή is used instead of οὐ in a generalizing participial phrase (S 2506)
7 **εἰσιν**: 3p pres. εἰμί
8 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
ἀληθῆ: ἀληθέ-α, neuter acc. pl.
9 **τί δέ δὴ;**: *What then…?*; a new question
αὐτὴν: *itself*; intensive pronoun
πότερον...ἢ: *(is it)…or*; add a linking verb
b1 **συμπαραλαμβάνῃ**: 3s pres. subj.
οἷον...λέγω: *for example I mean this sort a thing*; 'in respect to which…' acc. respect
2 **τοῖς ἀνθρώποις**: *for…*; dat. of interest
3 **τοιαῦτα...ὅτι**: *such things…(namely) that*

ἀκριβὲς οὐδὲν οὔτε ὁρῶμεν; καίτοι εἰ αὗται τῶν περὶ τὸ σῶμα αἰσθήσεων μὴ ἀκριβεῖς εἰσιν μηδὲ σαφεῖς, σχολῇ αἵ γε ἄλλαι· πᾶσαι γάρ που τούτων φαυλότεραί εἰσιν. ἦ σοὶ οὐ δοκοῦσιν;

πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη.

πότε οὖν, ἦ δ' ὅς, ἡ ψυχὴ τῆς ἀληθείας ἅπτεται; ὅταν μὲν γὰρ μετὰ τοῦ σώματος ἐπιχειρῇ τι σκοπεῖν, δῆλον ὅτι τότε ἐξαπατᾶται ὑπ' αὐτοῦ.

ἀληθῆ λέγεις. **c**

ἆρ' οὖν οὐκ ἐν τῷ λογίζεσθαι εἴπερ που ἄλλοθι κατάδηλον αὐτῇ γίγνεταί τι τῶν ὄντων;

ναί.

αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἀκριβής, -ές: exact, accurate, precise, 5
ἀληθεια, ἡ: truth, 7
ἄλλο-θι: in another place, elsewhere, 7
ἅπτω: fasten, grasp (gen); kindle, set fire; 11
δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 14
ἐξ-απατάω: to deceive, beguile, 4
ἐπι-χειρέω: put one's hand on, attempt, try, 8
καίτοι: and yet, and indeed, and further, 8
κατά-δηλος, -όν: evident, visible, clear, 1
λογίζομαι: to reason, calculate, count, 9
ναί: yes, yea, 15
πότε: when, at what time, 2
σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
σχολή, ἡ: leisure, rest; **σχολῇ**, scarcely, 3
φαῦλος –η -ον: slight, paltry, cheap, trifling 9

4 **αὗται**: *these*; i.e. hearing and seeing
τῶν...αἰσθήσεων: *among…*; partitive gen
5 **εἰσιν**: 3p pres. εἰμί
σχολῇ: *hardly, scarcely*; 'in a leisurely way,' dat. of manner
6 **αἵ γε ἄλλαι**: *the rest at least (are not accurate nor reliable)*; supply the predicate
τούτων: *than…*; gen. of comparison
8 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
ἔφη: see pg. 6
9 **ἦ δ'ὅς**: see note on pg. 9
τῆς ἀληθείας: partitive gen. with ἅπτεται
10 **ἐπιχειρῇ**: *one…*; 3s pres. subj. + ἄν in a pres. general conditon (ἐάν + subj., pres. ind.)
δῆλον ὅτι: *clearly*; '(it is) clear that'
11 **ὑπὸ αὐτοῦ**: *because of…*; gen. of cause
c1 **ἀληθῆ**: *the truth*; 'true things,' ἀληθέ-α
ἐν τῷ λογίζεσθαι εἴπερ που ἄλλοθι: *in reasoning, if anywhere else,,…*; articular inf., the conditional is parenthetical
3 **αὐτῇ**: *to it*; i.e. τῇ ψυχῇ
τι: *something*; nom. subject
τῶν ὄντων: *of the things which are*; pple

λογίζεται δέ γέ που τότε κάλλιστα, ὅταν αὐτὴν τούτων μηδὲν παραλυπῇ, μήτε ἀκοὴ μήτε ὄψις μήτε ἀλγηδὼν μηδέ τις ἡδονή, ἀλλ᾽ ὅτι μάλιστα αὐτὴ καθ᾽ αὑτὴν γίγνηται ἐῶσα χαίρειν τὸ σῶμα, καὶ καθ᾽ ὅσον δύναται μὴ κοινωνοῦσα αὐτῷ μηδ᾽ ἁπτομένη ὀρέγηται τοῦ ὄντος.

ἔστι ταῦτα.

οὐκοῦν καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἡ τοῦ φιλοσόφου ψυχὴ μάλιστα
d *ἀτιμάζει τὸ σῶμα καὶ φεύγει ἀπ᾽ αὐτοῦ, ζητεῖ δὲ αὐτὴ καθ᾽ αὑτὴν γίγνεσθαι;*

φαίνεται.

τί δὲ δὴ τὰ τοιάδε, ὦ Σιμμία; φαμέν τι εἶναι δίκαιον αὐτὸ ἢ οὐδέν;

ἀκοή, ἡ: hearing, 1
ἀλγηδών, -όνος, ἡ: pain, suffering, grief, 2
ἅπτω: fasten, grasp (gen); kindle, set fire; 11
ἀ-τιμάζω: to dishonor, insult, slight, 4
δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right(eous), fair, 13
δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 15
ἐάω: to permit, allow, let be, suffer, 9
ἐνταῦθα: here, hither, there, thither, then, 5
ζητέω: to seek, look for, investigate, 9
ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17
κάλλιστα: very well, most beautifully, 2
κοινωνέω: to associate with, partake in (dat) 4
λογίζομαι: to reason, calculate, count, 9
μή-τε: and not, neither...nor, 15
ὀρέγω: to stretch out, reach for (gen.) 3
ὄψις, -εως, ἡ: vision, appearance, form; face, 6
παρα-λυπέω: trouble, grieve (by diversion) 1
φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 10
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18
χαίρω: to rejoice, be glad, enjoy; fare well 12

5 **λογίζεται**: supply ἡ ψυχή as subject
κάλλιστα: *very well*; superlative adverb of καλός (καλῶς commonly means 'well')
6 **μηδὲν**: subject with partitive gen.
παραλυπῇ: 3s pres. subjunctive in a a general temporal clause
7 **ὅτι μάλιστα**: *as…as possible*; + superlative
αὐτὴ καθ᾽ (ἑ)αυτὴν: *itself by itself*
γίγνηται: *it happens* + pple; pres. subj. in the same temporal clause as παραλυπῇ
ἐῶσα χαίρειν: *dismissing*; 'letting say 'goodbye''; fem. sg. pple ἐάω; see also 63e3 and 63e8 for the same expression
8 **καθ᾽ ὅσον δύναται**: *inasmuch as…*
μὴ...ἁπτομένη: *(if) not…*; both pres. pples are conditional: hence μή and not οὐ
αὐτῷ: *in it*; i.e. the σῶμα
9 **ὀρέγηται**: pres. subjunctive, in the same clause as παραλυπῇ and γίγνηται
τοῦ ὄντος: *what exists*; partitive gen., this pple εἰμί is presumably the same as τῶν ὄντων in 63c3
10 **ἔστι**: *are the case*; i.e. are true
11 **οὐκοῦν**: *accordingly*; inferential
ἐνταῦθα: *here*; i.e. in this instance
d1 **αὐτὴ καθ᾽ (ἑ)αυτὴν**: *itself by itself*
τί δέ δὴ;: *What then about?*; introducing a new question
4 **τὰ τοιάδε**: i.e. the following
φαμέν: 1p pres. φημί
τι...δίκαιον: *that something just…*; acc. subject τι is the predicate, ind. discourse
5 **αὐτὸ**: intensive; 'by itself' is a possible reading

φαμὲν μέντοι νὴ Δία.
καὶ αὖ καλόν γέ τι καὶ ἀγαθόν;
πῶς δ᾽ οὔ;
ἤδη οὖν πώποτέ τι τῶν τοιούτων τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς εἶδες;
οὐδαμῶς, ἦ δ᾽ ὅς.
ἀλλ᾽ ἄλλῃ τινὶ αἰσθήσει τῶν διὰ τοῦ σώματος ἐφήψω αὐτῶν; λέγω δὲ περὶ πάντων, οἷον μεγέθους πέρι, ὑγιείας, ἰσχύος, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἑνὶ λόγῳ ἁπάντων τῆς οὐσίας ὃ τυγχάνει ἕκαστον ὄν· ἆρα διὰ τοῦ σώματος αὐτῶν τὸ ἀληθέστατον θεωρεῖται, ἢ ὧδε ἔχει· ὃς ἂν μάλιστα ἡμῶν καὶ ἀκριβέστατα παρασκευάσηται αὐτὸ ἕκαστον διανοηθῆναι περὶ οὗ σκοπεῖ, οὗτος ἂν ἐγγύτατα ἴοι τοῦ γνῶναι ἕκαστον;

αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἀκριβής, -ές: exact, accurate, precise, 5
ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: every, quite all, 14
γιγνώσκω: learn to know, to learn, realize 12
δια-νοέομαι: to think, consider, intend, 6
ἐγγυτάτω (ἐγγύτατα): nearest to (+ gen) 3
ἐφ-άπτω: lay hold of, grasp onto (gen.), 5
Ζεύς, ὁ: Zeus, 11
ἤδη: already, now, at this time, 16
θεωρέω: to see, watch, look at, 3
ἰσχύς, -ύος, ἡ: strength, might, power, 2
νή: by…(+ acc, invoking a god), 14
οὐδαμῶς: in no way, not at all, 11
οὐσία, ἡ: essence, being, substance, 6
ὀφθαλμός, ὁ: the eye, 3
παρα-σκευάζω: to get ready, prepare, 8
πώ-ποτε: ever yet, ever, 6
ὑγίεια, ἡ: health, soundness, 1
ὧδε: in this way, so, thus, 4

6 **φαμὲν**: *we say (it)*; supply object
μέντοι: *certainly*; often found before an oath such as νή Δία, Δία is acc. sg. Ζεύς
7 **καὶ...γέ**: *and…indeed*; emphasizing the intervening word
8 **πῶς δ᾽οὔ**: *how (could there) not?*; elliptical
9 **τῶν τοιούτων**: partitive gen. with τι
τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς: dat. of means
εἶδες: 2s εἶδον (aor. of ὁράω)
10 **ἦ δ᾽ὅς**: see note on pg. 9
11 **ἄλλῃ...αἰσθήσει**: *by…*; dat. of means
τῶν διὰ τοῦ σώματος: *than those…*; gen. of comparison following ἄλλη
ἐφήψα(σ)ο: 3s aor. mid. ἐφ-άπτομαι governs a partitive genitive
12 **αὐτῶν**: *them*; i.e. καλόν τι καὶ ἀγαθόν
οἷον: *for example*; acc. of respect
μεγέθους πέρι: περὶ μεγέθους, the following genitives are objects of περί
13 **ἑνὶ λόγῳ**: *in a word…*; dat. of manner
τῶν ἄλλων ἁπάντων: modifies οὐσίας
τῆς οὐσίας: *(about) the essence*; with περί
ὃ...: *which*; refers to the ἁπάντων
e1 **τυγχάνει**: + pple εἰμί, see p. 20
αὐτῶν...ἀληθέστατον: *the most truthful (account) of them*; subject, i.e. καλόν τι καὶ ἀγαθόν; superlative
2 **ὧδε ἔχει**: *is it so*; ἔχω + adv., see pg. 7
ὃς ἂν...ἡμῶν...: *whoever among us…*; indefinite relative (ἄν + subj.) here aor. mid., and partitive gen.
μάλιστα, ἀκριβέστατα: superlative advs.
διανοηθῆναι: *to consider*; aor. depon. inf.
4 **ἂν...ἴοι**: *would come*; potential opt. ἔρχομαι
τοῦ γνῶναι: *knowing*; articular aor. inf.

πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

ἆρ᾽ οὖν ἐκεῖνος ἂν τοῦτο ποιήσειεν καθαρώτατα ὅστις ὅτι μάλιστα αὐτῇ τῇ διανοίᾳ ἴοι ἐφ᾽ ἕκαστον, μήτε τιν᾽ ὄψιν παρατιθέμενος ἐν τῷ διανοεῖσθαι μήτε τινὰ ἄλλην
66 *αἴσθησιν ἐφέλκων μηδεμίαν μετὰ τοῦ λογισμοῦ, ἀλλ᾽ αὐτῇ καθ᾽ αὑτὴν εἰλικρινεῖ τῇ διανοίᾳ χρώμενος αὐτὸ καθ᾽ αὑτὸ εἰλικρινὲς ἕκαστον ἐπιχειροῖ θηρεύειν τῶν ὄντων, ἀπαλλαγεὶς ὅτι μάλιστα ὀφθαλμῶν τε καὶ ὤτων καὶ ὡς ἔπος εἰπεῖν σύμπαντος τοῦ σώματος, ὡς ταράττοντος καὶ οὐκ ἐῶντος τὴν ψυχὴν κτήσασθαι ἀλήθειάν τε καὶ φρόνησιν ὅταν κοινωνῇ; ἆρ᾽ οὐχ οὗτός ἐστιν, ὦ Σιμμία, εἴπερ τις [καὶ] ἄλλος ὁ τευξόμενος τοῦ ὄντος;*

αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἀλήθεια, ἡ: truth, 7
δια-νοέομαι: to think, consider, intend, 6
διάνοια, ἡ: thought, intention, purpose, 6
ἐάω: to permit, allow, let be, suffer, 9
εἰλικρινής, -ές: unmixed, pure, simple, 4
ἐπι-χειρέω: put one's hand on, attempt, try, 8
ἔπος, -εος, τό: a word, 4
ἐφ-έλκω: to draw on, pull in, 1
θηρεύω: to hunt, chase, 1
κοινωνέω: to associate with, partake in (dat) 4
κτάομαι: to procure, get, gain, acquire, 6
λογισμός, ὁ: reasoning, calculation; account 3
μή-τε: and not, neither...nor, 15
οὖς, ὠτος, τό: ear, 2
ὀφθαλμός, ὁ: the eye, 3
ὄψις, -εως, ἡ: vision, appearance, form; face, 6
παρα-τίθημι: to place beside, provide, offer, 1
σύμπας, -πασα, -παν: all together, 2
ταράττω: to trouble, stir, agitate, 6
φρόνησις, -εως, ἡ: intelligence, wisdom, prudence, 15
χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.) 11

5 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
6 **ἂν...ποιήσειεν**: *would…*; 3s potential aor. opt.; i.e. consider each thing itself
καθαρώματα: superlative adv.
7 **ὅτι μάλιστα**: *as…as possible*; as often when ὅτι or ὡς is followed by a superlative
αὐτῇ...διανοίᾳ: *with reason itself*; means
ἴοι: *should approach*; pres. opt., equiv. to a future less vivid (εἰ + opt., ἄν + opt.)
ἐφ᾽ ἕκαστον: *to each thing, upon each thing*
8 **μήτε...μήτε**: *neither…nor*; conditional force
ἐν τῷ διανοεῖσθαι: articular inf.
66a1 **μηδεμίαν**: *not even one*
2 **αὐτῇ καθ᾽ (ἑ)αυτὴν**: *itself by itself*
εἰλικρινέ-ι: 3rd decl. adjective, dat. sg.
εἰλικρινὲς: 3rd decl. adjective, neut. acc. sg.
3 **ἐπιχειροῖ**: *should attempt*; parallel to ἴοι
τῶν ὄντων: *of the things which are*; partitive gen. with ἕκαστον
ἀπαλλαγεὶς: nom. sg. aor. passive pple
4 **ὀφθαλμῶν**: *from…*; gen. of separation
ὡς ἔπος εἰπεῖν: *so to speak*; 'so to speak a word'
5 **ὡς...**: *on the grounds that…*; or 'since…' ὡς + pple expresses alleged cause
ἐῶντος: gen. sg. pple ἐάω
6 **κοινωνῇ**: *(the soul) shares in (these things)*; 3rd sg. subj. in the protasis of a present general condition
7 **εἴπερ τις...ἄλλος**: *if in fact anyone else,*
ὁ τευξόμενος: fut. mid. pple τυγχάνω + partitive gen.; see p. 20
τοῦ οντος: *that which is*; or 'what is'

ὑπερφυῶς, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας, ὡς ἀληθῆ λέγεις, ὦ Σώκρατες. 10

οὐκοῦν ἀνάγκη, ἔφη, ἐκ πάντων τούτων παρίστασθαι b
δόξαν τοιάνδε τινὰ τοῖς γνησίως φιλοσόφοις, ὥστε καὶ πρὸς
ἀλλήλους τοιαῦτα ἄττα λέγειν, ὅτι ‘κινδυνεύει τοι ὥσπερ
ἀτραπός τις ἐκφέρειν ἡμᾶς μετὰ τοῦ λόγου ἐν τῇ σκέψει,
ὅτι, ἕως ἂν τὸ σῶμα ἔχωμεν καὶ συμπεφυρμένη ᾖ ἡμῶν ἡ 5
ψυχὴ μετὰ τοιούτου κακοῦ, οὐ μή ποτε κτησώμεθα ἱκανῶς
οὗ ἐπιθυμοῦμεν· φαμὲν δὲ τοῦτο εἶναι τὸ ἀληθές. μυρίας
μὲν γὰρ ἡμῖν ἀσχολίας παρέχει τὸ σῶμα διὰ τὴν ἀναγκαίαν
τροφήν· ἔτι δέ, ἄν τινες νόσοι προσπέσωσιν, ἐμποδίζουσιν c
ἡμῶν τὴν τοῦ ὄντος θήραν. ἐρώτων δὲ καὶ ἐπιθυμιῶν καὶ

ἀ-σχολία, ἡ: task business, occupation, 3
ἀ-τραπός, ἡ: path-way, road (of no turns), 1
γνήσιος, -α, -ον: genuine, legitimate, true, 1
δόξα, ἡ: opinion, reputation, honor, glory, 7
ἐκ-φέρω: to carry out, bring forth, produce, 2
ἐν-ποδίζω: to hinder, impede, 1
ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for, (gen.) 10
ἐπι-θυμία, ἡ: desire, longing, yearning, 10
ἔρως, ἔρωτος, ὁ: passion, lust, love, 2
ἕως: until, as long as, 15
θήρα, ἡ: hunt, chase, 1
κινδυνεύω: to risk, venture; it is likely, 7
κτάομαι: to procure, get, gain, acquire, 6
μυρίος, -η, -ον: countless, infinite, 6
νόσος, ὁ: illness, sickness, 5
παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16
παρ-ίστημι: to present, offer, set near, 3
προσ-πίπτω: to fall upon, 1
σκέπτομαι: look at, examine, consider, 9
συμ-φύρω: knead together, 1
τοι: ya know, let me tell you, surely, 4
τροφή, ἡ: fostering, rearing, food; 4
ὑπερφυῶς: extraordinarily, remarkably, 3
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18

9 **ὑπερφυῶς...ὡς**: *(it is) extraordinary how*; ὑπερφυές ἐστιν ὡς, nominative predicate is often attracted by the adverb ὡς
ἀληθῆ: ἀληθέ-α, acc. neut. pl.
b1 **ἀνάγκη (ἐστίν)**: supply verb
ἐκ...: i.e. as a result of what has been said
2 **τοῖς...φιλοσόφοις**: *for…*; dat. of interest governed by ἀνάγκη ἐστίν
ὥστε...λέγειν: *so as to…*; result clause
ἄττα: *some*; alternate to indefinite τινά
ὅτι: *(namely) that…*
3 **κινδυνεῦει...ὅτι**: *it looks as though…that*; ‘it runs the risk…’ impersonal
4 **ἐκφέρειν**: *to carry us out*; inf. of purpose
5 **ὅτι**: *that…*
ἂν...ἔχωμεν: ἄν + subj., indefinite temporal clause
συμπεφυρμένη ᾖ: periphrastic pf. pass. subjunctive (pf. pass. pple + 3s. pres. subj. εἰμί) in the same temporal clause
6 **κακοῦ**: *base thing*; i.e. the body, neuter
οὐ μή...κτησόμεθα: *we will not ever possess*; οὐ μή + aor. subj. expressing a strong denial (translate as a future)
7 **οὗ**: *that which*; relative, missing antecedent is object of κτησώμεθα
φαμὲν: 1p pres. φημί
8 **διὰ**: *on account of…*; + acc.
c1 **ἔτι δέ**: i.e. in addition, besides
ἄν: *if…*; ἐὰν + subj in a pres. general condition (εἰ ἄν + subj., pres. indicate)
προσπέσωσιν: aor. subj. προσ-πίπτω
2 **τοῦ ὄντος**: *of what is*; objective gen.
ἐρωτῶν: gen. pl. ἔρως

φόβων καὶ εἰδώλων παντοδαπῶν καὶ φλυαρίας ἐμπίμπλησιν ἡμᾶς πολλῆς, ὥστε τὸ λεγόμενον ὡς ἀληθῶς τῷ ὄντι ὑπ' αὐτοῦ οὐδὲ φρονῆσαι ἡμῖν ἐγγίγνεται οὐδέποτε οὐδέν. καὶ γὰρ πολέμους καὶ στάσεις καὶ μάχας οὐδὲν ἄλλο παρέχει ἢ τὸ σῶμα καὶ αἱ τούτου ἐπιθυμίαι. διὰ γὰρ τὴν τῶν χρημάτων κτῆσιν πάντες οἱ πόλεμοι γίγνονται, τὰ δὲ χρήματα **d** ἀναγκαζόμεθα κτᾶσθαι διὰ τὸ σῶμα, δουλεύοντες τῇ τούτου θεραπείᾳ· καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἀσχολίαν ἄγομεν φιλοσοφίας πέρι διὰ πάντα ταῦτα. τὸ δ' ἔσχατον πάντων ὅτι, ἐάν τις ἡμῖν καὶ σχολὴ γένηται ἀπ' αὐτοῦ καὶ τραπώμεθα πρὸς τὸ σκοπεῖν τι, ἐν ταῖς ζητήσεσιν αὖ πανταχοῦ παραπῖπτον θόρυβον παρέχει καὶ ταραχὴν καὶ ἐκπλήττει, ὥστε μὴ

ἄγω: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 12
ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 10
ἀ-σχολία ἡ: business, occupation, no leisure 3
δουλεύω: to be a slave, be subject to (dat) 3
ἐγ-γίγνομαι: be inborn; *impers*. be possible, 6
εἴδωλον, τό: phantom, illusion, likeness, 2
ἐκ-πλήττω: to expell, strike away from, 1
ἐμ-πίπλημι: to fill up (acc.) with (gen), 1
ἐπιθυμία, ἡ: desire, longing, yearning, 10
ἔσχατος, -η, -ον: extreme, last, furthest, 5
ζήτησις, εως, ἡ: seeking, examining, 3
θεραπεία, ἡ: service; care, fostering, 1
θόρυβος, ὁ: din, noise, uproar, 1
κτάομαι: to procure, get, gain, acquire, 6
κτῆσις, -εως, ἡ: possession, acquisition, 3
μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight, combat, 1
οὐδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 11
παντα-χοῦ: everywhere, in all places, 3
παντο-δαπός, -ή, -όν: of every kind or sort, 3
παρα-πίπτω: to fall beside or alongside, 1
πόλεμος, ὁ: battle, fight, war, 2
στάσις, -εως, ἡ: discord, sedition, division, 1
σχολή, ἡ: leisure, rest; **σχολῇ**, scarcely, 3
ταραχή, ἡ: trouble, disorder, confusion, 1
τρέπω: to turn, 4
φιλο-σοφία, ἡ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13
φλυαρία, ἡ: nonsense, silly talk, foolery, 1
φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic, 10
φρονέω: to think, to be wise, prudent, 2
χρῆμα, -ατος, τό: thing, money, possessions 6

3 **ἐμπίμπλησιν**: 3rd sg. pres. + partitive gen.
4 **πολλῆς**: governs fem. gen. sg. φλυαρίας
ὥστε...ἐγγίγνεται: *so that…it is possible*;
τὸ λεγόμενον: *as the saying goes*; 'in respect to what is said,' acc. respect
ὡ ἀληθῶς: *truly*
τῷ ὄντι: *(and) really*; as often, the dat. of the pple εἰμί is adverbial in sense
5 **ὑπ(ὸ)**: *because of…*; gen. of cause
οὐδὲ...οὐδέποτε οὐδέν: *not…ever anything*; English prefers to avoid double negatives, οὐδέν is object of inf. φρονῆσαι
καὶ γὰρ: *for in fact*; καί is adverbial
7 **τούτου**: *of this*; i.e. body; subjective gen.
διὰ...: *on account of…*; + acc.

d1 **τούτου**: *for this*; objective gen.
2 **ἐκ**: i.e. because of…, as a result of…
ἀσχολίαν ἀγομεν: *we have no leisure*; 'we keep no leisure', in contrast to σχολή, 'leisure,' in line 4 below
φιλοσοφίας πέρι: περὶ φιλοσοφίας
3 **τὸ ἔσχατον (ἐστί)**: *the worst…is…*
ἐὰν...γένηται, τραπώμεθα: aor. subj. γίγνομαι, τρέπω, pres. general condition
4 **ἡμῖν...γένηται**: *we have*; dat. of possession
καὶ: *actually*; or 'in fact', adverbial καί
τὸ σκοπεῖν: *considering*; articular inf.
5 **(τὸ σῶμα) παραπῖπτον**: *(the body) falling in…*; nom. sg. neut. pple modifies σῶμα

δύνασθαι ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ καθορᾶν τἀληθές. ἀλλὰ τῷ ὄντι ἡμῖν δέδεικται ὅτι, εἰ μέλλομέν ποτε καθαρῶς τι εἴσεσθαι, ἀπαλλακτέον αὐτοῦ καὶ αὐτῇ τῇ ψυχῇ θεατέον αὐτὰ τὰ e
πράγματα· καὶ τότε, ὡς ἔοικεν, ἡμῖν ἔσται οὗ ἐπιθυμοῦμέν τε καί φαμεν ἐρασταὶ εἶναι, φρονήσεως, ἐπειδὰν τελευτήσωμεν, ὡς ὁ λόγος σημαίνει, ζῶσιν δὲ οὔ. εἰ γὰρ μὴ οἷόν τε μετὰ τοῦ σώματος μηδὲν καθαρῶς γνῶναι, δυοῖν θάτερον, 5
ἢ οὐδαμοῦ ἔστιν κτήσασθαι τὸ εἰδέναι ἢ τελευτήσασιν· τότε γὰρ αὐτὴ καθ᾽ αὑτὴν ἡ ψυχὴ ἔσται χωρὶς τοῦ σώματος, 67
πρότερον δ᾽ οὔ. καὶ ἐν ᾧ ἂν ζῶμεν, οὕτως, ὡς ἔοικεν, ἐγγυτάτω ἐσόμεθα τοῦ εἰδέναι, ἐὰν ὅτι μάλιστα μηδὲν ὁμιλῶμεν τῷ σώματι μηδὲ κοινωνῶμεν, ὅτι μὴ πᾶσα ἀνάγκη,

---

ἀπ-αλλακτέος, -ον: to be released, 1
γιγνώσκω: learn to know, to learn, realize 12
δείκνυμι: to show, indicate, point out, 1
δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 15
ἐγγυτάτω (ἐγγύτατα): very near to (gen) 3
ἐν-θυμέομαι: to take to heart, ponder, 2
ἐραστής, -οῦ, ὁ: a lover, 2
θεατέος, -ον: to be seen, 1
καθ-οράω: to look down, perceive, 4
κοινωνέω: to associate with, partake in, 4
κτάομαι: to procure, get, gain, acquire, 6
μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
ὁμιλέω, ἡ: be in company with, consort with 1
οὐδαμοῦ: nowhere, in no way, 5
πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18
σημαίνω: indicate, point out, show by a sign 2
φρόνησις ἡ: intelligence, wisdom prudence 15
χωρίς: separately; apart from, without (gen) 6

7 **δύνασθαι**: *so as not to…*; result clause
ὑπ(ὸ): *because of…*; gen. of cause
καθορᾶν: καθορά-ειν, α-contract inf.
τἀληθές: τὸ ἀληθές
τῷ ὄντι: *really, actually*; adv. formed from the pres. pple εἰμί
8 **δέδεικται**: *it…*; impers. pf. pass. δείκνυμι
εἴσεσθαι: fut. dep. inf. οἶδα
e1 **ἀπαλλακτέον (ἐστίν)...θεατέον (ἐστίν)**: *the soul itself must be released…must see*; 'it is to be released...' impersonal, verbal adjs. + εἰμί express obligation or necessity and govern a dat. of agent, αὑτῇ τῇ ψυχῇ
αὐτοῦ: *from it*; i.e. body; gen. of separation
αὐτὰ: *themselves*; intensive pronoun
2 **ὡς ἔοικεν**: *as it is likely*; parenthetical
ἡμῖν ἔσται: *we will have*; dat. of possession
οὗ: *that (for) which*; relative, the antecedent is missing; obj. of ἐπιθυμοῦμεν, ἐρασταὶ
φαμεν: *we claim*
3 **φρονήσεως**: gen. in apposition to οὗ...εἶναι
ὡς...: *as…*; parenthetical
4 **ζῶσιν δὲ οὔ**: *but not to (us while) living*; ζά-ουσιν, dat. pl. pres. pple ζάω pple
οἷόν τε (ἐστι): *it is not possible*; a common idiom, here used impersonally: οἷος τε + εἰμί often means 'to be able' or 'to be fit to'
5 **γνῶναι**: aor. inf. γιγνώσκω
δυοῖν θάτερον: *one of two things (occur);* θάτερον = τὸ ἕτερον, dual gen. δυό
6 **ἢ...ἔστιν...ἢ**: *either it is possible…or*; ἐστί is written ἔστι when expressing possibility
τελευτήσασιν: *(only for us when) dead*; dat. pl. aor. pple modifies missing ἡμῖν
67a1 **αὐτὴ κατ(ὰ) αὑτην**: *itself by itself*
ἔσται, ἐσόμεθα: 3s and 1p fut. dep. εἰμί
2 **ἐν ᾧ**: *in whatever (time)*; temporal
ὡς ἔοικεν: *as it is likely*; parenthetical
3 **τοῦ εἰδέναι**: *knowing*; articular inf. οἶδα
ὅτι μάλιστα: *as…as possible*; + superlative
μηδὲν: *not at all*; inner acc.
4 **ὅ τι μὴ..**: *except absolute necessity*; S 2765

μηδὲ ἀναπιμπλώμεθα τῆς τούτου φύσεως, ἀλλὰ καθαρεύωμεν ἀπ᾽ αὐτοῦ, ἕως ἂν ὁ θεὸς αὐτὸς ἀπολύσῃ ἡμᾶς· καὶ οὕτω μὲν καθαροὶ ἀπαλλαττόμενοι τῆς τοῦ σώματος ἀφροσύνης, ὡς τὸ εἰκὸς μετὰ τοιούτων τε ἐσόμεθα καὶ γνωσόμεθα δι᾽ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν πᾶν τὸ εἰλικρινές, τοῦτο δ᾽ ἐστὶν ἴσως τὸ ἀληθές· μὴ καθαρῷ γὰρ καθαροῦ ἐφάπτεσθαι μὴ οὐ θεμιτὸν ᾖ.᾽ τοιαῦτα οἶμαι, ὦ Σιμμία, ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι πρὸς ἀλλήλους λέγειν τε καὶ δοξάζειν πάντας τοὺς ὀρθῶς φιλομαθεῖς. ἢ οὐ δοκεῖ σοι οὕτως;

παντός γε μᾶλλον, ὦ Σώκρατες.

οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Σωκράτης, εἰ ταῦτα ἀληθῆ, ὦ ἑταῖρε, πολλὴ ἐλπὶς ἀφικομένῳ οἷ ἐγὼ πορεύομαι, ἐκεῖ ἱκανῶς,

---

ἀνα-πίμπλημι: fill up, fill full of (gen), 1
ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15
ἀπο-λύω: to loosen up or from, release, 2
ἀ-φροσύνη, ἡ: folly, senselessness, 1
γιγνώσκω: learn to know, to learn, realize 12
δοξάζω: to think, opine, suppose, imagine, 3
εἰκός, ὁτος, τό: likely, probable, reasonable 18
εἰλικρινής, -ές: unmixed, pure, simple, 4
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ: hope, expectation, 9
ἑταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate, 11
ἐφ-άπτω: lay hold of, grasp onto (gen.), 5
ἕως: until, as long as, 15
θεμιτός, -ή, -όν: lawful, right, righteous, 4
καθαρεύω: to be clean, be pure from, 2
οἷ: to where, 1
πορεύομαι: to travel, journey, march, 7
φιλό-μαθής, -ές: pursuer of learning, 5
φύσις, -εως, ἡ: nature, character; form, 11

5 **ἀναπιμπλώμεθα...καθαρεύωμεν**: pres. subjunctives are part of the fut. more vivid condition (ἐάν) starting in l. 3
6 **ἀπὸ**: *from…*; i.e. body, gen. of separation
ἂν...ἀπολύσῃ: *releases*; 3rd sg. aor. subj. ἀπο-λύω in an indefinite temporal clause
7 **τῆς...ἀφρονύνης**: *from…*; gen. separation
ὡς τὸ εἰκὸς: *as (it is) likely*; parenthetical
8 **τοιούτων**: i.e. the καθαροί
ἐσόμεθα: fut. deponent εἰμί
ἡμῶν αὐτῶν: *ourselves*; reflexive
b1 **τοῦτο δ᾽**: *and this…*; neuter subject
2 **μὴ καθαρῷ**: *for the impure*; dat. interest
μὴ οὐ...ᾖ: *perhaps it is not right*; μὴ οὐ + subj. expressing doubtful negation, εἰμί
οἶμαι:. οἴομαι
3 **ἀναγκαῖον**: *that it…*; ind. disc. with οἶμαι
4 **πάντας...φιλομαθεῖς**: acc. subject
6 **παντός**: *than…*; gen. of comparison
γε: *yes*; or 'indeed,' in affirmation
7 **ταῦτα**: supply linking verb ἐστί, 'are'
8 **ἐλπὶς**: *there is…*; supply linking ἐστίν
ἀφικομένῳ: *for (me) arriving*; modifies a missing dat. likely ἐμοί in this context
οἷ: *to where*; relative adverb
ἱκανῶς: modifies κτήσασθαι

εἴπερ που ἄλλοθι, κτήσασθαι τοῦτο οὗ ἕνεκα ἡ πολλὴ πραγματεία ἡμῖν ἐν τῷ παρελθόντι βίῳ γέγονεν, ὥστε ἥ γε ἀποδημία ἡ νῦν μοι προστεταγμένη μετὰ ἀγαθῆς ἐλπίδος γίγνεται καὶ ἄλλῳ ἀνδρὶ ὃς ἡγεῖταί οἱ παρεσκευάσθαι τὴν διάνοιαν ὥσπερ κεκαθαρμένην.

πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας.

κάθαρσις δὲ εἶναι ἆρα οὐ τοῦτο συμβαίνει, ὅπερ πάλαι ἐν τῷ λόγῳ λέγεται, τὸ χωρίζειν ὅτι μάλιστα ἀπὸ τοῦ σώματος τὴν ψυχὴν καὶ ἐθίσαι αὐτὴν καθ' αὑτὴν παντα-χόθεν ἐκ τοῦ σώματος συναγείρεσθαί τε καὶ ἀθροίζεσθαι, καὶ οἰκεῖν κατὰ τὸ δυνατὸν καὶ ἐν τῷ νῦν παρόντι καὶ ἐν τῷ ἔπειτα μόνην καθ' αὑτήν, ἐκλυομένην ὥσπερ ἐκ δεσμῶν ἐκ

ἀθροίζω: to gather, collect, muster, 2
ἄλλο-θι: in another place, elsewhere, 7
ἀπο-δημία, ἡ: journey abroad, being abroad, 2
δεσμός, ὁ: a binding, bond, fetter, 2
διάνοια, ἡ: thought, intention, purpose, 6
δυνατός, -ή, -όν: capable, strong, possible, 8
ἐθίζω: to accustom, use, 2
ἐκ-λύω: to set free, 1
ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ: hope, expectation, 9
ἕνεκα: for the sake of, (+ preceding gen.) 13
καθ-αίρω: to cleanse, purify, 4
κάθαρσις, -εως, ἡ: cleansing, purifying, 2
κτάομαι: to procure, get, gain, acquire, 6
οἰκέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 15
πάλαι: for some time, long ago, of old, 13
παντα-χόθεν: from every side, 1
παρ-έρχομαι: to go pass, enter, 5
παρα-σκευάζω: to get ready, prepare, 8
πραγματεία, ἡ: diligent work, business, 3
προσ-τάττω: to order, assign, appoint, 5
συμ-βαίνω: to happen, occur, result, 8
συν-άγειρω: gather together, assemble, 1
χωρίζω: to separate, sever, divide, 3

9 **εἴπερ που ἄλλοθι**: *if anywhere else*; parenthetical, see also 65c2
κτήσασθαι: *to take possession of*; following ἐλπὶς (ἐστι); verbs of expecting and wishing take a fut. inf. in ind. disc. or, as here, an aor. or pres. inf. as a objective inf., i.e. I hope to possess; S 1868,
οὗ ἕνεκα: *for the sake of which*; relative
10 **παρελθόντι**: *past*; aor pple. παρ-έρχομαι
γέγονεν: pf. γίγνομαι
c1 **γε**: *indeed*; emphasizes. ἡ ἀποδημία
προστεταγμένη: pf. pass. προσ-τάττω
2 **ἄλλῳ ἀνδρὶ**: parallel to μοι
ὃς ἡγεῖται...διάνοιαν: *who believes that his mind has been prepared…*; οἱ is a 3rd pers. pronoun, here dat. of possession; διάνοιαν is acc. subject; and the inf. is pf. pass.
3 **ὥσπερ κεκαθαρμενήν**: *on the grounds that it has been purified*; 'just as if…' + pf. pass. pple καθαίρω
4 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
5 **εἶναι...συμβάινει**: *happen to be…*
ἆρα οὐ: *does not…?*; anticipates 'yes' reply
6 **λέγεται**: *has been said*; πάλαι + pres. suggests a pf. progressive sense
τὸ χωρίζειν...καὶ ἐθίσαι…οἰκεῖν: *that the soul…*; three articular infinitives in apposition to τοῦτο; ψυχὴν is acc. subject
ὅτι μάλιστα: *as…as possible*; + superlative
7 **αὐτὴν καθ' αὑτὴν**: see p. 26
8 **συναγείρεσθαί..ἀθροίζεστθαι**: with ἐθίσαι
9 **κατὰ τὸ δυνατὸν**: *inasmuch as possible*
ἐν τῷ...παρόντι: *in the present*; pres. pple
ἐν τῷ ἔπειτα: *in the future*

τοῦ σώματος;

πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη.

οὐκοῦν τοῦτό γε θάνατος ὀνομάζεται, λύσις καὶ χωρισμὸς
5 *ψυχῆς ἀπὸ σώματος;*

παντάπασί γε, ἦ δ' ὅς.

λύειν δέ γε αὐτήν, ὥς φαμεν, προθυμοῦνται ἀεὶ μάλιστα καὶ μόνοι οἱ φιλοσοφοῦντες ὀρθῶς, καὶ τὸ μελέτημα αὐτὸ τοῦτό ἐστιν τῶν φιλοσόφων, λύσις καὶ χωρισμὸς ψυχῆς
10 *ἀπὸ σώματος· ἢ οὔ;*

φαίνεται.

οὐκοῦν, ὅπερ ἐν ἀρχῇ ἔλεγον, γελοῖον ἂν εἴη ἄνδρα
e *παρασκευάζονθ' ἑαυτὸν ἐν τῷ βίῳ ὅτι ἐγγυτάτω ὄντα τοῦ*

ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning; rule, office, 8
γελοῖος, -α, -ον: laughable, ridiculous, 2
ἐγγυτάτω (ἐγγύτατα): very near to (gen) 3
λύσις, εως, ἡ: releasing, deliverance, 4
λύω: to loosen, dissolve, break up, 7
μελέτημα -ατος τό: practice, exercise, study 1
ὀνομάζω: to name, call by name, 6
παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15
παρα-σκευάζω: to get ready, prepare, 8
προ-θυμέομαι: to be eager, zealous, ready, 12
φιλο-σοφέω: seek knowledge, philosophize, 6
χωρισμός, ὁ: separation, division, 2

2 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
4 **τοῦτο γε**: *this*; γε is emphatic and may be expressed by accentuating the word 'this' or translated as 'indeed' or 'in fact'
6 **γε**: *indeed*; emphatic and affirmative
7 **δὲ γέ**: γε emphasizes λύειν
αὐτήν: i.e. the soul; acc. direct object
ὥς φαμεν: *as…*; parenthetical
μάλιστα καὶ μόνοι: *in particular and they alone…*
9 **τῶν φιλοσόφων**: subjective gen. with τὸ μελέτημα
12 **ὅπερ**: (in *respect to the very thing) which*; or '(as for that) which,' the missing antecedent is an acc. of respect
ἂν εἴη: *would it be…*; 3s potential opt. εἰμί, Socrates is asking a question here
8 **ἄνδρα...ζῆν...ἀγανακτεῖν**: *that a man…*; the acc. subject + inf. construction is the true subject of εἴη
e1 **παρσσκευάζον(τα)**: acc. sg. pres. pple
ὅτι ἐγγυτάτω: *as near as possible to*; + gen; ὅτι + superlative adv., the predicate of the acc. sg. pres. pple εἰμί

τεθνάναι οὕτω ζῆν, κἄπειθ' ἥκοντος αὐτῷ τούτου ἀγανακτεῖν;

γελοῖον· πῶς δ' οὔ;

τῷ ὄντι ἄρα, ἔφη, ὦ Σιμμία, οἱ ὀρθῶς φιλοσοφοῦντες ἀποθνήσκειν μελετῶσι, καὶ τὸ τεθνάναι ἥκιστα αὐτοῖς ἀνθρώπων φοβερόν. ἐκ τῶνδε δὲ σκόπει. εἰ γὰρ διαβέβληνται μὲν πανταχῇ τῷ σώματι, αὐτὴν δὲ καθ' αὑτὴν ἐπιθυμοῦσι τὴν ψυχὴν ἔχειν, τούτου δὲ γιγνομένου εἰ φοβοῖντο καὶ ἀγανακτοῖεν, οὐ πολλὴ ἂν ἀλογία εἴη, εἰ μὴ ἄσμενοι ἐκεῖσε ἴοιεν, οἷ ἀφικομένοις ἐλπίς ἐστιν οὗ διὰ βίου ἥρων τυχεῖν—ἥρων δὲ φρονήσεως—ᾧ τε διεβέβληντο, τούτου ἀπηλλάχθαι συνόντος αὐτοῖς; ἢ ἀνθρωπίνων μὲν παιδικῶν καὶ γυναικῶν καὶ υἱέων ἀποθανόντων πολλοὶ δὴ ἑκόντες

ἀγανακτέω: to be annoyed, be troubled at, 12
ἀ-λογία, ἡ: without reason, unreasonable, 2
ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15
ἄσμενος, -η, -ον: well-pleased, glad, 4
γελοῖος, -α, -ον: laughable, ridiculous, 2
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman, wife, 6
δια-βάλλω: pass over, attack, slander (dat) 2
ἐκεῖ-σε: thither, to that place, 10
ἑκών, ἑκοῦσα, ἑκόν: willing, intentionally, 3
ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ: hope, expectation, 9
ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for, 10
ἐράω: to love, to be in love with (+ gen.) 4
ἥκιστος, -η, -ον: least; not at all, 3
ἥκω: to have come, be present, 14
μελετάω: to care for, practice, study, 5
παιδικα, τά: beloved, (boy, obj. of lover) 2
παντα-χῇ: everywhere, in every way, 3
συν-ειμι: to be with, associate with (dat.), 4
τυγχάνω: chance upon, meet, get; happen, 51
υἱός (ὑος), ὁ: son, 2
φιλο-σοφέω: seek knowledge, philosophize, 6
φοβερός, -ά, -όν: fearful, terrifying, dreadful 1
φοβέω: to terrify, frighten; *mid*. fear, 15
φρόνησις, -εως, ἡ: intelligence, wisdom, 15

2 **τοῦ τεθνάναι**: *being dead*; articular inf. the pf. θνῇσκω denotes a state not action
ζῆν: inf. ζάω
κἄπει(τα): καὶ ἔπειτα
ἥκοντος...τούτου: *this coming to him*; i.e. death, gen. abs., pple ἥκω
3 **πῶς δ'οὔ**: *how (could it) not*
4 **τῷ ὄντι**: *really, actually*; adverbial
5 **ἀποθνήσκειν**: *dying*; complementary inf., the pres. inf. suggests an ongoing process of dying; compare to line 2 above
τὸ τεθνάναι (ἐστίν): subject, add verb
ἥκιστα: superlative adv.
6 **ἀνθρώπων**: partitive gen. with ἥκιστα
σκόπει: σκόπε-ε; sg. imperative
διαβέβληνται: 3rd pl. pf. mid. διαβάλλω
8 **τούτου γιγνομένου**: gen. abs., i.e death
9 **εἰ...φοβοῖντο καὶ ἀγανακτοῖεν, ...ἂν εἴη**: *if they should…it would…*; fut. less vivid condition (εἰ opt., ἄν + opt.); opt. εἰμί
εἰ μὴ...ἴοιεν: *if they should not …*; 3rd pl. opt. ἔρχομαι in same less vivid condition
68a1 **οἷ**: *to where…*; relative adv.
ἀφικομένοις: *(for those) when arriving*; i.e. philosophers, dat. of possession
οὗ: *which*; relative, partitive gen. + τυχεῖν
διὰ βίου: *throughout life*
2 **ἥρων**: ἤρά-ον; 3p impf. ἐράω
ᾧ τε διεβέβληντο: *and…which they had slandered*; plpf. mid.; τοῦτο is antecedent
3 **ἀπηλλάχθαι...**: *to be released from this associating with them*; i.e. from the body; pf. pass + separation, governed by ἐλπίς ἐστιν; compare the use of ἐλπίς in 67b5ff.
4 **ἀνθρωπίνων...ἀποθανόντων**: gen. abs.

ἠθέλησαν εἰς Ἅιδου μετελθεῖν, ὑπὸ ταύτης ἀγόμενοι τῆς ἐλπίδος, τῆς τοῦ ὄψεσθαί τε ἐκεῖ ὧν ἐπεθύμουν καὶ συνέσεσθαι· φρονήσεως δὲ ἄρα τις τῷ ὄντι ἐρῶν, καὶ λαβὼν σφόδρα τὴν αὐτὴν ταύτην ἐλπίδα, μηδαμοῦ ἄλλοθι ἐντεύξεσθαι αὐτῇ
b *ἀξίως λόγου ἢ ἐν Ἅιδου, ἀγανακτήσει τε ἀποθνῄσκων καὶ οὐχ ἅσμενος εἶσιν αὐτόσε; οἴεσθαί γε χρή, ἐὰν τῷ ὄντι γε ᾖ, ὦ ἑταῖρε, φιλόσοφος· σφόδρα γὰρ αὐτῷ ταῦτα δόξει, μηδαμοῦ ἄλλοθι καθαρῶς ἐντεύξεσθαι φρονήσει ἀλλ᾽ ἢ ἐκεῖ. εἰ δὲ τοῦτο οὕτως ἔχει, ὅπερ ἄρτι ἔλεγον, οὐ πολλὴ ἂν ἀλογία εἴη εἰ φοβοῖτο τὸν θάνατον ὁ τοιοῦτος;*

πολλὴ μέντοι νὴ Δία, ἦ δ᾽ ὅς.

οὐκοῦν ἱκανόν σοι τεκμήριον, ἔφη, τοῦτο ἀνδρός, ὃν

ἀγανακτέω: to be annoyed, be troubled at, 12
ἄγω: to lead, to bring, to carry, to convey, 12
Ἅιδης, -ου ὁ: Hades, 15
ἄλλο-θι: in another place, elsewhere, 7
ἀ-λογία, ἡ: without reason, unreasonable, 2
ἄξιος, -α, -ον: worthy of, deserving of (gen)15
ἄρτι: just, exactly, 4
ἄσμενος, -η, -ον: well-pleased, glad, 4
αὐτό-σε: to the very place, 1
ἐθέλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ: hope, expectation, 9
ἐν-τυγχάνω: to chance upon, encounter, 5
ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for (gen.) 10
ἐράω: to love, to be in love with, 4
ἑταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate, 11
Ζεύς, ὁ: Zeus, 11
μετ-έρχομαι: to come after, come next, 2
μηδαμοῦ: nowhere, 2
νή: by…(+ acc, invoking a god), 14
σύν-ειμι: to be with, associate with (dat.), 4
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18
τεκμήριον, τό: sign, indication, proof, 5
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18
φοβέω: to terrify, frighten; *mid*. fear, 15
φρόνησις, -εως, ἡ: intelligence, wisdom, 15

5 **εἰς Ἅιδου**: *into (the house) of Hades*
μετελθεῖν: aor. μετέρχομαι
ὑπὸ: *because of…*; gen. of cause
6 **τῆς τοῦ ὄψεσθαι...συνέσεσθαι**: *(namely) the hope of…*; articular infs., fut. dep. ὁράω and fut. dep. σύν-ειμι, in attributive position
ὧν: *(those) whom…*; i.e. those having died, the missing antecedent is obj. of both infs.
7 **τῷ ὄντι**: *really, actually*; adverbial
ἐρῶν: nom. sg. pres. pple ἐράω + gen.
8 **αὐτὴν**: *same*
μηδαμοῦ...ἐντεύξεσθαι: *that (he) will encounter* + dat.; ind. disc. with fut. inf. (ἐν-τυγχάνω) often follows ἐλπίς
b1 **ἀξίως λόγου**: *worthily of mention*
ἢ: *than*
ἐν Ἅιδου: in *(the house) of Hades*
2 **εἶσιν**: 3s fut. ἔρχομαι (εἶμι)
οἴεσθαι γε χρή: *yes…*; in affirmative reply
τῷ ὄντι γε: *really indeed*; intensive
3 **ᾖ**: 3s pres. subj. εἰμί
δόξει: *will seem good*
4 **μηδαμοῦ...ἐντεύξεσθαι**: *that (he) will encounter* + dat.; ind. disc. with fut. inf. governed by δόξει, compare to line a8
5 **οὕτως ἔχει**: *is so*; see p. 7
6 **ἂν...εἴη, εἰ φοβοῖτο**: *would be, if...should…* future less vivid condition, opt. εἰμί
7 **νὴ Δία**: *by Zeus*; acc. of Ζεύς
8 **τεκμήριον τοῦτο**: *is this sufficient proof…?*

ἂν ἴδῃς ἀγανακτοῦντα μέλλοντα ἀποθανεῖσθαι, ὅτι οὐκ ἄρ᾽ ἦν φιλόσοφος ἀλλά τις φιλοσώματος; ὁ αὐτὸς δέ που c
οὗτος τυγχάνει ὢν καὶ φιλοχρήματος καὶ φιλότιμος, ἤτοι τὰ ἕτερα τούτων ἢ ἀμφότερα.

πάνυ, ἔφη, ἔχει οὕτως ὡς λέγεις.

ἆρ᾽ οὖν, ἔφη, ὦ Σιμμία, οὐ καὶ ἡ ὀνομαζομένη ἀνδρεία 5
τοῖς οὕτω διακειμένοις μάλιστα προσήκει;

πάντως δήπου, ἔφη.

οὐκοῦν καὶ ἡ σωφροσύνη, ἣν καὶ οἱ πολλοὶ ὀνομάζουσι σωφροσύνην, τὸ περὶ τὰς ἐπιθυμίας μὴ ἐπτοῆσθαι ἀλλ᾽ ὀλιγώρως ἔχειν καὶ κοσμίως, ἆρ᾽ οὐ τούτοις μόνοις προσήκει, 10
τοῖς μάλιστα τοῦ σώματος ὀλιγωροῦσίν τε καὶ ἐν φιλοσοφίᾳ ζῶσιν;

ἀγανακτέω: to be annoyed, be troubled at, 12
ἀμφότερος, -α, -ον: each of two, both, 5
ἀνδρεία, ἡ: courage, manliness, bravery, 5
δή-που: of course; perhaps, I suppose, 8
διά-κειμαι: to be disposed, be affected, 3
ἐπιθυμία, ἡ: desire, longing, yearning, 10
ἤτοι: now surely, truly, 4
κόσμιος, -η, -ον: well-ordered, regular, 4
μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
ὀλιγωρέω: esteem little, take no account of (gen), 1
ὀλιγώρως: contemptuous, regardless, 1
ὀνομάζω: to name, call by name, 6
πάντως: entirely, absolutely, 3
προσ-ήκει: it belongs, it is fitting, befits 15
πτοέω: make distraught, terrify, scare, 1
σωφροσύνη, ἡ: temperence, prudence, 8
φιλο-σοφία, ἡ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18
φιλο-σώματος, -ον: pursuer of the body, 1
φιλο-τιμος, -ον: pursuer of honor, ambitious 2
φιλο-χρήματος, -ον: pursuer of money, 1

8 **ἀνδρὸς...ὅτι...ἦν**: *that the man was..*; 'of the man that…was,' proleptic use of ἀνδρὸς, which is the proper subject of ἦν, impf. εἰμί
ὃν ἃ ἴδῃς: *whomever…*; ἄν + aor. subj. εἶδον in an indefinite relative clause,
9 **μέλλοντα ἀποθανεῖσθαι**: (*because he was) going to…*; pple governs a fut. inf. and is causal in sense: it explains ἀγανακτοῦντα
ἄρα ἦν: *the man was not, it turns out,*; ἄρα + impf. (here, εἰμί) is used for a truth just realized, otherwise know as the ἄρα of enlightenment (GP 36-37)
c1 **ὁ αὐτὸς**: *the same man*
2 **τυγχανει ὢν**: pple εἰμί, see p. 20
ἤτοι...ἢ: *either, ya know,…or…*; ἤτοι is used instead of ἤ to indicate that the first of the two terms is more probable
τὰ ἕτερα: *one*
3 **ἔχει οὕτως**: *is so*; see p. 7
ἆρ(ὰ)...οὐ: *is not…?*; anticipating a 'yes'
5 **ὀνομαζομένη**: *so-named, so-called*
6 **τοῖς...διακειμένοις**: *to/for those being so disposed*; i.e. philosophers, pres. mid. pple
8 **καὶ**: *also*; adverbial
σωρφοσύνη (ἐστίν): *temperarance (is)*
καὶ οἱ πολλοὶ: *even the masses*; i.e. the general population
9 **τὸ...μὴ ἐπτοῆσθαι**: *not to be…*; articular inf. is the predicate; pf. pass. inf. πτοέω
10 **ἔχειν**: + adv, see p. 7
11 **τοῖς...ὀλιγωροῦσιν...ζῶσιν**: *those…and*; dat. pl. pple ὀλιγωρέω and ζάω

d *ἀνάγκη, ἔφη.*

εἰ γὰρ ἐθέλεις, ἦ δ' ὅς, ἐννοῆσαι τήν γε τῶν ἄλλων ἀνδρείαν τε καὶ σωφροσύνην, δόξει σοι εἶναι ἄτοπος.

πῶς δή, ὦ Σώκρατες;

οἶσθα, ἦ δ' ὅς, ὅτι τὸν θάνατον ἡγοῦνται πάντες οἱ ἄλλοι τῶν μεγάλων κακῶν;

καὶ μάλ', ἔφη.

οὐκοῦν φόβῳ μειζόνων κακῶν ὑπομένουσιν αὐτῶν οἱ ἀνδρεῖοι τὸν θάνατον, ὅταν ὑπομένωσιν;

ἔστι ταῦτα.

τῷ δεδιέναι ἄρα καὶ δέει ἀνδρεῖοί εἰσι πάντες πλὴν οἱ φιλόσοφοι· καίτοι ἄλογόν γε δέει τινὰ καὶ δειλίᾳ ἀνδρεῖον εἶναι.

ἄ-λογος, -ον: without reason or speech, 3
ἀνδρεία, ἡ: manliness, bravery, courage, 5
ἀνδρεῖος, -α, -ον: brave, courageous, manly, 4
ἄ-τοπος, -ον: strange, odd, extraordinary, 9
δείδω: fear, dread, shrink from, feel awe, 11
δειλία, ἡ: cowardice, 1
δέος, δέεος τό: fear, dread, 4
ἐθέλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17
ἐν-νοέω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
καίτοι: and yet, and indeed, and further, 8
μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 10
πλήν: except, but (+ gen.), 7
σωφροσύνη, ἡ: temperence, prudence, 8
ὑπο-μένω: to abide, stay firm; endure, 8
φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic, 10

d1 **ἀνάγκη**: *it is*…; supply a linking verb
2 **γὰρ**: *(yes), for*
ἦ δ'ὅς: see note on pg. 9
ἐννοῆσαι: aor. inf. ἐν-νοέω
τῶ ἄλλων: *of other (men)*
3 **δόξει**: *it will seem*
5 **οἶσθα**: 2s pf. οἶδα, pres. in sense
τῶν μεγάλων κακῶν: *among*…; partitive
7 **καὶ μάλα**: *quite very much*; καί is adverbial
8 **φόβῳ μειζόνων κακῶν**: *because of*…; dat. of cause and objective gen.
αὐτῶν: *among them*; partitive gen.
9 **ὑπομένωσι**: 3p subj. in an indefinite temporal clause
10 **ἔστι**: *are the case*; i.e. are true
11 **τῷ δεδιέναι**: *because of being afraid*; dat. of cause, an articular inf., the pf. δείδω denotes a state rather than a single action
(τῷ) δέει: *because of*…; dat. of cause δέος
εἰσι: 3p pres. εἰμί
12 **ἄλογόν (ἐστι)**: *it is*…; impersonal
δέει…δειλίᾳ: *because of*…; dat. of cause

πάνυ μὲν οὖν. **e**

τί δὲ οἱ κόσμιοι αὐτῶν; οὐ ταὐτὸν τοῦτο πεπόνθασιν· ἀκολασίᾳ τινὶ σώφρονές εἰσιν; καίτοι φαμέν γε ἀδύνατον εἶναι, ἀλλ᾽ ὅμως αὐτοῖς συμβαίνει τούτῳ ὅμοιον τὸ πάθος τὸ περὶ ταύτην τὴν εὐήθη σωφροσύνην· φοβούμενοι γὰρ 5
ἑτέρων ἡδονῶν στερηθῆναι καὶ ἐπιθυμοῦντες ἐκείνων, ἄλλων ἀπέχονται ὑπ᾽ ἄλλων κρατούμενοι. καίτοι καλοῦσί γε ἀκο-
λασίαν τὸ ὑπὸ τῶν ἡδονῶν ἄρχεσθαι, ἀλλ᾽ ὅμως συμβαίνει **69**
αὐτοῖς κρατουμένοις ὑφ᾽ ἡδονῶν κρατεῖν ἄλλων ἡδονῶν. τοῦτο δ᾽ ὅμοιόν ἐστιν ᾧ νυνδὴ ἐλέγετο, τῷ τρόπον τινὰ δι᾽ ἀκολασίαν αὐτοὺς σεσωφρονίσθαι.

ἔοικε γάρ. 5

ἀ-δύνατος, -ον: unable, incapable, impossible, 6
ἀ-κολασία, ἡ: licentiousness, intemperance, 3
ἀπ-έχω: to be distant, keep away from, 5
ἄρχω: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 12
ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for (gen.) 10
εὐ-ήθης, -ες: foolish, simple-natured, silly, 3
ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17
καίτοι: and yet, and indeed, and further, 8
κόσμιος, -η, -ον: well-ordered, regular, 4
κρατέω: to control, be strong, prevail, 3
νυν-δή: just now, 15
ὅμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 13
πάθος -εος τό: experience incident passion 11
στερέω: to deprive from, rob, defraud, 5
συμ-βαίνω: to happen, occur, result, 8
σωφρονίζω: to moderate, make temperate 1
σωφροσύνη, ἡ: temperence, prudence, 8
σώφρων, -οντος: temperate, moderate, 1
τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17
φοβέω: to terrify, frighten; *mid*. fear, 15

e1 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
2 **τί δὲ**: *what about…*
αὐτῶν: *among them*; partitive gen.
ταὐτὸν: *the same*; τὸ αὐτὸν
πεπόνθασιν: 3p pf. πάσχω
3 **ἀκολασίᾳ τινὶ**: *because of…*; dat. of cause
εἰσιν: 3p pres. εἰμί
καίτοι...γε: *and yet…of course*; γε emphasizes the intervening word; 3p φημί
ἀδύνατον εἶναι: *that it is*…; ind. disc. is here impersonal, ἀδύνατον is neut. sg.
4 **αὐτοῖς**: *for them*; dat. of interest
τούτῳ ὅμοιον: *similar (result) to this*; inner acc. governs a dat., τούτῳ refers to the statement beginning with φοβούμενοι
τὸ πάθος...σωφροσύνην: *their experience regarding this simple-minded temperance*; subject of συμβαίνει; περὶ...σωφρονσύνην in the attributive position; εὐήθεα is acc. sg.
5 **ἑτέρων ἡδονῶν**: *from*…; gen. separation
6 **στερηθῆναι**: aor. pass. inf. στερέω
ἄλλων... ὑπ᾽ ἄλλων: *from some things… because of other things*; gen. of separation and gen. of cause
7 **καίτοι...γε**: see line 3 above
καλοῦσι: *they call (x) (y)*; governs a double accusative
69a1 **τὸ...ἄρχεσθαι**: articular inf., pass. inf.
ὑπὸ: *by*…; gen. agent
συμβαίνει: *it happens for…*; impersonal
2 **κρατουμένοις**: (*since) being…;* causal
3 **ᾧ**: *to (that) which*…; . following ὅμοιον
τῷ...σεσωφρονίσθαι: *(namely) that they are being temperate*; articular pf. inf. in apposition to the dative object of ὅμοιον
τρόπον τινὰ: *in some way*; adv. acc.
5 **ἔοικε γὰρ**: *(yes) for it seems so*

ὦ μακάριε Σιμμία, μὴ γὰρ οὐχ αὕτη ᾖ ἡ ὀρθὴ πρὸς ἀρετὴν ἀλλαγή, ἡδονὰς πρὸς ἡδονὰς καὶ λύπας πρὸς λύπας καὶ φόβον πρὸς φόβον καταλλάττεσθαι, καὶ μείζω πρὸς ἐλάττω ὥσπερ νομίσματα, ἀλλ᾽ ᾖ ἐκεῖνο μόνον τὸ νόμισμα ὀρθόν, ἀντὶ οὗ δεῖ πάντα ταῦτα καταλλάττεσθαι, φρόνησις,
b *καὶ τούτου μὲν πάντα καὶ μετὰ τούτου ὠνούμενά τε καὶ πιπρασκόμενα τῷ ὄντι ᾖ καὶ ἀνδρεία καὶ σωφροσύνη καὶ δικαιοσύνη καὶ συλλήβδην ἀληθὴς ἀρετή, μετὰ φρονήσεως, καὶ προσγιγνομένων καὶ ἀπογιγνομένων καὶ ἡδονῶν καὶ φόβων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων πάντων τῶν τοιούτων· χωριζόμενα δὲ φρονήσεως καὶ ἀλλαττόμενα ἀντὶ ἀλλήλων μὴ σκιαγραφία τις ᾖ ἡ τοιαύτη ἀρετὴ καὶ τῷ ὄντι ἀνδραποδώδης τε*

ἀλλαγή, ἡ: exchange, change, 1
ἀλλάττω: to change, alter; exchange, 1
ἀνδραποδώδης, -ες: slavish, servile, 1
ἀνδρεία, ἡ: manliness, bravery, courage, 5
ἀντί: instead of, in place of (+ gen.), 3
ἀπο-γίγνομαι, ἡ: to go away, be absent, 1
ἀρετή, ἡ: excellence, goodness, virtue, 9
δικαιοσύνη, ἡ: justice, righteousness, 4
ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17
κατα-αλλάττω: to exchange, change, 1
λύπη, ἡ: pain, grief, 8
μακάριος, -α, -ον: blessed, happy, 1
νόμισμα, τό: coin; *else* custom, institution, 2
πιπράσκω: to sell, 1
προσ-γίγνομαι: to come to, or in addtion, 4
σκια-γραφία, ἡ: scene-painting, 1
συλλήβδην: collectively, in sum, in short, 2
σωφροσύνη, ἡ: temperence, prudence, 8
φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic, 10
φρόνησις, -εως, ἡ: intelligence, wisdom, 15
χωρίζω: to separate, sever, divide, 3
ὠνέομαι: to buy, purchase, 1

6 **μακάριε Σιμμία**: vocative, direct address
μὴ...οὐχ...ᾖ: *perhaps…is not*…; μὴ οὐχ + subj. (3s εἰμί) in a doubtful negation
γὰρ: *(I say this) because…*
πρὸς ἀρετὴν ἀλλαγή: *exchange for excellence*
7 **πρὸς...πρὸς**: *for…for…for*
μείζο(ν)α: neuter acc. pl. comparative μειζων or possibly acc. sg. 3rd decl.
8 **ἐλάττο(ν)α**: neuter acc. pl. comparative ἐλάττων or possibly acc. sg. 3rd decl.
9 **ἀλλ᾽ ᾖ**: *but…is*…; 3s subj. εἰμί in the same doubtful assertion/negative from line 6; ἐκεῖνο νόμισμα ὀρθόν, 'coinage' is the subject and φρόνησις is the predicate
ἐκείνο...ὀρθόν: aor. inf. ἐν-νοέω
10 **ἀντὶ οὗ**: *in return for which*…; i.e. in an exchange; relative pronoun gen. sg.
b1 **τούτου...καὶ μετὰ τούτου**: *for this (price) and with this*; gen. of value and accompaniment
πάντα...τε καὶ: *all things both…and…;* neut. pl. subject of 3s verb
2 **τῷ ὄντι**: *really, actually*; adv.
ᾖ: *is*…; 3rd sg. subj. εἰμί in the same doubtful assertion/negative from line 6
4 **προσγιγνομένων...τοιούτων**: *while*…; gen. of absolute
5 **χωριζόμενα δὲ**: *but (all things) being separated from…*; + gen. of separation
6 **ἀντὶ**: *for*…; 'in return for…'
μὴ...ᾖ: *perhaps…is*; doubtful assertion (note μὴ οὐ + subj. is doubtful negation)
τῷ ὄντι: *really, actually*; adv.

καὶ οὐδὲν ὑγιὲς οὐδ᾽ ἀληθὲς ἔχῃ, τὸ δ᾽ ἀληθὲς τῷ ὄντι ᾖ
κάθαρσίς τις τῶν τοιούτων πάντων καὶ ἡ σωφροσύνη καὶ c
ἡ δικαιοσύνη καὶ ἀνδρεία, καὶ αὐτὴ ἡ φρόνησις μὴ κα-
θαρμός τις ᾖ. καὶ κινδυνεύουσι καὶ οἱ τὰς τελετὰς ἡμῖν
οὗτοι καταστήσαντες οὐ φαῦλοί τινες εἶναι, ἀλλὰ τῷ ὄντι
πάλαι αἰνίττεσθαι ὅτι ὃς ἂν ἀμύητος καὶ ἀτέλεστος εἰς 5
Ἅιδου ἀφίκηται ἐν βορβόρῳ κείσεται, ὁ δὲ κεκαθαρμένος
τε καὶ τετελεσμένος ἐκεῖσε ἀφικόμενος μετὰ θεῶν οἰκήσει.
εἰσὶν γὰρ δή, ὥς φασιν οἱ περὶ τὰς τελετάς, ‘ναρθηκοφόροι
μὲν πολλοί, βάκχοι δέ τε παῦροι·’ οὗτοι δ᾽ εἰσὶν κατὰ τὴν d
ἐμὴν δόξαν οὐκ ἄλλοι ἢ οἱ πεφιλοσοφηκότες ὀρθῶς. ὧν δὴ
καὶ ἐγὼ κατά γε τὸ δυνατὸν οὐδὲν ἀπέλιπον ἐν τῷ βίῳ

Ἅιδης, -ου ὁ: Hades, 15
αἰνίττομαι: to speak in riddles, hint at, 1
ἀ-μύητος, -ον: uninitiated, 1
ἀνδρεία, ἡ: manliness, bravery, courage, 5
ἀπο-λείπω: leave behind, abandon, forsake, 7
ἀ-τέλεστος -ον: unfinished, unaccomplished 1
βάκχος, ὁ: Bacchant, initiated followers, 1
βορβορός, ὁ: mire, filth, 2
δικαιοσύνη, ἡ: justice, righteousness, 4
δόξα, ἡ: opinion, reputation, honor, glory, 7
δυνατός, -ή, -όν: capable, strong, possible, 8
ἐκεῖ-σε: thither, to that place, 10
ἐμός, -ή, -όν: my, mine, 7
καθαρμός, ὁ: purification (rite), 2
κάθαρσις, -εως, ἡ: cleansing, purifying, 2
καθ-ίστημι: to set down; appoint, establish, 1
κεῖμαι: to lie, lie down 4
καθ-αιρω: to cleanse, purify, 4
κινδυνεύω: to risk, venture; it is likely, 7
ναρθηκο-φόρος, -ον: thyrsus-bearers, 1
οἰκέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 15
πάλαι: for some time, long ago, of old, 13
παῦρος, -ον: few; little, small, 1
σωφροσύνη, ἡ: temperence, prudence, 8
τελετή, ἡ: initiation, mystery rite, 2
τελέω: to complete, accomplish, initiate, 1
ὑγιής, -ές: sound, healthy, wholesome, 7
φαῦλος –η -ον: slight, paltry, cheap, trifling 9
φιλο-σοφέω: seek knowledge, philosophize, 6
φρόνησις, -εως, ἡ: intelligence, wisdom, 15

8 **ἔχῃ**: *(perhaps) has…;* 3s subj. ἔχω in the same doubtful assertion as in line 7
τὸ ἀληθὲς: *in truth*; adverbial acc.
τῷ ὄντι: *actually*; adverbial
ᾖ: *is*; 3s subj. εἰμί is a doubtful assertion
c1 **τῶν...πάντων**: *from*…; gen. separation
2 **αὐτὴ**: *itself*; intensive
μὴ...ᾖ: *perhaps…is*; doubtful assertion, μὴ + subj. (3s subj. εἰμί)
3 **κινδυνεύουσι...εἶναι**: *look as though they are*; ‘run the risk…to be’
ἡμῖν: *for us*; dat. of interest
5 **αἰνίττεσθαι**: *and (look as though) they have been speaking in riddles*; with κινδινεύουσι the inf. with πάλαι is pf. progressive
ὃς ἂν...ἀφίκηται: *whoever*…; indefinite relative clause, aor. subj. ἀφικνέομαι
εἰς Ἅιδου: *to (the house) of Hades*
6 **κεκαθαρμένος**: *purified*; ‘being purified,’ pf. pass. pple indicates a state of affairs
7 **τετελεσμένος**: *initiated*; pf. pass. τελέω
8 **εἰσὶν γὰρ δή**: *for there are in fact…*
ὥς: *as…*; parenthetical before a direct quote
οἱ περὶ...: *those regarding…*
ναρθηκοφόροι, βάκχοι: a contrast between the initiated and uninitiated
d1 **κατὰ...**: *according to, in…*
2 **οἱ πεφιλοσοφηκότες**: *philosophers*; pf. pple
ὧν δὴ: *among whom in fact*; philosophers
3 **κατὰ...δυνατὸν**: *inasmuch as possible*

ἀλλὰ παντὶ τρόπῳ προυθυμήθην γενέσθαι· εἰ δ' ὀρθῶς προυθυμήθην καί τι ἠνύσαμεν, ἐκεῖσε ἐλθόντες τὸ σαφὲς εἰσόμεθα, ἂν θεὸς ἐθέλῃ, ὀλίγον ὕστερον, ὡς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ. ταῦτ' οὖν ἐγώ, ἔφη, ὦ Σιμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, ἀπολογοῦμαι, ὡς εἰκότως ὑμᾶς τε ἀπολείπων καὶ τοὺς ἐνθάδε δεσπότας οὐ χαλεπῶς φέρω οὐδ' ἀγανακτῶ, ἡγούμενος κἀκεῖ οὐδὲν ἧττον ἢ ἐνθάδε δεσπόταις τε ἀγαθοῖς ἐντεύξεσθαι καὶ ἑταίροις· τοῖς δὲ πολλοῖς ἀπιστίαν παρέχει· εἴ τι οὖν ὑμῖν πιθανώτερός εἰμι ἐν τῇ ἀπολογίᾳ ἢ τοῖς Ἀθηναίων δικασταῖς, εὖ ἂν ἔχοι.

εἰπόντος δὴ τοῦ Σωκράτους ταῦτα, ὑπολαβὼν ὁ Κέβης ἔφη· ὦ Σώκρατες, τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ καλῶς λέγεσθαι,

---

ἀγανακτέω: to be annoyed, be troubled at, 12
Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον: Athenian, of Athens, 6
ἀνύω: to accomplish, bring about, 1
ἀ-πιστία, ἡ: disbelief, distrust, doubt, 6
ἀπο-λείπω: leave behind, abandon, forsake, 7
ἀπο-λογέομαι: to say in defense, 3
ἀπολογία, ἡ: (speech in) defence, 2
δεσπότης, ὁ: master, lord, 6
δικαστής, οῦ, ὁ: a juror, judge, 5
ἐθέλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17
εἰκότως: suitably, reasonably, fairly, 5
ἐκεῖ-σε: thither, to that place, 10
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
ἐν-θάδε: here, hither, thither, 17
ἐν-τυγχάνω: to chance upon, encounter, 5
ἑταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate, 11
εὖ: well, 19
ἧττων, -ον: less, weaker, inferior, 16
καλῶς: well; beautifully, 11
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small, 15
παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16
πιθανός, -ή, -όν: persuasive, plausible, 3
προ-θυμέομαι: to be eager, zealous, ready, 12
σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17
ὑπο-λαμβάνω: to take up, reply; suppose, 8
ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; *adv*. later 17
χαλεπός, -ά, -όν: difficult, hard, harmful, 5

4 **παντὶ τρόπῳ**: *in every way*; dat. manner
5 **προυθυμήθην**: 1s aor. deponent προθυμέω governs an inf.
τι: *something (important);* acc. object
ἠνύσαμεν: *we accomplished*; 1p where we expect 1s
τὸ σαφὲς: *something reliable*; acc. object
6 **εἰσόμεθα**: 1p. fut. dep. οἶδα
ἂν...ἐθέλῃ: *if*… ; ἐὰν + 3s subj.
ὀλίγον: *a little*; adv. acc. (acc. of extent of degree) modifying ὕστερον
ὕστερον: adverbial acc.
7 **ἔφη**: see p. 6
ὡς εἰκότως: *(namely) how reasonably…*; in apposition to acc. pl. ταῦτα
e1 **χαλεπῶς φέρω**: *I bear with difficulty*
κἀκεῖ: καὶ ἐκεῖ
2 **ἐνθάδε**: *here*
δεσπόταις ἀγαθοῖς...ἑταίροις: dat of compound verb
ἐντεύξεσθαι: fut. dep. inf. ἐν-τυγχάνω
3 **τοῖς...παρέχει**: *but this (belief) brings about disbelief for the masses*
ὑμῖν: *to you*; dat. of interest
4 **εὖ ἂν ἔχοι**: *it would be good*; 'it would hold well' potential opt.; for ἔχω + adv. see p. 7
6 **εἰπόντος...ταῦτα**: gen. abs.

τὰ δὲ περὶ τῆς ψυχῆς πολλὴν ἀπιστίαν παρέχει τοῖς ἀνθρώποις **70**
μή, ἐπειδὰν ἀπαλλαγῇ τοῦ σώματος, οὐδαμοῦ ἔτι ᾖ, ἀλλ᾽ ἐκείνῃ
τῇ ἡμέρᾳ διαφθείρηταί τε καὶ ἀπολλύηται ᾗ ἂν ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἀπο-
θνήσκῃ, εὐθὺς ἀπαλλαττομένη τοῦ σώματος, καὶ ἐκβαίνουσα
ὥσπερ πνεῦμα ἢ καπνὸς διασκεδασθεῖσα οἴχηται διαπτομένη 5
καὶ οὐδὲν ἔτι οὐδαμοῦ ᾖ. ἐπεί, εἴπερ εἴη που αὐτὴ καθ᾽
αὑτὴν συνηθροισμένη καὶ ἀπηλλαγμένη τούτων τῶν κακῶν
ὧν σὺ νυνδὴ διῆλθες, πολλὴ ἂν εἴη ἐλπὶς καὶ καλή, ὦ
Σώκρατες, ὡς ἀληθῆ ἐστιν ἃ σὺ λέγεις· ἀλλὰ τοῦτο δὴ **b**
ἴσως οὐκ ὀλίγης παραμυθίας δεῖται καὶ πίστεως, ὡς ἔστι τε
ψυχὴ ἀποθανόντος τοῦ ἀνθρώπου καί τινα δύναμιν ἔχει καὶ
φρόνησιν.

ἀπ-αλλαγή, ἡ: escape; release, departure, 7
ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15
ἀ-πιστία, ἡ: disbelief, distrust, doubt, 6
δέομαι: lack, need, want; ask for (+ gen.) 7
δια-πέταμαι: to fly off or through, 2
δια-σκεδάννυμι: to scatter, disperse, disband 4
δια-φθείρω: to destroy, corrupt, kill, 6
δι-έρχομαι: to go or pass through, 5
δύναμις, -εως, ἡ: power, wealth, strength, 3
ἐκ-βαίνω: to step out, disembark, 5
ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ: hope, expectation, 9
ἐπεί: when, after, since, because, 7
εὐθύς: right away, straight, directly, at once, 8
ἡμέρα, ἡ: day, 7
ἴσως: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 19
καπνός, ὁ: smoke, 1
νυν-δὴ: just now, 15
οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 14
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small, 15
οὐδαμοῦ: nowhere, 5
παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16
παρα-μυθία, ἡ: encouragement, persuasion, 1
πίστις, -εως ὁ: trust, loyalty; pledge, proof 1
πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: breath, wind, blast, 5
συν-αθροίζω: gather together, assemble, 2
φρόνησις, -εως, ἡ: intelligence, wisdom, 15

70a1 **τὰ δὲ περὶ...** : *the matters concerning…*; neuter pl. subject of 3s verb
παρέχει: *brings about*
τοῖς ἀνθρώποις: dat. of interest
2 **μὴ...ᾖ**: *lest…(the soul) is…*; fearing clause, μή + subj. (3s εἰμί), following ἀπιστίαν
ἀπαλλαγῇ: 3s pres. subj., in an indefinite temporal clause
οὐδαμοῦ ἔτι: *no longer anywhere*
ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ: *on*…; time when
3 **διαφθείρηται...**: pres. pass. subj. in the same fearing clause
ᾗ ἄν: *on whatever (day)*; indefinite relative clause (ἄν + subj.), here, dat. of time when
5 **διασκεδασθεῖσα**: nom. sg. aor. pass. pple
οἴχηται: *has gone*; pf. in sense, as often, here with a complementary pple
6 **ἔτι οὐδαμοῦ**: *no longer anywhere*
ᾖ: *is*; subj. εἰμί, same fearing clause
ἐπεί, εἴπερ εἴη που: *(I say thing) since, if (the soul) should be somewhere…*; opt. εἰμί, protasis in a fut. less vivid condition
αὐτὴ καθ᾽ (ἑ)αυτὴν: *itself by itself*
7 **συνηθροισμένη, ἀπηλλαγμένη**: pf. pass.
τῶν...κακῶν: *from*…; gen. of separation
8 **ὧν**: *which*…; gen. obj. of aor. δι-έρχομαι
b1 **ὡς...**: *that*…; following ἐλπίς
ἀληθῆ...: ἀληθέα, neuter pl. nom. pred.
τοῦτο δὴ: *this very thing*, *precisely this*
2 **οὐκ ὀλίγης...πίστεως**: *no little persuasion and proof*; i.e. a lot, gen. of separation
ὡς ἔστι...ψυχὴ: *namely that the soul exists*
ἀποθανόντος...: gen. absolute

ἀληθῆ, ἔφη, λέγεις, ὁ Σωκράτης, ὦ Κέβης· ἀλλὰ τί δὴ ποιῶμεν; ἢ περὶ αὐτῶν τούτων βούλει διαμυθολογῶμεν, εἴτε εἰκὸς οὕτως ἔχειν εἴτε μή;

ἐγὼ γοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, ἡδέως ἂν ἀκούσαιμι ἥντινα δόξαν ἔχεις περὶ αὐτῶν.

οὔκουν γ' ἂν οἶμαι, ἦ δ' ὃς ὁ Σωκράτης, εἰπεῖν τινα νῦν
c *ἀκούσαντα, οὐδ' εἰ κωμῳδοποιὸς εἴη, ὡς ἀδολεσχῶ καὶ οὐ περὶ προσηκόντων τοὺς λόγους ποιοῦμαι. εἰ οὖν δοκεῖ, χρὴ διασκοπεῖσθαι.*

σκεψώμεθα δὲ αὐτὸ τῇδέ πῃ, εἴτ' ἄρα ἐν Ἅιδου εἰσὶν αἱ ψυχαὶ τελευτησάντων τῶν ἀνθρώπων εἴτε καὶ οὔ. παλαιὸς μὲν οὖν ἔστι τις λόγος οὗ μεμνήμεθα, ὡς εἰσὶν ἐνθένδε

ἀδολέσχω: to prattle, talk idly, 1
Ἅιδης, -ου ὁ: Hades, 15
γοῦν: γε οὖν, at least, at any rate, any way, 4
δια-μυθολογέω: converse, express in speech1
δια-σκοπέω: to examine or consider well, 2
δόξα, ἡ: opinion, reputation, honor, glory, 7
εἰκός, ὁτος, τό: likely, probable, reasonable 18
εἴ-τε: either...or; whether...or, 13
ἐν-θένδε: hence, from here, 3
ἡδέως: sweetly, pleasantly, gladly, 6
κωμῳδο-ποιός, ὁ: comic poet or playwright 1
μιμνήσκω: to remind, recall, recollect (gen) 6
οὔκ-ουν: certainly not, and so not, 2
παλαιός, -ά, -όν: old, aged, ancient, 1
πῃ: in some way, somehow, 4
προσ-ήκει: it belongs to, it is fitting, befits 15
σκέπτομαι: look at, examine, consider, 9
τῇδε: here; in this way, thus, 8

5 **ἀληθῆ**: ἀληθέα, neut. acc. pl.
τί δὴ: *just what…?, what exactly…?.*
6 **ποιῶμεν**: *are we to do?*; deliberative subj.
περὶ αὐτῶν τούτων: *concerning these things themselves*; intensive
βούλει διαμυθολογῶμεν: *do you wish to keep conversing*; 2s mid. βούλομαι often precedes a deliberative subj. conflating two questions: 'what do you want?' and 'are we to converse?'
7 **εἰκὸς (ἐστι)**: *(it is) probable*
οὕτως ἔχειν: see p. 7
8 **ἂν ἀκούσαιμι**: *I would…*; aor. potential opt.
ἥντινα δόξαν: *whatever opinion*; fem. acc. sg. adj. ὅστις
10 **οὔκουν γε**: *I certainly do not think*; γε emphasizes the negative οὐκ
ἂν...εἰπεῖν, εἰ...εἴη: *that…would say…if he were…*; mixed contrafactual condition in ind. discourse: ἄν + aor. inf. is here equiv. to ἄν + aor. in direct speech; pres. opt. εἴη in the protasis replaces impf. indicative in secondary sequence
τινα...ἀκούσαντα: acc. subject
ἤ δ'ὅς: see note on p. 9
c1 **οὐδ(ὲ)**: *not even*
εἴη: 3s opt., see line 10 above
ὡς: *that….*; ind. disc. following εἰπεῖν
2 **προσηκότων**: *things pertaining (to me);* or 'things belonging to me'
τοὺς λόγους: i.e. conversations, discussion
4 **σκεψώμεθα**: *Let us…*; hortatory subj.
εἴτε ἄρα...ειτε καὶ: *whether, it seems,....or actually*; adverbial καὶ
ἐν Ἅιδου: *in (the house) of Hades*
εἰσὶν: *are*
6 **μὲν οὖν**: *certainly*, *to be sure*; in affirmation
οὗ: *which…*; obj. of. pf. μιμνήσκω

ἀφικόμεναι ἐκεῖ, καὶ πάλιν γε δεῦρο ἀφικνοῦνται καὶ γίγνονται ἐκ τῶν τεθνεώτων· καὶ εἰ τοῦθ᾽ οὕτως ἔχει, πάλιν γίγνεσθαι ἐκ τῶν ἀποθανόντων τοὺς ζῶντας, ἄλλο τι ἢ εἶεν ἂν αἱ ψυχαὶ ἡμῶν ἐκεῖ; οὐ γὰρ ἄν που πάλιν ἐγίγνοντο μὴ d
οὖσαι, καὶ τοῦτο ἱκανὸν τεκμήριον τοῦ ταῦτ᾽ εἶναι, εἰ τῷ ὄντι φανερὸν γίγνοιτο ὅτι οὐδαμόθεν ἄλλοθεν γίγνονται οἱ ζῶντες ἢ ἐκ τῶν τεθνεώτων· εἰ δὲ μὴ ἔστι τοῦτο, ἄλλου ἄν του δέοι λόγου. 5

πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης.

μὴ τοίνυν κατ᾽ ἀνθρώπων, ἦ δ᾽ ὅς, σκόπει μόνον τοῦτο, εἰ βούλει ῥᾷον μαθεῖν, ἀλλὰ καὶ κατὰ ζῴων πάντων καὶ φυτῶν, καὶ συλλήβδην ὅσαπερ ἔχει γένεσιν περὶ πάντων

ἄλλο-θεν: from another place or elsewhere, 6
γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: coming-to-be, generation, 16
δεῦρο: here, to this point, hither, 7
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
ζῷ̔ον, τό: a living being, animal, 6
μανθάνω: to learn, understand, 12
ὅσοσπερ, -α, -ον: as many as, who, 1
οὐδαμό-θεν: from no place, from nowhere, 1
ῥᾷον: more easily, 2
συλλήβδην: collectively, in sum, in short, 2
τεκμήριον, τό: sign, indication, proof, 5
φανερός, -ά, -όν: visible, manifest, evident, 1
φυτόν, τό: a plant, tree, 1

7 **καὶ πάλιν γε**: *and again*; καὶ...γε emphasizes the intervening word
γίγνομαι: *are born*
8 **τεθνεώτων**: pf. pple θνῄσκω
τοῦθ᾽: τοῦτο
οὕτως ἔχει: see p. 7
9 **ἀποθανόντων**: aor. pple, ἀπο-θνῄσκω
ἄλλο τι ἢ: *(is it) anything other than…*; anticipating a yes response
εἶεν ἂν: 3p pres. potential opt. εἰμί
d1 **ἂν...ἐγίγνοντο**: *would be born*; ἄν + impf. is present (unrealized) potential
που: *I suppose*
μὴ οὖσαι: *if not existing*; fem. pl. pple εἰμί modifying understood subject ψυχαί; conditional in sense (hence μή, not οὐ)
2 **τοῦτο (ἂν εἴη)**: *this would be…*
τοῦ...εἶναι: *of these things being the case*; i.e. are true, articular inf.
τῷ̔ ὄντι: *really, actually*
3 **φανερὸν γίγνοιτο**: *it should become clear that…*; impersonal opt., protasis in a fut. less vivid condision
4 **ἔστι**: *is the case*
5 **ἂν...δέοι**: *there would be need…*; + gen.
6 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
7 **μὴ...σκόπει**: *don't…*; σκόπε-ε, imperative
κατὰ ἀνθρώπων: *in regard to humans*
ἦ δ᾽ὅς: see note on pg. 9
8 **βούλει**: 2s pres. mid., βουλέ(σ)αι
ῥᾷον: comparative adverb ἐν-νοέω
8 **μαθεῖν**: aor. inf. μανθάνομαι
κατὰ...: *with regard to…*
ἔχει: 3s governing a neuter pl. subject

e *ἴδωμεν ἆρ᾽ οὑτωσὶ γίγνεται πάντα, οὐκ ἄλλοθεν ἢ ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων τὰ ἐναντία, ὅσοις τυγχάνει ὂν τοιοῦτόν τι, οἷον τὸ καλὸν τῷ αἰσχρῷ ἐναντίον που καὶ δίκαιον ἀδίκῳ, καὶ ἄλλα δὴ μυρία οὕτως ἔχει. τοῦτο οὖν σκεψώμεθα, ἆρα ἀναγκαῖον*
5 *ὅσοις ἔστι τι ἐναντίον, μηδαμόθεν ἄλλοθεν αὐτὸ γίγνεσθαι ἢ ἐκ τοῦ αὐτῷ ἐναντίου. οἷον ὅταν μεῖζόν τι γίγνηται, ἀνάγκη που ἐξ ἐλάττονος ὄντος πρότερον ἔπειτα μεῖζον γίγνεσθαι;*

ναί.

10 *οὐκοῦν κἂν ἔλαττον γίγνηται, ἐκ μείζονος ὄντος πρότερον*
71 *ὕστερον ἔλαττον γενήσεται;*

ἔστιν οὕτω, ἔφη.

ἄ-δικος, -ον: unrighteous, unjust, 6
αἰσχρός -ά -όν: ugly, shameful, disgraceful 3
ἄλλο-θεν: from another place or elsewhere, 6
δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right(eous), fair, 13
μηδαμό-θεν: from no place, from nowhere, 2
μυρίος, -η, -ον: countless, infinite, 6
ναί: yes, yea, 15
οὑτωσί: in this here way, thus, so, 2
σκέπτομαι: look at, examine, consider, 9
ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; *adv*. later 17

e1 **ἴδωμεν ἆρ(α)**: *let us*….; hortatory aor. subj. εἶδον
ἆρ(α): *whether*...; introducing ind. question
οὑτωσ-ὶ: deictic iota can be expressed by adding 'here': 'in this here way'
ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων τὰ ἐναντία: *opposites from opposites*
2 **ὅσοις...τοιοῦτον τι**: *to what a certain sort happens to be*; dat. of special adjective ἐν-ἐναντία
οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to such,' acc. of respect
τὸ καλὸν: *the beautiful*; or 'beauty,' a substantive
3 **τῷ αἰσχρῷ**: *to the ugly*; or 'ugliness,' dat. with ἐναντίον, a substantive
(τὸ) δίκαιον (τῷ) ἀδίκῳ: *the just (opposite) to the unjust*; substantives
καὶ...δὴ: *and indeed*...; similar to καὶ...γε (GP 254)
4 **οὕτως ἔχει**: *are so*; see p. 7
σκεψώμεθα: *let us*…; hortatory aor. subj.
ἆρα: *whether*…; see e1 above
ἀναγκαῖον (ἐστί): *it is necessary that…*
5 **ὅσοις...ἐναντίον...αὐτὸ**: *it, to as many as there is an opposite*; ὅσοις is dat. of possesssion ('as many as have…') with a sg. antecedent αὐτὸ, subject of γίγνεσθαι
6 **αὐτῷ**: *to it*; dat. of special adj. ἐναντίου
οἷον: *for example*; acc. of respect
7 **ἀνάγκη**: *(it is) necessary that*
ἐλάττονος: gen. sg. predicate of ὄντος, pple from εἰμί
πρότερον: comparative adverb
μεῖζον: neuter predicate of the infinitive
κἂν: *even if*…; καὶ ἐὰν
γενήσεται: fut. γίγνομαι

Philosophical Vocabulary: Plato often employs substantives (article + neuter adj.) to depict forms and abstract qualities. Scholars preserve the substantive in translation, e.g. 'the beautiful,' and often avoid translating a substantive as an abstract noun, e.g. 'beauty.'

τὸ καλόν	*the beautiful (noble)*
τὸ αἰσχρόν	*the ugly (shameful)*
τὸ δίκαιον	*the just*
τὸ ἄδικον	*the unjust*

καὶ μὴν ἐξ ἰσχυροτέρου γε τὸ ἀσθενέστερον καὶ ἐκ βραδυτέρου τὸ θᾶττον;

πάνυ γε.

τί δέ; ἄν τι χεῖρον γίγνηται, οὐκ ἐξ ἀμείνονος, καὶ ἂν δικαιότερον, ἐξ ἀδικωτέρου;

πῶς γὰρ οὔ;

ἱκανῶς οὖν, ἔφη, ἔχομεν τοῦτο, ὅτι πάντα οὕτω γίγνεται, ἐξ ἐναντίων τὰ ἐναντία πράγματα;

πάνυ γε.

τί δ' αὖ; ἔστι τι καὶ τοιόνδε ἐν αὐτοῖς, οἷον μεταξὺ ἀμφοτέρων πάντων τῶν ἐναντίων δυοῖν ὄντοιν δύο γενέσεις, ἀπὸ μὲν τοῦ ἑτέρου ἐπὶ τὸ ἕτερον, ἀπὸ δ' αὖ τοῦ ἑτέρου **b**

ἄ-δικος, -ον: unrighteous, unjust, 6
ἀμείνων, -ον (-ονος): better, 10
ἀμφότερος, -α, -ον: each of two, both, pair, 5
ἀ-σθενής, -ές: without strength, weak, feeble 3
βραδύς, -εῖα, -ύ: slow, 2
γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: coming-to-be, generation, 16
δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right(eous), fair, 13
θάττων, θᾶττον: faster, quicker, swifter, 1
ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν: strong, powerful; severe, 5
μεταξύ: between, betwixt, 6
πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18
χείρων, -ον, (-οντος): worse, inferior, 5

3 **καὶ μὴν...γε**: *and indeed…in fact*; introduces a new argument of greater importance (GP 351-2), γε is emphatic
5 **πάνυ γε**: *quite indeed*; common affirmative
τί δέ;: *What (then)?*; as often, introducing another question
6 **ἄν...γίγνηται**: *if…*; ἐὰν + subj.
καὶ ἂν (γίγηται): *and if…*; ἐὰν, supply verb
8 **πῶς γὰρ οὔ**: *how (could it) not*; lit. '(yes), for how could it not'
9 **ἱκανῶς...ἔχομεν τοῦτο**: *we have this (fact) sufficiently*; or 'we know this sufficiently'
ὅτι: *(namely) that…*
12 **τί δ'αὖ;**: *What in turn?*; 'what again,' introducing another point
ἔστι τι καὶ τοιόνδε: *is there something also of this sort*
οἷον: *for example*; 'with respect to such,' acc. of respect;
μεταξὺ ἀμφοτέρων...ἐναντίων: *between all these opposites, as pairs*
13 **δυοῖν ὄντοιν**: *(since) being two*; dual gen., pple of εἰμί, causal in sense
b1 **ἑτέρου...ἐπὶ...ἕτερον**: *from one…to another*

πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸ ἕτερον· μείζονος μὲν πράγματος καὶ ἐλάττονος μεταξὺ αὔξησις καὶ φθίσις, καὶ καλοῦμεν οὕτω τὸ μὲν αὐξάνεσθαι, τὸ δὲ φθίνειν;

ναί, ἔφη.

οὐκοῦν καὶ διακρίνεσθαι καὶ συγκρίνεσθαι, καὶ ψύχεσθαι καὶ θερμαίνεσθαι, καὶ πάντα οὕτω, κἂν εἰ μὴ χρώμεθα τοῖς ὀνόμασιν ἐνιαχοῦ, ἀλλ᾽ ἔργῳ γοῦν πανταχοῦ οὕτως ἔχειν ἀναγκαῖον, γίγνεσθαί τε αὐτὰ ἐξ ἀλλήλων γένεσίν τε εἶναι ἑκατέρου εἰς ἄλληλα;

πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἦ δ᾽ ὅς.

c *τί οὖν; ἔφη, τῷ ζῆν ἐστί τι ἐναντίον, ὥσπερ τῷ ἐγρηγορέναι τὸ καθεύδειν;*

αὐξάνω: to increase, augment, 2
αὔξησις, -εως, ἡ: increasing, growth, 1
γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: coming-to-be, generation, 16
γοῦν: γε οὖν, at least, at any rate, any way, 4
δια-κρίνω: separate, distinguish; decide, 2
ἐγείρω: to awaken, arouse, 4
ἑκάτερος, -α, -ον: each of two, either, 5
ἐνια-χοῦ: in some places, 1
ἔργον, τό: work, labor, deed, act, 5
ἕτερος, -α, -ον: one of two, other, different, 58
θερμαίνω: to make hot; *mid*. be warm, hot, 2
καθ-εύδω: to lie down to sleep, sleep, 5
μεταξύ: between, betwixt, 6
ναί: yes, yea, 15
ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: name, 7
παντα-χοῦ: everywhere, in all places, 3
πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18
συγ-κρίνω: combine, synthesize, compound 2
φθίνω: decrease, waste away, decay, perish, 1
φθίσις, -εως, ἡ: decreasing, wasting away, 1
χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.) 11
ψύχω: to make cool or cold; *mid*. be cold 2

2 **ἐπὶ**: *to…*
3 **μείζόνος...ἐλάττονος μεταξὺ**: the entire preceding genitive is the object of μεταξὺ
καλοῦμεν...τὸ μὲν μὲν ἀυξάνεσθαι, τὸ δὲ φθίνειν: *we call one growing and the other decreasing*
6 **οὐκοῦν καὶ...καὶ**: *according both…and*
7 **κἂν εἰ**: *even if…*; καὶ εἰ ἄν + subj. in a present general condition
8 **ἐνιαχοῦ**: i.e. in each instance
πανταχοῦ: i.e. in every instance
ἀλλὰ ἔργῳ γοῦν: *but in reality at any rate*; dat. of respect
9 **ἀναγκαῖον (ἐστί)**: *(it is) necessary*
οὕτως ἔχειν: see pg. 7
ἀυτὰ: *that they…*; i.e. opposites, acc. subj.
11 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
c1 **τῷ ζῆν**: *to living*; articular inf. dat. of special adj. ἐναντίον
ἐστί: *there is…*
τῷ ἐγρηγορέναι: *to being awake*; articular pf. inf. ἐγείρω, the perfect indicates a state not activity
2 **τὸ καθεῦδειν (ἐναντίον ἐστί)**: supply verb and predicate from above

πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη.

τί;

τὸ τεθνάναι, ἔφη.

οὐκοῦν ἐξ ἀλλήλων τε γίγνεται ταῦτα, εἴπερ ἐναντία ἐστιν, καὶ αἱ γενέσεις εἰσὶν αὐτοῖν μεταξὺ δύο δυοῖν ὄντοιν;

πῶς γὰρ οὔ;

τὴν μὲν τοίνυν ἑτέραν συζυγίαν ὧν νυνδὴ ἔλεγον ἐγώ σοι, ἔφη, ἐρῶ, ὁ Σωκράτης, καὶ αὐτὴν καὶ τὰς γενέσεις· σὺ δέ μοι τὴν ἑτέραν. λέγω δὲ τὸ μὲν καθεύδειν, τὸ δὲ ἐγρηγορέναι, καὶ ἐκ τοῦ καθεύδειν τὸ ἐγρηγορέναι γίγνεσθαι καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ἐγρηγορέναι τὸ καθεύδειν, καὶ τὰς γενέσεις αὐτοῖν τὴν μὲν καταδαρθάνειν εἶναι, τὴν δ' ἀνεγείρεσθαι. ἱκανῶς σοι, ἔφη, ἢ οὔ;

ἀν-εγείρομαι: to wake up, 2
γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: coming-to-be, generation, 16
ἐγείρω: to awaken, arouse, 4
καθ-εύδω: to lie down to sleep, sleep, 5
κατα-δαρθάνω: to fall asleep, 2
μεταξύ: between, betwixt, 6
νυν-δή: just now, 15
συ-ζυγία, ἡ: pair; a yoke of animals; union, 1

3 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
5 **τὸ τεθνάναι**: articular pf. inf. θνήσκω; again, the pf. denotes a state, 'being dead,' rather than an activity 'having died'
γίγνεται: governs a neuter pl. subject
6 **ταῦτα**: *these*; i.e. these two
7 **ἐστιν**: *these (two) are*; supply ταῦτα as subject
αὐτοῖν μεταξὺ: μεταξύ αὐτοῖν; dual gen.
δύο: predicate of pple εἰσίν, 3rd pl. εἰμί
δυοῖν ὄντοιν: *(since) being two*; dual gen., pple of εἰμί, causal in sense
8 **πῶς γὰρ οὔ**: *how (could it) not*; lit. '(yes), for how could it not'
9 **τὴν...ἑτέραν συζυγίαν**: *(about) one pair*
ὧν: *(of those) which*; τουτῶν ἅ, acc. pl. relative has assimilated the gen. of the missing antecedent
10 **ἐρῶ**: ἐρέω, 1s fut. λέγω
καὶ αὐτὴν καὶ...γενέσεις: *both itself and its generations*; in apposition to συζυγίαν
σὺ (ἐρεῖς): 2s fut. ἐρέω
11 **λέγω τὸ μὲν....τὸ δὲ**: *I call the one… and the other…*; see 71b3
ἐγρηγορέναι: *being awake*; pf. inf. ἐγείρω
d1 **αὐτοῖν**: *of these two*; dual gen. αὐτός
2 **τὴν μὲν...εἶναι...τὴν δ'**: *one (coming to be) is…the other (is)…*; ind. discourse
ἱκανῶς (ἔχει): *is it sufficent…?*; 'does it hold sufficiently' supply ἔχει, see p. 7

πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

λέγε δή μοι καὶ σύ, ἔφη, οὕτω περὶ ζωῆς καὶ θανάτου. οὐκ ἐναντίον μὲν φῂς τῷ ζῆν τὸ τεθνάναι εἶναι;

ἔγωγε.

γίγνεσθαι δὲ ἐξ ἀλλήλων;

ναί.

ἐξ οὖν τοῦ ζῶντος τί τὸ γιγνόμενον;

τὸ τεθνηκός, ἔφη.

τί δέ, ἦ δ' ὅς, ἐκ τοῦ τεθνεῶτος;

ἀναγκαῖον, ἔφη, ὁμολογεῖν ὅτι τὸ ζῶν.

ἐκ τῶν τεθνεώτων ἄρα, ὦ Κέβης, τὰ ζῶντά τε καὶ οἱ ζῶντες γίγνονται;

e φαίνεται, ἔφη.

ζωή, ἡ: living, way of life, 5

4 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
5 **λέγε δή**: *now tell…*; or 'just tell…' δή is often an intensive modifying imperatives
6 **φῂς**: 2s φημί,
6 **τῷ ζῆν**: articular inf. ζάω, dat. of special adj. ἐναντίον
τὸ τεθνάναι: *that being dead*; acc. subject, articular pf. inf.

ναί: yes, yea, 15

10 **τοῦ ζῶντος**: *the living*; pple
τί: *what (is)…*; supply linking ἐστί
τὸ τεθνηκός: *the one*…; neuter sg. pf. pple θνῄσκω
12 **τεθνεῶτος**: gen. sg. τεθνηκός
13 **ἀναγκαῖον**: *(it is) necessary…*; add verb,
ὅτι (ἐστί): *that (it is)…*; supply verb
14 **τὰ ζῶντα...ζῶντες**: *both living things and living people*

εἰσὶν ἄρα, ἔφη, αἱ ψυχαὶ ἡμῶν ἐν Ἅιδου.

ἔοικεν.

οὐκοῦν καὶ τοῖν γενεσέοιν τοῖν περὶ ταῦτα ἥ γ᾽ ἑτέρα σαφὴς οὖσα τυγχάνει; τὸ γὰρ ἀποθνῄσκειν σαφὲς δήπου, ἢ οὔ;

πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη.

πῶς οὖν, ἦ δ᾽ ὅς, ποιήσομεν; οὐκ ἀνταποδώσομεν τὴν ἐναντίαν γένεσιν, ἀλλὰ ταύτῃ χωλὴ ἔσται ἡ φύσις; ἢ ἀνάγκη ἀποδοῦναι τῷ ἀποθνῄσκειν ἐναντίαν τινὰ γένεσιν;

πάντως που, ἔφη.

τίνα ταύτην;

τὸ ἀναβιώσκεσθαι.

Ἅιδης, -ου ὁ: Hades, 15
ἀνα-βιώσκομαι: to bring (back) to life, 6
ἀντ-απο-δίδωμι: to render in return, repay, 3
ἀπο-δίδωμι: to give back, return, render, 5
γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: coming-to-be, generation, 16
δή-που: perhaps, I suppose; of course, 8
πάντως: entirely, absolutely, 3
σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
φύσις, -εως, ἡ: nature, character; form, 11
χωλός, -ή, -όν: defective, one-sided; lame, 1

2 **εἰσὶν**: *exist*; 3p εἰμί
ἐν Ἅιδου: *in (the house) of Hades*
4 **τοῖν γενεσέοιν**: *among…*; partitive gen., dual gen.
5 **σαφὴς**: nom. predicate
οὖσα τυγχάνει: pple, εἰμί, see p. 20
σαφὲς (ἐστί): neuter. sg. predicate, add verb
7 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
8 **οὐκ ἀνταποδώσομεν...γένεσιν**: *Will we not offer the opposite coming-to-be in response?*
1 **ἀλλὰ**: *or rather*
9 **ταύτῃ**: *in this way*; dat. of manner
ἔσται: 3s fut. deponent, εἰμί,
ἀνάγκη: supply ἐστί
10 **ἀποδοῦναι**: aor. inf. ἀπο-δίδωμι,
τῷ ἀποθνῄσκειν: dat. obj. of special adj. ἐναντίαν

οὐκοῦν, ἦ δ' ὅς, εἴπερ ἔστι τὸ ἀναβιώσκεσθαι, ἐκ τῶν
72 τεθνεώτων ἂν εἴη γένεσις εἰς τοὺς ζῶντας αὖτη, τὸ ἀνα-
βιώσκεσθαι;

πάνυ γε.

ὁμολογεῖται ἄρα ἡμῖν καὶ ταύτῃ τοὺς ζῶντας ἐκ τῶν
5 τεθνεώτων γεγονέναι οὐδὲν ἧττον ἢ τοὺς τεθνεῶτας ἐκ τῶν
ζώντων, τούτου δὲ ὄντος ἱκανόν που ἐδόκει τεκμήριον εἶναι
ὅτι ἀναγκαῖον τὰς τῶν τεθνεώτων ψυχὰς εἶναί που, ὅθεν δὴ
πάλιν γίγνεσθαι.

δοκεῖ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἐκ τῶν ὡμολογημένων
10 ἀναγκαῖον οὕτως ἔχειν.

ἰδὲ τοίνυν οὕτως, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, ὅτι οὐδ' ἀδίκως ὡμο-

ἄ-δικος, -ον: unrighteous, unjust, 6
ἀνα-βιώσκομαι: to bring back to life, 6
γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: coming-to-be, generation, 16
ἧττων, -ον: less, weaker, inferior, 16
ὅ-θεν: from where, from which, 4
τεκμήριον, τό: sign, indication, proof, 5

14 **ἔστι**: *there exists*; or 'there is'
72a1 **τεθνεώτων**: pf. pple θνήσκω,
ἂν εἴη: *would…*; 3s potential opt. εἰμί
αὖτη: *this*; nom. subj., γένεσις is the predicate
τὸ ἀναβιώσκεσθαι: in apposition to αὖτη
3 **πάνυ γε**: *quite so, quite indeed*; affirmative
4 **ὁμολογεῖται ἡμῖν**: *it is agreed for us*; dat. of interest
καὶ ταύτῃ: *in this way also*; adverbial καί and dat. of manner,
5 **γεγονέναι**: pf. inf. γίγνομαι
οὐδὲν ἧττον ἢ: *no less than*; or 'in no way less than…' comparative adv. with an acc. of degree by extent (i.e. less by nothing)
6 **τούτου ὄντος**: *(since) this is the case*; 'this being (the case)' gen. abs., causal in sense
7 **ἀναγκαῖον**: *(it is) necessary*
που: *somewhere*
ὅθεν δὴ: *from which very place*; 'precisely from where'
8 **γίγνεσθαι**: supply ἀναγκαῖον
9 **ὡμολογημένων**: pf. pass. pple ὁμολογέω
10 **οὕτως ἔχειν**: see p. 7
11 **ἰδὲ**: sg. aor. imperative sg. εἶδον
οὐδὲ ἀδίκως: i.e. rightly, justly; litotes
ὡμολογήκαμεν: pf. ὁμολογέω

λογήκαμεν, ὡς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ. εἰ γὰρ μὴ ἀεὶ ἀνταποδιδοίη τὰ ἕτερα τοῖς ἑτέροις γιγνόμενα, ὡσπερεὶ κύκλῳ περιόντα, ἀλλ' **b**
εὐθεῖά τις εἴη ἡ γένεσις ἐκ τοῦ ἑτέρου μόνον εἰς τὸ καντικρὺ καὶ μὴ ἀνακάμπτοι πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸ ἕτερον μηδὲ καμπὴν ποιοῖτο, οἶσθ' ὅτι πάντα τελευτῶντα τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα ἂν σχοίη καὶ τὸ αὐτὸ πάθος ἂν πάθοι καὶ παύσαιτο γιγνόμενα; 5

πῶς λέγεις; ἔφη.

οὐδὲν χαλεπόν, ἦ δ' ὅς, ἐννοῆσαι ὃ λέγω· ἀλλ' οἷον εἰ τὸ καταδαρθάνειν μὲν εἴη, τὸ δ' ἀνεγείρεσθαι μὴ ἀνταποδιδοίη γιγνόμενον ἐκ τοῦ καθεύδοντος, οἶσθ' ὅτι τελευτῶντα πάντ' ‹ἂν› λῆρον τὸν Ἐνδυμίωνα ἀποδείξειεν καὶ οὐδαμοῦ ἂν **c**
φαίνοιτο διὰ τὸ καὶ τἆλλα πάντα ταὐτὸν ἐκείνῳ πεπονθέναι,

ἀνα-κάμπτω: to bend back, return, 1
ἀν-εγείρομαι: to wake up, 2
ἀντ-απο-δίδωμι: to render in return, repay, 3
ἀπο-δείκνυμι: point out, demonstrate, prove11
γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: coming-to-be, generation, 16
Ἐνδυμίων, -ωνος, ὁ: Endymion, 1
ἐν-νοέω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
εὐθύς: right away, straight, directly, at once, 9
καθ-εύδω: to lie down to sleep, sleep, 5
καμπή, ἡ: bend, turn 1
κατα-δαρθάνω: to fall asleep, 2
καταντικρύ: right opposite, 4
κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, round, ring, 10
λῆρος, ὁ: nonsense, a trifler, 1
οὐδαμοῦ: nowhere, 5
πάθος -εος τό: experience incident passion 11
παύω: to stop, make cease, 6
περι-έρχομαι: to go around, 6
σχῆμα, -ατος, τό: form, figure, appearance, 3
χαλεπός, -ά, -όν: difficult, hard, harmful, 5
ὥσπερεἰ: as if, just as if, 1

12 **εἰ...ἀνταποδιδοίη...εἴη...ποιοῖτο,...ἂν σχοίη...**: *if…should return…should be… should make,…would have*; fut. more vivid condition (εἰ opt. ἄν + opt.); 3s. pres. opt. ἀνταποδίδωμι, εἰμί, ποιέω, and aor. ἔχω
τὰ ἕτερα...γιγνόμενα: *some things render in return to other things by coming to be*; dat. of ind. obj., the pple is causal
b1 **κύκλῳ**: *in…*; dat. of manner
περιιόντα: acc. sg. pple περι-έρχομαι,
2 **εὐθεῖά τις**: *something straight*; nom. predicate; in contrast to περιιόντα
μόνον: *only*; adverbial acc.
4 **οἶσθ(α) ὅτι**: *you know that*; parenthetical or governing the entire condition; 2s οἶδα
τελευτῶντα: *in the end, finally*; the pple is often translated as an adverb
τὸ αὐτὸ...: *the same…*; attributive position
ἂν σχοίη: see note on line 12 above
5 **ἂν πάθοι**: *would…*; aor. opt. πάσχω, parallel to σχοίη
παύσαιτο γιγνόμενα: *cease becoming*; aor. opt. governs a complementary ppl,
6 **πῶς λέγεις**: *how do you mean?*
7 **χαλεπόν (ἐστί)**: *it is…*; impersonal
ἐννοῆσαι: aor. inf. ἐννοέω,
οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to such'
8 **εἰ εἴη...ἀνταποδιδοίη...(ἂν) ἀποδείξειεν,** : *if…should exist, …should not render in return,…would prove…*; fut. more vivid
9 **καθεύδοντος**: *sleeping*
οἶσθ(α) ὅτι: *know that…*; see line 4
τελευτῶντα: *in the end, finally*; see line 4
πάντ(α): nom. subj. of 3s verb
c1 **ἀποδείξειεν**: *would prove Endymion nonsense*; 3s aor. opt.
2 **διὰ...πεπονθέναι**: *on account of everything else experiencing the same as that one*

καθεύδειν. κἂν εἰ συγκρίνοιτο μὲν πάντα, διακρίνοιτο δὲ μή, ταχὺ ἂν τὸ τοῦ Ἀναξαγόρου γεγονὸς εἴη, 'ὁμοῦ πάντα χρήματα.' ὡσαύτως δέ, ὦ φίλε Κέβης, καὶ εἰ ἀποθνῄσκοι μὲν πάντα ὅσα τοῦ ζῆν μεταλάβοι, ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀποθάνοι, μένοι ἐν τούτῳ τῷ σχήματι τὰ τεθνεῶτα καὶ μὴ πάλιν ἀναβιώσκοιτο, ἆρ' οὐ πολλὴ ἀνάγκη τελευτῶντα πάντα τεθνάναι καὶ μηδὲν ζῆν; εἰ γὰρ ἐκ μὲν τῶν ἄλλων τὰ ζῶντα γίγνοιτο, τὰ δὲ ζῶντα θνῄσκοι, τίς μηχανὴ μὴ οὐχὶ πάντα καταναλωθῆναι εἰς τὸ τεθνάναι;

οὐδὲ μία μοι δοκεῖ, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἀλλά μοι δοκεῖς παντάπασιν ἀληθῆ λέγειν.

ἔστιν γάρ, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, ὡς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, παντὸς μᾶλλον

ἀνα-βιώσκομαι: to bring back to life, 6
Ἀναξαγόρας, ου, ὁ: Anaxagoras, 2
δια-κρίνω: separate, distinguish; decide, 2
καθ-εύδω: to lie down to sleep, sleep, 5
κατα-αναλίσκχω: to use up, spend, 1
μένω: to stay, remain, 8
μετα-λαμβάνω: receive a share of, partake (gen) 2
μηχανή, ἡ: instrument, contrivance, means, 2
ὁμοῦ: at the same place, together, 3
παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15
συγ-κρίνω: combine, synthesize, compound 2
σχῆμα, -ατος, τό: form, figure, appearance, 3
ταχύς, εῖα, ύ: quick, swift, hastily, 9
φίλος -η -ον: dear, friendly; *noun* friend, kin 8
χρῆμα, -ατος, τό: thing, money, possessions 6
ὡσ-αύτως: in the same manner, just so, 4

3 **καθεύδειν**: *(namely) to sleep*; in apposition
κἂν εἰ...μὲν...δὲ, ἂν...γεγονὸς εἴη: *even if all things should be…and should be…would have*; καὶ ἂν εἰ, future less vivid (εἰ opt., ἄν opt.); the duplication of ἄν is for emphasis
4 **ταχὺ**: *soon*; 'quickly,' adverbial acc.
τὸ τοῦ Ἀναξαγόρου: *that (saying) of Anaxagoras*
ἂν....γεγονὸς εἴη: periphrastic pf. opt. (neut. pf. pple γίγνομαι + opt. εἰμί)
5 **καὶ εἰ ἀποθνῄσκοι**: *even if...should….*; lengthy protasis of a future less vivid
6 **πάντὰ**: neuter pl. subject of 3s verb
μεταλάβοι: usually an indicative, the verb has assimilated to the opt. of ἀποθνῄσκοι
τοῦ ζῆν: articular inf., partitive gen. ζάω,
ἀποθάνοι: aor. opt. ἀποθνῄσκω; one expects ἄν + subj. in an indefinite temporal clause: (1) the verb has either assimilated to the opt. the opt. of ἀποθνῄσκοι or (2) Plato composed the indefinite temporal clause in secondary seq., where an opt. replaces what is otherwise ἄν + subj. in primary seq.
7 **τὰ τεθνεῶτα**: *the dead*; subject of two 3s verbs; neuter pl. pf. pple θνῄσκω
8 **ἀνάγκη (ἂν εἴη)**: *would there be…?*; supply the missing apodosis to the condition
τελευτῶντα: *in the end, finally*; as adverb
d1 **τεθνάναι**: *to be dead*; pf. inf.
μηδὲν: *not at all*; inner acc.
εἰ μὲν γίγνοιτο...δὲ θνῄσκοι: *if…should... and …should…;* a single protasis
2 **τίς μηχανὴ (ἂν εἴη)**: *what means (would there be)?*; supply missing apodosis
μὴ οὐχὶ: *that all things not…*; μὴ οὐ + inf. is used after negatived verbs of prevention, here implied
3 **καταναλωθῆναι**: aor. pass. inf.
εἰς τὸ τεθνάναι: *for dying*; 'for being dead'
4 **οὐδὲ μία**: *not even one (means)…*; fem. sg. agreeing with missing μηχανή
6 **παντὸς μᾶλλον**: *more than anything*

οὕτω, καὶ ἡμεῖς αὐτὰ ταῦτα οὐκ ἐξαπατώμενοι ὁμολογοῦμεν, ἀλλ᾽ ἔστι τῷ ὄντι καὶ τὸ ἀναβιώσκεσθαι καὶ ἐκ τῶν τεθνεώτων τοὺς ζῶντας γίγνεσθαι καὶ τὰς τῶν τεθνεώτων ψυχὰς εἶναι [καὶ ταῖς μέν γε ἀγαθαῖς ἄμεινον εἶναι, ταῖς δὲ κακαῖς κάκιον.] e

καὶ μήν, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης ὑπολαβών, καὶ κατ᾽ ἐκεῖνόν γε τὸν λόγον, ὦ Σώκρατες, εἰ ἀληθής ἐστιν, ὃν σὺ εἴωθας θαμὰ λέγειν, ὅτι ἡμῖν ἡ μάθησις οὐκ ἄλλο τι ἢ ἀνάμνησις 5
τυγχάνει οὖσα, καὶ κατὰ τοῦτον ἀνάγκη που ἡμᾶς ἐν προτέρῳ τινὶ χρόνῳ μεμαθηκέναι ἃ νῦν ἀναμιμνῃσκόμεθα. τοῦτο δὲ ἀδύνατον, εἰ μὴ ἦν που ἡμῖν ἡ ψυχὴ πρὶν ἐν τῷδε τῷ ἀν- 73
θρωπίνῳ εἴδει γενέσθαι· ὥστε καὶ ταύτῃ ἀθάνατον ἡ ψυχή τι ἔοικεν εἶναι.

ἀ-δύνατος, -ον: unable, incapable, impossible, 6
ἀμείνων, -ον (-ονος): better, 10
ἀνα-βιώσκομαι: to bring back to life, 6
ἀνα-μιμνήσκω: remind, recall (acc. gen.) 16
ἀνά-μνησις, -εως, ἡ: recollection, recall, 11
ἀνθρώπινος, -η, -ον: belonging to human, human, 7
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
εἴωθα: to be accustomed, 12
ἐξ-απατάω: to deceive, beguile, 4
θαμά: often, 2
μάθησις, -εως, ἡ: learning, instruction, 6
μανθάνω: to learn, understand, 12
ὑπο-λαμβάνω: to take up, reply; suppose, 8

8 **ἔστι τῷ ὄντι**: *actually are the case…*; i.e. are true; all four of the following articular infinitives are the subject
καὶ...καὶ...καὶ..καὶ: *both…and…and…and*
e1 **εἶναι**: *exist*
[**καὶ ταῖς...κάκιον**]: leave untranslated; these words were interpolated from 63c6 and do not belong in the passage above
3 **καὶ μὴν...γε**: *and certainly…in fact*; enters a new argument of greater importance (GP 351-2), γε is emphatic, see also 71a3
καὶ κατὰ...λόγον: *both according to that argument*; this καί, 'both,' is followed by another in l. 6
4 **ἐστιν**: *(it) is*; i.e. the λόγος
ὃν: *which*; the antecedent is λόγον
5 **ὅτι**: *(namely) that*; in apposition to λόγον
ἡμῖν: *for…*; dat. of interest
6 **τυγχάνει οὖσα**:, fem. nom. pple. εἰμί, see p. 20
καὶ κατὰ τοῦτον (λόγον): *and according to this (argument)*; i.e. the following argument, corresponds to line 3
ἀνάγκη: *(it is)…*; supply ἐστίν
7 **μεμαθηκέναι**: pf. μανθάνω, ἡμᾶς is acc. subject
τοῦτο (ἂν ἦν)...εἰ...ἦν: *this (would be)…, if…were…*; a present contrafactual (εἰ + impf., ἄν + impf.), in which the apodosis ἄν + impf. εἰμί must be supplied
73a1 **ἦν**: 3s impf. εἰμί
πρὶν...γενέσθαι: *before…*; πρίν governs an infinitive
εἴδει: dat. sg. τὸ εἶδος
2 **ὥστε**: i.e. as a result; in conclusion
καὶ ταύτῃ: *in this way in fact*; adverbial καί

ἀλλά, ὦ Κέβης, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας ὑπολαβών, ποῖαι τούτων
αἱ ἀποδείξεις; ὑπόμνησόν με· οὐ γὰρ σφόδρα ἐν τῷ παρόντι
μέμνημαι.

ἑνὶ μὲν λόγῳ, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, καλλίστῳ, ὅτι ἐρωτώμενοι
οἱ ἄνθρωποι, ἐάν τις καλῶς ἐρωτᾷ, αὐτοὶ λέγουσιν πάντα ᾗ
ἔχει—καίτοι εἰ μὴ ἐτύγχανεν αὐτοῖς ἐπιστήμη ἐνοῦσα καὶ
ὀρθὸς λόγος, οὐκ ἂν οἷοί τ' ἦσαν τοῦτο ποιῆσαι—ἔπειτα
b *ἐάν τις ἐπὶ τὰ διαγράμματα ἄγῃ ἢ ἄλλο τι τῶν τοιούτων,*
ἐνταῦθα σαφέστατα κατηγορεῖ ὅτι τοῦτο οὕτως ἔχει.

εἰ δὲ μὴ ταύτῃ γε, ἔφη, πείθῃ, ὦ Σιμμία, ὁ Σωκράτης,
σκέψαι ἂν τῇδέ πῃ σοι σκοπουμένῳ συνδόξῃ. ἀπιστεῖς γὰρ
δὴ πῶς ἡ καλουμένη μάθησις ἀνάμνησίς ἐστιν;

ἄγω: to lead, to bring, to carry, to convey, 12
ἀνά-μνησις, -εως, ἡ: recollection, recall, 11
ἀ-πιστέω: to distrust, not believe (+ dat.), 8
ἀπό-δειξις, εως, ἡ: demonstration, proof, 4
διά-γραμμα, -ατος, τό: (geometric) figure, 1
ἔν-ειμι: to be in or within, 8
ἐνταῦθα: here, hither, there, thither, then, 5
ἐρωτάω: to ask, inquire, question, 10
καίτοι: and yet, and indeed, and further, 8
κάλλιστος, -η, -ον: most noble or beautiful 1
κατ-αγορέω: declare, assert; denounce 1
μάθησις, -εως, ἡ: learning, instruction, 6
μιμνήσκω: to remind, recall, recollect, 6
πῃ: in some way, somehow, 4
ποῖος, -α, -ον: what sort of? what kind of?, 9
σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
συν-δοκέω: to seem good also, 6
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18
τῇδε: here; in this way, thus, 8
ὑπο-λαμβάνω: to take up, reply; suppose, 8
ὑπο-μιμνήσκω: to remind, mention, 3

4 **ποῖαι**: interrogative, add linking verb 'are'
τούτων: *for these*; objective gen.
ὑπόμνησον: aor. imper. ὑπομιμνήσκω
ἐν τῷ παρόντι: *at the present (time)*
6 **μέμνημαι**: pf. mid. μιμνήσκω
7 **ἑνὶ...λόγῳ...καλλίστῳ**: *by one very beautiful argument*; dat. of means, dat εἷς
ὅτι: *(namely) that…*
ἐρωτώμενοι: passive pple
8 **καλῶς**: *well*
ἐρωτᾷ: *asks*; pres. α-contract subj. in a pres. general condition (εἰ ἄν + subj., pres.)
αὐτοὶ: *(they) themselves*; intensive
ᾗ ἔχει: *however it holds*; i.e. the truth; 'in what way,' a dat. of manner, while ἔχω means 'holds' or 'is disposed'
9 **εἰ...ἐτύγχανεν,...οἷοί τε ἦσαν**: *if…happened to…they would not be able*; pres. contrary-to-fact condition (εἰ + impf., ἄν + impf.)
αὐτοῖς: *(in) them*; dat. of compound verb ἐνοῦσα
ἐνοῦσα: nom. sg. fem. pple ἔν-ειμι, complementary pple with ἐτύγχανεν
10 **ὀρθὸς λόγος**: *correct account*
οἷοι τ ἦσαν: *would be able*; 'would be the sort to…' οἷος τε εἰμί commonly denotes 'to be able,' here, with a 3p impf. verb
b1 **ἐπὶ...**: *to…*; acc. place to which
ἄγῃ, κατηγορεῖ: *leads (another person)… will declare*; fut. more vivid (ἐάν subj., fut)
2 **σαφέστατα**: superlative adv.
3 **πείθῃ**: *you are persuaded*; 2s pres. mid.
4 **σκέψαι**: aor. mid. imper., σκέπτομαι
(ἐ)ὰν...συνδόξῃ: *whether it seems good…*
τῇδε πῃ: *in this way somehow*
5 **καλουμένη**: *so-called*; i.e. what is called

ἀπιστῶ μέν σοι ἔγωγε, ἦ δ' ὃς ὁ Σιμμίας, οὔ, αὐτὸ δὲ τοῦτο, ἔφη, δέομαι παθεῖν περὶ οὗ ὁ λόγος, ἀναμνησθῆναι. καὶ σχεδόν γε ἐξ ὧν Κέβης ἐπεχείρησε λέγειν ἤδη μέμνημαι καὶ πείθομαι· οὐδὲν μεντἂν ἧττον ἀκούοιμι νῦν πῇ σὺ ἐπεχείρησας λέγειν.

τῇδ' ἔγωγε, ἦ δ' ὅς. ὁμολογοῦμεν γὰρ δήπου, εἴ τίς τι c
ἀναμνησθήσεται, δεῖν αὐτὸν τοῦτο πρότερόν ποτε ἐπίστασθαι.

πάνυ γ', ἔφη.

ἆρ' οὖν καὶ τόδε ὁμολογοῦμεν, ὅταν ἐπιστήμη παραγίγνηται τρόπῳ τοιούτῳ, ἀνάμνησιν εἶναι; λέγω δὲ τίνα τρόπον τόνδε. ἐάν τίς τι ἕτερον ἢ ἰδὼν ἢ ἀκούσας ἤ τινα ἄλλην αἴσθησιν λαβὼν μὴ μόνον ἐκεῖνο γνῷ, ἀλλὰ καὶ

αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἀνα-μιμνήσκω: remind, recall (acc. gen.) 16
ἀνά-μνησις, -εως, ἡ: recollection, recall, 11
ἀ-πιστέω: to distrust, not believe (+ dat.), 8
γιγνώσκω: learn to know, to learn, realize 12
δέομαι: lack, need, want; ask for (+ gen.) 7
δή-που: perhaps, I suppose; of course, 8
ἐπι-χειρέω: put one's hand on, attempt, try, 8
ἐπίσταμαι: know, know how, understand, 13
ἤδη: already, now, at this time, 16
ἧττων, -ον: less, weaker, inferior, 16
μιμνήσκω: to remind, recall, recollect, 6
παρα-γίγνομαι: to come near, be present, 11
πῇ: in what way, how, 5
σχεδόν: nearly, almost, just about, 8
τῇδε: here; in this way, thus, 8
τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17

6 **ἀπιστῶ...οὔ**: *Disbelieve you…I do not!*
αὐτὸ δὲ τοῦτο: *but this very thing*; 'this thing itself' intensive, acc. object
7 **παθεῖν**: aor. inf. πάσχω
ὁ λόγος: *(there is) a conversation*; i.e. what we were talking about, add verb
ἀναμνησθῆναι: *(namely) recollection*; 'to recollect' aor. pass. inf. in apposition to τοῦτο
8 **καὶ...γε**: *and…in fact*; emphasizing the intervening word
ἐξ ὧν: *from (the things) which*; ἐξ τούτων ἅ; acc. relative attracted into gen. pl. of the missing antecedent
μέμνημαι: pf. mid. μιμνήσκω
οὐδὲν...ἧττον: *no less*; comparative adv. οὐδὲν is adv. acc. (acc. of degree of extent)
9 **μεντἂν...ἀκούοιμι**: *nevertheless I should…*; μεντοὶ ἄν, potential opt.
πῇ...: *how…*; indirect question
τίς: *someone…*; indefinite τις
2 **ἀναμνησθήσεται**: *recalls*; fut. pass. dep. (aor. pass. stem + σ), use pres. with future sense
δεῖν: *that it is necessary*; inf., impersonal δεῖ, ind. disc. governed by ὁμολογοῦμεν
αὐτὸν: *that he…*; i.e. τις
πρότερον: comparative adv.
3 **πάνυ γε**: *quite so, quite indeed*; affirmative
4 **καὶ τόδε**: *this also*; καί is adverbial
5 **τρόπῳ τοιούτῳ**: *in…*; dat. manner
ἀνάμνησιν εἶναι: *that…*; ind. disc.
λέγω δὲ τίνα τρόπον τόνδε: *I mean some way as this*; i.e. the following
ἐάν...γνῷ: 3s aor. subj, γιγνώσκω
7 **μη μόνον... ἀλλὰ καὶ**: *not only…but also*

ἕτερον ἐννοήσῃ οὗ μὴ ἡ αὐτὴ ἐπιστήμη ἀλλ᾽ ἄλλη, ἆρα οὐχὶ τοῦτο δικαίως λέγομεν ὅτι ἀνεμνήσθη, οὗ τὴν ἔννοιαν
d *ἔλαβεν;*

πῶς λέγεις;

οἷον τὰ τοιάδε· ἄλλη που ἐπιστήμη ἀνθρώπου καὶ λύρας.

πῶς γὰρ οὔ;

οὐκοῦν οἶσθα ὅτι οἱ ἐρασταί, ὅταν ἴδωσιν λύραν ἢ ἱμάτιον ἢ ἄλλο τι οἷς τὰ παιδικὰ αὐτῶν εἴωθε χρῆσθαι, πάσχουσι τοῦτο· ἔγνωσάν τε τὴν λύραν καὶ ἐν τῇ διανοίᾳ ἔλαβον τὸ εἶδος τοῦ παιδὸς οὗ ἦν ἡ λύρα; τοῦτο δέ ἐστιν ἀνάμνησις· ὥσπερ γε καὶ Σιμμίαν τις ἰδὼν πολλάκις Κέβητος ἀνεμνήσθη, καὶ ἄλλα που μυρία τοιαῦτ᾽ ἂν εἴη.

ἀνα-μιμνήσκω: remind, recall (acc. gen.) 16
ἀνά-μνησις, -εως, ἡ: recollection, recall, 11
γιγνώσκω: learn to know, to learn, realize 12
διάνοια, ἡ: thought, intention, purpose, 6
δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right(eous), fair, 13
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
εἴωθα: to be accustomed, 12
ἐν-νοέω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
ἔννοια, ἡ: idea, intent, notion, conception, 1
ἐραστής, -οῦ, ὁ: a lover, 2
ἱμάτιον, τό: a cloak or mantle, 7
λύρα, ἡ: lyre, 11
μυρίος, -η, -ον: countless, infinite, 6
παιδικα, τά: beloved, (boy, obj. of lover) 2
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ: child, boy, girl; slave, 6
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14
χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.) 11

8 **ἕτερον**: *something other*
ἐννοήσῃ: 3s aor. subjunctive, ἐν-νοέω
οὗ: *of which*; relative, objective gen. governed by ἐπιστήμη
αὐτὴ...ἄλλη: *same…different*
ἆρα οὐχὶ: *do we not*…?; anticipating a positive response
9 **ἀνεμνήσθη**: 3s aor. pass. deponent ἀναμιμνήσκω
οὗ: *of which*; relative, objective gen. governed by ἔννοιαν
d1 **λέγεις**: *you mean*
3 **οἷον**: *for example*; 'in respect to such,' acc. of respect
ἄλλη...ἐπιστήμη...λύρας: *knowledge of a man and of a lyre (are) different, I suppose*
4 **πῶς γὰρ οὔ**: *how (could they) not?*; elliptical, '(yes), for how…not'
5 **οἶσθα**: 2s pf. οἶδα, pres. in sense
ἴδωσιν: 3p aor. subjunctive ὁράω (εἶδον), indefinite temporal clause
6 **οἷς**: *which…;* dat. object of inf. χράομαι
7 **ἔγνωσαν**: 3p aor. γιγνώσκω
8 **οὗ**: *whose;* relative, gen. of possession
ἦν: 3s impf. εἰμί
9 **ἰδὼν**: nom. sg. aor. pple εἶδον
Κέβητος: gen. obj. of verb of forgetting
ἀνεμνήσθη: 3s aor. pass. deponent ἀναμιμνήσκω
10 **ἂν εἴη**: *there might be…*; potential opt. εἰμί

μυρία μέντοι νὴ Δία, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας.

οὐκοῦν, ἦ δ' ὅς, τὸ τοιοῦτον ἀνάμνησίς τίς ἐστι; μάλιστα e
μέντοι ὅταν τις τοῦτο πάθῃ περὶ ἐκεῖνα ἃ ὑπὸ χρόνου καὶ τοῦ μὴ ἐπισκοπεῖν ἤδη ἐπελέληστο;

πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη.

τί δέ; ἦ δ' ὅς· ἔστιν ἵππον γεγραμμένον ἰδόντα καὶ 5
λύραν γεγραμμένην ἀνθρώπου ἀναμνησθῆναι, καὶ Σιμμίαν ἰδόντα γεγραμμένον Κέβητος ἀναμνησθῆναι;

πάνυ γε.

οὐκοῦν καὶ Σιμμίαν ἰδόντα γεγραμμένον αὐτοῦ Σιμμίου ἀναμνησθῆναι; 10

ἔστι μέντοι, ἔφη. **74**

ἀνα-μιμνήσκω: remind, recall (acc. gen.) 16
ἀνά-μνησις, -εως, ἡ: recollection, recall, 11
γράφω: to draw; write, scratch, graze, 4
ἐπι-λανθάνομαι: to forget, 3
ἐπι-σκοπέω: to examine, inspect, consider, 3
Ζεύς, ὁ: Zeus, 11
ἵππος, ὁ: a horse, 4
λύρα, ἡ: lyre, 11
μυρίος, -η, -ον: countless, infinite, 6
νή: by…(+ acc, invoking a god), 14

11 **μέντοι**: *certainly*
νὴ Δία: *by Zeus*; aor. sg. Ζεύς
e1 **τίς**: *a certain*; τις
μάλιστα: *especially*
2 **πάθῃ**: 3rd sg. subjunctive πάσχω in an indefinite temporal clause
περὶ: *regarding* + acc.
ὑπὸ: *because of…*; + gen. of cause
τοῦ...ἐπισκοπεῖν: *of not considering (it)*; articular inf. with ὑπὸ
3 **ἐπελέληστο**: 3rd sg. plpf. mid. ἐπιλανθάνομαι + gen. object
4 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
τί δέ: *what then?*
5 **ἔστιν...ἀναμνησθῆναι**: *is it the case that (someone) recalls…*; supply acc. subject, aor. pass. deponent + gen. object
ἵππον γεγραμμένον...καὶ λύραν γεγραμμένην: acc. obj. of ἰδόντα, pf. pass. pples
ἰδόντα: *(someone) seeing…*; aor. pple. εἶδον modifies missing acc. subject of inf.
6 **Σιμμίαν...ἀναμνησθῆναι**: *and that (someone) seeing Simmias*; second ind. disc., Σιμμίαν is obj. of ἰδόντα
7 **γεγραμμένον**: *drawn*; pf. pass. pple
9 **οὐκοῦν καὶ (ἔστιν)...ἀναμνησθῆναι**: *then (is it not the case) also that (someone)…*
αὐτοῦ Σιμμίου: *Simmias himself*; gen. obj. of inf.
74a1 **μέντοι**: *certainly*

ἆρ᾽ οὖν οὐ κατὰ πάντα ταῦτα συμβαίνει τὴν ἀνάμνησιν εἶναι μὲν ἀφ᾽ ὁμοίων, εἶναι δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ ἀνομοίων;

συμβαίνει.

ἀλλ᾽ ὅταν γε ἀπὸ τῶν ὁμοίων ἀναμιμνῄσκηταί τίς τι, ἆρ᾽ οὐκ ἀναγκαῖον τόδε προσπάσχειν, ἐννοεῖν εἴτε τι ἐλλείπει τοῦτο κατὰ τὴν ὁμοιότητα εἴτε μὴ ἐκείνου οὗ ἀνεμνήσθη;

ἀνάγκη, ἔφη.

σκόπει δή, ἦ δ᾽ ὅς, εἰ ταῦτα οὕτως ἔχει. φαμέν πού τι εἶναι ἴσον, οὐ ξύλον λέγω ξύλῳ οὐδὲ λίθον λίθῳ οὐδ᾽ ἄλλο τῶν τοιούτων οὐδέν, ἀλλὰ παρὰ ταῦτα πάντα ἕτερόν τι, αὐτὸ τὸ ἴσον· φῶμέν τι εἶναι ἢ μηδέν;

b *φῶμεν μέντοι νὴ Δί᾽, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας, θαυμαστῶς γε.*

ἀνα-μιμνήσκω: remind, recall (acc. gen.) 16
ἀνά-μνησις, -εως, ἡ: recollection, recall, 11
ἀν-όμοιος, -ον: unlike, dissimilar, 4
εἴ-τε: either...or; whether...or, 13
ἐλ-λείπω: to leave out, leave undone; fall short, lack, 1
ἐν-νοέω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
Ζεύς, ὁ: Zeus, 6
θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wonderful, marvelous, 11
λίθος, ὁ: a stone, 8
νή: by…(+ acc, invoking a god), 14
ξύλον, τό: wood, firewood, 6
ὁμοιότης, -τητος, ἡ: similarity, resemblance, 3
προσ-πάσχω: suffer/experience in addition, 1
συμ-βαίνω: to happen, occur, result, 8

2 **κατὰ**: *according to*…; + acc.
συμβαίνει: *it happens that…*; acc. + inf.
3 **μὲν...δὲ καὶ**: *….and also*
5 **ἀναμιμνῄσκηται**: pres. mid. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause
6 **ἀναγκαῖον**: *(it is) necessary that…*
ἐννοεῖν...ἀνεμνήσθη: *(namely) to have in mind whether or not* (εἴτε...εἴτε μὴ) *this thing is lacking at all in the likeness of that which it recalls*; i.e. whether the source that causes the recollection falls short of the object of recollection; τι is an inner acc.
8 **ἀνάγκη**: supply ἐστίν
9 **σκόπει**: σκόπε-ε, sg. imper.
δή: *just*; as often, emphatic with an imper.
οὕτως ἔχει: *are so*; see p. 7
φαμέν: 1p pres. φημί
10 **λέγω**: *I mean*
(ἴσον) ξύλῳ...(ἴσον) λίθῳ: *(equal) to wood …(equal) to stone*; i.e. one piece equal to another, supply ἴσον which governs a dative of special adj.
11 **παρὰ...πάντα**: *beyond all these*
ἕτερον τι: object of λέγω
αὐτὸ τό ἴσον: *the equal itself*; or ‘equality itself’
12 **φῶμεν**: *Are we to claim that…?*; 1p pres. deliberative subjunctive φημί
b1 **φῶμεν**: *We are to claim (it)*; replies often repeat the verb in the question to express affirmation
μέντοι: *certainly*
νὴ Δία: *by Zeus*; aor. sg. Ζεύς
b1 **θαυμαστῶς γε**: *remarkably so*; γε adds a detail to the assent (GP 136)

ἦ καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα αὐτὸ ὃ ἔστιν;

πάνυ γε, ἦ δ' ὅς.

πόθεν λαβόντες αὐτοῦ τὴν ἐπιστήμην; ἆρ' οὐκ ἐξ ὧν νυνδὴ ἐλέγομεν, ἢ ξύλα ἢ λίθους ἢ ἄλλα ἄττα ἰδόντες ἴσα, ἐκ τούτων ἐκεῖνο ἐνενοήσαμεν, ἕτερον ὂν τούτων; ἢ οὐχ ἕτερόν σοι φαίνεται; σκόπει δὲ καὶ τῇδε. ἆρ' οὐ λίθοι μὲν ἴσοι καὶ ξύλα ἐνίοτε ταὐτὰ ὄντα τῷ μὲν ἴσα φαίνεται, τῷ δ' οὔ;

πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

τί δέ; αὐτὰ τὰ ἴσα ἔστιν ὅτε ἄνισά σοι ἐφάνη, ἢ ἡ ἰσότης ἀνισότης; c

οὐδεπώποτέ γε, ὦ Σώκρατες.

ἄν-ισος, -ον: unequal, uneven, 1
ἀν-ισότης, ἡ: inequality, 1
ἐνί-οτε: sometimes, 7
ἐν-νοέω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
ἐπίσταμαι: know, know how, understand, 13
ἰσότης, ἡ: equality, 1
λίθος, ὁ: a stone, 8
νυν-δὴ: just now, 15
ξύλον, τό: wood, firewood, 6
ὅτε: when, at some time, 7
οὐδε-πώποτε: not yet ever, never in the world, 1
πό-θεν: from where, 2
τῇδε: here; in this way, thus, 8

2 **καὶ**: *also*; adverbial καί
αὐτὸ ὃ ἔστιν: *what it is*; 'it, what it is' proleptic use of αὐτὸ : make this acc. obj. the subject of ἔστιν
3 **πάνυ γε**: *quite so, quite indeed*
λαβόντες: aor. pple λαμβάνω
4 **ἆρ(α) οὐκ**: *(is) it not…?*
5 **ἄττα**: *any*; alternative to neut. pl. τινα
ἰδόντες: aor. pple ὁράω (εἶδον)
6 **ἐκεῖνο**: *that*; i.e. equality
ἕτερον ὄν: *being*…; neut. sg. pple εἰμί + neuter predicate
τούτων: *than*…; gen. of comparison
7 **σκόπει**: σκόπε-ε, sg. imper.
καὶ: *also*
8 **ταὐτὰ**: *the same*; τὰ αὐτὰ, neuter pl. predicate of ὄντα
ὄντα: neuter pl. pple εἰμί modifying ξύλα
ἐνίοτε...ἴσα φαίνεται: *sometimes appear equal…*; 3s with plural subjects
τῷ μὲν...τῷ δ(ὲ) οὔ: There are number of possible interpretations: (1) 'in one respect but not in another respect' (dat. of respect) or (2) '(appear) to one person but not (appear) to another' (dat. of reference) or (3) '(equal) to one thing but not (equal) to another' (dat. of special adjective).
10 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
c1 **αὐτὰ**: *themselves*; intensive
ἔστιν ὅτε: *sometimes*; 'there is (a time) when,' a common idiom in which the antecedent of ὅτε is missing
ἐφάνη: *appeared*; 3s aor. pass. deponent φαίνομαι
ἡ ἰσότης (ἐφάνη): supply verb

οὐ ταὐτὸν ἄρα ἐστίν, ἦ δ' ὅς, ταῦτά τε τὰ ἴσα καὶ αὐτὸ
5 *τὸ ἴσον.*

οὐδαμῶς μοι φαίνεται, ὦ Σώκρατες.

ἀλλὰ μὴν ἐκ τούτων γ', ἔφη, τῶν ἴσων, ἑτέρων ὄντων ἐκείνου τοῦ ἴσου, ὅμως αὐτοῦ τὴν ἐπιστήμην ἐννενόηκάς τε καὶ εἴληφας;

10 *ἀληθέστατα, ἔφη, λέγεις.*

οὐκοῦν ἢ ὁμοίου ὄντος τούτοις ἢ ἀνομοίου;

πάνυ γε.

διαφέρει δέ γε, ἦ δ' ὅς, οὐδέν· ἕως ἂν ἄλλο ἰδὼν ἀπὸ
d *ταύτης τῆς ὄψεως ἄλλο ἐννοήσῃς, εἴτε ὅμοιον εἴτε ἀνόμοιον, ἀναγκαῖον, ἔφη, αὐτὸ ἀνάμνησιν γεγονέναι.*

ἀν-όμοιος, -ον: unlike, dissimilar, 4
ἀνά-μνησις, -εως, ἡ: recollection, recall, 11
δια-φέρω: to carry over; differ, surpass, 8
εἴ-τε: either...or; whether...or, 13
ἐν-νοέω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
ἕως: until, as long as, 15
ὅμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 13
οὐδαμῶς: in no way, not at all, 11
ὄψις, -εως, ἡ: vision, appearance, form; face, 6

4 **ταὐτὸν**: *the same*; nom. pred., τὸ αὐτὸν
ταῦτα...ἴσον: *these equals and the equal itself*; both neuter subjects of 3s ἐστίν
7 **ἀλλὰ μὴν**: *but certainly, but surely, and yet*; strong adversative often after a negative; cf. 61d9, 63a4
ἑτέρων ὄντων: *being different*; gen. pl. pple εἰμί and gen. pred., modifying ἴσων
8 **ἐκείνου...ἴσου**: *from…*; 'than,' gen. of comparison, i.e. equality itself
ἐννενόηκάς...εἴληφας: 2s pf. ἐν-νοέω, λαμβάνω
10 **ἀληθέστατα**: *most truly*; superlative adv.
11 **ἤ...ἤ**: *either…or*
ὁμοίου ὄντος...ἀνομοίου (ὄντος): *(the equal) being…*; two gen. abs., the adjectives are predicates
τούτοις: dat. of special adjective, follows both ὁμοίου and ἀνομοίου
12 **πάνυ γε**: *quite so, quite indeed*
13 **γε**: *indeed*; emphasizing the entire clause
οὐδέν: *not at all*; inner acc., i.e. 'makes no (difference)'
ἂν...ἐννοήσῃς: 2s aor. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause
ἄλλο...ἄλλο: *one…another*
ἰδὼν: nom. sg. aor. pple ὁράω (εἶδον)
d2 **ἀναγκαῖον**: *(it is)…*; add verb
γεγονέναι: *is*; pf. inf. γίγνομαι, αὐτὸ is acc. subject

πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

τί δέ; ἢ δ' ὅς· ἢ πάσχομέν τι τοιοῦτον περὶ τὰ ἐν τοῖς ξύλοις τε καὶ οἷς νυνδὴ ἐλέγομεν τοῖς ἴσοις; ἆρα φαίνεται ἡμῖν οὕτως ἴσα εἶναι ὥσπερ αὐτὸ τὸ ὃ ἔστιν, ἢ ἐνδεῖ τι ἐκείνου τῷ τοιοῦτον εἶναι οἷον τὸ ἴσον, ἢ οὐδέν;

καὶ πολύ γε, ἔφη, ἐνδεῖ.

οὐκοῦν ὁμολογοῦμεν, ὅταν τίς τι ἰδὼν ἐννοήσῃ ὅτι βούλεται μὲν τοῦτο ὃ νῦν ἐγὼ ὁρῶ εἶναι οἷον ἄλλο τι τῶν ὄντων, ἐνδεῖ δὲ καὶ οὐ δύναται τοιοῦτον εἶναι ἴσον οἷον ἐκεῖνο, ἀλλ' ἔστιν φαυλότερον, ἀναγκαῖόν που τὸν τοῦτο ἐννοοῦντα τυχεῖν προειδότα ἐκεῖνο ᾧ φησιν αὐτὸ προσεοικέναι μέν, ἐνδεέστερως δὲ ἔχειν;

ἀνάγκη.

δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 15
ἐν-δεεστέρος -α -ον: more deficient, lacking, 3
ἐν-δέω: to be in want or lacking of (gen.), 3
ἐν-νοέω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
ἦ: in truth, truly (begins open question), 5
νυν-δὴ: just now, 15
ξύλον, τό: wood, firewood, 6
πρό-οἶδα: to know beforehand, 3
προσ-εοικα: to be like, resemble; seem fit, 1
φαῦλος –η -ον: slight, paltry, cheap, trifling 9

3 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*
4 **τί δέ**: *what (about it)?*; often expressed in a transition, GP 176
πάσχομεν: *we experience*
περὶ: *regarding…*; + acc.
τὰ ἐν τοῖς ξύλοις (ἴσα): *matters in…*; preposition in the attributive position
5 **οἷς...ἐλέγομεν**: *which…*; ἅ, acc. pl. relative attracted into the dat. of the antecedent, the τοῖς ἴσοις which follows
6 **αὐτὸ τὸ ὃ ἔστιν (ἴσον)**: *that which is (equal), itself*; i.e. just as equality itself
ἢ...ἢ: *either…or*
4 **ἐνδεῖ τι ἐκείνου**: *do (they) lack something from that*; i.e. from equality itself; inner acc. (‘at all’ ‘in a way’) and gen. separation
7 **τῷ...εἶναι**: *in respect to being*; articular inf. is dative of respect, εἰμί
τοιοῦτον...οἷον: *such a thing as*; predicate, correlatives (demonstrative and relative)
οὐδὲν: *not at all*; inner acc., parallel to τι
8 **καὶ πολύ γε**: *very much actually*; καὶ...γε the intervening word, an inner acc. with ἐνδεῖ
ἂν...ἐννοήσῃ: 3s aor. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause
ἰδὼν: nom. sg. aor. pple ὁράω (εἶδον)
9 **βούλεται...εἶναι**: *aims to be*; ‘strives to be’
10 **τοῦτο...ὁρῶ**: subject of βούλεται
οἷον ἄλλο τι: *some other sort of thing*
τῶν ὄντων: *of the things that exist*; or ‘of the things that are’
e1 **δὲ**: *but…*; adversative, in response to μέν
τοιοῦτον...οἷον: *such a thing as*; predicate, correlatives (demonstrative and relative)
ἴσον...ἐκεῖνο: *that equal*; i.e. equality itself
2 **φαυλότερον**: predicate, comparative adj.
ἀναγκαῖον: *it is…*; add a verb
τυχεῖν προειδότα: pf. pple προ-οιδα, see p. 20
3 **ᾧ**: *to which*; obj. of pf. inf. προσ-εοικα
4 **ἔχειν**: + adv., see p. 7

τί οὖν; τὸ τοιοῦτον πεπόνθαμεν καὶ ἡμεῖς ἢ οὔ περί τε τὰ ἴσα καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ ἴσον;

παντάπασί γε.

ἀναγκαῖον ἄρα ἡμᾶς προειδέναι τὸ ἴσον πρὸ ἐκείνου τοῦ
75 *χρόνου ὅτε τὸ πρῶτον ἰδόντες τὰ ἴσα ἐνενοήσαμεν ὅτι ὀρέγεται μὲν πάντα ταῦτα εἶναι οἷον τὸ ἴσον, ἔχει δὲ ἐνδεεστέρως.*

ἔστι ταῦτα.

5 *ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τόδε ὁμολογοῦμεν, μὴ ἄλλοθεν αὐτὸ ἐννενοηκέναι μηδὲ δυνατὸν εἶναι ἐννοῆσαι ἀλλ᾽ ἢ ἐκ τοῦ ἰδεῖν ἢ ἅψασθαι ἢ ἔκ τινος ἄλλης τῶν αἰσθήσεων· ταὐτὸν δὲ πάντα ταῦτα λέγω.*

αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἄλλο-θεν: from another place or elsewhere, 6
ἅπτω: fasten, grasp (gen); kindle, set fire; 11
ἐν-δεεστέρος -α -ον: more deficient, lacking, 3
ἐν-νοέω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
ὀρέγω: to stretch out, reach for, extend, 4
ὅτε: when, at some time, 7
παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15
πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 13
πρό-οίδα: to know beforehand, 3

6 **τὸ τοιούτον**: *this sort of thing*
πεπόνθαμεν: 1p pf. πάσχω
καὶ: *also*; adverbial
περί: *regarding…*
9 **ἀναγκαῖον**: *(it is) necessary*
προειδέναι: pf. πρόοιδα but pres. in sense
75a1 **τὸ πρῶτον**: *first*; i.e. for the first time, adverbial acc.
ἰδόντες τὰ ἴσα: nom. pl. aor. pple ὁράω (εἶδον)
2 **ὀρέγεται...εἶναι**: *aim to be*; 'strives to be,' compare βούλεται...εἶναι in 74d9
πάντα ταῦτα: nom. subj.
οἷον: *such as*
ἔχει: + adv., see p. 7

4 **ἔστι**: *are the case*; i.e. are true
5 **ἀλλὰ μὴν**: *but certainly, but surely, and yet*; GP 345
καὶ: *also*
μὴ...ἐννενοηκέναι μηδὲ δυνατὸν εἶναι: *that (we) have not had in mind…nor is it possible…*; ind. disc., pf. inf., δυνατὸν εἶναι is impersonal
6 **ἐννοῆσαι**: aor. inf. ἐννοέω
ἀλλὸ ἢ: *(anything) other than*
τοῦ ἰδεῖν: *seeing*; articular aor. inf. εἶδον
7 **(τοῦ) ἅψασθαι**: *touching*; articular aor. inf. ἅπτω
ταὐτὸν...λέγω: *I assert all these the same*; i.e. perceptions, αἰσθήσεις

ταὐτὸν γὰρ ἔστιν, ὦ Σώκρατες, πρός γε ὃ βούλεται δηλῶσαι ὁ λόγος.

ἀλλὰ μὲν δὴ ἔκ γε τῶν αἰσθήσεων δεῖ ἐννοῆσαι ὅτι πάντα τὰ ἐν ταῖς αἰσθήσεσιν ἐκείνου τε ὀρέγεται τοῦ ὃ **b** *ἔστιν ἴσον, καὶ αὐτοῦ ἐνδεέστερά ἐστιν· ἢ πῶς λέγομεν;*

οὕτως.

πρὸ τοῦ ἄρα ἄρξασθαι ἡμᾶς ὁρᾶν καὶ ἀκούειν καὶ τἆλλα αἰσθάνεσθαι τυχεῖν ἔδει που εἰληφότας ἐπιστήμην αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἴσου ὅτι ἔστιν, εἰ ἐμέλλομεν τὰ ἐκ τῶν αἰσθήσεων ἴσα ἐκεῖσε ἀνοίσειν, ὅτι προθυμεῖται μὲν πάντα τοιαῦτ᾽ εἶναι οἷον ἐκεῖνο, ἔστιν δὲ αὐτοῦ φαυλότερα.

ἀνάγκη ἐκ τῶν προειρημένων, ὦ Σώκρατες.

αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 11
αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἀνα-φέρω: to report, bring up, recover, 2
ἄρχω: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 12
δηλόω: to make clear, show, reveal, 3
ἐκεῖ-σε: thither, to that place, 10
ἐν-δεεστέρος, -α, -ον: more insufficient, 3
ἐν-νοέω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
ὀρέγω: stretch for, reach or strive for, (gen) 4
προ-θυμέομαι: to be eager, desire, ready, 12
προ-λέγω: to say or mention beforehand, 4
φαῦλος –η -ον: slight, paltry, cheap, trifling 9

9 **ταὐτὸν**: *the same*; τὸ αὐτὸν
πρὸς γε...: *at least in regard to*…; + acc. Simmias qualifies his affirmative reply
βούλεται...λόγος: *the conversation aims to*…; compare 74d9 and 75a2

11 **ἀλλὰ μὲν δὴ..γε**: *well certainly, well, of course*; introduces a new point, similar to ἀλλὰ μὴν (GP 394)
ἔκ γε...αἰσθήσεων: *through the perceptions in fact*; i.e. these and nothing else, γε is both restrictive and emphatic (GP 120)

b1 **πάντα τὰ...αἰσθήσεσιν**: i.e. all sensible objects that are equal
ἐκείνου...τοῦ ὃ ἔστιν ἴσον: *that thing which is equal*; i.e. equality itself, a partitive gen., object of ὀρέγεται; the relative ὃ ἔστιν ἴσον is in the attributive position, see also 74d6, αὐτὸ τὸ ὃ ἔστιν (ἴσον);

2 **αὐτοῦ**: *from it*; i.e. from equality itself; a gen. of separation
ἐστιν: *they are*…; the subj. is neuter pl. πάντα above

4 **πρὸ τοῦ...ἄρξασθαι**: *before we began to…*; 'before our beginning to…' articular infs. are often translated as gerunds but are more cumbersome with acc. subject, ἡμᾶς
τἆλλα: *other (perceptions)*; τὰ ἄλλα

5 **τυχεῖν ἔδει**: *it was necessary that (we) attain*; aor. inf. τυγχάνω, the object is ἐπιστήμην
που: *somewhere*
εἰληφότας: acc. pl. pf. pple λαμβάνω modifying acc. subject ἡμᾶς
αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἴσου ὅτι ἔστιν: *of what the equal itself is*; lit. 'of the equal itself, what it is'; proleptic use of τοῦ ἴσου which is more suitably the subject of ἔστιν

7 **ἐκεῖσε**: *to that one*; i.e. to equality itself
ἀν-οίσειν: *to compare*; μέλλω governs a fut. inf., here ἀνα-φέρω
ὅτι: *and see that*…; parallel to ἀνοίσειν
προθυμεῖται...εἶναι: *desires to be…*
τοιαῦτα...οἷον: *such a thing as*

9 **προειρημένων**: pf. pass. pple προλέγω

οὐκοῦν γενόμενοι εὐθὺς ἑωρῶμέν τε καὶ ἠκούομεν καὶ τὰς ἄλλας αἰσθήσεις εἴχομεν;

πάνυ γε.

c ἔδει δέ γε, φαμέν, πρὸ τούτων τὴν τοῦ ἴσου ἐπιστήμην εἰληφέναι;

ναί.

πρὶν γενέσθαι ἄρα, ὡς ἔοικεν, ἀνάγκη ἡμῖν αὐτὴν εἰληφέναι.

ἔοικεν.

οὐκοῦν εἰ μὲν λαβόντες αὐτὴν πρὸ τοῦ γενέσθαι ἔχοντες ἐγενόμεθα, ἠπιστάμεθα καὶ πρὶν γενέσθαι καὶ εὐθὺς γενόμενοι οὐ μόνον τὸ ἴσον καὶ τὸ μεῖζον καὶ τὸ ἔλαττον ἀλλὰ καὶ σύμπαντα τὰ τοιαῦτα; οὐ γὰρ περὶ τοῦ ἴσου νῦν ὁ λόγος

αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἐπίσταμαι: know, know how, understand, 13
εὐθύς: right away, straight, directly, at once, 9
ναί: yes, yea, 15
πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 13
σύμπας, -πασα, -παν: all together, 2

10 **γενόμενοι**: *(after) being born*; aor. γίγνομαι
ἑωρῶμεν..εἴχομεν: 1p impf. ὁράω, ὁράω, ἔχω
12 **πάνυ γε**: *quite so, quite indeed*
c1 **δε γὲ**: *and indeed*; emphasizing the entire clause
φαμέν: 1p pres. φημί
2 **εἰληφέναι**: *that we…*; pf. act. inf. λαμβάνω, supply the acc. subject ἡμᾶς
4 **πρὶν γενέσθαι**: *before being born*
ὡς ἔοικεν: *as it seems, as seems likely*
ἀνάγκη: *(it is) necessary*; supply verb
ἡμῖν: *for…*; dat. of interest
εἰληφέναι: pf. act. inf. λαμβάνω
αὐτὴν: *it*; i.e. the ἐπιστήμη in c1
7 **πρὸ τοῦ γενέσθαι**: see line 4, articular inf. in the pple phrase with λαβόντες
ἔχοντες: *possessing (the knowledge)*
8 **ἐγενόμεθα**: *we were born*; aor. **γενόμενοι**: *(when) being born*
9 **οὐ μόνον...ἀλλὰ καὶ**: *not only…but also*
10 **ὁ λόγος ἡμῖν**: *our conversation (is)…*; dat. of possession; supply a linking verb

ἡμῖν μᾶλλόν τι ἢ καὶ περὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ καλοῦ καὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ καὶ δικαίου καὶ ὁσίου καί, ὅπερ λέγω, περὶ ἁπάντων **d**
οἷς ἐπισφραγιζόμεθα τὸ 'αὐτὸ ὃ ἔστι' καὶ ἐν ταῖς ἐρωτήσεσιν ἐρωτῶντες καὶ ἐν ταῖς ἀποκρίσεσιν ἀποκρινόμενοι. ὥστε ἀναγκαῖον ἡμῖν τούτων πάντων τὰς ἐπιστήμας πρὸ τοῦ γενέσθαι εἰληφέναι. 5

ἔστι ταῦτα.

καὶ εἰ μέν γε λαβόντες ἑκάστοτε μὴ ἐπιλελήσμεθα, εἰδότας ἀεὶ γίγνεσθαι καὶ ἀεὶ διὰ βίου εἰδέναι· τὸ γὰρ εἰδέναι τοῦτ' ἔστιν, λαβόντα του ἐπιστήμην ἔχειν καὶ μὴ ἀπολωλεκέναι· ἢ οὐ τοῦτο λήθην λέγομεν, ὦ Σιμμία, ἐπιστήμης ἀποβολήν; 10

ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: every, quite all, 14
ἀπο-βολή, ἡ: loss, throwing away, 1
ἀπο-κρίνομαι: to answer, reply, 13
ἀπο-κρισις, ἡ: reply, answer, 4
δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right(eous), fair, 13
ἑκάστ-οτε: each time, on each occasion, 4
ἐπι-λανθάνομαι: to forget, 3
ἐπι-σφαγίζω: put a seal on, stamp a seal on, 1
ἐρωτάω: to ask, inquire, question, 10
ἐρωτήσις, -εως ἡ: questioning, interrogating 1
λήθη, ἡ: forgetfulness, 1
ὅσιος, -α, -ον: hallowed, sacred, ordained, 4
πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 13

11 **οὐ...μᾶλλον τι ἢ**: *not...at all more than*…; τι is adv. acc. (acc. of degree by extent)
αὐτοῦ: *itself*
τοῦ καλοῦ...τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ...(τοῦ) δικαίου ...(τοῦ) ὁσίου: *the beautiful itself...the good itself*...; substantives, supply the articles
d1 **ὅπερ**: *just as*….; 'the very thing which'
2 **οἷς**: *on which*; dat. of compound verb
τὸ 'αὐτὸ ὃ ἔστι': *the (seal) 'what it is'*
ἐν ταῖς ἐρωτήσεσιν...ἀποκρινόμενοι: *in questions (when) questioning and in answers (when) answering*
4 **ὥστε ἀναγκαῖον (εἶναι)**: *so as to be necessary to…*; ὥστε governs an inf.
ἡμῖν: *for*…; dat. of interest
τούτων πάντων: partitive gen.
τοῦ γενέσθαι: being born; articular inf.
5 **εἰληφέναι**: pf. inf. λαμβάνω + gen.
6 **ἔστι**: *are the case*; i.e. are true
7 **ἐπιλελήσμεθα**: pf. mid. ἐπιλανθάνομαι
8 **εἰδότας**: pf. pple οἶδα; modified by ἀεί
γίγνεσθαι (ἀναγκαῖον ἐστίν): *it is necessary to be born*
εἰδέναι: pf. inf. οἶδα, pres. in sense
10 **ἀπολωλεκέναι**: pf. inf. ἀπ-όλλυμι
λέγομεν: *call* (x)(y); governs a double acc. (acc. direct object + acc. predicate)
11 **ἀποβολήν**: in apposition to τοῦτο

Philosophical Vocabulary: **τὸ 'αὐτὸ ὃ ἔστι'** *"the thing itself, which is"*

Fowler translates this difficult phrase as "the absolute," Jowett as "essence," Rowe as "the seal 'what is'," and Grube as "the word 'itself'." The editor's punctuation suggests that the article τὸ creates a substantive out of the entire phrase αὐτὸ ὃ ἔστι (thus, τὸ αὐτὸ is not 'the same'). If, as Grube suggests, αὐτὸ mirrors the uses of the intensive αὐτοῦ in c11 above and is used proleptically, as in 75b5-6 (αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἴσου ὅτι ἔστιν, 'what the equal itself is'), then we may translate αὐτὸ ὃ ἔστι as 'what itself is.' For more interpretations, see Rowe's *Phaedo*, p. 175.

e *πάντως δήπου, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες.*

εἰ δέ γε οἶμαι λαβόντες πρὶν γενέσθαι γιγνόμενοι ἀπωλέσαμεν, ὕστερον δὲ ταῖς αἰσθήσεσι χρώμενοι περὶ αὐτὰ ἐκείνας ἀναλαμβάνομεν τὰς ἐπιστήμας ἃς ποτε καὶ πρὶν εἴχομεν, ἆρ᾽ οὐχ ὃ καλοῦμεν μανθάνειν οἰκείαν ἂν ἐπιστήμην ἀναλαμβάνειν εἴη; τοῦτο δέ που ἀναμιμνήσκεσθαι λέγοντες ὀρθῶς ἂν λέγοιμεν;

πάνυ γε.

76 *δυνατὸν γὰρ δὴ τοῦτό γε ἐφάνη, αἰσθόμενόν τι ἢ ἰδόντα ἢ ἀκούσαντα ἤ τινα ἄλλην αἴσθησιν λαβόντα ἕτερόν τι ἀπὸ τούτου ἐννοῆσαι ὃ ἐπελέληστο, ᾧ τοῦτο ἐπλησίαζεν ἀνόμοιον ὂν ἢ ᾧ ὅμοιον· ὥστε, ὅπερ λέγω, δυοῖν θάτερα, ἤτοι ἐπιστάμενοί γε αὐτὰ γεγόναμεν καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα διὰ βίου πάντες,*

αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 11
αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἀν-όμοιος, -ον: unlike, dissimilar to (dat.) 4
ἀνα-λαμβάνω: to find, take back, recover, 3
ἀνα-μιμνήσκω: remind, recall (acc. gen.) 16
δή-που: perhaps, I suppose; of course, 8
δυνατός, -ή, -όν: capable, strong, possible, 8
ἐν-νοέω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
ἐπι-λανθάνομαι: to forget, 3
ἐπίσταμαι: know, know how, understand, 13
ἤτοι: now surely, truly, either 4
μανθάνω: to learn, understand, 12
οἰκεῖος, -α, -ον: one's own; *subst*. relatives, 4
πάντως: entirely, absolutely, 3
πλησιάζω: to be near, bring near, 2
ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; *adv*. later 17
χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.) 11

e2 **οἶμαι**: οἴομαι, parenthetical
γίγνομενοι: *(while) being born*; taken closely with ἀπωλέσαμεν, aor. ἀπόλλυμι
3 **περὶ**: *regarding…*
ποτε καὶ πρίν: *at some time before also*
5 **οὐχ..αν εἴη**: *would…not be…?*; potential opt., οὐχ anticipates a yes reply
ὃ καλοῦμεν μανθάνειν: *what we call 'to learn'*; subject of εἴη
5 **οἰκείαν ἐπιστήμην**: *one's own knowledge*
6 **λέγοντες**: *calling* (x) (y); governs a double acc. (direct object and predicate)
7 **ἂν λέγοιμεν**: *would…?*; potential opt.
76a1 **γὰρ δὴ**: *(yes) for indeed*
ἐφάνη: *appeared*; aor. pass., δυνατὸν is a neuter nom. predicate
(τινὰ) αἰσθόμενον...: *(someone) perceiving*; mid. pple, τι is acc. object, the missing noun is acc. subject of aor. inf. ἐννοῆσαι
ἰδόντα: acc. sg. aor. pple ὁράω (εἶδον)
2 **ἕτερον τι**: object. of aor. inf. ἐννοῆσαι
3 **τούτου**: *this*; refering to τι
ὃ: which; the antecedent is τούτου
ἐπελέληστο: plpf. pass. ἐπιλανθάνομαι
ᾧ...ὅμοιον: *with which this was associated, being unlike it or like it*; i.e. to which this perceived thing was associated
4 **ὅπερ**: *just as*; 'the very thing which'
δυοῖν: *of two*; dual gen.
θάτερα: *one*; crasis for τὰ ἕτερα
ἤτοι...γε...ἤ: *either….in fact…or*; ἤτοι opens a disjunction where the first choice is more probable while γε is emphatic and restrictive: i.e. 'this and no other' (GP 119)
5 **γεγόναμεν**: *we are born*; pf. γίγνομαι

ἢ ὕστερον, οὕς φαμεν μανθάνειν, οὐδὲν ἀλλ᾽ ἢ ἀναμιμνῄσκονται οὗτοι, καὶ ἡ μάθησις ἀνάμνησις ἂν εἴη.

καὶ μάλα δὴ οὕτως ἔχει, ὦ Σώκρατες.

πότερον οὖν αἱρῇ, ὦ Σιμμία; ἐπισταμένους ἡμᾶς γεγονέναι, ἢ ἀναμιμνῄσκεσθαι ὕστερον ὧν πρότερον ἐπιστήμην **b** εἰληφότες ἦμεν;

οὐκ ἔχω, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἐν τῷ παρόντι ἑλέσθαι.

τί δέ; τόδε ἔχεις ἑλέσθαι, καὶ πῇ σοι δοκεῖ περὶ αὐτοῦ; ἀνὴρ ἐπιστάμενος περὶ ὧν ἐπίσταται ἔχοι ἂν δοῦναι λόγον 5 ἢ οὔ;

πολλὴ ἀνάγκη, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες.

ἦ καὶ δοκοῦσί σοι πάντες ἔχειν διδόναι λόγον περὶ τούτων ὧν νυνδὴ ἐλέγομεν;

αἱρέω: to seize, take; *mid*. choose, 4
ἀνα-μιμνήσκω: remind, recall (acc. gen.) 16
ἀνά-μνησις, -εως, ἡ: recollection, recall, 11
δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 15
ἐπίσταμαι: know, know how, understand, 13
μάθησις, -εως, ἡ: learning, instruction, 6
μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 10
μανθάνω: to learn, understand, 12
νυν-δὴ: just now, 15
πῇ: in what way, how, 5
πότερος, -α, -ον: (untranslated), whether, 19
ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; *adv*. later 17

6 **οὕς**: *(these) whom…*; relative, acc. subj. of inf., the antecedent is the following οὗτοι
οὐδὲν ἀλλ(ὸ) ἢ...οὗτοι: *these are doing nothing other than recollecting*
7 **ἂν εἴη**: *would…*; potential opt. εἰμί
8 **καὶ μάλα δὴ**: *and very much indeed*
οὕτως ἔχει: *is so*; see p. 7
9 **πότερον**: *which one?*
αἱρῇ: αἱρέ(σ)αι, 2s pres. mid. αἱρέω
γεγονέναι: *that….are born*; ind. disc., pf. inf. γίγνομαι
b1 **εἰληφότες ἦμεν**: periphrastic 1s plpf. (pf. pple + impf. εἰμί), λαμβάνω
3 **ἔχω**: *I am able*; as often with an inf.
παρόντι: i.e. present time; pple πάρειμι
ἑλέσθαι: aor. inf. αἱρέω (ἑλ)
4 **τί δέ**: *what (then)*?; used to express surprise or introduce a new question, i.e. what about the following?
5 **ἀνὴρ**: *a man*; indefinite
περὶ ὧν: *concerning (the things) which*; περὶ τούτων ἃ; acc. pl. relative attracted into gen. of missing antecedent
ἔχοι ἂν: *would be able*; ἔχω + inf.
δοῦναι λόγον: *to give an account*; aor. inf. δίδωμι
8 **ἦ καὶ...πάντες**: *does everyone actually seem…*?; ἦ introduces a question, καί is adverbial
ἔχειν δίδοναι λόγον: see line 5

βουλοίμην μεντἄν, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας· ἀλλὰ πολὺ μᾶλλον φοβοῦμαι μὴ αὔριον τηνικάδε οὐκέτι ᾖ ἀνθρώπων οὐδεὶς ἀξίως οἷός τε τοῦτο ποιῆσαι.

c *οὐκ ἄρα δοκοῦσί σοι ἐπίστασθαί γε, ἔφη, ὦ Σιμμία, πάντες αὐτά;*

οὐδαμῶς.

ἀναμιμνῄσκονται ἄρα ἅ ποτε ἔμαθον;

ἀνάγκη.

πότε λαβοῦσαι αἱ ψυχαὶ ἡμῶν τὴν ἐπιστήμην αὐτῶν; οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἀφ᾽ οὗ γε ἄνθρωποι γεγόναμεν.

οὐ δῆτα.

πρότερον ἄρα.

ναί.

ἀνα-μιμνήσκω: remind, recall (acc. gen.) 16
ἄξιος, -α, -ον: worthy of, deserving of, 15
αὔριον: tomorrow, 2
δῆτα: certainly, to be sure, of course, 5
ἐπίσταμαι: know, know how, understand, 13
μανθάνω: to learn, understand, 12
ναί: yes, yea, 15
οὐδαμῶς: in no way, not at all, 11
οὐκ-έτι: no more, no longer, no further, 4
πότε: when, at what time, 2
τηνικάδε: at this time, then, 1
φοβέω: to terrify, frighten; *mid*. fear, 15

10 **βουλοίμην μεντ(οἱ) ἄν**: potential opt.; μεντοὶ is affirmative ('certainly') not adversative
πολὺ: *much*; adverbial acc. (acc. of extent by degree) with μᾶλλον
11 **μὴ...ᾖ...οἷός τε**: *lest…be able*; or 'that…is the sort so as to…' fearing clause, 3s pres. subj. εἰμί; οἷος τε εἰμί, 'I am the sort to' is a common idiom for 'I am able to'
12 **ἀξίως**: *fittingly, duly, deservedly*
ποιῆσαι: aor. inf. ποιέω
c4 **ἅ**: *(the things) which*; supply the missing antecedent, obj. of main verb
ἔμαθον: aor. μανθάνω
6 **λαβοῦσαι**: fem. pl. nom. aor. pple λαμβάνω
7 **οὐ γὰρ δὴ**: *for certainly not…*; GP 243
ἀπ(ὸ) οὗ: *after the time which*; 'from which (time)'
γεγόναμεν: 1p pf. γίγνομαι, 'be born'

ἦσαν ἄρα, ὦ Σιμμία, αἱ ψυχαὶ καὶ πρότερον, πρὶν εἶναι ἐν ἀνθρώπου εἴδει, χωρὶς σωμάτων, καὶ φρόνησιν εἶχον.

εἰ μὴ ἄρα ἅμα γιγνόμενοι λαμβάνομεν, ὦ Σώκρατες, ταύτας τὰς ἐπιστήμας· οὗτος γὰρ λείπεται ἔτι ὁ χρόνος. 15

εἶεν, ὦ ἑταῖρε· ἀπόλλυμεν δὲ αὐτὰς ἐν ποίῳ ἄλλῳ χρόνῳ; **d**
—οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἔχοντές γε αὐτὰς γιγνόμεθα, ὡς ἄρτι ὡμολογήσαμεν—ἢ ἐν τούτῳ ἀπόλλυμεν ἐν ᾧπερ καὶ λαμβάνομεν; ἢ ἔχεις ἄλλον τινὰ εἰπεῖν χρόνον;

οὐδαμῶς, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἀλλὰ ἔλαθον ἐμαυτὸν οὐδὲν εἰπών. 5

ἆρ' οὖν οὕτως ἔχει, ἔφη, ἡμῖν, ὦ Σιμμία; εἰ μὲν ἔστιν

εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
ἑταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate, 11
λανθάνω: to escape notice of; forget, 7
λείπω: to leave, forsake, abandon, 1
οὐδαμῶς: in no way, not at all, 11
ποῖος, -α, -ον: what sort of? what kind of?, 9
φρόνησις, -εως, ἡ: intelligence, wisdom, 15
χωρίς: separately; apart from, without (gen.) 6

11 **ἦσαν**: *existed*; 3p impf. εἰμί
καὶ πρότερον: *previously in fact*
πρὶν...: *before*…; + inf. εἰμί
12 **εἴδει**: εἴδε-ι, dat. sg. εἶδος, -εος, τό
14 **ἐι μὴ**: *unless*…
ἅμα γιγνόμενοι: *at the same time as being born*
15 **λείπεται**: *is left*; i.e. remains to be discussed
εἶεν: *well then*
d1 **ἀπόλλυμεν**: *we lose*
2 **οὐ γὰρ δὴ**: *for certainly…not*
ὡς: *as*
3 **ἢ...ἢ**: *either…or*
ἐν τούτῳ (χρόνῳ)...ἐν ᾧπερ (χρόνῳ): *in this time in which…*
καὶ: *also*
4 **ἔχεις**: *are you able*; ἔχω + inf.
5 **ἔλαθον**: 1s aor. λανθάνω; often with a complementary pple this verb must be translated impersonally: 'it escaped my notice that I spoke…'
οὐδὲν: *nonsense*; i.e. nothing important
7 **οὕτως ἔχει**: *is so*; see p. 7
ἔστιν: *exists*

ἃ θρυλοῦμεν ἀεί, καλόν τέ τι καὶ ἀγαθὸν καὶ πᾶσα ἡ τοιαύτη
οὐσία, καὶ ἐπὶ ταύτην τὰ ἐκ τῶν αἰσθήσεων πάντα ἀνα-
e φέρομεν, ὑπάρχουσαν πρότερον ἀνευρίσκοντες ἡμετέραν
οὖσαν, καὶ ταῦτα ἐκείνῃ ἀπεικάζομεν, ἀναγκαῖον, οὕτως ὥσπερ
καὶ ταῦτα ἔστιν, οὕτως καὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν ψυχὴν εἶναι καὶ
πρὶν γεγονέναι ἡμᾶς· εἰ δὲ μὴ ἔστι ταῦτα, ἄλλως ἂν ὁ λόγος
5 οὗτος εἰρημένος εἴη; ἆρ᾽ οὕτως ἔχει, καὶ ἴση ἀνάγκη ταῦτά
τε εἶναι καὶ τὰς ἡμετέρας ψυχὰς πρὶν καὶ ἡμᾶς γεγονέναι,
καὶ εἰ μὴ ταῦτα, οὐδὲ τάδε;

ὑπερφυῶς, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας, δοκεῖ μοι ἡ
αὐτὴ ἀνάγκη εἶναι, καὶ εἰς καλόν γε καταφεύγει ὁ λόγος εἰς
77 τὸ ὁμοίως εἶναι τήν τε ψυχὴν ἡμῶν πρὶν γενέσθαι ἡμᾶς καὶ

αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 14
ἀνα-φέρω: to report, bring up, recover, 2
ἀν-ευρίσκω: to find out, discover, 2
ἀπ-εικάζω: compare, copy from a model, 2
ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our, 5
θρυλέω: chatter about, talk over and over, 2
κατα-φεύγω: to flee to refuge, take refuge 2
οὐσία, ἡ: being, essence, substance, 6
ὑπ-άρχω: be there, be ready, be available, 4
ὑπερφυῶς: extraordinarily, enormously, 3

8 **ἃ**: *just as*…; '(things) which…' parenthetical
καλόν...τι: *something beautiful and something*….
9 **ἐπὶ ταύτην...ἀναφέρομεν**: *we compare all these from sensations to this*; see 75b6
e1 **ἀνευρίσκοντες**: *finding (this)*; add ταύτην, the participles ὑπάρχουσαν, οὖσαν modify this missing fem. sg. acc. object
πρότερον: comparative adv.
2 **ἐκείνῃ**: *to that one*; i.e. to ταύτην above
ἀναγκαῖον: *(it is) necessary*; supply verb
οὕτως...ἔστιν: *just as these things actually exist*; καί is adverbial
3 **οὕτως καὶ...καὶ πρὶν**: *so also…even before*
4 **γεγονέναι**: pf. γίγνομαι
5 **ἔστι**: *exist*; neuter pl. subject
ἄλλως: *in vain*
ἂν...εἰρημένος εἴη: *would have been said*; potential opt., periphrastic pf. (pf. pass. pple λογέω (ερ) + εἰμί)
ἴση ἀνάγκη: *(is it) equally necessary…*
6 **τε...καὶ**: *that both…and*; two acc. subjects
πρὶν καὶ: *before actually*…; adverbial καί
8 **ἡ αὐτὴ ἀνάγκη**: *the same necessity*
9 **εἰς καλόν**: *at the right moment*; καί...γε emphasizes the intervening words, εἰς καλὸν is idiomatic
καταφεύγει: *takes refuge*; i.e. concludes
εἰς τὸ...: *in equally our soul existing and...*; τὸ εἶναι is an articular inf. following εἰς

τὴν οὐσίαν ἣν σὺ νῦν λέγεις. οὐ γὰρ ἔχω ἔγωγε οὐδὲν οὕτω μοι ἐναργὲς ὂν ὡς τοῦτο, τὸ πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτ᾽ εἶναι ὡς οἷόν τε μάλιστα, καλόν τε καὶ ἀγαθὸν καὶ τἆλλα πάντα ἃ σὺ νυνδὴ ἔλεγες· καὶ ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ ἱκανῶς ἀποδέδεικται.

τί δὲ δὴ Κέβητι; ἔφη ὁ Σωκράτης· δεῖ γὰρ καὶ Κέβητα πείθειν.

ἱκανῶς, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας, ὡς ἔγωγε οἶμαι· καίτοι καρτερώτατος ἀνθρώπων ἐστὶν πρὸς τὸ ἀπιστεῖν τοῖς λόγοις. ἀλλ᾽ οἶμαι οὐκ ἐνδεῶς τοῦτο πεπεῖσθαι αὐτόν, ὅτι πρὶν γενέσθαι ἡμᾶς ἦν ἡμῶν ἡ ψυχή· εἰ μέντοι καὶ ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνωμεν ἔτι ἔσται, οὐδὲ αὐτῷ μοι δοκεῖ, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἀποδεδεῖχθαι, ἀλλ᾽ ἔτι ἐνέστηκεν ὃ νυνδὴ Κέβης ἔλεγε, τὸ τῶν

ἀ-πιστέω: to distrust, not believe (+ dat.), 8
ἀπο-δείκνυμι: demonstrate, prove, 11
ἐν-αργής, -ές: visible, distinct, manifest, 4
ἐν-δεῶς: defectively, insufficiently, 3
ἐν-ίστημι: to set or place in, stand in, 1
καίτοι: and yet, and indeed, and further, 8
καρτερός, -ά, -όν: staunch, patient, steadfast, 2
νυν-δή: just now, 15
οὐσία, ἡ: being, essence, substance, 6

2 **τὴν οὐσίαν**: *and the essence*; acc. subject parallel to τήν ψυχήν
οὐ...οὐδὲν οὕτω...ὡς τοῦτο: *not…anything so…as this*; correlatives
3 **ὂν**: neuter pple εἰμί modifying οὐδέν
τὸ...εἶναι: *(namely) that…exist*; ind. disc.
4 **ὡς οἷόν τε (ἐστίν) μάλιστα**: *as much as possible*; 'as greatly as it is possible,' οἷος τε εἰμί, 'I am the sort' is a common idiom for 'I am able;' here the construction is impersonal: 'it is possible'
5 **ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ**: *(as) it seems to me at least*; parenthetical
ἀποδέδεικται: pf. pass. ἀποδείκνυμι
6 **τί δὲ δὴ Κέβητι**: *what exactly for Cebes*; i.e. what is sufficiently proven for Cebes
καὶ: *also*
8 **ὡς**: *as*…; parenthetical, οἴομαι
9 **ἐστὶν**: *(Cebes) is*…; + superlative adj.
πρὸς: *with regard to…*; + articular inf.
10 **οὐκ ἐνδεῶς**: i.e. sufficiently, litotes
πεπεῖσθαι: pf. act. mid. πείθω
ὅτι: *namely that*…; in apposition to τοῦτο
b1 **ἦν**: *existed*; 3s impf. εἰμί
καὶ: *in fact, actually*
ἀποθάνωμεν: aor. subj. ἀποθνήσκω in an indefinite temporal clause
2 **ἔσται**: 3s fut. εἰμί
αὐτῷ μοι: *even to me*; intensive
ἀποδεδεῖχθαι: pf. pass. inf.
3 **ἐνέστηκεν**: *stands in the way*; pf. ἐνίστημι
τὸ τῶν πολλῶν: *that (fear) of the masses*; the

πολλῶν, ὅπως μὴ ἅμα ἀποθνῄσκοντος τοῦ ἀνθρώπου διασκεδάννυται ἡ ψυχὴ καὶ αὐτῇ τοῦ εἶναι τοῦτο τέλος ᾖ. τί γὰρ κωλύει γίγνεσθαι μὲν αὐτὴν καὶ συνίστασθαι ἄλλοθέν ποθεν καὶ εἶναι πρὶν καὶ εἰς ἀνθρώπειον σῶμα ἀφικέσθαι, ἐπειδὰν δὲ ἀφίκηται καὶ ἀπαλλάττηται τούτου, τότε καὶ αὐτὴν τελευτᾶν καὶ διαφθείρεσθαι;

c εὖ λέγεις, ἔφη, ὦ Σιμμία, ὁ Κέβης. φαίνεται γὰρ ὥσπερ ἥμισυ ἀποδεδεῖχθαι οὗ δεῖ, ὅτι πρὶν γενέσθαι ἡμᾶς ἦν ἡμῶν ἡ ψυχή, δεῖ δὲ προσαποδεῖξαι ὅτι καὶ ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνωμεν οὐδὲν ἧττον ἔσται ἢ πρὶν γενέσθαι, εἰ μέλλει τέλος ἡ ἀπόδειξις ἕξειν.

ἀποδέδεικται μέν, ἔφη, ὦ Σιμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, ὁ

ἄλλο-θεν: from another place or elsewhere, 6
ἀνθρώπειος, -α, -ον: human, of a human, 3
ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15
ἀπο-δείκνυμι: demonstrate, prove 11
ἀπό-δειξις, εως, ἡ: demonstration, proof, 4
δια-σκεδάννυμι: to scatter, disperse, disband 4
δια-φθείρω: to destroy, corrupt, kill, 6
εὖ: well, 19
ἥμισυς, -εια, -υ: half, 5
ἧττων, -ον: less, weaker, inferior, 16
κωλύω: to hinder or prevent, 5
ὅπως: how, in what way; in order that, that 10
πο-θεν: from some place or other, 1
προσ-αποδείκνυμι: demonstrate in addition 1
συν-ίστημι: to set together, unite, combine, 2
τέλος, -εος, τό: end, result, 2

4 **ὅπως μὴ...διασκεδάννυται...ᾖ**: *(the fear) that*…; '(the fear) lest…' fearing clause, ὅπως μὴ may be used instead of μὴ to suggest something that will happen (S 2230); διασκεδάννυται appears indicative but is a variation for διασκεδαννύηται, pres. subj. (S 749c); ᾖ is 3s subj. εἰμί
ἅμα: *at the same time as*…: + gen. abs.
5 **τοῦ εἶναι**: *of existing*
6 **αὐτὴν**: *that it…*; i.e. the soul, acc. subject
συνίστασθαι: *be put together*
καὶ: *actually, in fact*
8 **ἀφίκηται, ἀπαλλάττηται**: 3s subj. in an indefinite temporal clause
τούτου: *from this*; i.e. body, separation
καὶ αὐτὴν: *that it also*…; adverbial καί
9 **τελευτᾶν**: inf., α-contract verb
c1 **φαίνεται... ὥσπερ**: *it seems as if*
2 **ἥμισυ**: acc. subject of pf. pass. inf.
οὗ δεῖ: *of (that) which it is necessary (to be proven)*; relative, partitive gen.
ὅτι: *(namely) that…*
3 **ἦν**: *existed*; 3s impf. εἰμί
4 **οὐδὲν**: *not at all*; adv. acc. (acc. of extent by degree) with comparative adv ἧττον
ἔσται: 3s fut. deponent εἰμί
5 **ἕξειν**: fut. inf. ἔχω
6 **ἀποδέδεικται**: *it has been proven*; pf. pass. impersonal

Σωκράτης, καὶ νῦν, εἰ 'θέλετε συνθεῖναι τοῦτόν τε τὸν λόγον εἰς ταὐτὸν καὶ ὃν πρὸ τούτου ὡμολογήσαμεν, τὸ γίγνεσθαι πᾶν τὸ ζῶν ἐκ τοῦ τεθνεῶτος. εἰ γὰρ ἔστιν μὲν ἡ ψυχὴ καὶ πρότερον, ἀνάγκη δὲ αὐτῇ εἰς τὸ ζῆν ἰούσῃ τε **d**
καὶ γιγνομένῃ μηδαμόθεν ἄλλοθεν ἢ ἐκ θανάτου καὶ τοῦ τεθνάναι γίγνεσθαι, πῶς οὐκ ἀνάγκη αὐτὴν καὶ ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνῃ εἶναι, ἐπειδή γε δεῖ αὖθις αὐτὴν γίγνεσθαι; ἀπο-
δέδεικται μὲν οὖν ὅπερ λέγετε καὶ νῦν. ὅμως δέ μοι δοκεῖς 5
σύ τε καὶ Σιμμίας ἡδέως ἂν καὶ τοῦτον διαπραγματεύσασθαι τὸν λόγον ἔτι μᾶλλον, καὶ δεδιέναι τὸ τῶν παίδων, μὴ ὡς ἀληθῶς ὁ ἄνεμος αὐτὴν ἐκβαίνουσαν ἐκ τοῦ σώματος δια-
φυσᾷ καὶ διασκεδάννυσιν, ἄλλως τε καὶ ὅταν τύχῃ τις μὴ ἐν **e**
νηνεμίᾳ ἀλλ' ἐν μεγάλῳ τινὶ πνεύματι ἀποθνήσκων.

ἄλλο-θεν: from another place or elsewhere, 6
ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 14
ἄνεμος, -ου, ὁ: wind, 4
ἀπο-δείκνυμι: demonstrate, prove 11
αὖθις: back again, later, 9
δείδω: fear, dread, shrink from, feel awe, 11
δια-πραγματεύομαι: examine thoroughly, 2
δια-σκεδάννυμι: scatter, disperse, disband, 4
δια-φυσάω: to blow in different dδirections, 3
ἐθέλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17
ἐκ-βαίνω: to step out, disembark, 5
ἡδέως: sweetly, pleasantly, gladly, 6
μηδαμό-θεν: from no place, from nowhere, 2
νηνεμία ἡ: stillness in the air, calm (weather) 1
ὅμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 13
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ: child, boy, girl; slave, 6
πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: breath, wind, blast, 5
συν-τίθημι: to put together, combine, 7

7 **καὶ νῦν**: *even now*; with previous verb
(ἐ)θέλετε: 2p ἐθέλω
συνθεῖναι: aor. inf. συντίθημι
8 **εἰς ταὐτὸν**: *into the same*; i.e. combine the two arguments to the same argument
καὶ ὃν: *and (the other argument) which*…; relative, supply λόγον as antecedent
τὸ γίγνεσθαι...τεθνεῶτος: *(namely) that every thing (is) a thing born from the dead*; articular infs., gen. sg. pf. θνήσκω
9 **καὶ**: *also*; + comparative adv.
d1 **ἀνάγκη**: *(it is) necessary*
αὐτῇ: *for it*; dat. of interest
ἰούσῃ: dat. sg. pres. pple ἔρχομαι
2 **τοῦ τεθνάναι**: *from being dead*; articular pf. inf. θνήσκω ; γίγνεσθαι is governed by ἀνάγκη
3 **ἀνάγκη...εἶναι**: *(it is) necessary* + inf. εἰμί
4 **ἀποθάνῃ**: 3s aor. subj. ἀποθνήσκω in an indefinite temporal clause
ἐπειδή : *since*…; causal
ἀποδέδεικται: *has been proven*; pf. pass.
5 **μὲν οὖν**: *then*; inferential οὖν, the μὲν is answered by ὅμως δὲ in the same line
καὶ νῦν: *also now*; with main verb
6 **ἂν...διαπραγματεύσασθαι...καὶ**: *that you both would examine…and*; governed by 2s δοκεῖς; ἄν + inf. is equivalent to a potential opt. in direct speech
7 **δεδιέναι**: pf. inf. δείδω,
τὸ τῶν παίδων: *that (fear) of children*
8 **μὴ...διαφυσᾷ καὶ διασκεδάννυσιν**: *that*…; 'lest…' fearing clause, pres. subjunctive of an α-contract verb; διασκεδάννυσιν looks indicative (see 77b4) but is a variation of διασκεδαννύησιν (S 749c)
e1 **ἄλλως...καὶ**: *especially*; both otherwise and
τύχῃ: 3s aor. subj. + pple, see p. 20

καὶ ὁ Κέβης ἐπιγελάσας, ὡς δεδιότων, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες, πειρῶ ἀναπείθειν· μᾶλλον δὲ μὴ ὡς ἡμῶν δεδιότων, ἀλλ' ἴσως ἔνι τις καὶ ἐν ἡμῖν παῖς ὅστις τὰ τοιαῦτα φοβεῖται. τοῦτον οὖν πειρῶ μεταπείθειν μὴ δεδιέναι τὸν θάνατον ὥσπερ τὰ μορμολύκεια.

ἀλλὰ χρή, ἔφη ὁ Σωκράτης, ἐπᾴδειν αὐτῷ ἑκάστης ἡμέρας ἕως ἂν ἐξεπάσητε.

78 πόθεν οὖν, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες, τῶν τοιούτων ἀγαθὸν ἐπῳδὸν ληψόμεθα, ἐπειδὴ σύ, ἔφη, ἡμᾶς ἀπολείπεις;

πολλὴ μὲν ἡ Ἑλλάς, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, ἐν ᾗ ἔνεισί που ἀγαθοὶ ἄνδρες, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ τὰ τῶν βαρβάρων γένη, οὓς πάντας χρὴ διερευνᾶσθαι ζητοῦντας τοιοῦτον ἐπῳδόν, μήτε

ἀνα-πείθω: persuade, convince, 1
ἀπο-λείπω: leave behind, abandon, forsake, 7
βάρβαρος, ὁ: foreigner, a non-Greek, 1
γένος, -εος, τό: lineage, family, stock; race, 7
δείδω: fear, dread, shrink from, feel awe, 11
δι-ερευνάω: examine thoroughly, track down1
Ἑλλάς, -άδος, ἡ : Greece, 1
ἔν-ειμι: to be in or within, 8
ἐξ-επ-ᾴδω: to charm away, 1
ἐπ-ᾴδω: to chant at, sing to, (dat.) 2
ἐπ-ῳδός, ὁ: singer, enchanter, 2
ἐπι-γελάω: laugh (approvingly), smile on, 2
ἕως: until, as long as, 15
ζητέω: to seek, look for, investigate, 9
ἡμέρα, ἡ: day, 7
ἴσως: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 19
μετα-πείθω: to persuade to change, 1
μή-τε: and not, neither...nor, 15
μορμολύκειον, τό: hobgoblin, bogeyman, 1
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ: child, boy, girl; slave, 6
πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 11
πό-θεν: from where, 2
φοβέω: to terrify, frighten; *mid*. fear, 15

3 **ἐπιγελάσας**: nom. sg. aor. pple
ὡς δεδιότων: *assuming we are afraid*; 'on the ground that (we) are afraid,' ὡς + pple (here, gen. abs. with the pf. pple δείδω and a missing noun) expresses alleged cause. Cebes is not asserting this clause as factual but asking Socrates to argue on such grounds
4 **πειρῶ**: *keep on trying…!;* πείράε(σ)ο, pres. mid. sg. imperative suggests ongoing action rather than simple action (e.g. 'try!')
μᾶλλον δὲ: *but rather*
μὴ ὡς...δεδιότων: *(try to persuade us) not assuming we are afraid*; 'not on the grounds…' see line 3 above
5 **ἔνι τις καὶ ἐν...**: *there is some child even inside…*; ἔνι is an variation for ἔν-εστι
6 **τοῦτον**: *this one*; i.e. the child
πειρῶ: see l. 4
δεδιέναι: pf. inf. δείδω
8 **ἑκάστης ἡμέρας**: *(during) each day;* gen. of time within
72a2 **ληψόμεθα**: *will we find*; fut. λαμβάνω
3 **πολλὴ**: *(is) great*; supply linking ἐστίν
ἔνεισί: *there are*; 3rd pl. pres. ἔν-ειμι
4 **πολλά**: *(are) great*; supply linking ἐστίν

χρημάτων φειδομένους μήτε πόνων, ὡς οὐκ ἔστιν εἰς ὅτι ἂν εὐκαιρότερον ἀναλίσκοιτε χρήματα. ζητεῖν δὲ χρὴ καὶ αὐτοὺς μετ᾽ ἀλλήλων· ἴσως γὰρ ἂν οὐδὲ ῥᾳδίως εὕροιτε μᾶλλον ὑμῶν δυναμένους τοῦτο ποιεῖν.

ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν δή, ἔφη, ὑπάρξει, ὁ Κέβης· ὅθεν δὲ 10
ἀπελίπομεν ἐπανέλθωμεν, εἴ σοι ἡδομένῳ ἐστίν. **b**

ἀλλὰ μὴν ἡδομένῳ γε· πῶς γὰρ οὐ μέλλει;

καλῶς, ἔφη, λέγεις.

οὐκοῦν τοιόνδε τι, ἦ δ᾽ ὃς ὁ Σωκράτης, δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἀνερέσθαι ἑαυτούς, τῷ ποίῳ τινὶ ἄρα προσήκει τοῦτο τὸ πάθος πάσχειν, 5
τὸ διασκεδάννυσθαι, καὶ ὑπὲρ τοῦ ποίου τινὸς δεδιέναι μὴ πάθῃ αὐτό, καὶ τῷ ποίῳ τινὶ οὔ· καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο αὖ

ἀν-αλίσκω: to use up, spend, lavish, 2
ἀν-έρομαι: to ask about, inquire of, 1
ἀπο-λείπω: leave behind, abandon, forsake, 7
δείδω: fear, dread, shrink from, feel awe, 11
δια-σκεδάννυμι: scatter, disperse, disband, 4
δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 15
ἐπαν-έρχομαι: to go back, return, 2
εὐ-καιρος, -ον: well-timed, opportune, 1
εὑρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 8
ἥδομαι: to delight in, be pleased, 6
ἴσως: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 19
μή-τε: and not, neither...nor, 15
ὅ-θεν: from where, from which, 4
πάθος -εος τό: experience incident passion 11
ποῖος, -α, -ον: what sort of? what kind of?, 9
πόνος, ὁ: work, toil, 1
προσ-ήκει: it belongs to, it is fitting, befits 15
ῥᾴδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 9
ὑπ-άρχω: be there, be ready, be available, 4
ὑπέρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); over, beyond (acc.), 6
φείδομαι: to spare, use sparingly (gen) 2
χρῆμα, -ατος τό: money, possessions, thing, 6

6 **φειδομένους**: governs gen. of separation
ὡς οὐκ ἔστιν εἰς ὅτι: *as there is nothing upon which*; ὅ τι, neuter acc. sg. of ὅστις
7 **ἂν...ἀναλίσκοιτε**: *you could*…; potential opt.
8 **(ὑμᾶς) αὐτοὺς**: *yourselves*; acc.
ἂν εὕροιτε: *you would*…; potential aor. opt.
9 **ὑμῶν**: *than…*; gen. of comparison
10 **ἀλλὰ...μὲν δή**: *well…certainly in fact* (S 2900)
ὑπάρξει: *will happen*; 'will be', fut.
δὲ: *but*…; adversative
b1 **ἀπελίπομεν**: aor. ἀπολείπω
ἐπανέλθωμεν: *let us*…; hortatory subj., 1p aor. subj. ἐπαν-έρχομαι
εἴ σοι ἡδομένῳ ἐστίν: *if it is for you, being pleased*; i.e. it is pleasing to you
2 **ἀλλὰ μὴν...γε**: *Well yes, certainly pleased* γε is emphatic and can be left untranslated
οὐ μέλλει: i.e. to be pleasing
3 **καλῶς**: *well*
5 **ἑαυτούς**: *ourselves*; 'oneselves,' reflexive
τῷ ποίῳ τινὶ...τοῦτο: *to what sort at all to suffer this experience then belongs*; τῷ is an article on ποίῳ, not uncommon in Plato
6 **τὸ διασκεδάννυσθαι**: *(namely) to…*; an appositive
ὑπερ τοῦ...δεδιέναι: *on behalf of what sort at all (we) fear lest it suffer it*
τῷ ποίῳ...οὔ: *to what sort at all (to suffer this experience does) not (belong)*

ἐπισκέψασθαι πότερον ἡ ψυχὴ ἐστιν, καὶ ἐκ τούτων θαρρεῖν ἢ δεδιέναι ὑπὲρ τῆς ἡμετέρας ψυχῆς;

10 *ἀληθῆ, ἔφη, λέγεις.*

c *ἆρ᾽ οὖν τῷ μὲν συντεθέντι τε καὶ συνθέτῳ ὄντι φύσει προσήκει τοῦτο πάσχειν, διαιρεθῆναι ταύτῃ ᾗπερ συνετέθη· εἰ δέ τι τυγχάνει ὂν ἀσύνθετον, τούτῳ μόνῳ προσήκει μὴ πάσχειν ταῦτα, εἴπερ τῳ ἄλλῳ;*

5 *δοκεῖ μοι, ἔφη, οὕτως ἔχειν, ὁ Κέβης.*

οὐκοῦν ἅπερ ἀεὶ κατὰ ταὐτὰ καὶ ὡσαύτως ἔχει, ταῦτα μάλιστα εἰκὸς εἶναι τὰ ἀσύνθετα, τὰ δὲ ἄλλοτ᾽ ἄλλως καὶ μηδέποτε κατὰ ταὐτά, ταῦτα δὲ σύνθετα;

ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ οὕτως.

ἄλλ-οτε: at another time, at other times, 4
ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 14
ἀ-σύνθετος, -ον: uncompounded, 2
δείδω: fear, dread, shrink from, feel awe, 11
δι-αιρέω: to divide, separate, 3
εἰκός, ότος, τό: likely, probable, reasonable 18
ἐπι-σκέπτομαι: to examine, inspect, 2
ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our, 5
θαρρέω: be confident, take courage; be bold 9
μηδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 8
προσ-ήκει: it belongs to, it is fitting, befits 15
συν-θέτος, -ον: put together, composite, 4
συν-τίθημι: to put together, combine, 7
ὑπέρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); over, beyond (acc.), 6
φύσις, -εως, ἡ: nature, character; form, 11
ὡσ-αύτως: in the same manner, just so, 4

9 **δεδιέναι**: pf. inf. δείδω
10 **ἀληθῆ**: ἀληθέ-α, neuter pl.
c1 **τῷ συντεθέντι**: *the thing compounded*…; 'put together,' aor. pass. pple συντίθημι
ὄντι: dat. pple εἰμί governed a dat. predicate συνθέτῳ
φύσει: *by nature*; dat. sg. of respect
2 **προσήκει**: *it*…; impersonal use
διαιρεθῆναι: *(namely) to be separated*; aor. pass. inf. in apposition to τοῦτο
ταύτῃ ᾗπερ: *in this way in which very* way; demonstrative and relative, dat. manner
συνετέθη: 3s aor. pass.
3 **τυγχάνει**: + pple, see p. 20
4 **εἴπερ τῳ ἄλλῳ**: *if anything else*; likely parenthetical following τούτῳ μόνῳ
οὕτως ἔχειν: see p. 7
6 **ἅπερ...ταῦτα**: *whatever…these things*…; ταῦτα is the antecedent of relative ἅπερ
κατὰ ταὐτὰ: *in the same way*; 'in regard to the same things' κατὰ τὰ αὐτὰ may be synonymous with ὡσαύτως and used for emphasis
7 **εἰκὸς**: *(it is) likely that*; supply verb, this constructive governs acc. subj. + inf.
τὰ δὲ ἄλλοτ(ε) ἄλλως: *but things sometimes one way other times another way*; for ἄλλοτε ἄλλως see S 1274
8 **κατὰ ταὐτὰ**: *in the same way*; see above
ταῦτα δὲ (εἰκὸς εἶναι): *and (it is likely) that…*; parallel to lines 6-7

ἴωμεν δή, ἔφη, ἐπὶ ταὐτὰ ἐφ' ἅπερ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν λόγῳ. αὐτὴ ἡ οὐσία ἧς λόγον δίδομεν τοῦ εἶναι καὶ ἐρωτῶντες καὶ ἀποκρινόμενοι, πότερον ὡσαύτως ἀεὶ ἔχει κατὰ ταὐτὰ ἢ ἄλλοτ' ἄλλως; αὐτὸ τὸ ἴσον, αὐτὸ τὸ καλόν, αὐτὸ ἕκαστον ὃ ἔστιν, τὸ ὄν, μή ποτε μεταβολὴν καὶ ἡντινοῦν ἐνδέχεται; ἢ ἀεὶ αὐτῶν ἕκαστον ὃ ἔστι, μονοειδὲς ὂν αὐτὸ καθ' αὑτό, ὡσαύτως κατὰ ταὐτὰ ἔχει καὶ οὐδέποτε οὐδαμῇ οὐδαμῶς ἀλλοίωσιν οὐδεμίαν ἐνδέχεται;

ὡσαύτως, ἔφη, ἀνάγκη, ὁ Κέβης, κατὰ ταὐτὰ ἔχειν, ὦ Σώκρατες.

τί δὲ τῶν πολλῶν καλῶν, οἷον ἀνθρώπων ἢ ἵππων ἢ ἱματίων ἢ ἄλλων ὡντινωνοῦν τοιούτων, ἢ ἴσων [ἢ καλῶν] ἢ

ἀλλοίωσις, -εως, ἡ: change, alteration, 1
ἄλλ-οτε: at another time, at other times, 4
ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 14
ἀπο-κρίνομαι: to answer, reply, 13
δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 15
ἔμ-προσθεν: before, former; earlier, 7
ἐν-δέχομαι: to allow, admit, accept, 3
ἐρωτάω: to ask, inquire, question, 10
ἱμάτιον, τό: a cloak or mantle, 7
ἵππος, ὁ: a horse, 4
μετα-βολή, ἡ: change; eclipse, 1
μονο-ειδής, -ές: one in kind, simple, 3
ὅστισ-οῦν, ἥτισ-ουν, ὅτι-οῦν: whosoever, whatsever, 11
οὐδαμῇ: in no place, in no way, not at all, 3
οὐδαμῶς: in no way, not at all, 11
οὐδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 11
οὐσία, ἡ: being, essence, substance, 6
πότερος, -α, -ον: (untranslated), whether, 19
ὡσ-αύτως: in the same manner, just so, 4

10 **ἴωμεν**: *let us*…; hortatory subjunctive, ἔρχομαι
δή: *now*; or 'just,' often an intensive with imperatives and other forms of commands
ἐπὶ ταὐτὰ: *to the same things*; τὰ αὐτὰ
ἐφ': *to*…; ἐπὶ

d1 **αὐτὴ**: *itself*; intensive
ἧς λόγον δίδομεν τοῦ εἶναι: *of which we are giving an account of being*; the articular inf. τοῦ εἶναι modifies λόγον and the relative ἧς modifies τοῦ εἶναι
καὶ...καὶ...: *both by…and by*…; causal

2 **ὡσαύτως ἔχει**: *is it the same?*; see p. 7
κατὰ ταὐτὰ: see c6 above

3 **ἄλλοτ(ε) ἄλλως**: see c7 above
αὐτὸ: *itself*; intensive

4 **τὸ ὄν**: in apposition, from neuter nom. sg. pple εἰμί
μὴ ποτε...ἐνδέχεται: *(surely) it does not…(does it)?*; μή is used instead of οὐ to anticipate a negative response; compare this to the question below which uses οὐ... ἐνδέχεται and anticipates a yes response

5 **αὐτὸ καθ'(ἑ)αυτό**: *itself in itself*; see p. 26

10 **οἷον**: *for example*; 'in respect to such,' acc. of respect

πάντων τῶν ἐκείνοις ὁμωνύμων; ἆρα κατὰ ταὐτὰ ἔχει, ἢ πᾶν τοὐναντίον ἐκείνοις οὔτε αὐτὰ αὑτοῖς οὔτε ἀλλήλοις οὐδέποτε ὡς ἔπος εἰπεῖν οὐδαμῶς κατὰ ταὐτά;

5 *οὕτως αὖ, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, ταῦτα· οὐδέποτε ὡσαύτως ἔχει.*

79 *οὐκοῦν τούτων μὲν κἂν ἅψαιο κἂν ἴδοις κἂν ταῖς ἄλλαις αἰσθήσεσιν αἴσθοιο, τῶν δὲ κατὰ ταὐτὰ ἐχόντων οὐκ ἔστιν ὅτῳ ποτ' ἂν ἄλλῳ ἐπιλάβοιο ἢ τῷ τῆς διανοίας λογισμῷ, ἀλλ' ἔστιν ἀιδῆ τὰ τοιαῦτα καὶ οὐχ ὁρατά;*

5 *παντάπασιν, ἔφη, ἀληθῆ λέγεις.*

θῶμεν οὖν βούλει, ἔφη, δύο εἴδη τῶν ὄντων, τὸ μὲν ὁρατόν, τὸ δὲ ἀιδές;

θῶμεν, ἔφη.

ἀιδής, -ές: unseen, invisible, 12
αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 11
αἴσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἅπτω: fasten, grasp (gen); kindle, set fire; 11
διάνοια, ἡ: thought, intention, purpose, 6
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, kind; shape, figure, 17
ἐπι-λαμβάνω: to lay hold of, take over, seize, attack, 1
ἔπος, -εος, τό: a word, 4
λογισμός, ὁ: a counting, calculation; account, reasoning, 3
ὁμ-ώνυμος, -ον: having the same name as, 1
ὁρατός, -ή, -όν: to be seen, visible, 17
οὐδαμῶς: in no way, not at all, 11
οὐδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 11
παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15
τίθημι: to set, put, place, arrange, 10
ὡσ-αύτως: in the same manner, just so, 4

2 **ὁμωνύμων**: adj. governs a dative
κατὰ ταὐτὰ: *in the same way*; τὰ αὐτὰ
ἔχει: *is it*…?; 'is it disposed?'
πᾶν: *entirely*; adv. acc.
3 **τοὐναντίον**: τὸ ἐναντίον; nom. predicate governs a dat.: 'opposite to'
αὐτὰ: *themselves*; intensive
οὔτε...αὑτοῖς οὔτε ἀλλήλοις: *neither as… nor as…*; dat. object of κατὰ τὰ αὐτά
4 **ὡς ἔπος εἰπεῖν**: *so to speak*; inf. abs. S 2012
5 **οὕτῶς...ταῦτα**: supply ἔχει
ὡσαύτως ἔχει: *it is the same?*; see p. 7
79a1 **οὐκοῦν**: *accordingly*; inferential
τούτων: partitive gen. object of ἅψαιο
κἂν...κἂν...κἂν: *actually…and…and…*; καὶ ἄν, καί is used adverbially and as a conjunction
ἅψαι(σ)ο...ἴδοις...αἴσθοι(σ)ο: *you can*…; potential opt., 2s aor. mid. opt. ἅπτομαι, αἰσθάνομαι and aor. act. opt. ὁράω
2 **τῶν...ἐχόντων**: *among the things which are in the same way*; partitive gen.
οὐκ ἔστιν ὅτῳ...ἄλλῳ...ἢ: *there is not (anything) other by which…than*…; ἔστιν ὅτῳ (S 2513)
3 **ἂν ἐπιλάβοι(σ)ο**: *you can…*; 2s aor. mid. opt., see a1 above
τῷ λογισμῷ: *by*…; means
4 **ἔστιν**: *there exist*; neuter pl. subject
ἀιδῆ: ἀιδέα, neuter pl. of adj. ἀιδής
5 **ἀληθῆ**: ἀληθέα, neuter pl.
6 **θῶμεν...βούλει**: *do you wish to set forth*; 2s pres. mid.; βούλομαι often accompanies a deliberative subjunctive (aor. τίθημι (θε-)) conflating two questions: 'what do you want?' and 'are we to set forth?'; see 70b6
εἴδη: *kinds*; εἴδε-α, neuter pl.
τὸ μὲν...τὸ δὲ: *one…the other…*
8 **θῶμεν**: *let us*…; hortatory subj.

καὶ τὸ μὲν ἀιδὲς ἀεὶ κατὰ ταὐτὰ ἔχον, τὸ δὲ ὁρατὸν μηδέποτε κατὰ ταὐτά;

καὶ τοῦτο, ἔφη, θῶμεν.

φέρε δή, ἦ δ᾽ ὅς, ἄλλο τι ἡμῶν αὐτῶν τὸ μὲν σῶμά ἐστι, τὸ δὲ ψυχή; **b**

οὐδὲν ἄλλο, ἔφη.

ποτέρῳ οὖν ὁμοιότερον τῷ εἴδει φαμὲν ἂν εἶναι καὶ συγγενέστερον τὸ σῶμα;

παντί, ἔφη, τοῦτό γε δῆλον, ὅτι τῷ ὁρατῷ.

τί δὲ ἡ ψυχή; ὁρατὸν ἢ ἀιδές;

οὐχ ὑπ᾽ ἀνθρώπων γε, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔφη.

ἀλλὰ μὴν ἡμεῖς γε τὰ ὁρατὰ καὶ τὰ μὴ τῇ τῶν ἀνθρώπων φύσει ἐλέγομεν· ἢ ἄλλῃ τινὶ οἴει;

ἀιδής, -ές: unseen, invisible, 12
δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 14
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, kind; shape, figure, 17
μηδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 8
ὁρατός, -ή, -όν: to be seen, visible, 17
πότερος, -α, -ον: (untranslated), whether, 19
συγ-γενής, -ές: related; *subst*. relative, 6
τίθημι: to set, put, place, arrange, 10
φύσις, -εως, ἡ: nature, character; form, 11

9 **τὸ μὲν**: *the one*…; i.e. form, neuter εἶδος
κατὰ ταὐτὰ: *in the same way*; 'in respect to the same things,' τὰ αὐτὰ
ἔχον: *being…*; pple, see p. 7
11 **θῶμεν**: *let us set forth*; hortatory aor. subj. τίθημι (stem θε-)
b1 **φέρε δή**: *come now*; or 'come on,' the imperative φέρω, 'carry on,' often draws an interlocutor's attention and precedes an imperative or question
ἄλλο τι...ψυχή: *is one part of us the body and the other part the soul?*; partitive gen.; ἄλλο τι, 'is it anything other (than),' may introduce an interrogative and may be left untranslated
4 **ποτερῳ...τῷ εἴδει**: *to which form*; dat. of both special adjectives
φαμὲν: *do we claim*; 1p φημί
ἂν εἶναι: *would be*; potential opt. in direct discourse, τὸ σῶμα is acc. subject
6 **παντί**: *to everyone*; dat. of reference
δῆλον ἐστὶν: *(is) clear*; add verb
ὅτι: *(namely) that (it is more similar to)…*
8 **ὑπὸ...**: *by…*; gen. of agent
9 **ἀλλὰ μὴν...ἐλέγομεν**: *but we certainly called…*; adversative, γε is emphatic and may be left untranslated
τὰ μὴ: *things not (visible)*
τῇ φύσει: *to the nature of humans*; i.e. to human vision; dat. of interest
10 **ἢ ἄλλῃ τινὶ οἴει**: *or to what else do you suppose?*; parallel to τῇ φύσει; οἴε(σ)αι is 2s pres. middle οἴομαι

τῇ τῶν ἀνθρώπων.

τί οὖν περὶ ψυχῆς λέγομεν; ὁρατὸν ἢ ἀόρατον εἶναι;

οὐχ ὁρατόν.

ἀιδὲς ἄρα;

15 *ναί.*

ὁμοιότερον ἄρα ψυχὴ σώματός ἐστιν τῷ ἀιδεῖ, τὸ δὲ τῷ ὁρατῷ.

c *πᾶσα ἀνάγκη, ὦ Σώκρατες.*

οὐκοῦν καὶ τόδε πάλαι ἐλέγομεν, ὅτι ἡ ψυχή, ὅταν μὲν τῷ σώματι προσχρῆται εἰς τὸ σκοπεῖν τι ἢ διὰ τοῦ ὁρᾶν ἢ διὰ τοῦ ἀκούειν ἢ δι' ἄλλης τινὸς αἰσθήσεως—τοῦτο γάρ

5 *ἐστιν τὸ διὰ τοῦ σώματος, τὸ δι' αἰσθήσεως σκοπεῖν τι—*

ἀιδής, -ές: unseen, invisible, 12
αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἀ-όρατος, -ον: unseen, invisible, 12
ναί: yes, yea, 15
ὁρατός, -ή, -όν: to be seen, visible, 17
πάλαι: for some time, long ago, of old, 13
προσ-χράομαι: to employ or use in addition (dat.), 2

11 **τῇ (φύσει)**: *to the (nature)…*;
16 **ὁμοιότερον**: nom. predicate
σώματος: *than*…; gen. of comparison
τῷ ἀιδεῖ: dat. of special adj. ὁμοιότερον
τὸ (σῶμα ὁμοιότερον ψυχῆς): *that (body is more similar)…(than the soul…)*
τῷ ὁρατῷ: dat. of adj. ὁμοιότερον
c1 **ἀνάγκη (ἐστίν)**: *it is…*; supply verb
2 **πάλαι ἐλέγομεν**: *we have been saying*; πάλαι suggests pf. progressive
ὅταν...προσχρῆται: *whenever...*; indefinite temporal clause; the soul is subject
3 **εἰς τὸ...**: *for*…; + articular inf. expressing purpose
ἢ...ἢ...: *either…or…*
τοῦ ὁρᾶν: articular inf., object of δία
4 **τοῦτο...τὸ διὰ τοῦ σώματος (σκοπεῖν)**: *for examining through the body is this, (namely)*; τὸ δι(ὰ) αἰσθήσεως σκοπεῖν τι is in apposition to τοῦτο

τότε μὲν ἕλκεται ὑπὸ τοῦ σώματος εἰς τὰ οὐδέποτε κατὰ ταὐτὰ ἔχοντα, καὶ αὐτὴ πλανᾶται καὶ ταράττεται καὶ εἰλιγγιᾷ ὥσπερ μεθύουσα, ἅτε τοιούτων ἐφαπτομένη;

πάνυ γε.

ὅταν δέ γε αὐτὴ καθ' αὑτὴν σκοπῇ, ἐκεῖσε οἴχεται εἰς d
τὸ καθαρόν τε καὶ ἀεὶ ὂν καὶ ἀθάνατον καὶ ὡσαύτως ἔχον, καὶ ὡς συγγενὴς οὖσα αὐτοῦ ἀεὶ μετ' ἐκείνου τε γίγνεται, ὅταν περ αὐτὴ καθ' αὑτὴν γένηται καὶ ἐξῇ αὐτῇ, καὶ πέπαυταί τε τοῦ πλάνου καὶ περὶ ἐκεῖνα ἀεὶ κατὰ ταὐτὰ ὡσαύτως ἔχει, 5
ἅτε τοιούτων ἐφαπτομένη· καὶ τοῦτο αὐτῆς τὸ πάθημα φρόνησις κέκληται;

παντάπασιν, ἔφη, καλῶς καὶ ἀληθῆ λέγεις, ὦ Σώκρατες.

ἅτε: inasmuch as, since, seeing that (+ pple) 6
εἰλιγγιάω: become dizzy, lose one's head, 1
ἐκεῖ-σε: thither, to that place, 10
ἕλκω: to draw, drag; weigh, 3
ἔξ-εστι: it is allowed, is possible, 3
ἐφ-άπτω: lay hold of, grasp onto (gen.), 5
μεθύω: to be drunk with wine, 1
οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 14
ὅτανπερ: whenever, 2
οὐδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 11
πάθημα, -ατος, τό: suffering, misfortune, 4
παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15
παύω: to stop, make cease, 6
πλανάω: make wander; *mid*. wander, 4
πλάνος, -η, -ον: wandering, deceiving, 2
συγ-γενής, -ές: related; *subst*. relative, 6
ταράττω: to trouble, stir, agitate, 6
φρόνησις, -εως, ἡ: intelligence, wisdom, prudence, 15
ὡσ-αύτως: in the same manner, just so, 4

6 **ἕλκεται**: pres. passive, ἡ ψυχή is subject
εἰς τὰ...ἔχοντα: *to things being…*; see p. 7
κατὰ ταὐτὰ: *in the same way*; 'according to the same things,' κατὰ τὰ αὐτὰ
7 **αὐτὴ (ἡ ψυχή)**: *(the soul) itself*
8 **ὥσπερ**: *as if*
ἅτε: *inasmuch as…*; 'since…' ἅτε + pple expresses cause from the narrator's point of view
τοιούτων: partitive gen. with pple
ἐφαπτομένη: pres. passive pple
9 **πάνυ γε**: *quite indeed*; common affirmative
d1 **ὅταν...σκοπῇ**: 3s pres. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause
αὐτὴ καθ' (ἑ)αυτὴν: *the soul itself by itself*
2 **ὂν...ἔχον**: neuter sg. pres. pple εἰμί and ἔχω
3 **ὡς...οὖσα**: *on the grounds of…*; 'since' ὡς + pple expresses alleged cause
συγγενὴς...αὐτοῦ: *akin to it*; adj. may govern a gen. object
4 **ἐξῇ**: *it is alllowed*; 3rd sg. pres. subj. ἔξεστι
αὐτῇ: *for…*; dat. of interest
πέπαυται: *has rest from*; pf. pass. παύω governs a gen. of separation
5 **περὶ...**: *regarding…*
κατὰ ταὐτὰ: *in the same way*; τὰ αὐτὰ
ἅτε: *inasmuch as…*; see line 8 above
6 **αὐτῆς**: *of it*; i.e. of the soul
φρόνησις: nominative pred.
7 **κέκληται**: 3s pf. pass. καλέω
8 **καλῶς**: *well*
ἀληθῆ: ἀληθέ-α, neuter pl.

ποτέρῳ οὖν αὖ σοι δοκεῖ τῷ εἴδει καὶ ἐκ τῶν πρόσθεν καὶ ἐκ
e *τῶν νῦν λεγομένων ψυχὴ ὁμοιότερον εἶναι καὶ συγγενέστερον;*
πᾶς ἄν μοι δοκεῖ, ἦ δ᾽ ὅς, συγχωρῆσαι, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἐκ ταύτης τῆς μεθόδου, καὶ ὁ δυσμαθέστατος, ὅτι ὅλῳ καὶ παντὶ ὁμοιότερόν ἐστι ψυχὴ τῷ ἀεὶ ὡσαύτως ἔχοντι μᾶλλον
5 *ἢ τῷ μή.*
τί δὲ τὸ σῶμα;
τῷ ἑτέρῳ.
ὅρα δὴ καὶ τῇδε ὅτι ἐπειδὰν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ ὦσι ψυχὴ καὶ
80 *σῶμα, τῷ μὲν δουλεύειν καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἡ φύσις προστάττει,*

ἄρχω: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 12
δουλεύω: to be a slave, serve, be subject to, 3
δυσ-μαθής, -ές: difficult to learn, 1
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
μεθ-όδος, ἡ,: pursuit, investigation, method, 2
ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 9
πότερος, -α, -ον: (untranslated), whether, 19
πρόσθεν: before, 10
προσ-τάττω: to order, assign, appoint, 5
συγ-γενής, -ές: related; *subst*. relative, 6
συγ-χωρέω: agree, yield, come together, 13
φύσις, -εως, ἡ: nature, character; form, 11
ὡσ-αύτως: in the same manner, just so, 4

9 **ποτερῳ...τῷ εἴδει**: *to which kind*; dat. of two special adjectives, ὁμοιότερον and συγγενέστερον
τῶν πρόσθεν (λεγομένων): *things (spoken) before*
e2 **πᾶς**: *everyone*
ἦ δ᾽ὅς: see p. 9
ἄν...συγχωρῆσαι: *that (everyone) would*... ἄν + aor. inf. expreses potential, equivalent to potential opt. in direct discourse
3 **καὶ...δυσμαθέστατος**: *even*…; clarifying πᾶς; superlative adj.
ὅτι: *that*…; governed by συγχωρῆσαι
ὅλῳ καὶ παντὶ: *wholely and completely*; dat. of degree of difference
4 **τῷ...ἔχοντι**: *to one being*…; + adv. see p. 7, dat. of special adjective
5 **τῷ μὴ (ἀεὶ ὡσαύτως ἔχοντι)**: *to one not*…; supply participial phrase for parallelism
6 **τί δὲ**: *what (about)*
7 **τῷ ἑτέρῳ**: dat. of special adj., supply the comparative ὁμοιότερον
8 **ὅρα δὴ**: *just consider, see now*; ὅρα-ε, sg. imperative; δή is emphatic
καὶ τῇδε: *also in this way*; dat. of manner
ὦσι: 3p pres. subjunctive εἰμί, in an indefinite temporal clause
80a1 **τῷ μὲν...τῇ δὲ**: *the one*…*the other*; dat. obj. of προστάττει; the gender refers to neuter σῶμα and fem. ψυχή respectively

τῇ δὲ ἄρχειν καὶ δεσπόζειν· καὶ κατὰ ταῦτα αὖ πότερόν σοι δοκεῖ ὅμοιον τῷ θείῳ εἶναι καὶ πότερον τῷ θνητῷ; ἢ οὐ δοκεῖ σοι τὸ μὲν θεῖον οἷον ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἡγεμονεύειν πεφυκέναι, τὸ δὲ θνητὸν ἄρχεσθαί τε καὶ δουλεύειν;

ἔμοιγε.

ποτέρῳ οὖν ἡ ψυχὴ ἔοικεν;

δῆλα δή, ὦ Σώκρατες, ὅτι ἡ μὲν ψυχὴ τῷ θείῳ, τὸ δὲ σῶμα τῷ θνητῷ.

σκόπει δή, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, εἰ ἐκ πάντων τῶν εἰρημένων τάδε ἡμῖν συμβαίνει, τῷ μὲν θείῳ καὶ ἀθανάτῳ καὶ νοητῷ καὶ μονοειδεῖ καὶ ἀδιαλύτῳ καὶ ἀεὶ ὡσαύτως κατὰ ταὐτὰ ἔχοντι ἑαυτῷ ὁμοιότατον εἶναι ψυχή, τῷ δὲ ἀνθρωπίνῳ καὶ

ἀ,-διαλύτος, -ον: undissoluble, undissolved, 2
ἀνθρώπινος, -η, -ον: belonging to human, human, 7
ἄρχω: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 12
δεσπόζω: to be master, lord, 3
δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 14
δουλεύω: to be a slave, serve, be subject to, 3
ἔοικα: to be like, seem likely (dat.), 24
ἡγεμονεύω: to lead, rule, command, 3
θεῖος, -α, -ον: divine, sent by the gods, 15
θνητός, -ή, -όν: mortal, liable to death, 7
μονο-ειδής, -ές: one in kind, simple, 3
νοητός, -ή, -όν: perceptible to the mind, 3
πότερος, -α, -ον: (untranslated), whether, 19
συμ-βαίνω: to happen, occur, result, 8
φύω: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by nature, 14
ὡσ-αύτως: in the same manner, just so, 4

2 **τῇ δὲ**: *the other*; i.e. the soul, parallel to τῷ μὲν, dat. obj. of πρόσταττει
καὶ κατὰ ταῦτα αὖ: *and in regard to these things in turn*
πότερον...πότερον: *which one…which one…?*
4 **οἷον ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἡγεμονεύειν**: *the sort to…*; acc. predicate of πεφυκέναι and two explanatory (epexegetic) infinitives
πεφυκέναι: *that…is (by nature)*; pf. inf. φύω; τὸ θεῖον is subject
5 **τὸ θνητὸν**: *that…*; acc. subj. supply πεφυκέναι οἷον
8 **δῆλα δή**: *(it is) quite clear*
10 **σκόπει δή**: σκόπε-ε sg. imperative, δή, 'now' or 'just,' is emphatic
εἰρημένων: pf. pass. pple λέγω (stem ερ-)
b1 **τάδε...συμβαίνει**: *these things result*
ἡμῖν: dat. of interest
κατὰ τ(ὰ) αὐτὰ: *in the same way*
3 **ἔχοντι**: *being*; 'being disposed,' 'holding'
ἑαυτῷ: *to itself*; reflexive
ὁμοιότατον: superlative, acc. predicate
ψυχή (ἔοικεν): supply verb from above

θνητῷ καὶ πολυειδεῖ καὶ ἀνοήτῳ καὶ διαλυτῷ καὶ μηδέποτε κατὰ ταὐτὰ ἔχοντι ἑαυτῷ ὁμοιότατον αὖ εἶναι σῶμα. ἔχομέν τι παρὰ ταῦτα ἄλλο λέγειν, ὦ φίλε Κέβης, ἢ οὐχ οὕτως ἔχει;

οὐκ ἔχομεν.

τί οὖν; τούτων οὕτως ἐχόντων ἆρ' οὐχὶ σώματι μὲν ταχὺ διαλύεσθαι προσήκει, ψυχῇ δὲ αὖ τὸ παράπαν ἀδιαλύτῳ εἶναι ἢ ἐγγύς τι τούτου;

c πῶς γὰρ οὔ;

ἐννοεῖς οὖν, ἔφη, ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνῃ ὁ ἄνθρωπος, τὸ μὲν ὁρατὸν αὐτοῦ, τὸ σῶμα, καὶ ἐν ὁρατῷ κείμενον, ὃ δὴ νεκρὸν καλοῦμεν, ᾧ προσήκει διαλύεσθαι καὶ διαπίπτειν καὶ διαπνεῖσθαι, οὐκ εὐθὺς τούτων οὐδὲν πέπονθεν, ἀλλ' ἐπιεικῶς

ἀ-διαλύτος, -ον: undissoluble, undissolved, 2
ἀ-νόητος, -ον: foolish, unintelligent, 5
δια-λυτος, -ον: capable of dissolving, 1
δια-λύω: to loosen apart, dissolve, 2
δια-πίπτω: to fall through, 1
δια-πνέω: to blow through, 1
ἐγγύς: near (+ gen.); adv. nearby, 5
ἐν-νοέω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
ἐπιεικῶς: suitably, reasonably, 2
εὐθύς: right away, straight, directly, at once, 9
θνητός, -ή, -όν: mortal, liable to death, 7
κεῖμαι: to lie, lie down 4
μηδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 8
νεκρός, ὁ: corpse, dead body, 3
ὁρατός, -ή, -όν: to be seen, visible, 17
παρά-παν: altogether, absolutely, 3
πολυ-ειδής, -ές: of many kinds or forms, 1
προσ-ήκει: it belongs to, it is fitting, befits 15
ταχύς, εῖα, ύ: quick, swift, hastily, 9
φίλος -η -ον: dear, friendly; *noun* friend, kin 8

5 **σῶμα (ἔοικεν)**: supply verb from above
ἔχομαι: *are we able*; + inf. 4
6 **παρὰ**: *contrary to…*
ἢ οὐχ οὕτως ἔχει: *how it is not so*; in apposition to ἄλλο τι παρὰ ταῦτα
8 **τούτων...ἐχόντων**: *since these things…*; gen. abs. is causal or conditional in sense
9 **προσήκει**: *is it not fitting…*; + dat. interest
ψυχῇ (προσήκει): *and is it not fitting for the soul*; add verb
τὸ παράπαν: *entirely*; adverbial acc.
10 **ἐγγύς τι τούτου**: *something close to it*; i.e. close to being indissoluble
c1 **πῶς γὰρ οὔ**: *how (could it) not*; lit. '(yes), for how could it not'
2 **ἀποθάνῃ**: 3s aor. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause
3 **αὐτοῦ**: i.e. of ὁ ἄνθρωπος
ὃ δὴ: *which very thing…*
5 **οὐκ...οὐδὲν**: *not…any*; οὐδὲν is direct obj.
τούτων: *of these things*; i.e. διαλύεσθαι...
πέπονθεν: 3s pf. πάσχω; the subject is τὸ σῶμα

συχνὸν ἐπιμένει χρόνον, ἐὰν μέν τις καὶ χαριέντως ἔχων τὸ σῶμα τελευτήσῃ καὶ ἐν τοιαύτῃ ὥρᾳ, καὶ πάνυ μάλα· συμπεσὸν γὰρ τὸ σῶμα καὶ ταριχευθέν, ὥσπερ οἱ ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ ταριχευθέντες, ὀλίγου ὅλον μένει ἀμήχανον ὅσον χρόνον, ἔνια δὲ μέρη τοῦ σώματος, καὶ ἂν σαπῇ, ὀστᾶ τε καὶ νεῦρα d
καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα πάντα, ὅμως ὡς ἔπος εἰπεῖν ἀθάνατά ἐστιν· ἢ οὔ;

ναί.

ἡ δὲ ψυχὴ ἄρα, τὸ ἀιδές, τὸ εἰς τοιοῦτον τόπον ἕτερον 5
οἰχόμενον γενναῖον καὶ καθαρὸν καὶ ἀιδῆ, εἰς Ἅιδου ὡς ἀληθῶς, παρὰ τὸν ἀγαθὸν καὶ φρόνιμον θεόν, οἷ, ἂν θεὸς θέλῃ, αὐτίκα καὶ τῇ ἐμῇ ψυχῇ ἰτέον, αὕτη δὲ δὴ ἡμῖν ἡ τοιαύτη καὶ οὕτω πεφυκυῖα ἀπαλλαττομένη τοῦ σώματος

Αἴγυμπτος, ὁ: Egypt, 1
Ἅιδης, -ου ὁ: Hades, 15
ἀιδής, -ές: unseen, invisible, 12
ἀ-μήχανος, -ον: impossible, inconceivable, 5
ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15
αὐτίκα: straightway, at once; presently, 2
γενναῖος, -α, -ον: noble, well-bred, 4
ἐθέλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17
ἐμός, -ή, -όν: my, mine, 7
ἔνιοι, -αι, -α: some, 7
ἐπι-μένω: to stay, wait, tarry, 1
ἔπος, -εος, τό: a word, 4
ἰτέος, -ον: one must go, to be gone, 2
μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 10
μέρος, -έος, τό: a part, share, portion, 4
ναί: yes, yea, 15
νεῦρον, τό: sinew, tendon, nerve, 6
οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 14
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small, 15
ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 9
ὅμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 13
ὀστέον, τό: bone, 9
σάπω (σήπω): make rotten; corrupt, waste, 2
συμ-πίπτω: to shrink, fall in, 1
συχνός, -ή, -όν: long, much, great, 4
ταριχεύω: preserve by pickling or smoking, 2
φρόνιμος, -ον: sensible, wise, prudent, 8
φύω: to bring forth, beget; am by nature, 14
χαριέντως: gracefully, elegantly, 2
ὥρα, ἡ: season, time, 3

6 **συχνὸν...χρόνον**: *for*...; acc. of duration
ἐὰν...τελευτήσῃ: *if*...*dies*; 3s aor. subj. in a present general (εἰ + subj., pres. ind.)
τις: i.e. ὁ ἄνθρωπος in line c1
καὶ...καὶ: first καί, 'quite,' is adverbial with χαριέντως (S 2882), the second is 'and'
ἔχων: *being*; + adv. see p 7
τὸ σῶμα: *in body*; acc. of respect
7 **συμπεσὸν**: *shrinking*; aor. pple, συμπίπτω
8 **ταριχευθέν**: *embalmed*; neuter sg. aor. pass. pple
9 **ὀλίγου**: *almost*; 'from a little' gen. of separation, here modifying ὅλον
ὅλον: neuter nom. predicate of μένει
ἀμήχανον...χρόνον: *for an inconceivable, long time*; acc. duration, (S 2535)
d1 **καὶ ἂν**: *even if*...; καὶ εἰ ἂν + 3s subj.
ὡς ἔπος εἰπεῖν: *so to speak*
5 **τὸ...οἰχόμενον**: *going to some other place*
6 **ὡς ἀληθῶς**: *truly*
7 **οἷ, ἐ(ὰ)ν**: *to where, if*...? relative adverb
8 **ἰτέον (ἐστί)**: *my soul must go*; 'it is to be gone by my soul'; impersonal verbal adj. + εἰμί expresses necessity with a dat. of agent
αὕτη δὲ δὴ: *does this (soul)*; apposition
οὕτω πεφυκυῖα: *being in this way*; pf. pple

εὐθὺς διαπεφύσηται καὶ ἀπόλωλεν, ὥς φασιν οἱ πολλοὶ
e ἄνθρωποι; πολλοῦ γε δεῖ, ὦ φίλε Κέβης τε καὶ Σιμμία,
ἀλλὰ πολλῷ μᾶλλον ὧδ' ἔχει· ἐὰν μὲν καθαρὰ ἀπαλλάττηται,
μηδὲν τοῦ σώματος συνεφέλκουσα, ἅτε οὐδὲν κοινωνοῦσα
αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ βίῳ ἑκοῦσα εἶναι, ἀλλὰ φεύγουσα αὐτὸ καὶ
συνηθροισμένη αὐτὴ εἰς ἑαυτήν, ἅτε μελετῶσα ἀεὶ τοῦτο—
τὸ δὲ οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἐστὶν ἢ ὀρθῶς φιλοσοφοῦσα καὶ τῷ ὄντι
81 τεθνάναι μελετῶσα ῥᾳδίως· ἢ οὐ τοῦτ' ἂν εἴη μελέτη
θανάτου;

παντάπασί γε.

οὐκοῦν οὕτω μὲν ἔχουσα εἰς τὸ ὅμοιον αὐτῇ τὸ ἀιδὲς
ἀπέρχεται, τὸ θεῖόν τε καὶ ἀθάνατον καὶ φρόνιμον, οἷ

ἀιδής, -ές: unseen, invisible, 12
ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15
ἀπ-έρχομαι: to go away, depart, 14
ἅτε: inasmuch as, since, seeing that (+ pple) 6
δια-φυσάω: to blow in different directions, 3
ἑκών, ἑκοῦσα, ἑκόν: willing, intentionally, 3
εὐθύς: right away, straight, directly, at once, 9
θεῖος, -α, -ον: divine, sent by the gods, 15
κοινωνέω: to associate with, partake in (dat) 4
μελετάω: to care for, practice, study, 5
μελέτη, ἡ: care, attention, study, practice, 4
παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15
ῥᾴδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 9
συν-αθροίζω: gather together, assemble, 2
συν-εφέλκω, ὁ: drag along, draw along, 1
φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 10
φίλος -η -ον: dear, friendly; *subst* friend, kin 8
φιλο-σοφέω: seek knowledge, philosophize, 6
φρόνιμος, -ον: sensible, wise, prudent, 8
ὧδε: in this way, so, thus, 4

9 **τοῦ σώματος**: *from…*; gen. separation
10 **διαπεφύσηται**: pf. pass.
ἀπόλωλεν: *perished*; pf. ἀπόλλυμι
ὥς: *as…*; parenthetical
e1 **πολλοῦ γε δεῖ**: *far from it indeed*; 'it lacks from much,' impersonal, gen. of separation
2 **πολλῷ**: *far*; 'by much,' dat. of degree of difference modifying comparative μᾶλλον
ὧδ(ε) ἔχει: ἔχω + adv., see p. 7
ἐᾶν...ἀπαλλάττηται: *if it is released pure*
3 **μηδὲν**: *none*; acc. object; μηδὲν is preferred to οὐδὲν in a conditional clause
τοῦ σώματος: partitive gen. with μηδὲν
ἅτε: *inasmuch as…*; 'since,' ἅτε + pple suggests a cause from the speaker point of view
3 **οὐδὲν**: *not at all*; inner acc. with the pple
4 **ἑκοῦσα εἶναι**: *so as to be willing*; or just 'willingly,' a common infinitive absolute
φεύγουσα: *avoiding*
5 **ἅτε**: *inasmuch as…*; 'since,' ἅτε + pple suggests a cause from the speaker point of view; μελετῶσα is a fem. nom. sg. pple of ana-contract verb
τοῦτο: i.e. the entire clause (φεύγουσα... ἑαυτήν), not the body
6 **τὸ δὲ οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἐστὶν ἢ**: *and this is nothing other than*; i.e. τὸ συναθροίζεσθαι
τῷ ὄντι: *really, actually*; adverb
81a1 **τεθνάναι**: *being dead*; pf. inf. θνήσκω suggests a state rather than activity; this inf. is object of pple μελετῶσα
ἂν εἴη: *would be*; potential opt. εἰμί
4 **ἔχουσα**: *being*; see sp. 7
αὐτῇ: dat. of special adj. ὅμοιον
5 **οἷ**: *to where*; relative adverb

ἀφικομένῃ ὑπάρχει αὐτῇ εὐδαίμονι εἶναι, πλάνης καὶ ἀνοίας καὶ φόβων καὶ ἀγρίων ἐρώτων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων κακῶν τῶν ἀνθρωπείων ἀπηλλαγμένῃ, ὥσπερ δὲ λέγεται κατὰ τῶν μεμυημένων, ὡς ἀληθῶς τὸν λοιπὸν χρόνον μετὰ θεῶν διάγουσα; οὕτω φῶμεν, ὦ Κέβης, ἢ ἄλλως;

οὕτω νὴ Δία, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης.

ἐὰν δέ γε οἶμαι μεμιασμένη καὶ ἀκάθαρτος τοῦ σώματος **b**
ἀπαλλάττηται, ἅτε τῷ σώματι ἀεὶ συνοῦσα καὶ τοῦτο θεραπεύουσα καὶ ἐρῶσα καὶ γοητευομένη ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ ὑπό τε τῶν ἐπιθυμιῶν καὶ ἡδονῶν, ὥστε μηδὲν ἄλλο δοκεῖν εἶναι ἀληθὲς ἀλλ᾽ ἢ τὸ σωματοειδές, οὗ τις ἂν ἅψαιτο καὶ ἴδοι καὶ πίοι καὶ φάγοι καὶ πρὸς τὰ ἀφροδίσια χρήσαιτο, τὸ δὲ τοῖς

ἄγριος, -α, -ον: wild, fierce, 2
ἀ-κάθαρτος, -ον: impure, not clean, 2
ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 14
ἀνθρώπειος, -α, -ον: human, of a human, 3
ἄ-νοια, ἡ: folly, lack of understanding, 3
ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15
ἅπτω: fasten, grasp (gen); kindle, set fire; 11
ἅτε: inasmuch as, since, seeing that (+ pple) 6
ἀφροδίσιος, -α, -ον: of Aphrodite; sex 2
γοητεύω: to bewitch, beguile, 1
δι-άγω: to live, pass, go through, 2
ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for, 10
ἐράω: to love, to be in love with, 4
ἔρως, ἔρωτος, ὁ: passion, lust, love, 2
ἐσθίω: to eat, 3
εὐ-δαίμων, -ον: happy, fortunate, blessed, 5
Ζεύς, ὁ: Zeus, 11
ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17
θεραπεύω: to attend to, care for, serve, 1
λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest, 3
μιαίνω: to defile, taint, stain (with blood), 1
μυέω: to initiate into the mysteries, 1
νή: by…(+ acc, invoking a god), 14
πίνω: to drink, 16
πλάνος, -η, -ον: wandering, deceiving, 2
σύν-ειμι: to be with, associate with (dat.), 4
σωματο-ειδής, -ές: corporeal, bodily, 5
ὑπ-άρχω: to be there, be ready, be available 4
φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic, 10
χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.) 11

6 **ἀφικομένῃ**: *when arriving*; modifies αὐτῇ
ὑπάρχει: *it is possible*; impersonal
εὐδαίμονι: dat. predicate of εἶναι
πλάνης...: *from…*; gen. of separation
8 **λέγεται**: *it is said*
κατὰ...μεμυημένων: *regarding the initiated*; pf. pass. pple
9 **ὡς ἀληθῶς**: *truly*
τὸν...χρόνον: *for…*; acc. of duration
10 **φῶμεν**: *are we to speak?*; deliberative subj. φημί
11 **Δία**: acc. sg. Ζεύς
b1 **δέ γε**: *yes, and…I suppose*; οἴομαι
μεμιασμένη: pf. pass. pple μιαίνω
τοῦ σώματος: *from…*; gen. separation;
2 **ἅτε...συνοῦσα**: *inasmuch as…*; 'since,' ἅτε + pple suggests a cause from the speaker point of view, pple σύνειμι + dat.
3 **ἐρῶσα**: fem. nom. sg. pple ἐράω
ὑπ᾽...ὑπό τε: *because of it and because of (its)…*; gen. of cause
4 **ὥστε**: *so as to…*; + inf., result clause
μηδὲν ἄλλο: acc. subject of δοκεῖν εἶναι,
ἀληθὲς: *real*; elsewhere 'true,' acc. pred.
5 **ἀλλ(ὰ) ἢ**: *but*; μηδὲν...ἀλλ(ὰ) ἢ is an elliptical expression: 'nothing but' S 2778
οὗ: *which*; partitive gen., object of ἅψαιτο
ἂν ἅψαιτο..ἴδοι...πίοι: *can…can..*; potential aor. opt. ἅπτομαι, ὁράω, πίνω, ἐσθίω
6 **πρὸς τὰ ἀφροδίσια**: *in regard to sex*

ὄμμασι σκοτῶδες καὶ ἀιδές, νοητὸν δὲ καὶ φιλοσοφίᾳ αἱρετόν, τοῦτο δὲ εἰθισμένη μισεῖν τε καὶ τρέμειν καὶ φεύγειν, οὕτω
c *δὴ ἔχουσαν οἴει ψυχὴν αὐτὴν καθ' αὑτὴν εἰλικρινῆ ἀπαλλάξεσθαι;*

οὐδ' ὁπωστιοῦν, ἔφη.

ἀλλὰ καὶ διειλημμένην γε οἶμαι ὑπὸ τοῦ σωματοειδοῦς,
5 *ὃ αὐτῇ ἡ ὁμιλία τε καὶ συνουσία τοῦ σώματος διὰ τὸ ἀεὶ συνεῖναι καὶ διὰ τὴν πολλὴν μελέτην ἐνεποίησε σύμφυτον;*

πάνυ γε.

ἐμβριθὲς δέ γε, ὦ φίλε, τοῦτο οἴεσθαι χρὴ εἶναι καὶ βαρὺ καὶ γεῶδες καὶ ὁρατόν· ὃ δὴ καὶ ἔχουσα ἡ τοιαύτη
10 *ψυχὴ βαρύνεταί τε καὶ ἕλκεται πάλιν εἰς τὸν ὁρατὸν τόπον*

ἀιδής, -ές: unseen, invisible, 12
αἱρετός, -ή, -όν: selected, choiceworthy, 1
ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15
βαρύνω: to weigh down, oppress, 2
βαρύς, -εῖα, -ύ: heavy; grievous, grim, dire, 1
γεώδης, -ες: earth-like, earthy, 2
δια-λαμβάνω: receive separately, divide, seize by the middle (wrestling metaphor), 2
ἐθίζω: to accustom, use, 2
εἰλικρινής, -ές: unmixed, pure, simple, 4
ἕλκω: to draw, drag; weigh, 3
ἐμβριθής, -ές: weighty, 1
ἐμ-ποιέω: to create in, produce in, cause, 2
μελέτη, ἡ: care, attention, study, practice, 4
μισέω: to hate, 4
νοητός, -ή, -όν: perceptible (to the mind), 3
ὁμιλία, ἡ: association, company, society, 1
ὄμμα, -ατος, τό: the eye, 5
ὁπωστιοῦν: in any way whatever, 5
ὁρατός, -ή, -όν: to be seen, visible, 17
σκοτώδης, -ες,: dark, 1
σύμφυτος, -ον: innate, inborn, congenital, 1
σύν-ειμι: to be with, associate with (dat.), 4
συν-ουσία, ἡ: association, company, 4
σωματο-ειδής, -ές: corporeal, bodily, 5
τρέμω: to tremble at, quake, 1
φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 10
φιλο-σοφία, ἡ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13
φίλος -η -ον: dear, friendly; *noun* friend, kin 8

6 **τὸ δὲ**: *but that (which is)…*
7 **ὄμμασι**: *to the eyes*; dat. of interest
φιλοσοφίᾳ: *to philosophy*; dat. of interest
8 **εἰθισμένη**: pf. middle pple, ἐθίζω
τρέμειν: *to tremble at*; i.e. fear
φεύγειν: *to avoid*
c1 **οὕτω δὴ**: *in just this way*
οἴει: *do you suppose…?*; 2s mid. οἴομαι
αὐτὴν κατ(ὰ) (ἑ)αυτὴν: *itself by itself*
εἰλικρινῆ: εἰλικρινε-α, 3rd decl. acc. sg.
ἀπαλλάξεσθαι: *will be released itself by itself (and) pure*; fut. inf.
4 **ἀλλὰ καὶ**: *but actually*
(τὴν ψυχὴν ἀπαλλάξεσθαι) διειλημμένην γε οἶμαι: *I think (that the soul will be released tied around the middle at least*
ὑπὸ: *by…*; gen. of cause or agent
5 **αὐτῇ**: *its*; dat. of possession
διὰ...συνεῖναι: *on account of…*; + articular inf.
6 **ἐνεποίησε**: *made (x) (y)*; governs a double acc. (acc. direct obj. and acc. predicate)
8 **τοῦτο**: i.e. the body
9 **ὃ δὴ**: *which very thing*; the ὁ ἄνθρωπος

φόβῳ τοῦ ἀιδοῦς τε καὶ Ἅιδου, ὥσπερ λέγεται, περὶ τὰ μνήματά τε καὶ τοὺς τάφους κυλινδουμένη, περὶ ἃ δὴ καὶ **d** ὤφθη ἄττα ψυχῶν σκιοειδῆ φαντάσματα, οἷα παρέχονται αἱ τοιαῦται ψυχαὶ εἴδωλα, αἱ μὴ καθαρῶς ἀπολυθεῖσαι ἀλλὰ τοῦ ὁρατοῦ μετέχουσαι, διὸ καὶ ὁρῶνται.

εἰκός γε, ὦ Σώκρατες. 5

εἰκὸς μέντοι, ὦ Κέβης· καὶ οὔ τί γε τὰς τῶν ἀγαθῶν αὐτὰς εἶναι, ἀλλὰ τὰς τῶν φαύλων, αἳ περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἀναγκάζονται πλανᾶσθαι δίκην τίνουσαι τῆς προτέρας τροφῆς κακῆς οὔσης. καὶ μέχρι γε τούτου πλανῶνται, ἕως ἂν τῇ τοῦ συνεπακολουθοῦντος, τοῦ σωματοειδοῦς, ἐπιθυμίᾳ πάλιν **e** ἐνδεθῶσιν εἰς σῶμα· ἐνδοῦνται δέ, ὥσπερ εἰκός, εἰς τοιαῦτα ἤθη ὁποῖ' ἄττ' ἂν καὶ μεμελετηκυῖαι τύχωσιν ἐν τῷ βίῳ.

Ἅιδης, -ου ὁ: Hades, 15
ἀιδής, -ές: unseen, invisible, 12
ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 10
δίκη, ἡ: justice; lawsuit, trial; penalty, 11
διό: δι' ὅ, on account of which, 4
εἴδωλον, τό: phantom, illusion, likeness, 2
εἰκός, ότος, τό: likely, probable, reasonable 18
ἐν-δέω: to bind, bind in, imprison, 3
ἐπιθυμία, ἡ: desire, longing, yearning, 10
ἕως: until, as long as, 15
ἦθος, -εος, τό: habit, custom; character, 1
κυλινδέω: to roll, roll along, 2
μελετάω: to care for, practice, study, 5
μετ-έχω: to partake of, have share in (gen) 13
μέχρι: up to; until, as long as (+ gen.), 5
μνῆμα, -ατος, τό: monument, a memorial, 1
ὁποῖος, -α, -ον: of what sort or kind, 2
ὁρατός, -ή, -όν: to be seen, visible, 17
παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16
πλανάω: make wander; *mid*. wander, 4
σκιο-ειδής, -ές: shadowy, like a shadow, 1
συν-επακολουθέω: to accompany along, 1
σωματο-ειδής, -ές: corporeal, bodily, 5
τάφος, τό: grave, tomb; burial, 1
τίνω: pay the price, pay the penalty, 1
τροφή, ἡ: rearing, way of life; food, 4
φαντάσμα, -ατος, τό: apparition, phantom, 1
φαῦλος –η -ον: slight, paltry, cheap, trifling 9
φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic, 10

11 **φόβῳ**: *by…*; dat. of cause
τοῦ ἀιδοῦς...Ἅιδου: objective gen. ἀιδέ-ος
ὥσπερ λέγεται: *just as it is said*
περὶ: *around…*
d1 **περὶ ἃ δὴ**: *around which very things…*
καὶ: *actually*
2 **ὤφθη**: 3s aor. pass. ὁράω; plural subject
ἄττα: *certain*; neut. pl., alternative to τινα
οἷα...εἴδωλα: *such likenesses*; relative adj.
3 **αἱ...**: attributive position following ψυχαὶ
ἀπολυθεῖσαι: fem. aor. pass. pple ἀπολύω
καὶ: *actually, in fact*; adverbial
5 **εἰκός γε**: *yes, (it is) likely*; γε is affirmative
6 **μέντοι**: *certainly*; affirmative
καὶ...γε: *and in fact*; emphasizing the intervening words
οὔ τί…τὰς...αὐτὰς εἶναι: *(it is likely) that they are not at all souls of the good*
7 **τὰς**: *those of…*; i.e. those souls of…
δίκην τίνουσαι: *paying a penalty*; pple
8 **τῆς...τροφῆς**: *for…*; gen. of charge
9 **μέχρι τούτου...ἕως**: *up to this…until…*
e1 **τοῦ συνεπακολουθοῦντος**: *by desire of the thing accompanying, the corporeal,…*
2 **ἐνδεθῶσιν**: *they are bound*; aor. pass.
3 **τύχωσιν**: *happen to have practiced…*

τὰ ποῖα δὴ ταῦτα λέγεις, ὦ Σώκρατες;

οἷον τοὺς μὲν γαστριμαργίας τε καὶ ὕβρεις καὶ φιλοποσίας μεμελετηκότας καὶ μὴ διηυλαβημένους εἰς τὰ τῶν ὄνων γένη

82 *καὶ τῶν τοιούτων θηρίων εἰκὸς ἐνδύεσθαι. ἢ οὐκ οἴει;*

πάνυ μὲν οὖν εἰκὸς λέγεις.

τοὺς δέ γε ἀδικίας τε καὶ τυραννίδας καὶ ἁρπαγὰς προτετιμηκότας εἰς τὰ τῶν λύκων τε καὶ ἱεράκων καὶ ἰκτίνων γένη· ἢ ποῖ ἂν ἄλλοσέ φαμεν τὰς τοιαύτας ἰέναι;

ἀμέλει, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα.

οὐκοῦν, ἢ δ' ὅς, δῆλα δὴ καὶ τἆλλα ἃ ἂν ἕκαστα ἴοι κατὰ τὰς αὐτῶν ὁμοιότητας τῆς μελέτης;

δῆλον δή, ἔφη· πῶς δ' οὔ;

ἀ-δικία, ἡ: wrong-doing, injustice, 1
ἄλλο-σε: to another place, to elsewhere, 2
ἀμελέω: to have no care for, neglect, 5
ἁρπαγή, ἡ: seizure, robbery, kidnapping, 1
γαστρι-μαργία, ἡ: gluttony, 1
γένος, -εος, τό: lineage, family, stock; race, 7
δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 14
δι-ευλαβέομαι: beware, be on guard against 1
εἰκός, ότος, τό: likely, probable, reasonable 18
ἐν-δύομαι: to go into, enter, 2
θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast, 1
ἱέραξ, ἱεράκος, ὁ: hawk, falcon, 1
ἴκτινος, ὁ: kite (bird), 1
λύκος, ὁ: wolf, 1
μελετάω: practice in, study, care for (gen) 5
μελέτη, ἡ: care, attention, study, practice, 4
ὁμοιότης, -τητος, ἡ: similarity, resemblance, 3
ὄνος, ὁ, ἡ: a mule, 1
ποῖ: whether? to where?, 1
ποῖος, -α, -ον: what sort of? what kind of?, 9
προ-τιμάω: to prefer, honor before (gen) 1
τυραννίς, -ίδος, ἡ: absolute power, tyranny, 1
ὕβρις, ἡ: outrage, assault, insult, violence, 1
φιλο-ποσία, ἡ: pursuit or love of drinking, 1

4 **τὰ ποῖα δὴ...λέγεις..**: *just what do you mean these (to be)?*; the article with the interrogative is not uncommon
5 **οἷον**: *for example*; 'acc. of respect
τοὺς...μεμελετηκότας...διηυλαβημένους: *those…*; pf. act. (+ gen.) and pf. pass. pples
82a1 **εἰκὸς**: *(it is) likely*; supply ἐστί
οἴει: *do you suppose*…? 2s mid. οἴομαι
2 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν εἰκὸς λέγεις**: *you speak something quite certainly indeed likely*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent, εἰκός is neuter object
3 **δέ γε**: *yes, and…*; adding another point
τοὺς...προτετιμηκότας: *those*…; pf. act. pple προτιμάω
4 **εἰς**: supply εἰκὸς ἐνδύεσθαι from above
5 **ἂν...ἰέναι**: *that…would go*; ἄν + inf. ἔρχομαι, equiv. to a potential opt.
φαμεν: 1p pres. φημί
6 **ἀμέλει**: *no doubt*; or 'of course,' lit. 'be without care;'an adverb formed from the imperative of the verb ἀμελέω:
7 **δῆλα δή...μελέτης**: *(is it) quite clear in respect to other things also where each would go according to the similarities of their practice*; καί is adverbial, τὰ ἀλλὰ is an acc. of respect*;* 3s potential opt. ἔρχομαι
9 **δῆλον δή (ἐστίν)**: *it is quite clear*

οὐκοῦν εὐδαιμονέστατοι, ἔφη, καὶ τούτων εἰσὶ καὶ εἰς βέλτιστον τόπον ἰόντες οἱ τὴν δημοτικὴν καὶ πολιτικὴν ἀρετὴν ἐπιτετηδευκότες, ἣν δὴ καλοῦσι σωφροσύνην τε καὶ b
δικαιοσύνην, ἐξ ἔθους τε καὶ μελέτης γεγονυῖαν ἄνευ φιλοσοφίας τε καὶ νοῦ;

πῇ δὴ οὗτοι εὐδαιμονέστατοι;

ὅτι τούτους εἰκός ἐστιν εἰς τοιοῦτον πάλιν ἀφικνεῖσθαι 5
πολιτικὸν καὶ ἥμερον γένος, ἤ που μελιττῶν ἢ σφηκῶν ἢ μυρμήκων, καὶ εἰς ταὐτόν γε πάλιν τὸ ἀνθρώπινον γένος, καὶ γίγνεσθαι ἐξ αὐτῶν ἄνδρας μετρίους.

εἰκός.

εἰς δέ γε θεῶν γένος μὴ φιλοσοφήσαντι καὶ παντελῶς 10
καθαρῷ ἀπιόντι οὐ θέμις ἀφικνεῖσθαι ἀλλ᾽ ἢ τῷ φιλομαθεῖ. c

ἄνευ: without, 9
ἀνθρώπινος, -η, -ον: belonging to human, human, 7
ἀπ-έρχομαι: to go away, depart, 14
ἀρετή, ἡ: excellence, goodness, virtue, 9
βέλτιστος, -η, -ον: best, 14
γένος, -εος, τό: lineage, family, stock; race, 7
δημοτικός, -ή, -όν: public, of the people, 1
δικαιοσύνη, ἡ: justice, righteousness, 4
ἔθος, -εος, το: custom, habit, (cf. to ἤθος) 1
εἰκός, ότος, τό: likely, probable, reasonable 18
ἐπιτήδευω: to pursue, practice, 4
εὐ-δαίμων, -ον: happy, fortunate, blessed, 5
ἥμερος, -ον: tame, civilized, gentle, 1
θέμις, ἡ: right, custom, what is established, 1
μελέτη, ἡ: care, attention, study, practice, 4
μελιττα, ἡ: bee, 2
μέτριος, -α, -ον: moderate, in due measure, 7
μύρμηξ, μύρμηκος, ὁ: ant, 2
νοῦς, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14
παντελῶς: altogether, utterly, absolutely, 3
πῇ: in what way, how, 5
πολιτικός -ή -όν: of the city, political, social 2
σφήξ, σφηκός, ὁ: wasp, 1
σωφροσύνη, ἡ: temperence, prudence, 8
φιλο-μαθής, -ές: pursuer of learning, 5
φιλο-σοφέω: seek knowledge, philosophize, 6
φιλο-σοφία, ἡ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13

10 **εὐδαιμονέστατοι**: superlative
εἰσί: 3p pres. εἰμί
11 **ἰόντες**: pres. pple ἔρχομαι
οἱ...ἐπιτετηδευκότες: *those…*; pf. pple ἐπιτήδευω
b1 **ἣ δὴ**: *the very thing which*; δή is intensive
2 **ἔθους**: ἔθε-ος, gen. sg. ἔθος
γεγονυῖαν: fem. acc. sg. pf. pple γίγνομαι
4 **πῇ δὴ**: *in what way precisely*
οὗτοι: *(are) these*; add a linking verb
5 **ὅτι**: *because…*; in response to πῇ
τούτους...ἀφικνεῖσθαι: *that these…*; ind. disc governed by εἰκός ἐστιν
6 **πολιτικὸν...γένος**: *social and gentle species*
ἢ...ἢ: *either…or*
7 **καὶ...γε**: *and…in fact*; emphasizing the intervening words
ταὐτόν: *the same…*; τὸ αὐτόν + τὸ γένος
8 **ἄνδρας μετρίους**: *respectable people*; acc. subject of ὁ γίγνεσθαι
10 **δέ γε**: *yes, and…*; to make another point
μὴ φιλοσοφήσαντι...ἀπιόντι: *(for one) if not…*; dat. of interest; aor. and pres. pple conditional in sense (hence μή instead of οὐ) φιλοσοφέω, ἀπέρχομαι
οὐ θέμις: *(it is) not lawful*; impersonal, + dat. + inf
c1 **ἀλλ(ὸ) ἢ**: *but the…*; see 81b5 (S 2778)

ἀλλὰ τούτων ἕνεκα, ὦ ἑταῖρε Σιμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, οἱ ὀρθῶς φιλόσοφοι ἀπέχονται τῶν κατὰ τὸ σῶμα ἐπιθυμιῶν ἁπασῶν καὶ καρτεροῦσι καὶ οὐ παραδιδόασιν αὑταῖς ἑαυτούς,
5 *οὔ τι οἰκοφθορίαν τε καὶ πενίαν φοβούμενοι, ὥσπερ οἱ πολλοὶ καὶ φιλοχρήματοι· οὐδὲ αὖ ἀτιμίαν τε καὶ ἀδοξίαν μοχθηρίας δεδιότες, ὥσπερ οἱ φίλαρχοί τε καὶ φιλότιμοι, ἔπειτα ἀπέχονται αὐτῶν.*

οὐ γὰρ ἂν πρέποι, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες, ὁ Κέβης.

d *οὐ μέντοι μὰ Δία, ἦ δ' ὅς. τοιγάρτοι τούτοις μὲν ἅπασιν, ὦ Κέβης, ἐκεῖνοι οἷς τι μέλει τῆς ἑαυτῶν ψυχῆς ἀλλὰ μὴ σώματα πλάττοντες ζῶσι, χαίρειν εἰπόντες, οὐ κατὰ ταὐτὰ πορεύονται αὐτοῖς ὡς οὐκ εἰδόσιν ὅπῃ ἔρχονται,*

ἀ-δοξία, ἡ: ill-repute, disgrace, 1
ἀ-τιμία, ἡ: dishonor, disgrace, 1
ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: every, quite all, 14
ἀπ-έχω: to be distant, keep away from, 5
δείδω: fear, dread, shrink from, feel awe, 11
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
ἕνεκα: for the sake of, because of, for (gen) 13
ἐπιθυμία, ἡ: desire, longing, yearning, 10
ἑταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate, 11
Ζεύς, ὁ: Zeus, 6
καρτερέω: to be steadfast, patient, staunch, 1
μέλει: there is a care for (dat.) for (gen.), 4
μοχθηρία, ἡ: badness, depravity, 2
οἰκο-φθορία, ἡ: a squandering of resources, 1
ὅπῃ: where; in what way, how, 11
παρα-δίδωμι: give or hand over, transmit, 2
πενία, ἡ: poverty, need, 1
πλάττω: to form, mold, 1
πορεύομαι: to travel, journey, march, 7
πρέπει: it is fitting, it is suitable (impers.) 8
τοι-γάρτοι: for that very reason, therefore, 1
φιλο-αρχός, -όν: fond of ruling, ambitious 1
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18
φιλο-τιμος, -ον: ambitious, honor-loving, 2
φιλο-χρήματος, -ον: fond of money, 1
φοβέω: to terrify, frighten; *mid*. fear, 15
χαίρω: to rejoice, be glad, enjoy; fare well 12

3 **τῶν...ἐπιθυμιῶν**: *from…*; gen. separation
κατὰ τὸ σῶμα: *in (regard to) the body*
4 **αὐταῖς**: *to them*; i.e. αἱ ἐπιθυμίαι ; dat. of ind. object
5 **οὔ τι...φοβούμενοι**: *not at all because…*; inner acc., the pple is causal in sense
ὥσπερ...φιλοχρήματοι: *just as…*
7 **οὐδὲ...δεδιότες**: *nor because…*; pf. pple δείδω is causal in sense
8 **αὐτῶν**: *from them*; gen. separation
9 **γὰρ**: *(no), for…*; supply a response, οὐ belongs with πρέποι
οὐ...ἂν πρέποι: *it would not be fitting*; impersonal, potential opt.
d1 **μέντοι**: *certainly, of course*
Δία: acc. sg. Ζεύς
τούτοις...ἅπασιν...χαίρειν εἰπόντες: *saying farewell to all these men*; i.e. to the lovers of honor and power; modifying ἐκεῖνοι
2 **οἷς**: *for whom*; dat. of interest
τι μέλει: *there is some care for*; + gen.; impersonal, inner acc.
3 **ἀλλὰ...ζῶσι**: *and instead (who) live…*; 3p pres. ζάω, for ἀλλά μὴ as 'and not' or 'and instead,' see S 2781b
μὴ...πλάττοντες: *not molding their bodies*; i.e. into shape; Burnet's OCT prefers the *lectio difficilior* dat. sg. σώματι (i.e.'living for the body').
4 **κατὰ τὰ αὐτὰ...αὐτοῖς**: *in the same way as those, on the grounds of not knowing where they are going*; ὡς + dat. pple οἶδα

αὐτοὶ δὲ ἡγούμενοι οὐ δεῖν ἐναντία τῇ φιλοσοφίᾳ πράττειν καὶ τῇ ἐκείνης λύσει τε καὶ καθαρμῷ ταύτῃ δὴ τρέπονται ἐκείνῃ ἑπόμενοι, ᾗ ἐκείνη ὑφηγεῖται.

πῶς, ὦ Σώκρατες;

ἐγὼ ἐρῶ, ἔφη. γιγνώσκουσι γάρ, ἦ δ' ὅς, οἱ φιλομαθεῖς ὅτι παραλαβοῦσα αὐτῶν τὴν ψυχὴν ἡ φιλοσοφία ἀτεχνῶς διαδεδεμένην ἐν τῷ σώματι καὶ προσκεκολλημένην, ἀναγκαζομένην δὲ ὥσπερ διὰ εἱργμοῦ διὰ τούτου σκοπεῖσθαι τὰ ὄντα ἀλλὰ μὴ αὐτὴν δι' αὑτῆς, καὶ ἐν πάσῃ ἀμαθίᾳ κυλινδουμένην, καὶ τοῦ εἱργμοῦ τὴν δεινότητα κατιδοῦσα ὅτι δι' ἐπιθυμίας ἐστίν, ὡς ἂν μάλιστα αὐτὸς ὁ δεδεμένος συλλήπτωρ

ἀ-μαθία, ἡ: ignorance, folly, 1
ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 10
ἀ-τεχνῶς: simply, absolutely, really, 6
γιγνώσκω: learn to know, to learn, realize 12
δεινότης, ὁ: terribleness, cleverness, 1
δια-δέω: to bind fast, bind on either side, 1
εἱργμός, -οῦ, ὁ: prison, cage, 2
ἐπιθυμία, ἡ: desire, longing, yearning, 10
ἕπομαι: to follow, accompany, escort (dat.) 9
καθαρμός, ὁ: purification, purification rite, 2
καθ-οράω: to look down, perceive, 4
κυλινδέω: to roll, roll along, 2
λύσις, -εως, ἡ: releasing, deliverance, 4
παρα-λαμβάνω: to take over, 2
πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12
προσ-κολλάω: to glue to, stick to, 1
συλλήπτωρ, -ορος, ὁ: partner, accomplice, 1
τρέπω: to turn, 4
ὑφ-ηγέομαι: to lead the way, go first, 1
φιλο-μαθής, -ές: pursuer of learning, 5
φιλο-σοφία, ἡ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13

5 **αὐτοὶ δὲ**: *but they themselves…*; i.e the pursuers of learning
οὐ δεῖν: *that it is necessary*; impers. δεῖ
ἐναντία τῇ φιλοσοφίᾳ...καθαρμῷ: *deeds opposite to philosophy and both that one's deliverance and purification*; many dat. of special adjective, ἐκείνης is a subjective gen. (i.e. 'that one delivers and purifies') and refers to φιλοσοφίᾳ
6 **ταύτῃ δὴ**: *in precisely this way*; dat. of manner
τρέπονται: *they turn*; the middle voice, as here, is often reflexive
7 **ἐκείνῃ, ἐκείνη**: φιλοσοφία
ᾗ: *where*; 'in what place'
9 **ἐρῶ**: ἐρέω; 1s fut. λέγω
e1 **παραλαβοῦσα**: *taking over*; 'or taking to one's side'
διαδεδεμένην: pf. pass. διαδέω
προσκεκεολλημένην: pf. pass.
3 **τὰ ὄντα**: *the things which are*
4 **αὐτὴν δι(ὰ) (ἐ)αυτῆς**: *itself through itself*
5 **κατιδοῦσα**: fem. nom. sg. aor. pple, καθ-οράω, modifying ἡ φιλοφοφία
ὅτι δι(ὰ) ἐπιθυμίας ἐστίν: *(namely) that it is through desire…*
6 **ὡς ἂν...συλλήτπτωρ...δεδέσθαι**: *so that the one bound (i.e. the prisoner) himself would especially be an accomplice of (his) being bound*; result clause (S 2278)

83 *εἴη τοῦ δεδέσθαι, —ὅπερ οὖν λέγω, γιγνώσκουσιν οἱ φιλομαθεῖς ὅτι οὕτω παραλαβοῦσα ἡ φιλοσοφία ἔχουσαν αὐτῶν τὴν ψυχὴν ἠρέμα παραμυθεῖται καὶ λύειν ἐπιχειρεῖ, ἐνδεικνυμένη ὅτι ἀπάτης μὲν μεστὴ ἡ διὰ τῶν ὀμμάτων σκέψις,*
5 *ἀπάτης δὲ ἡ διὰ τῶν ὤτων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων αἰσθήσεων, πείθουσα δὲ ἐκ τούτων μὲν ἀναχωρεῖν, ὅσον μὴ ἀνάγκη αὐτοῖς χρῆσθαι, αὐτὴν δὲ εἰς αὑτὴν συλλέγεσθαι καὶ ἀθροίζεσθαι παρακελευομένη, πιστεύειν δὲ μηδενὶ ἄλλῳ ἀλλ᾽*
b *ἢ αὐτὴν αὑτῇ, ὅτι ἂν νοήσῃ αὐτὴ καθ᾽ αὑτὴν αὐτὸ καθ᾽ αὑτὸ τῶν ὄντων· ὅτι δ᾽ ἂν δι᾽ ἄλλων σκοπῇ ἐν ἄλλοις ὂν ἄλλο, μηδὲν ἡγεῖσθαι ἀληθές· εἶναι δὲ τὸ μὲν τοιοῦτον αἰσθητόν τε καὶ ὁρατόν, ὃ δὲ αὐτὴ ὁρᾷ νοητόν τε καὶ ἀιδές.*

ἀθροίζω: to gather, collect, muster, 2
ἀιδής, -ές: unseen, invisible, 12
αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
αἰσθητός, -ή, -όν: perceptible, sensible, 1
ἀνα-χωρέω: to go back, withdraw, retreat, 1
ἀπάτη, ἡ: deceit, fraud, treachery, 2
γιγνώσκω: learn to know, to learn, realize 12
ἐν-δείκνυμι: to point out, mark, show, 1
ἐπι-χειρέω: put one's hand on, attempt, try, 8
ἠρέμα: gently, softly, quietly, 3
λύω: to loosen, dissolve, break up, 7
μεστός, -ή, -όν: full, filled, filled full (gen) 1
νόησις, ἡ: intelligence, understanding, 1
νοητός, -ή, -όν: perceptible to the mind, 3
ὄμμα, -ατος, τό: the eye, 5
ὁρατός, -ή, -όν: to be seen, visible, 17
οὖς, ὠτος, τό: ear, 2
παρα-κελεύομαι: to urge, encourage, order, 3
παρα-λαμβάνω: to take over, 2
παρα-μυθέομαι: to encourage, exhort, 1
πιστεύω: to trust, believe in, rely on, 5
σκέψις, -εως, ἡ: perception, observation, 4
συλ-λέγω: to collect, gather, 4
φιλο-μαθής, -ές: pursuer of learning, 5
φιλο-σοφία, ἡ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13
χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.) 11

83a2 **παραλαβοῦσα**: *taking over*; aor. pple
οὕτω...ἔχουσαν: *being in this way*
3 **λύειν**: supply τὴν ψυχὴν as object
4 **μεστὴ**: *is…*; nom. predicate governing a partitive gen.; supply the verb ἐστί
5 **ἀπάτης δὲ (μεστὴ)**: supply the predicate and linking verb ἐστί from above
ὤτων: gen. pl. οὖς
6 **ἀναχωρεῖν**: i.e. from the senses
ὅσον: *as much as*
μὴ ἀνάγκη (ἐστί): *(it is) not unnecessary*
7 **συλλέγεσθαι..ἀθροίζεσθαι**: *that (the soul)…*; ind. disc., both mid. voice
8 **παρακελευομένη**: modifies ἡ φιλοσοφία
μὴδενὶ...ἀλλ(ὰ) ἢ: *nothing other but…*; or ‘nothing other rather than’
b1 **ἀυτὴν (ἑ)αυτῇ**: *that it…*; acc. subject and dat. object of understood πιστεύειν
ὅτι δ᾽ἂν...σκοπῇ: *and whatever…*; ὅ τι is neuter acc. sg. ὅστις, the antecedent is μηδὲν; 3s pres. subj. + ἄν in an indefinite relative clause
3 **ἡγεῖσθαι**: *to believe*; parallel to πιστεύειν and governed by παρακελευομένη; μηδὲν ἀληθές is a double acc. (obj. and predicate)
εἶναι δὲ τὸ μὲν τοιοῦτον...ὃ δὲ: *and that such a thing is…but that which…*; ind. disc. governed by same verbs of persuading
4 **νοητόν...ἀιδές (εἶναι)**: acc. predicate of understood εἶναι; ὃ...ὁρᾷ is the subject

ταύτῃ οὖν τῇ λύσει οὐκ οἰομένη δεῖν ἐναντιοῦσθαι ἡ τοῦ ὡς 5
ἀληθῶς φιλοσόφου ψυχὴ οὕτως ἀπέχεται τῶν ἡδονῶν τε
καὶ ἐπιθυμιῶν καὶ λυπῶν καὶ φόβων καθ' ὅσον δύναται,
λογιζομένη ὅτι, ἐπειδάν τις σφόδρα ἡσθῇ ἢ φοβηθῇ [ἢ
λυπηθῇ] ἢ ἐπιθυμήσῃ, οὐδὲν τοσοῦτον κακὸν ἔπαθεν ἀπ'
αὐτῶν ὧν ἄν τις οἰηθείη, οἷον ἢ νοσήσας ἤ τι ἀναλώσας **c**
διὰ τὰς ἐπιθυμίας, ἀλλ' ὃ πάντων μέγιστόν τε κακῶν καὶ
ἔσχατόν ἐστι, τοῦτο πάσχει καὶ οὐ λογίζεται αὐτό.

τί τοῦτο, ὦ Σώκρατες; ἔφη ὁ Κέβης.

ὅτι ψυχὴ παντὸς ἀνθρώπου ἀναγκάζεται ἅμα τε ἡσθῆναι 5
σφόδρα ἢ λυπηθῆναι ἐπί τῳ καὶ ἡγεῖσθαι περὶ ὃ ἂν μάλιστα
τοῦτο πάσχῃ, τοῦτο ἐναργέστατόν τε εἶναι καὶ ἀληθέστατον,

ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 10
ἀν-αλίσκω: to use up, spend, lavish, 2
ἀπ-έρχομαι: to go away, depart, 14
δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 15
ἐναντιόομαι: to oppose, contradict, 5
ἐν-αργής, -ές: visible, distinct, manifest, 4
ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for, 10
ἐπιθυμία, ἡ: desire, longing, yearning, 10
ἔσχατος, -η, -ον: extreme, last, furthest, 5
ἥδομαι: to delight in, be pleased, 6
ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17
λογίζομαι: to reason, calculate, count, 9
λυπέω: to cause pain, distress, grief, 5
λύσις, -εως, ἡ: releasing, deliverance, 4
μέγιστος, -η, -ον: very big, greatest, most, 6
νοσέω: to be sick, ill, 2
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18
τοσοῦτος, -αύτη, -οῦτο: so great, so many, 3
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18
φοβέω: to terrify, frighten; *mid*. fear, 15
φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic, 10

5 **ταύτῃ...λύσει**: dat. obj. of special verb ἐναντιοῦσθαι
οὐκ...δεῖν: *that it is not…*; impers. δεῖ
ὡς ἀληθῶς: *truly*
6 **τῶν...φόβων**: *from…*; gen. of separation
7 **καθ' ὅσον**: *insofar as*; or 'inasmuch as'
8 **ἡσθῇ...φοβηθῇ...λυπηθῇ...ἐπιθυμήσῃ**: 3s aor. subjunctive (pass. dep. ἥδομαι, pass. dep., pass., and act. respectively) in an indefinite temporal clause; translate all of the verbs in the present
9 **ἔπαθεν**: *one suffers*; gnomic aor. πάσχω expressing a general truth
ἀπ(ὸ) αὐτῶν: *from them*; i.e. emotions
c1 **ὧν ἄν...οἰηθείη**: *of that which one might think*; τούτων ἃ, relative in acc. is drawn into the partitive gen. pl. of a missing antecedent, this clause modifies κακὸν
οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to such'
νοσήσας: aor. pple νοσέω
τι: some (expense); inner acc.
ἀναλώσας: aor. pple ἀναλίσκω
4 **τί τοῦτο (ἐστίν)**: supply a linking verb
5 **ὅτι**: *(namely) that…*; in reply
ἡσθῆναι: aor. pass. deponent inf. ἥδομαι
6 **λυπηθῆναι**: aor. pass. inf. λυπέω
ἐπί τῳ: *for something*; ἐπί + dat. for reason or motive (S 1689 2c)
ἡγεῖσθαι: *believes that this is…*; τοῦτο... εἶναι is ind. disc. governed by ἡγεῖσθαι
περὶ ὃ...πάσχῃ: *regarding whatever this (the soul) especially experiences*; the antecedent is the acc. subject τοῦτο
7 **ἐναργέστατον...ἀληθεστατον**: acc. pred., both superlative

οὐχ οὕτως ἔχον· ταῦτα δὲ μάλιστα τὰ ὁρατά· ἢ οὔ;

πάνυ γε.

d *οὐκοῦν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πάθει μάλιστα καταδεῖται ψυχὴ ὑπὸ σώματος;*

πῶς δή;

ὅτι ἑκάστη ἡδονὴ καὶ λύπη ὥσπερ ἧλον ἔχουσα προσηλοῖ
5 *αὐτὴν πρὸς τὸ σῶμα καὶ προσπερονᾷ καὶ ποιεῖ σωματοειδῆ, δοξάζουσαν ταῦτα ἀληθῆ εἶναι ἅπερ ἂν καὶ τὸ σῶμα φῇ. ἐκ γὰρ τοῦ ὁμοδοξεῖν τῷ σώματι καὶ τοῖς αὐτοῖς χαίρειν ἀναγκάζεται οἶμαι ὁμότροπός τε καὶ ὁμότροφος γίγνεσθαι καὶ οἷα μηδέποτε εἰς Ἅιδου καθαρῶς ἀφικέσθαι, ἀλλὰ ἀεὶ*
10 *τοῦ σώματος ἀναπλέα ἐξιέναι, ὥστε ταχὺ πάλιν πίπτειν εἰς*

Ἅιδης, -ου ὁ: Hades, 15
αἱρέω: to seize, take; *mid*. choose, 4
ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 10
ἀνα-πλέος, -ον: filled up, quite full (gen), 1
δοξάζω: to think, opine, suppose, imagine, 3
ἐξ-έρχομαι: to go out, come out, 5
ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17
ἧλον, τό: nail, 1
κατ-δέω: to bind fast, bind on, 1
λύπη, ἡ: pain, grief, 8
μηδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 8
ὁμο-δοξέω: have the same opinion, agree with (dat) 1
ὁμο-τροπος, -ον: of the same habits or life, 1
ὁμο-τροφος, -ον: of the same rearing, 1
ὁρατός, -ή, -όν: to be seen, visible, 17
πάθος -εος τό: experience incident passion 11
πίπτω: to fall, 3
προσ-ηλός: to nail to, rivet, 1
προσ-περονάω: to pin to, fasten to, 1
σωματο-ειδής, -ές: corporeal, bodily, 5
χαίρω: to rejoice, be glad, enjoy; fare well 12

8 **οὐχ οὕτως ἔχον**: *although…*; pple is concessive in sense, see p. 7 for translation
ταῦτα: *and these are…*; add linking verb
d1 **τῷ πάθει**: *experience*
ὑπὸ: *by…*; + gen. of agent or cause
4 **ὅτι**: *because…*; in reply
5 **αὐτὴν**: *it*; i.e. τὴν ψυχὴν
ποιεῖ (αὐτὴν) σωματοειδῆ: *makes (x) (y)*; governs a double acc. (direct object and predicate), σωματοειδε-α is a 3rd decl. adj. acc. sg.
6 **ἀληθῆ**: ἀληθέα, neut. pl.
εἶναι: inf. εἰμί
ἅπερ ἂν...φῇ: *whatever…*; 3s pres. subj. φημί in an indefinite relative clause, the antecedent is ταῦτα
καὶ: *also*; or 'too'
7 **τοῦ ὁμοδοξεῖν**: *the agreeing with*; articular inf., translate as a gerund
τοῖς αὐτοῖς: *the same things*
(τοῦ) χαίρειν: *the delighting in…*; articular inf. parallel to the first
8 **οἶμαι**: parenthetical, οἴομαι
9 **οἷα...ἀφικέσθαι**: *such as never to arrive…*; οἷος + inf. denoting result; the infinitive are epexegetic (explanatory) infinitives
εἰς Ἅιδου: *to Hades' (house)*
10 **ὥστε...**: *so as…*; + inf., result clause

ἄλλο σῶμα καὶ ὥσπερ σπειρομένη ἐμφύεσθαι, καὶ ἐκ τούτων e
ἄμοιρος εἶναι τῆς τοῦ θείου τε καὶ καθαροῦ καὶ μονοειδοῦς
συνουσίας.

ἀληθέστατα, ἔφη, λέγεις, ὁ Κέβης, ὦ Σώκρατες.

τούτων τοίνυν ἕνεκα, ὦ Κέβης, οἱ δικαίως φιλομαθεῖς 5
κόσμιοί εἰσι καὶ ἀνδρεῖοι, οὐχ ὧν οἱ πολλοὶ ἕνεκά φασιν· ἢ σὺ οἴει;

οὐ δῆτα ἔγωγε. **84**

οὐ γάρ· ἀλλ᾽ οὕτω λογίσαιτ᾽ ἂν ψυχὴ ἀνδρὸς φιλοσόφου, καὶ οὐκ ἂν οἰηθείη τὴν μὲν φιλοσοφίαν χρῆναι αὐτὴν λύειν, λυούσης δὲ ἐκείνης, αὐτὴν παραδιδόναι ταῖς ἡδοναῖς καὶ λύπαις ἑαυτὴν πάλιν αὖ ἐγκαταδεῖν καὶ ἀνήνυτον ἔργον πράτ- 5
τειν Πηνελόπης τινὰ ἐναντίως ἱστὸν μεταχειριζομένης, ἀλλὰ

ἄ-μοιρος, -ον: without share in (+ gen.), 3
ἀν-ήνυτος, -ον: endless, never ending, 1
ἀνδρεῖος, -α, -ον: brave, courageous, manly, 4
δῆτα: certainly, to be sure, of course, 5
δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right(eous), fair, 13
ἐγ-κατα-δέω: to bind fast in, 1
ἐμ-φύω: to grow in or on, implant, 1
ἕνεκα: for (the sake of), because of, (gen.) 13
ἔργον, τό: work, labor, deed, act, 5
ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17
θεῖος, -α, -ον: divine, sent by the gods, 15
ἱστός, ὁ: web (of weaving), loom, shipmast, 1
κόσμιος, -η, -ον: well-ordered, regular, 4
λογίζομαι: to reason, calculate, count, 9
λύπη, ἡ: pain, grief, 8
λύω: to loosen, dissolve, break up, 7
μετα-χειρίζω: to handle, take in hand, 1
μονο-ειδής, -ές: one in kind, simple, 3
παρα-δίδωμι: give or hand over, transmit, 2
Πηνελόπης, ἡ: Penelope (Odysseus' wife), 1
πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12
σπείρω: to plant, sow, 1
συν-ουσία, ἡ: communion, association, 4
τοί-νυν: well then; therefore, accordingly, 21
φιλο-μαθής, -ές: pursuer of learning, 5
φιλο-σοφία, ἡ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18

e1 **σπειρομένη**: pass. pple
4 **ἀληθέστατα**: superlative adv. or dir. obj.
5 **δίκαίως**: *rightly*
6 **εἰσι**: 3p pres. εἰμί
ὧν...ἕνεκα: *for the sake of the (things) which*; τούτων ἃ
7 **οἴει**: 2s pres. mid. οἴομαι
84a2 **οὐ γάρ· ἀλλ'**: *no indeed; rather*...; or 'no indeed, but…' γαρ expresses assent (S 2806)
λογίσαιτ(ο) ἂν: *would reason, would calculate*; potential opt.
3 **ἂν οἰηθείη**: *would*...; potential opt., aor. pass. deponent οἴομαι
χρῆναι: *that*…; inf. χρή
αὐτὴν: i.e. ψυχὴν
4 **λυούσης...ἐκείνης**: *but while*...; gen. abs.
αὐτὴν...ἑαυτὴν: *that it…itself*; both acc. subject and reflexive obj. refer to ἡ ψυχή
5 **πάλιν...ἐγκαταδεῖν**: *to bind (itself) back again*; i.e. to the body; inf. of result
6 **Πηνελόπης...μεταχειριζομένης**: *of a Penelope*...; i.e. just as Penelope, wife of Odysseus, weaves and unravels a web on a loom to delay choosing a suitor; a subjective gen. modifying ἔργον

γαλήνην τούτων παρασκευάζουσα, ἑπομένη τῷ λογισμῷ καὶ
ἀεὶ ἐν τούτῳ οὖσα, τὸ ἀληθὲς καὶ τὸ θεῖον καὶ τὸ ἀδόξαστον
b *θεωμένη καὶ ὑπ᾽ ἐκείνου τρεφομένη, ζῆν τε οἴεται οὕτω*
δεῖν ἕως ἂν ζῇ, καὶ ἐπειδὰν τελευτήσῃ, εἰς τὸ συγγενὲς
καὶ εἰς τὸ τοιοῦτον ἀφικομένη ἀπηλλάχθαι τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων
κακῶν. ἐκ δὴ τῆς τοιαύτης τροφῆς οὐδὲν δεινὸν μὴ φοβηθῇ,
5 *[ταῦτα δ᾽ ἐπιτηδεύσασα,] ὦ Σιμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, ὅπως μὴ*
διασπασθεῖσα ἐν τῇ ἀπαλλαγῇ τοῦ σώματος ὑπὸ τῶν ἀνέ-
μων διαφυσηθεῖσα καὶ διαπτομένη οἴχηται καὶ οὐδὲν ἔτι
οὐδαμοῦ ᾖ.
c *σιγὴ οὖν ἐγένετο ταῦτα εἰπόντος τοῦ Σωκράτους ἐπὶ*
πολὺν χρόνον, καὶ αὐτός τε πρὸς τῷ εἰρημένῳ λόγῳ ἦν ὁ

ἀ-δόξαστος, -ον: not a matter of opinion, 1
ἄνεμος, -ου, ὁ: wind, 4
ἀνθρώπινος, -η, -ον: belonging to human, human, 7
ἀπ-αλλαγή, ἡ: release, departure; escape, 7
ἀπ-αλλάττω: release; set free; escape, 15
γαλήνη, ἡ: calm, stillness, 1
δεινός, -ή, -όν: terrible; wondrous, clever, 6
δια-πέταμαι: to fly through, 2
δια-σπάω: to tear apart, pull asunder, 1
δια-φυσάω: to blow in different directions, 3
ἐπιτήδευω: to pursue, practice, 4
ἕπομαι: to follow, accompany, escort, 9
ἕως: until, as long as, 15
θεάομαι: to see, watch, look at; consider, 3
θεῖος, -α, -ον: divine, sent by the gods, 15
λογισμός, ὁ: a counting, calculation; account, reasoning, 3
οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 14
ὅπως: how, in what way; in order that, that 10
οὐδαμοῦ: nowhere, 5
παρα-σκευάζω: to get ready, prepare, 8
σιγή, ἡ: silence, 1
συγ-γενής, -ές: related; *subst*. relative, 6
τρέφω: to foster, nourish, rear, 1
τροφή, ἡ: food; rearing, upbringing, 4
φοβέω: to terrify, frighten; *mid*. fear, 15

4 **οὖσα**: fem. nom. sg. pres. pple εἰμί
b1 **τρεφομένη**: pass. pple + gen. agent/cause
οἴεται οὕτω: *and in this way it thinks…*; governs inf. of δεῖ and ζάω
2 **ἂν ζῇ**: 3s pres. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause, ζάω
τὸ συγγενὲς: *what is related*
3 **ἀπηλλάχθαι**: aor. pass. inf. with δεῖν in b2
τῶν...κακῶν: *from…*; gen. of separation
4 **οὐδὲν δεινὸν μὴ φοβηθῇ**: *there (is) no risk that it fear…*; 'there (is) nothing terrible that…' μὴ + subj. (aor. pass. dep. φοβέω) is a fearing clause
5 **ὅπως μὴ**: *that…*; 'lest,' another fearing clause: ὅπως μὴ + subj. may be used in place of of μὴ to suggest something that will happen (S 2230), see also 77b4
6 **διασπασθεῖσα**: nom. sg. aor. pass. pple
τοῦ σώματος: *from…*; gen. of separation
ὑπὸ: *because of…, by…*; gen. of cause
7 **διαφυσηθεῖσα**: nom. sg. aor. pass. pple
διαπτομένη: aor. mid. pple, διαπέταμαι
ᾖ: *exists*; 3s pres. subj. εἰμί, fearing clause
c1 **εἰπόντος...Σωκράτους**: gen. abs.
2 **ἐπὶ...χρόνον**: *over…*; acc. of duration
αὐτὸς: *himself*; modifies ὁ Σωκράτης
πρὸς...λόγῳ ἦν: *was (intent) in the account just spoken* πρός + dat. can have a meaning similar to ἐν + dat. or denote occupation (S 1695.2); pf. pass. λέγω (ἐρ-)

Σωκράτης, ὡς ἰδεῖν ἐφαίνετο, καὶ ἡμῶν οἱ πλεῖστοι· Κέβης δὲ καὶ Σιμμίας σμικρὸν πρὸς ἀλλήλω διελεγέσθην. καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ἰδὼν αὐτὼ ἤρετο, τί; ἔφη, ὑμῖν τὰ λεχθέντα μῶν μὴ δοκεῖ ἐνδεῶς λέγεσθαι; πολλὰς γὰρ δὴ ἔτι ἔχει ὑποψίας καὶ ἀντιλαβάς, εἴ γε δή τις αὐτὰ μέλλει ἱκανῶς διεξιέναι. εἰ μὲν οὖν τι ἄλλο σκοπεῖσθον, οὐδὲν λέγω· εἰ δέ τι περὶ τούτων ἀπορεῖτον, μηδὲν ἀποκνήσητε καὶ αὐτοὶ εἰπεῖν καὶ διελθεῖν, εἴ πῃ ὑμῖν φαίνεται βέλτιον ἂν λεχθῆναι, καὶ αὖ καὶ **d** ἐμὲ συμπαραλαβεῖν, εἴ τι μᾶλλον οἴεσθε μετ᾽ ἐμοῦ εὐπορήσειν.

καὶ ὁ Σιμμίας ἔφη· καὶ μήν, ὦ Σώκρατες, τἀληθῆ σοι ἐρῶ. πάλαι γὰρ ἡμῶν ἑκάτερος ἀπορῶν τὸν ἕτερον προωθεῖ

ἀντί-λαβή, ἡ: point of attack; handle, grip, 1
ἀπ-οκνέω: to shrink from, 1
ἀ-πορέω: be at a loss, puzzled, bewildered, 4
βελτίων, -ον (-ονος): better, 7
δια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 13
δι-εξ-έρχομαι: to pass through, go through 5
δι-έρχομαι: to go or pass through, 5
ἑκάτερος, -α, -ον: each of two, either, 5
ἐν-δεῶς: defectively, insufficiently, 3
ἔρομαι: to ask, enquire, question, 12
εὐ-πορέω: to prosper, thrive, be well off, 1
μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
μῶν (μὴ οὖν): surely not? (expects a no reply)
πάλαι: for some time, long ago, of old, 13
πῃ: in some way, somehow, 4
πλεῖστος, -η, -ον: most, greatest, 3
προ-ωθέω: to push forward, 1
σμικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little, 19
συμπαραλαμβάνω: take along (as a helper) 2
ὑπ-οψία, ἡ: suspicion, apprehension, 1

3 **ὡς ἰδεῖν ἐφαίνετο**: *as it seemed to look at*; epexegetic (explanatory) aor. inf. ὁράω (εἶδον), impersonal use of φαίνομαι
4 **σμικρὸν**: *lowly*; or 'barely' adverbial acc., the two are talking so quietly that Socrates cannot make out the words
ἀλλήλω: dual acc.
διελεγέσθην: dual 3rd pers. aor. pass. dep.
5 **ἰδὼν**: aor. pple ὁράω (εἶδον)
ἤρετο: aor. ἔρομαι
τὰ λεχθέντα: *things said*; aor. pass. λέγω
μῶν μὴ: *surely do not seem…*; expecting a no reply; for the repetition of μή: S 2651c
6 **ἔχει**: *(the account) has…*; add subject
7 **εἴ γε δή**: *if, at any rate indeed*; γε δή reinforce one another and are emphatic and restrictive (GP 245)
εἰ μὲν οὖν...εἰ δὲ: *if then….but if…*
8 **σκοπεῖσθον**: *you two are considering*; dual 2nd pers. pres. mid. σκοπέω
οὐδὲν: *nothing (important)*; i.e. nonsense
τι: *at all*; inner acc.
9 **ἀπορεῖτον**: *you two…*; dual 2nd pers. pres. act. ἀπορέω
μηδὲν ἀποκνήσητε: *do not at all….*; + inf., prohibitive subj. (μη + aor. subj.) μηδὲν is an inner acc.
d1 **ἂν λεχθῆναι**: *could have been said*; ἄν + aor. pass. inf. indicates past (unrealized) potential (ἄν + aor.) in direct speech or potential opt. (e.g. 'could be said')
καὶ αὖ καὶ: *and moreover also*
2 **τι**: *at all*; inner acc.
4 **καὶ μὴν**: *well certainly*; GP 356
ἐρῶ: ἐρέω, fut. λέγω
5 **πάλαι...προωθεῖ**: *has been pushing the other*; pf.. progressive in sense

καὶ κελεύει ἐρέσθαι διὰ τὸ ἐπιθυμεῖν μὲν ἀκοῦσαι, ὀκνεῖν δὲ ὄχλον παρέχειν, μή σοι ἀηδὲς ᾖ διὰ τὴν παροῦσαν συμφοράν.

καὶ ὃς ἀκούσας ἐγέλασέν τε ἠρέμα καί φησιν· Βαβαί, ὦ Σιμμία· ἦ που χαλεπῶς ἂν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀνθρώπους πεί-
e σαιμι ὡς οὐ συμφορὰν ἡγοῦμαι τὴν παροῦσαν τύχην, ὅτε γε μηδ' ὑμᾶς δύναμαι πείθειν, ἀλλὰ φοβεῖσθε μὴ δυσκολώ-τερόν τι νῦν διάκειμαι ἢ ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν βίῳ· καί, ὡς ἔοικε, τῶν κύκνων δοκῶ φαυλότερος ὑμῖν εἶναι τὴν μαντικήν, οἳ
5 ἐπειδὰν αἴσθωνται ὅτι δεῖ αὐτοὺς ἀποθανεῖν, ᾄδοντες καὶ ἐν
85 τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ, τότε δὴ πλεῖστα καὶ κάλλιστα ᾄδουσι, γεγηθότες ὅτι μέλλουσι παρὰ τὸν θεὸν ἀπιέναι οὗπέρ εἰσι θεράποντες. οἱ δ' ἄνθρωποι διὰ τὸ αὑτῶν δέος τοῦ θανάτου

ᾄδω (ἀείδω): to sing, 7
ἀ-ηδής, -ές: unpleasant, disagreeable, 3
αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 11
ἀπ-έρχομαι: to go away, depart, 14
Βαβαί: ah-ha, bless me (in shock), 1
γελάω: to laugh, 6
γηθέω: to rejoice, 1
δέος, τό: fear, alarm, 1
διά-κειμαι: to be disposed, be affected, 3
δυσ-σκολός, -ή, -όν: hard to please, 1
ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for, 10
ἔρομαι: to ask, enquire, question, 12
ἦ: in truth, truly (begins open question), 5
ἠρέμα: gently, softly, quietly, 3
θεράπων, -οντος ὁ: attendant, assistant, 1
κάλλιστα: most nobly, most beautifully, 2
κελεύω: to bid, order, command, exhort, 8
κύκνος, ὁ: a swan, 4
μαντικός, -ή, -όν: prophetic, oracular, 3
μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
ὀκνέω: to shirk, hesitate, hang back, 1
ὄχλος, ὁ: trouble; crowd, throng, mob, 1
παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16
πλεῖστος, -η, -ον: most, greatest, 3
πρόσθεν: before, 10
συμ-φορά, ἡ: misfortune, mishap, 3
τύχη, ἡ: chance, luck, fortune, 5
φαῦλος –η -ον: slight, trifling, insignificant, 9
φοβέω: to terrify, frighten; *mid.* fear, 15
χαλεπός, -ά, -όν: difficult, hard, harmful, 5

6 **ἐρέσθαι**: inf. ἔρομαι
ἀκοῦσαι: *to hear (your response)*; aor. inf. object of articular inf. τὸ ἐπιθυμεῖν
(διὰ τὸ) ὀκνεῖν δὲ: *but (ov account of) skrinking from*; + inf., an articular inf.; 2nd object of διὰ and parallel to ἐπιθυμεῖν
7 **μὴ...ᾖ**: *that…*; fearing clause, μή + subj. εἰμί
παροῦσαν: *present*; pple πάρειμι
8 **ὃς**: *this one*; demonstrative
9 **χαλεπῶς**: *with difficulty*
ἂν...πείσαιμι: *I would…*; potential opt.
e1 **ὡς**: *that…*
ὅτε γε: *when at any rate…*
2 **φοβεῖσθε**: *you are afraid*; 2s mid.
3 **μὴ...διάκειμαι**: *that…*; 'lest,' fearing clause, μή governs a subjunctive for fear regarding the future and an indicative, as here, for a fear regarding the present or past (S 2233)
δυσκολώτερον: comparative adv.
3 **τι**: *somewhat, at all*; acc. of extent by degree with the comparative
4 **τῶν κύκνων**: *than…*; gen. of comparison
τὴν μαντικήν (τέχνην): *in prophetic art*; acc. of respect
85a1 **πλεῖστα καὶ κάλλιστα**: superlative advs.
2 **γεγηθότες**: *being joyous because*; pf. pple
οὗπέρ...: *whose servants they are*
3 **αὑτῶν**: *their own*; ἑαυτῶν

καὶ τῶν κύκνων καταψεύδονται, καί φασιν αὐτοὺς θρηνοῦντας
τὸν θάνατον ὑπὸ λύπης ἐξᾴδειν, καὶ οὐ λογίζονται ὅτι οὐδὲν 5
ὄρνεον ᾄδει ὅταν πεινῇ ἢ ῥιγῷ ἤ τινα ἄλλην λύπην λυπῆται,
οὐδὲ αὐτὴ ἥ τε ἀηδὼν καὶ χελιδὼν καὶ ὁ ἔποψ, ἃ δή φασι
διὰ λύπην θρηνοῦντα ᾄδειν. ἀλλ᾽ οὔτε ταῦτά μοι φαίνεται
λυπούμενα ᾄδειν οὔτε οἱ κύκνοι, ἀλλ᾽ ἅτε οἶμαι τοῦ Ἀπόλ- **b**
λωνος ὄντες, μαντικοί τέ εἰσι καὶ προειδότες τὰ ἐν Ἅιδου
ἀγαθὰ ᾄδουσι καὶ τέρπονται ἐκείνην τὴν ἡμέραν διαφερόντως
ἢ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν χρόνῳ. ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἡγοῦμαι
ὁμόδουλός τε εἶναι τῶν κύκνων καὶ ἱερὸς τοῦ αὐτοῦ θεοῦ, 5
καὶ οὐ χεῖρον ἐκείνων τὴν μαντικὴν ἔχειν παρὰ τοῦ δεσπότου,
οὐδὲ δυσθυμότερον αὐτῶν τοῦ βίου ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. ἀλλὰ

ἀηδών, -ονος, ἡ: a nightingale, 1
ᾄδω (ἀείδω): to sing, 7
Ἅιδης, -ου ὁ: Hades, 15
ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15
Ἀπόλλω, Ἀπόλλωνος, ὁ: Apollo, 4
ἅτε: inasmuch as, since, seeing that (+ pple) 6
δεσπότης, ὁ: master, lord, 6
δια-φερόντως: especially; differently, 4
δύσ-θυμος, -ον: despondent, melancholy, 1
ἔμ-προσθεν: before, former; earlier, 7
ἐξ-ᾄδω: to sing out (one's last song), 1
ἔποψ, -οπος, ὁ: hoopoe (bird), 1
ἡμέρα, ἡ: day, 7
θρηνέω: wail, bewail, sing a dirge, 2
ἱερός, -ή, -όν: holy, divine; temple 2
καταψεύδομαι: to speak falsely of (gen) 1
κύκνος, ὁ: a swan, 4
λογίζομαι: to reason, calculate, count, 9
λυπέω: to cause pain, distress, grief, 5
λύπη, ἡ: pain, grief, 8
μαντικός, -ή, -όν: prophetic, oracular, 3
ὁμό-δουλος, ὁ: fellow slave, 1
ὄρνεον, τό (ὄρνις): bird, 1
πεινάω: to be hungry, crave, 1
προ-οίδα: to know beforehand, 3
ῥιγόω: to be cold, shiver, 1
τέρπομαι: to satisfy, delight, 1
χείρων, -ον, (-οντος): worse, inferior, 5
χελιδών, -όνος, ἡ: a swallow (bird), 1

4 **φασιν**: *they claim*; i.e. the people claim
αὐτοὺς: *that they…*; i.e. geese, acc. subject
5 **ὑπὸ**: *because of…*; gen. of cause
6 **πεινῇ...ῥιγῷ...λυπῆται**: 3s pres. subj. α-contract, ο-contract, and ε-contract verbs, indefinite temporal clause
7 **οὐδὲ**: *not even*
ἃ δή: *which very (birds)…*; acc. subj., the the neut. pl. refers to neut. τό ὄρνεον (l. 4)
φασι: i.e. the people say
8 **ταῦτα**: *these (birds)*
b1 **ἅτε...ὄντες**: *inasmuch as…*; 'since,' ἅτε + pple indicates cause from the speaker's point of view, pple of εἰμί
οἶμαι: parenthetical, οἴομαι
τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος: *Apollo's (birds)*; gen. predicate of the pple εἰμί
εἰσι: 3p pres. εἰμί
2 **προειδότες**: pple προ-οίδα
ἐν Ἅιδου: *in Hades' (house)*
3 **ἐκείνην...ἡμέραν**: *during…*; acc. duration
διαφερόντως ἢ: *differently from*; i.e. more than
4 **καὶ**: *also*
6 **οὐ χεῖρον ἐκείνων**: *no worse than these*; comparative adv. and gen. of comparison
παρὰ: *from…*; gen. of source
7 **δυσθυμότερον αὐτῶν**: see line 6
τοῦ βίου: *from…*; gen. of separation

τούτου γ᾽ ἕνεκα λέγειν τε χρὴ καὶ ἐρωτᾶν ὅτι ἂν βούλησθε, ἕως ἂν Ἀθηναίων ἐῶσιν ἄνδρες ἔνδεκα.

10 *καλῶς, ἔφη, λέγεις, ὁ Σιμμίας· καὶ ἐγώ τέ σοι ἐρῶ ὃ*
c *ἀπορῶ, καὶ αὖ ὅδε, ᾗ οὐκ ἀποδέχεται τὰ εἰρημένα. ἐμοὶ γὰρ δοκεῖ, ὦ Σώκρατες, περὶ τῶν τοιούτων ἴσως ὥσπερ καὶ σοὶ τὸ μὲν σαφὲς εἰδέναι ἐν τῷ νῦν βίῳ ἢ ἀδύνατον εἶναι ἢ παγχάλεπόν τι, τὸ μέντοι αὖ τὰ λεγόμενα περὶ αὐτῶν μὴ*
5 *οὐχὶ παντὶ τρόπῳ ἐλέγχειν καὶ μὴ προαφίστασθαι πρὶν ἂν πανταχῇ σκοπῶν ἀπείπῃ τις, πάνυ μαλθακοῦ εἶναι ἀνδρός· δεῖν γὰρ περὶ αὐτὰ ἕν γέ τι τούτων διαπράξασθαι, ἢ μαθεῖν ὅπῃ ἔχει ἢ εὑρεῖν ἤ, εἰ ταῦτα ἀδύνατον, τὸν γοῦν βέλ-τιστον τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων λόγων λαβόντα καὶ δυσεξελεγκτό-*

ἀ-δύνατος, -ον: unable, incapable, impossible, 6
Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον: Athenian, of Athens, 6
ἀνθρώπινος, -η, -ον: belonging to human, human, 7
ἀπ-εῖπον: to forbid, deny, give up, 1
ἀπο-δέχομαι: to accept, receive, 9
ἀ-πορέω: be at a loss, puzzled, bewildered, 4
βέλτιστος, -η, -ον: best, 14
γοῦν: γε οὖν, at least, at any rate, any way, 4
δια-πράττω: to accomplish, effect, 1
δυσ-εξ-έλεγκτος, -ον: difficult to refute, 1
ἐάω: to permit, allow, let be, suffer, 9
ἐλέγχω: cross-examine, refute; disgrace, 1
ἕν-δεκα: eleven, 3
ἕνεκα: for the sake of, because of, for (gen.) 13
ἐρωτάω: to ask, inquire, question, 10
εὑρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 8
ἕως: until, as long as, 15
καλῶς: well; beautifully, 11
μαλθακός, -ή, -όν: soft, gentle; faint-hearted, 1
μανθάνω: to learn, understand, 12
ὅπῃ: where; in what way, how, 11
παγ-χάλεπος, -η, -ον: very difficult, 1
παντα-χῇ: everywhere, in every way, 3
προ-αφίσταμαι: to cease beforehand, 1
σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17

8 **ἐρωτᾶν**: inf. α-contract verb
ὅτι ἂν: *whatever…*; ὅ τι, indefinite relative
9 **ἕως...ἐῶσιν**: 3p pres. ἐάω
10 **καλῶς**: *well*
ἐγώ τε...καὶ αὖ ὅδε: *both I will speak…and in turn this one here (will speak)*; i.e. Cebes
c1 **ᾗ οὐκ ἀποδέχεται**: *in what way he…* relative clause, dat. of manner
τὰ εἰρημένα: pf. pass. pple, λέγω (ἐρ)
2 **καὶ**: *also*; or 'too,' adverbial
3 **τὸ...εἰδέναι**: *that to know something reliable*; inf. οἶδα is subject of εἶναι
4 **τὸ μέντοι αὖ...μὴ οὐχὶ ἐλέγχειν**: *however, not to question in turn…*; μὴ οὐχὶ + inf. may follow a negatived verb; this articular inf. is the subject of εἶναι from line 6
5 **παντὶ τρόπῳ**: *in…*; dat. of manner
ἀπείπῃ: *renounces from examining*; 3s aor. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause
6 **πάνυ μαλθακοῦ εἶναι ἀνδρός**: *is (the sign) of quite a weak man*; gen. predicate, the two articular infinitives τὸ ἐλέγχειν and τὸ προαφίστασθαι are subject
7 **δεῖν γὰρ**: *for that it is necessary*
ἕν γέ τι: *some one thing at least*; γε is restrictive, obj. of aor. inf. διαπράξασθαι
ἢ...ἢ...ἤ: *either…or…or*
8 **ὅπῃ ἔχει**: *in what way he is able*
εἰ ταῦτα (διαπράξασθαι): *if (to do) these is*
9 **τῶν...λόγων**: i.e. of things said by men

τατον, ἐπὶ τούτου ὀχούμενον ὥσπερ ἐπὶ σχεδίας κινδυνεύοντα **d**
διαπλεῦσαι τὸν βίον, εἰ μή τις δύναιτο ἀσφαλέστερον καὶ
ἀκινδυνότερον ἐπὶ βεβαιοτέρου ὀχήματος, ἢ λόγου θείου
τινός, διαπορευθῆναι. καὶ δὴ καὶ νῦν ἔγωγε οὐκ ἐπαισχυν-
θήσομαι ἐρέσθαι, ἐπειδὴ καὶ σὺ ταῦτα λέγεις, οὐδ' ἐμαυ- 5
τὸν αἰτιάσομαι ἐν ὑστέρῳ χρόνῳ ὅτι νῦν οὐκ εἶπον ἅ μοι
δοκεῖ. ἐμοὶ γάρ, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἐπειδὴ καὶ πρὸς ἐμαυτὸν
καὶ πρὸς τόνδε σκοπῶ τὰ εἰρημένα, οὐ πάνυ φαίνεται ἱκανῶς
εἰρῆσθαι. 10

καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης, ἴσως γάρ, ἔφη, ὦ ἑταῖρε, ἀληθῆ σοι **e**
φαίνεται· ἀλλὰ λέγε ὅπῃ δὴ οὐχ ἱκανῶς.

ταύτῃ ἔμοιγε, ἢ δ' ὅς, ᾗ δὴ καὶ περὶ ἁρμονίας ἄν τις καὶ

αἰτιάομαι: accuse, charge; blame, 4
ἀ-σφαλής, -ές: safe, secure, not liable to fall 6
βέβαιος, -α, -ον: steadfast, steady, firm, 3
δια-πλέω: to sail through, 1
δια-πορεύω: to travel through, 1
δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 15
ἐπ-αισχύνομαι: to be ashamed to, 1
ἔρομαι: to ask, enquire, question, 12
ἑταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate, 11
θεῖος, -α, -ον: divine, sent by the gods, 15
κινδυνεύω: to risk, venture; it is likely, 7
κίνδυνος, ὁ: risk, danger, venture, 2
ὅπῃ: where; in what way, how, 11
ὀχέω: to ride, carry, convey, 1
ὀχῆμα, -ατος, τό: raft, vehicle, carriage, 2
σχέδια, ἡ: raft, make-shift boat, 1
ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; *adv*. later 17

d1 **ἐπὶ τούτου ὀχούμενον**: *conveyed upon it*
ἐπὶ: *upon*
2 **διαπλεῦσαι**: aor. inf. διαπλέω
εἰ μή...δύναιτο: *unless one should…*; pres. opt., equivalent to an apodosis in a fut. less vivid condition
3 **ἀσφαλέστερον καὶ ἀκινδυνότερον**: comparative adverbs
ἢ λόγου θείου τινός: *or some divine proclamation*; in apposition to ὀχήματος
4 **διαπορευθῆναι**: aor. pass. dep. inf.
καὶ δὴ καὶ νῦν: *and in particular now*; 'and especially now', lit. 'and indeed also now'
5 **καὶ**: *also, too*
6 **εἶπον**: 1s aor. λέγω
7 **πρὸς...πρὸς...σκοπῶ**: *I examine with…*
9 **τὰ εἰρημένα**: pf. pass. pple λέγω (ἐρ)
οὐ πάνυ: *not quite*
10 **εἰρῆσθαι**: pf. pass. inf. λέγω (ἐρ)
e2 **ἀλλὰ**: *come…*; as often preceding an imperative
ὅπῃ δὴ: *in what way precisely…*
3 **οὐχ ἱκανῶς (φαίνεται εἰρῆσθαι)**: supply verbs from d9-10
3 **ταύτῃ...ᾗ δὴ**: *in this way…in which very way*; dat. of manner, demonstrative and relative pronouns
ἔμοιγε: supply ἱκανῶς φαίνεται εἰρῆσθαι
καὶ...καὶ: *both…and…*

λύρας τε καὶ χορδῶν τὸν αὐτὸν τοῦτον λόγον εἴποι, ὡς ἡ μὲν ἁρμονία ἀόρατον καὶ ἀσώματον καὶ πάγκαλόν τι καὶ
86 θεῖόν ἐστιν ἐν τῇ ἡρμοσμένῃ λύρᾳ, αὐτὴ δ' ἡ λύρα καὶ αἱ χορδαὶ σώματά τε καὶ σωματοειδῆ καὶ σύνθετα καὶ γεώδη ἐστὶ καὶ τοῦ θνητοῦ συγγενῆ. ἐπειδὰν οὖν ἢ κατάξῃ τις τὴν λύραν ἢ διατέμῃ καὶ διαρρήξῃ τὰς χορδάς, εἴ τις διισχυρίζοιτο τῷ αὐτῷ λόγῳ ὥσπερ σύ, ὡς ἀνάγκη ἔτι εἶναι τὴν ἁρμονίαν ἐκείνην καὶ μὴ ἀπολωλέναι—οὐδεμία γὰρ μηχανὴ ἂν εἴη τὴν μὲν λύραν ἔτι εἶναι διερρωγυιῶν τῶν χορδῶν καὶ τὰς χορδὰς θνητοειδεῖς οὔσας, τὴν δὲ ἁρμονίαν

ἀ-όρατος, -ον: unseen, invisible, 12
ἁρμόζω: harmonize, fit together, join, adapt 7
ἀ-σώματος, -ον: disembodied, incorporeal, 1
γεώδης, -ες: earth-like, earthy, 2
δια-ρρήγνυμι: break through, 2
δια-τέμνω: to cut through, cut apart, 1
δι-ισχυρίζομαι: affirm confidently; rely on, 5
θεῖος, -α, -ον: divine, sent by the gods, 15
θνητο-ειδής, -ές: of mortal nature or kind, 1
θνητός, -ή, -όν: mortal, liable to death, 7
κατ-άγνυμι: to shatter, break in pieces, 1
λύρα, ἡ: lyre, 11
μηχανή, ἡ: means, instrument, contrivance, 2
παγ-καλός, -η, -ον: very beautiful or noble, 1
συγ-γενής, -ές: related; *subst*. relative, 6
σύν-θετος, -ον: put together, composite, 4
σωματο-ειδής, -ές: corporeal, bodily, 5
χορδή, ἡ: string, gut-string, 7

4 **ἂν τις...εἴποι**: *one might say*; potential opt.
ὡς: *(namely) that...*; in apposition to λόγον
86a1 **ἡρμοσμένῃ**: *tuned*; pf. pass. ἁρμόζω
2 **σωματοειδῆ...γεώδη...συγγενῆ**: neuter pl.: σωματοειδέ-α, γεώδε-α, συγγενέ-α
3 **κατάξῃ, διατέμῃ, διαρρήξῃ**: 3s subj. in an indefinite temporal clause; aor. pres. and aor. subj. respectively
5 **τῷ...λόγῳ**: *with..*; dat. of means
ὡς: *that*...; governed by διισχυρίζοιτο
ἀνάγκη: *(it is) necessary*
6 **ἀπολωλέναι**: pf. act. inf. ἀπόλλυμι
οὐδεμία...ἀπολομένην: a very large parenthetical statement (lines a6-b2)
οὐδεμία...ἂν εἴη: *there would be no way that*...; potential opt. εἰμί
7 **εἶναι**: *exist*
διερρωγυιῶν: pf. pple διαρρήγνυμι
8 **οὔσας**: fem. acc. pl. pple εἰμί

ἀπολωλέναι τὴν τοῦ θείου τε καὶ ἀθανάτου ὁμοφυῆ τε καὶ b
συγγενῆ, προτέραν τοῦ θνητοῦ ἀπολομένην—ἀλλὰ φαίη
ἀνάγκη ἔτι που εἶναι αὐτὴν τὴν ἁρμονίαν, καὶ πρότερον τὰ
ξύλα καὶ τὰς χορδὰς κατασαπήσεσθαι πρίν τι ἐκείνην
παθεῖν—καὶ γὰρ οὖν, ὦ Σώκρατες, οἶμαι ἔγωγε καὶ αὐτόν 5
σε τοῦτο ἐντεθυμῆσθαι, ὅτι τοιοῦτόν τι μάλιστα ὑπολαμ-
βάνομεν τὴν ψυχὴν εἶναι, ὥσπερ ἐντεταμένου τοῦ σώματος
ἡμῶν καὶ συνεχομένου ὑπὸ θερμοῦ καὶ ψυχροῦ καὶ ξηροῦ
καὶ ὑγροῦ καὶ τοιούτων τινῶν, κρᾶσιν εἶναι καὶ ἁρμονίαν

ἐν-θυμέομαι: to take to heart, ponder, 2
ἐν-τείνω: to stretch, strain tight, 3
θεῖος, -α, -ον: divine, sent by the gods, 15
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm; subst. heat, 11
θνητός, -ή, -όν: mortal, liable to death, 7
κατα-σήπω: to make rotten, let rot, 2
κρᾶσις, -εως, ἡ: mixing, blending, 4
ξηρός, -ά, -όν: dry, 1
ξύλον, τό: wood, firewood, 6
ὁμο-φυής, -ές: of the same growth or nature, 1
συγ-γενής, -ές: related to, akin to (gen), 6
συν-έχω: to hold together, 4
ὑγρός, -ά, -όν: moist, wet, 4
ὑπο-λαμβάνω: to suppose; take up, reply, 8
χορδή, ἡ: string, gut-string, 7
ψυχρός, -ά, -όν: cold, chill, frigid, 10

b1 **ἀπολωλέναι**: pf. act. inf. ἀπόλλυμι
τὴν: τὴν ἁρμονίαν
ὁμοφυῆ, συγγενῆ: acc. sg. ὁμοφυέ-α, συγγενέ-α modifying ἁρμονίαν
2 **πρότεραν τοῦ θνητοῦ ἀπολομένην**: *perishing earlier than (the harmony akin) to the mortal human*; supply missing words from the context above
ἀλλὰ φαίη: *but one would claim*; resuming the condition in 86a4-5; 1s opt. equivalent to an apodosis in a fut. less vivid
3 **ἀνάγκη**: *that (it is) necessary*
πρότερον: *previously*; adverbial acc.
4 **κατασαπήσεσθαι**: fut. mid., the preceding accusatives are the subject
ἐκείνην: *that one…*; i.e. τὴν ἁρμονίαν
5 **πᾶθειν**: inf. πάσχω
καὶ γὰρ οὖν: *and in fact*
καὶ (σε)αὐτόν σε: *that you yourself also*
6 **ἐντεθυμῆσθαι**: pf. inf. ἐν-θυμέομαι
τοιοῦτόν τι: *that…some such thing*; acc. predicate of εἶναι
7 **ἐντεταμένου...σώματος καὶ συνεχομένου**: gen. abs., pf. pass. pple. ἐντείνω and pres. pass. pple συνέχω
8 **ὑπὸ...**: *because of…*; gen. of cause
9 **κρᾶσιν εἶναι**: *(and) that…*; τὴν ψυχὴν is acc. subject

c *αὐτῶν τούτων τὴν ψυχὴν ἡμῶν, ἐπειδὰν ταῦτα καλῶς καὶ μετρίως κραθῇ πρὸς ἄλληλα—εἰ οὖν τυγχάνει ἡ ψυχὴ οὖσα ἁρμονία τις, δῆλον ὅτι, ὅταν χαλασθῇ τὸ σῶμα ἡμῶν ἀμέτρως ἢ ἐπιταθῇ ὑπὸ νόσων καὶ ἄλλων κακῶν, τὴν μὲν*
5 *ψυχὴν ἀνάγκη εὐθὺς ὑπάρχει ἀπολωλέναι, καίπερ οὖσαν θειοτάτην, ὥσπερ καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι ἁρμονίαι αἵ τ᾽ ἐν τοῖς φθόγγοις καὶ ἐν τοῖς τῶν δημιουργῶν ἔργοις πᾶσι, τὰ δὲ λείψανα τοῦ σώματος ἑκάστου πολὺν χρόνον παραμένειν,*
d *ἕως ἂν ἢ κατακαυθῇ ἢ κατασαπῇ—ὅρα οὖν πρὸς τοῦτον τὸν λόγον τί φήσομεν, ἐάν τις ἀξιοῖ κρᾶσιν οὖσαν τὴν ψυχὴν τῶν ἐν τῷ σώματι ἐν τῷ καλουμένῳ θανάτῳ πρώτην ἀπόλ-λυσθαι.*

ἀ-μέτρως: immoderately, without measure, 1
ἀξιόω: to think worthy, deem right, 3
δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 14
δημιουργός, ὁ: skilled workman, craftsman 1
ἐπι-τείνω: to overstretch, stretch over, 3
ἔργον, τό: work, labor, deed, act, 5
εὐθύς: right away, straight, directly, at once, 9
ἕως: until, as long as, 15
θεῖος, -α, -ον: divine, sent by the gods, 15
καίπερ: although, albeit, 1
καλῶς: well; beautifully, 11
κατα-καίω: to burn down, burn completely, 1
κατα-σήπω: to make rotten, let rot, 2
κεράννυμι: to mix, mingle, 1
κρᾶσις, -εως, ἡ: mixing, blending, 4
λείψανον, τό: remains, remnant, 1
μέτριος, -α, -ον: moderate, in due measure, 7
νόσος, ὁ: illness, sickness, 5
παρα-μένω: to abide, remain, 2
ὑπ-άρχω: to be there, be ready, be available 4
φθόγγος, ὁ: voice, utterance, sound 2
χαλάω: to slacken, loosen, release, 3

c1 **καλῶς**: *well*
2 **μετρίως**: *in due proportion, in due measure*
κραθῇ: 3s aor. subj. κεράννυμι
τυγχάνει...οὖσα: pple εἰμί, see p. 20
3 **δῆλον ὅτι**: *it is clear that…*
χαλασθῇ: 3s aor. subj. χαλάω in an indefinite temporal clause
4 **ἐπιταθῇ**: *is overstrained*; 3rd sg. aor. subj. ἐπιτείνω
ὑπὸ..: *because of…*; gen. of cause
5 **ἀνάγκη...ὑπάρχει**: *(it is) necessary*
ἀπολωλέναι: pf. act. inf. ἀπόλλυμι
καὶπερ: *although*…; introducing, as often, a pple
6 **θειοτάτην**: superlative, predicate of οὖσαν
8 **πολὺν χρόνον**: *for…*; acc. of duration
d1 **ἢ...ἢ...**: *either…or*
κατακαυθῇ, κατασαπῇ: 3s aor. pass. subjunctive in an indefinite temporal clause κατακαίω, κατασήπω
ὅρα..τί: *see what we will say*; i.e. consider.., ὅρα-ε, imperative sg. ὁράω
ὅρα..τί φήσομεν: *see what…*; i.e. consider.., ὅρα-ε, imperative sg. and fut. φημί
πρὸς: *in response to…, in reply to…*
2 **ἀξιοῖ**: 3s pres. subj. ο-contract verb as apodosis of a fut. more vivid condition (εἰ ἄν + subj., fut. ind.)
τὴν ψυχὴν...ἀπόλλυσθαι: *that…*; ind. disc. governed by ἀξιοῖ; κρᾶσιν οὖσαν is a participial phrase modifying ψυχὴν
3 **καλουμένῳ**: *so-named, so-called*; i.e. what is called death

διαβλέψας οὖν ὁ Σωκράτης, ὥσπερ τὰ πολλὰ εἰώθει, καὶ μειδιάσας, δίκαια μέντοι, ἔφη, λέγει ὁ Σιμμίας. εἰ οὖν τις ὑμῶν εὐπορώτερος ἐμοῦ, τί οὐκ ἀπεκρίνατο; καὶ γὰρ οὐ φαύλως ἔοικεν ἁπτομένῳ τοῦ λόγου. δοκεῖ μέντοι μοι χρῆναι πρὸ τῆς ἀποκρίσεως ἔτι πρότερον Κέβητος ἀκοῦσαι τί αὖ ὅδε ἐγκαλεῖ τῷ λόγῳ, ἵνα χρόνου ἐγγενομένου βουλευσώμεθα τί ἐροῦμεν, ἔπειτα [δὲ] ἀκούσαντας ἢ συγχωρεῖν αὐτοῖς ἐάν τι δοκῶσι προσᾴδειν, ἐὰν δὲ μή, οὕτως ἤδη ὑπερδικεῖν τοῦ λόγου. ἀλλ᾽ ἄγε, ἦ δ᾽ ὅς, ὦ Κέβης, λέγε, τί ἦν τὸ σὲ αὖ θρᾶττον [ἀπιστίαν παρέχει.]

λέγω δή, ἦ δ᾽ ὃς ὁ Κέβης. ἐμοὶ γὰρ φαίνεται ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ ὁ λόγος εἶναι, καί, ὅπερ ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν ἐλέγομεν,

---

ἄγω: to lead, to bring, to carry, to convey, 12
ἀ-πιστία, ἡ: disbelief, distrust, doubt, 6
ἀπο-κρίνομαι: to answer, reply, 13
ἀπο-κρισις, ἡ: reply, answer, 4
ἅπτω: fasten, grasp (gen); kindle, set fire; 11
βουλεύω: to deliberate, plan, take counsel, 1
δια-βλέπω: to look straight at, stare 1
δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right(eous), fair, 13
ἐγ-γίγνομαι: to be inborn, innate, happen, come in; *impers*. to be possible, 6
ἐγ-καλέω: to make a charge against (dat.), 1
εἴωθα: to be accustomed, 12
εὖ-πορος, -ον: resourceful, easily done, 1
ἤδη: already, now, at this time, 16
θράττω (τ(α)ράττω): to trouble, disquiet, 1
ἵνα: in order that (+ subj.); where (+ ind.), 7
μειδιάω: to smile, 2
παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16
πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 13
προσ-ᾴδω: to sing in tune to, harmonize, 1
πρόσθεν: before, 10
συγ-χωρέω: agree, yield, come together, 13
ὑπερ-δικέω: to plead for, advocate for (gen), 1
φαῦλος –η -ον: slight, paltry, cheap, trifling 9

5 **διαβλέψας**: i.e. looking at Simmias and Cebes with a piercing glance
τὰ πολλὰ: *many times*; 'often,' adv. acc.
6 **δίκαια μέντοι**: *fair words to be sure*; neuter pl. object of λέγει, μέντοι gives assent
7 **εὐπορώτερος (ἐστίν)**: comparative predicate, add a linking verb
ἐμοῦ: gen. of comparison
τί οὐκ ἀπεκρίνατο: *why does he not reply (to Simmias)*; an aor. with pres. sense is usually found after τί οὐ to express surprise that something has not been done (S 1936)
καὶ γὰρ: *for in fact*
8 **ἔοικεν**: *he seems like*; + dat.
ἁπτομένῳ: *(to one) getting a grip on*; + partitive gen.
μέντοι: *however*; adversative
9 **χρῆναι**: inf. χρή
πρὸ: *before…*
Κέβητος: *from Cebes*; the gen. of source is common with the verb ἀκούω
e1 **ὅδε**: *this here one*; i.e. Cebes
ἵνα...βουλευσώμεθα: *so that we may…*; purpose clause, aor. subj.
χρόνου ἐγγενομένου: gen. abs.
2 **ἐροῦμεν**: 1p fut. of λέγω
3 **αὐτοῖς**: *with them*; dat. of compound verb
4 **ἄγε**: *come now*; an imperative which often introduces a second imperative
5 **τὸ...θρᾶττον**: *the thing troubling…*; neuter sg. pple
6 **ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ**: *in the same (place)*
7 **ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν**: *in the (discussion) before*

87 *ταὐτὸν ἔγκλημα ἔχειν. ὅτι μὲν γὰρ ἦν ἡμῶν ἡ ψυχὴ καὶ πρὶν εἰς τόδε τὸ εἶδος ἐλθεῖν, οὐκ ἀνατίθεμαι μὴ οὐχὶ πάνυ χαριέντως καί, εἰ μὴ ἐπαχθές ἐστιν εἰπεῖν, πάνυ ἱκανῶς ἀποδεδεῖχθαι· ὡς δὲ καὶ ἀποθανόντων ἡμῶν ἔτι που ἔστιν, οὗ μοι δοκεῖ τῇδε. ὡς μὲν οὐκ ἰσχυρότερον καὶ πολυχρονιώτερον ψυχὴ σώματος, οὐ συγχωρῶ τῇ Σιμμίου ἀντιλήψει· δοκεῖ γάρ μοι πᾶσι τούτοις πάνυ πολὺ διαφέρειν. τί οὖν, ἂν φαίη ὁ λόγος, ἔτι ἀπιστεῖς, ἐπειδὴ ὁρᾷς ἀποθανόντος τοῦ ἀνθρώπου τό γε ἀσθενέστερον ἔτι ὄν; τὸ δὲ πολυχρονιώτερον οὐ δοκεῖ σοι ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι ἔτι σῴζεσθαι ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ; πρὸς δὴ τοῦτο τόδε ἐπίσκεψαι, εἴ τι λέγω·*

ἀνα-τίθημι: take back; set up, dedicate, 1
ἀντί-λήψις, -εως, ἡ: objection, counter, 1
ἀ-πιστέω: to distrust, not believe (+ dat.), 8
ἀπο-δείκνυμι: to demonstrate, prove 11
ἀ-σθενής, -ές: without strength, weak, feeble 3
δια-φέρω: to carry over; differ, surpass, 8
ἔγκλημα, -ατος, το: charge, objection, 1
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
ἐπ-αχθής -ές: burdensome, ponderous, heavy1
ἐπι-σκέπτομαι: to examine, inspect, 2
ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν: strong, powerful; severe, 5
πολυ-χρόνιος, -α, -ον: long-existing, 6
συγ-χωρέω: agree, yield, come together, 13
σῴζω: to save, keep, preserve, 4
τῇδε: here; in this way, thus, 8
χαριέντως: gracefully, elegantly, 2

87a1 **ταὐτὸν**: *the same*; τὸ αὐτὸν
ὅτι...ἦν: *that…existed*; impf. εἰμί
καὶ πρὶν: *even before…*; + aor. inf. ἔρχομαι
2 **ἀνατίθεμαι**: i.e. I do not reject
3 **μή οὐχὶ**: *that*…; 'lest…,' οὐ μή + inf. may follow a negatived verb expressing denial or prohibition (S 2745)
4 **ἀποδεδεῖχθαι**: pf. pass. inf.
ὡς δὲ...: *but that…*; supply ἡ ψυχὴ as subject of ἔστιν
ἀποθανόντων ἡμῶν: gen. abs., aor. pple ἀποθνῄσκω
5 **τῇδε**: *in the following way*; 'in this here way', dat. of manner
ὡς μὲν...: *that…*
6 **ψυχὴ**: supply linking ἐστίν
σώματος: *than…*; gen. of comparison
7 **πᾶσι τούτοις**: *in all things*; dat. of respect
πολὺ: *far*; or 'much' adverbial acc. (acc. of extent by degree)
διαφέρειν: *that (the soul) surpasses*; i.e. is superior
τί: *why….?*
8 **ἂν φαίη ὁ λόγος**: *(as) the argument might say*; parenthetical, potential opt. φημί
ἀποθανόντος τοῦ ἀνθρώπου: gen. abs.
9 **τό γε ἀσθενέστερον**: *the weaker part in fact…*; i.e. the body
τὸ δὲ πολυχρονιώτερον: *but…that the more long-lived part…*; i.e. the soul
b2 **ἐπίσκεψαι**: aor. imperative
τι λέγω: *I am saying anything (important)*; i.e. not speaking nonsense

εἰκόνος γάρ τινος, ὡς ἔοικεν, κἀγὼ ὥσπερ Σιμμίας δέομαι. ἐμοὶ γὰρ δοκεῖ ὁμοίως λέγεσθαι ταῦτα ὥσπερ ἄν τις περὶ ἀνθρώπου ὑφάντου πρεσβύτου ἀποθανόντος λέγοι τοῦτον τὸν λόγον, ὅτι οὐκ ἀπόλωλεν ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἀλλ᾽ ἔστι που σῶς, τεκμήριον δὲ παρέχοιτο θοἰμάτιον ὃ ἠμπείχετο αὐτὸς ὑφηνάμενος ὅτι ἐστὶ σῶν καὶ οὐκ ἀπόλωλεν, καὶ εἴ τις ἀπιστοίη αὐτῷ, ἀνερωτῴη πότερον πολυχρονιώτερόν ἐστι τὸ γένος ἀνθρώπου ἢ ἱματίου ἐν χρείᾳ τε ὄντος καὶ φορουμένου, ἀποκριναμένου δή [τινος] ὅτι πολὺ τὸ τοῦ ἀνθρώπου, οἴοιτο ἀποδεδεῖχθαι ὅτι παντὸς ἄρα μᾶλλον ὅ γε ἄνθρωπος σῶς ἐστιν, ἐπειδὴ τό γε ὀλιγοχρονιώτερον οὐκ ἀπόλωλεν. τὸ δ᾽ οἶμαι, ὦ Σιμμία, οὐχ οὕτως ἔχει· σκόπει γὰρ καὶ σὺ

ἀμπ-έχω: to wrap around, to surround, 1
ἀν-ερωτάω: to ask about, inquire into, 1
ἀ-πιστέω: to distrust, not believe (+ dat.), 8
ἀπο-δείκνυμι: demonstrate, prove 11
ἀπο-κρίνομαι: to answer, reply, 13
γένος, -εος, τό: lineage, family, stock; race, 7
δέομαι: lack, need, want; ask for (+ gen.) 7
εἰκών, -όνος, ἡ: a likeness, image; statue, 3
ἱμάτιον, τό: a cloak or mantle, 7
ὀλιγο-χρόνιος, -ον: lasting a short time, 2
παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16
πολυ-χρόνιος, -α, -ον: long-existing, 6
πότερος, -α, -ον: (untranslated), whether, 19
πρεσβύτης, ὁ: old man, 1
σῶς, ὁ, ἡ: safe and sound, safe, sound, 6
τεκμήριον, τό: sign, indication, proof, 5
ὑφαίνω: to weave, 2
ὑφάντης, -ου, ὁ: weaver, 2
φορέω: bear, carry, 1
χρεία, ἡ: use, advantage, service; need, want 2

3 **εἰκόνος τινος**: *a certain imagery*; separation
κἀγὼ: *I too*; καὶ ἐγὼ
4 **ἄν τις...λέγοι**: *one might say…*
ἀποθανόντος: aor. pple ἀποθνῄσκω
6 **ὅτι**: *(namely) that…*
ἀπόλωλεν: *did perish*; aor. ἀπόλλυμι
7 **τεκμήριον**: *as evidence*
(ἂν) παρέχοιτο: *he might…*; supply ἄν, potential opt. parallel to ἄν λέγοι above
θοἰμάτιον: τὸ ἱμάτιον
ἠμπείχετο: impf. mid. ἀμπ-έχω
αὐτὸς: *(the weaver) himself*
8 **ὑφηνάμενος**: aor. mid. pple
ὅτι: *that…*; following τεκμήριον
ἐστὶ σῶν: *that (the cloak) is*; proleptic use of ἱμάτιον; note that σῶν is neut. predicate modifying ἱμάτιον
ἀπόλωλεν: aor. ἀπόλλυμι
c1 **ἀπιστοίη**: *should…*; 3s opt. ἀπιστέω in a fut. less vivid condition
(ἂν) ἀνερωτῴη: *one could…*; ἀνερωταοίη (~ἀνερωταοι) 3s pres. opt. α-contract verb parallel to ἂν λέγοι in b4-5
πότερον...τὸ γένος ἀνθρώπου ἢ (τὸ γένος) ἱματίου: *which one…the class of a human being or the class of a cloak*
3 **ἀποκριναμένου δή [τινος]**: *with (one) then responding*; gen. abs.
πολὺ (πολυχρονιώτερον) τὸ (γένος) τοῦ ἄνθρωου: *far (more long-lived) is that of a human being*; adv. acc. (acc. of extent of degree); add words missing by ellipsis
4 **οἴοιτο**: *he would think*; parallel to ἂν λέγοι
ἀποδεδεῖχθαι: *that it…*; pf. pass. inf.
ὅτι: *that…*
παντὸς...μᾶλλον: *more than everything*
ὅ γε ἄνθρωπος: *the man at least*
5 **τό γε ὀλιγοχρονιώτερον**: i.e. the cloak
6 **τὸ δ᾽...ἔχει**: *but this is not so*; see p. 7
σκόπει: *consider…*; σκοπέ-ε, sg. imperative

ἃ λέγω. πᾶς [γὰρ] ἂν ὑπολάβοι ὅτι εὔηθες λέγει ὁ τοῦτο λέγων· ὁ γὰρ ὑφάντης οὗτος πολλὰ κατατρίψας τοιαῦτα ἱμάτια καὶ ὑφηνάμενος ἐκείνων μὲν ὕστερος ἀπόλωλεν πολ-
d λῶν ὄντων, τοῦ δὲ τελευταίου οἶμαι πρότερος, καὶ οὐδέν τι μᾶλλον τούτου ἕνεκα ἄνθρωπός ἐστιν ἱματίου φαυλότερον οὐδ' ἀσθενέστερον. τὴν αὐτὴν δὲ ταύτην οἶμαι εἰκόνα δέξαιτ' ἂν ψυχὴ πρὸς σῶμα, καί τις λέγων αὐτὰ ταῦτα περὶ
5 αὐτῶν μέτριʼ ἄν μοι φαίνοιτο λέγειν, ὡς ἡ μὲν ψυχὴ πολυχρόνιόν ἐστι, τὸ δὲ σῶμα ἀσθενέστερον καὶ ὀλιγοχρονιώτερον· ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἂν φαίη ἑκάστην τῶν ψυχῶν πολλὰ σώματα κατατρίβειν, ἄλλως τε κἂν πολλὰ ἔτη βιῷ—εἰ γὰρ ῥέοι τὸ σῶμα καὶ ἀπολλύοιτο ἔτι ζῶντος τοῦ ἀνθρώπου,

---

ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 14
ἀ-σθενής, -ές: without strength, weak, feeble 3
βιόω: to live, 4
εἰκών, -όνος, ἡ: a likeness, image; statue, 3
ἕνεκα: for (the sake of), because of, (gen.) 13
ἔτος, -εως, τό: a year, 2
εὐ-ήθης, -ες: foolish, simple-natured, silly, 3
ἱμάτιον, τό: a cloak or mantle, 7
κατα-τρίβω: wear out, rub down, 4
μέτριος, -α, -ον: moderate, in due measure, 7
ὀλιγο-χρόνιος, -ον: lasting a short time, 2
πολυ-χρόνιος, -α, -ον: long-existing, 6
ῥέω: to flow, be in flux, run, stream, 10
τελευταῖος, -α, -ον: last, final, 5
ὑπο-λαμβάνω: to take up, reply; suppose, 8
ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; *adv*. later 17
ὑφαίνω: to weave, 2
ὑφάντης, -ου, ὁ: weaver, 2
φαῦλος –η -ον: slight, paltry, cheap, trifling 9

7 **πᾶς**: *everyone*; i.e. anyone
ἂν ὑπολάβοι: potential opt.
εὔηθες: *a foolish thing*; neuter acc. sg.
8 **πολλὰ...τοιαῦτα ἱμάτια**: *many such cloaks*
ἐκείνων: *than…*; gen. of comparison
ἀπόλωλεν: *perished*; aor. ἀπόλλυμι
πολλῶν ὄντων: *although…*; participial phrase is concessive
d1 **τοῦ τελευταίου (ἱματίου)**: *than the last (cloak)…*; gen. of comparison
οἶμαι: parenthetical, οἴομαι
οὐδέν τι μᾶλλον: *not at all more*; modifies the comparative adj. that follows; οὐδέν τι is acc. of extent by degree
2 **ἱματίου**: *than…*; gen. of comparison
3 **τὴν αὐτὴν...εἰκόνα**: *the same imagery*
4 **δέξαιτο...σῶμα**: *the soul in relation to the body would accept*; potential aor. opt
4 **αὐτὰ ταῦτα**: *these very things*; intensive
5 **ὡς...**: *(namely) that…*
7 **ἀλλὰ γὰρ**: *but in fact*; 'and yet,' introduces an objection (S 2819, GP 105)
ἂν φαίη: 3s potential opt.
8 **ἄλλως τε κ(αὶ) ἄν...**: *especially…*; 'both otherwise and' a common idiom
ἂν...βιῷ: *one might live*; 3^{r3s}potential pres. opt. ο-contract verb,
πολλὰ ἔτη: *for…*; ἔτε-α, acc. of duration
9 **ῥέοι...ἀπολλύοιτο**: *is in flux…*; indicatives assimilated into opt. by preceding optatives
ἔτι: belongs with the following gen. abs

ἀλλ᾽ ἡ ψυχὴ ἀεὶ τὸ κατατριβόμενον ἀνυφαίνοι—ἀναγκαῖον e
μεντᾶν εἴη, ὁπότε ἀπολλύοιτο ἡ ψυχή, τὸ τελευταῖον ὕφασμα
τυχεῖν αὐτὴν ἔχουσαν καὶ τούτου μόνου προτέραν ἀπόλ-
λυσθαι, ἀπολομένης δὲ τῆς ψυχῆς τότ᾽ ἤδη τὴν φύσιν τῆς
ἀσθενείας ἐπιδεικνύοι τὸ σῶμα καὶ ταχὺ σαπὲν διοίχοιτο. 5
ὥστε τούτῳ τῷ λόγῳ οὔπω ἄξιον πιστεύσαντα θαρρεῖν ὡς
ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνωμεν ἔτι που ἡμῶν ἡ ψυχὴ ἔστιν. εἰ γάρ 88
τις καὶ πλέον ἔτι τῷ λέγοντι ἢ ἃ σὺ λέγεις συγχωρήσειεν,
δοὺς αὐτῷ μὴ μόνον ἐν τῷ πρὶν καὶ γενέσθαι ἡμᾶς χρόνῳ
εἶναι ἡμῶν τὰς ψυχάς, ἀλλὰ μηδὲν κωλύειν καὶ ἐπειδὰν
ἀποθάνωμεν ἐνίων ἔτι εἶναι καὶ ἔσεσθαι καὶ πολλάκις γενή- 5
σεσθαι καὶ ἀποθανεῖσθαι αὖθις—οὕτω γὰρ αὐτὸ φύσει

ἀν-υφαίνω: to weave anew, weave again, 1
ἄξιος, -α, -ον: worthy of, deserving of, 15
ἀ-σθένεια, ἡ: weakness, feebleness, 4
αὖθις: back again, later, 9
δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 15
δι-οίχομαι: be clean gone, be quite gone, 1
ἔνιοι, -αι, -α: some, 7
ἐπι-δείκνυμι: to indicate, point out, prove, 5
ἤδη: already, now, at this time, 16
θαρρέω: be confident or bold, take courage, 9
κατα-τρίβω: wear out, rub down, 4
κωλύω: to hinder or prevent, 5
ὁπότε: when, by what time, 6
οὔ-πω: not yet, 3
πιστεύω: to trust, believe in, rely on, 5
πλέων, -ον: more, greater, 17
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14
σάπω (σήπω): make rotten; corrupt, waste, 2
συγ-χωρέω: agree, yield, come together, 13
ταχύς, εῖα, ύ: quick, swift, hastily, 9
τελευταῖος, -α, -ον: last, final, 5
ὕφασμα, -ατος, τό: woven web, woven robe 1
φύσις, -εως, ἡ: nature, character; form, 11

e1 **ἀλλὰ**: *yet*; or 'rather' introducing the apodosis
ἀνυφαίνοι... ἀπολλύοιτο: indicatives made opt. by assimilation to preceding optatives
ἀναγκαῖον μεντ(οι) ἂν εἴη: *it would be…*; apodosis in the fut. less vivid condition
2 **τὸ τελευταῖον ὕφασμα**: acc. object
3 **τυχεῖν αὐτὴν ἔχουσαν**: *that it (the soul) happens to have…*; i.e. ψυχή, ind. disc. governed by ἀναγκαῖον ἂν εἴη
τούτου μόνου: *than…*; i.e. the body, gen. of comparison with προτέραν
4 **ἀπολομένης...ψυχῆς**: gen. abs. ἄνθρωπος
τὴν φύσιν...ἀσθενείας: i.e. natural weakness
5 **ἐπιδεικνύοι...διοίχοιτο**: indicatives made opt. by assimilation to preceding optatives
σαπὲν: neuter sg. aor. pass. pple σάπω modifying τὸ σῶμα
6 **τούτῳ τῷ λόγῳ**: dat. of pple πιστεύω
ἄξιον (ἐστίν): *it is not deserving (for us)*; + inf., impersonal constructon
ὡς: *that…*
88a2 **καὶ πλέον...συγχωρήσειεν**: *one were to yield even more…*; + dat. ind. object; opt.
3 **δοὺς**: *granting…*; 'allowing' nom. sg. aor. pple. δίδωμι
μὴ μόνον...ἀλλὰ: *not only…but*
πρὶν καὶ γενέσθαι ἡμᾶς: *before we were born also*; modifying ἐν τῷ χρόνῳ
4 **εἶναι**: *that…existed*; governed by δοὺς
μὴδεν κωλύειν: *that nothing prevents…*;
5 **ἐνίων**: *(that the souls) of some*;
ἔσεσθαι...ἀποθανεῖσθαι: fut. infs., εἰμί
6 **αὐτὸ φύσει**: *that it by nature…*; i.e. soul

ἰσχυρὸν εἶναι, ὥστε πολλάκις γιγνομένην ψυχὴν ἀντέχειν —δοὺς δὲ ταῦτα ἐκεῖνο μηκέτι συγχωροῖ, μὴ οὐ πονεῖν αὐτὴν ἐν ταῖς πολλαῖς γενέσεσιν καὶ τελευτῶσάν γε ἔν
10 *τινι τῶν θανάτων παντάπασιν ἀπόλλυσθαι, τοῦτον δὲ τὸν*
b *θάνατον καὶ ταύτην τὴν διάλυσιν τοῦ σώματος ἢ τῇ ψυχῇ φέρει ὄλεθρον μηδένα φαίη εἰδέναι—ἀδύνατον γὰρ εἶναι ὁτῳοῦν αἰσθέσθαι ἡμῶν—εἰ δὲ τοῦτο οὕτως ἔχει, οὐδενὶ προσήκει θάνατον θαρροῦντι μὴ οὐκ ἀνοήτως θαρρεῖν, ὃς ἂν*
5 *μὴ ἔχῃ ἀποδεῖξαι ὅτι ἔστι ψυχὴ παντάπασιν ἀθάνατόν τε καὶ ἀνώλεθρον· εἰ δὲ μή, ἀνάγκην εἶναι ἀεὶ τὸν μέλλοντα ἀποθανεῖσθαι δεδιέναι ὑπὲρ τῆς αὐτοῦ ψυχῆς μὴ ἐν τῇ νῦν τοῦ σώματος διαζεύξει παντάπασιν ἀπόληται.*

ἀ-δύνατος, -ον: unable, incapable, impossible, 6
αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 11
ἀ-νόητος, -ον: foolish, unintelligent, 5
ἀντ-έχω: to endure, hold out (against), 1
ἀν-ώλεθρος, -α, -ον: indestructible, 12
ἀπο-δείκνυμι: demonstrate, prove 11
γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: coming-to-be, birth, 16
δείδω: fear, dread, shrink from, feel awe, 11
δια-ζεύξις, -εως, ἡ: unyoking, separating, 1
διά-λυσις, ἡ: separating, breaking up, 1
δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 15
θαρρέω: be confident, take courage; be bold 9
ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν: strong, powerful; severe, 5
μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
μη-κέτι: no longer, no more, 1
ὄλεθρος, ὁ: death, ruin, destruction, 3
ὅστισ-οῦν, ἥτισουν, ὅτι-οῦν: whosoever, 11
παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15
πονέω: to labor, work; suffer, 1
προσ-ήκει: it belongs to, it is fitting, befits 15
συγ-χωρέω: agree, yield, come together, 13

7 **ἰσχυρὸν...ὥστε**: *(so) strong that…*; result
πολλάκις γιγνομένην...ἀντέχειν: *endure being born many times*
8 **δοὺς δὲ ταῦτα**: *although granting…*; concessive in sense; aor. pple. δίδωμι
ἐκεῖνο...συγχωροῖ: *one might no longer concede that (point), namely that…*; the opt. is parallel to εἰ γὰρ...συγχωρήειεν above (88a1-2)
μή οὐχί: *that…*; 'lest' οὐ μή + inf. may follow a negatived verb expressing denial or prohibition (S 2745)
πονεῖν αὐτὴν: *that it suffer…*; 'it labor…'
9 **τελευτῶσαν γε**: *finally*; pple as adverb
10 **ἔν τινι...θανάτων**: *in one of its deaths*
τοῦτον δὲ...φαίη εἰδέναι: *but one might say that no one knows this death and this separation from the body which brings destruction to the soul*
b3 **ὁτῳοῦν**: *for anyone whomsoever of us*; dat. of interest
αἰσθέσθαι: aor. inf. αἰσθάνομαι
εἰ...ἔχει: *if…is*; ; + adv., see p. 7; this conditional clause marks an end to the conditional clause started in a1
οὐδενὶ προσήκει...θαρρεῖν: *it is fitting for anyone being confident about death that he is foolishly confident*; the negations are best expressed positively
5 **ὃς...μὴ ἔχῃ**: *whoever is not able…*; οὐδενὶ is the antecedent, 3s subj. in an indefinite relative clause
7 **δεδιέναι**: pf. inf. δείδω
μὴ...ἀπόληται: *that…perish*; fearing clause

πάντες οὖν ἀκούσαντες εἰπόντων αὐτῶν ἀηδῶς διετέθημεν, ὡς ὕστερον ἐλέγομεν πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ὅτι ὑπὸ τοῦ ἔμπροσθεν λόγου σφόδρα πεπεισμένους ἡμᾶς πάλιν ἐδόκουν ἀναταράξαι καὶ εἰς ἀπιστίαν καταβαλεῖν οὐ μόνον τοῖς προειρημένοις λόγοις, ἀλλὰ καὶ εἰς τὰ ὕστερον μέλλοντα c
5
ῥηθήσεσθαι, μὴ οὐδενὸς ἄξιοι εἶμεν κριταὶ ἢ καὶ τὰ πράγματα αὐτὰ ἄπιστα ᾖ.

ΕΧ. *νὴ τοὺς θεούς, ὦ Φαίδων, συγγνώμην γε ἔχω ὑμῖν. καὶ γὰρ αὐτόν με νῦν ἀκούσαντά σου τοιοῦτόν τι λέγειν πρὸς ἐμαυτὸν ἐπέρχεται· 'τίνι οὖν ἔτι πιστεύσομεν λόγῳ;* d *ὡς γὰρ σφόδρα πιθανὸς ὢν, ὃν ὁ Σωκράτης ἔλεγε λόγον, νῦν εἰς ἀπιστίαν καταπέπτωκεν.' θαυμαστῶς γάρ μου ὁ*

ἀ-ηδής, -ές: unpleasant, disagreeable
ἀ-πιστία, ἡ: disbelief, distrust, doubt, 6
ἄ-πιστος, -ον:, ὁ: not trustworthy, distrustful 2
ἀνα-ταράττω: to trouble, stir up again, 1
ἄξιος -α -ον: worthy of, deserving of (gen) 15
δια-τίθημι: arrange, dispose, 1
ἔμ-προσθεν: before, former; earlier, 7
ἐπ-έρχομαι: to come upon, approach, 8
θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wonderful, marvelous, 11
κατα-βάλλω: to strike down, cast down, 1
κατα-πίπτω: fall down, drop, 1
κριτής, ὁ: a judge, decider, 1
μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
νή: by…(+ acc, invoking a god), 14
πιθανός, -ή, -όν: persuasive, plausible, 3
πιστεύω: to trust, believe in, rely on (dat) 5
πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18
προ-λέγω: to say or mention beforehand, 4
συγ-γνώμη, ἡ: forgiveness, sympathy, 1
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18
ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; *adv*. later 17

c1 **πάντες...διετέθημεν**: *we all were disposed*; + adv.1p aor. pass. διατίθημι; Phaedo, as narrator of the dialogue, now refers to his own presence and reaction to the discussion
εἰπόντων αὐτῶν: *them…*; gen. of source, object of ἀκούσαντες, and not a gen. abs.
2 **ὅτι**: *because…*
ὑπὸ: *by…*; gen. of cause
3 **πεπεισμένους**: pf. pass. pple πείθω
ἐδόκουν: *they seemed…*; 3p, i.e. Socrates, Simmias, and Cebes, the main interlocutors
4 **ἀναταράξαι, καταβαλεῖν**: aor. inf.
οὐ μόνον...ἀλλὰ καὶ: *not only…but also*
τοῖς...λόγοις: dat. governed by ἀπιστίαν
5 **προειρημένοις**: pf. pass. pple προλέγω
εἰς τὰ...μέλλοντα: *to (things) about to…*; governed by καταβαλεῖν and parallel to εἰς ἀπιστίαν
6 **ῥηθήσεσθαι**: fut. pass. inf. λέγω (ἐρ)
μὴ...εἶμεν...ᾖ: *that we were…be…*; 'lest,' a fearing clause in secondary sequence with 1p. pres. opt. εἰμί and 3s. pres. subj. εἰμί; though opt. is more common, a subj. in secondary sequence presents a fear vividly (S 2226)
8 **νὴ τοὺς θεούς**: in exclamation
συγγνώμην γε ἔχω ὑμῖν: *I certainly have sympathy for you all*
9 **καὶ γὰρ**: *for in fact…*
αὐτόν με: *that I myself…*; subj. of λέγειν
σου: gen. of source, obj. of ἀκούσαντα
d1 **πρὸς ἐμαυτὸν ἐπέρχεται**: *it occurs to me that…*; impersonal, governs an acc. + inf.
τίνι...λόγῳ: *what account…*?
2 **ὡς...πιθανὸς ὢν**: *how exceedingly persuasive though it is, the account*; the pple εἰμί is concessive, supply ὁ λόγος
3 **καταπέπτωκεν**: pf. καταπίπτω

λόγος οὗτος ἀντιλαμβάνεται καὶ νῦν καὶ ἀεί, τὸ ἁρμονίαν τινὰ ἡμῶν εἶναι τὴν ψυχήν, καὶ ὥσπερ ὑπέμνησέν με ῥηθεὶς ὅτι καὶ αὐτῷ μοι ταῦτα προυδέδοκτο. καὶ πάνυ δέομαι πάλιν ὥσπερ ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἄλλου τινὸς λόγου ὅς με πείσει ὡς τοῦ ἀποθανόντος οὐ συναποθνήσκει ἡ ψυχή. λέγε οὖν πρὸς Διὸς πῇ ὁ Σωκράτης μετῆλθε τὸν λόγον; καὶ πότερον **e** κἀκεῖνος, ὥσπερ ὑμᾶς φῄς, ἔνδηλός τι ἐγένετο ἀχθόμενος ἢ οὔ, ἀλλὰ πράως ἐβοήθει τῷ λόγῳ; [ἢ] καὶ ἱκανῶς ἐβοήθησεν ἢ ἐνδεῶς; πάντα ἡμῖν δίελθε ὡς δύνασαι ἀκριβέστατα.

ΦΑΙΔ. καὶ μήν, ὦ Ἐχέκρατες, πολλάκις θαυμάσας Σωκράτη οὐ πώποτε μᾶλλον ἠγάσθην ἢ τότε παραγενόμενος. **89** τὸ μὲν οὖν ἔχειν ὅτι λέγοι ἐκεῖνος ἴσως οὐδὲν ἄτοπον· ἀλλὰ

ἄγαμαι: to admire, wonder, marvel at, 1
ἀκριβής, -ές: exact, accurate, precise, 5
ἀντι-λαμβάνω: take hold of, captivate +gen 1
ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning; rule, office, 8
ἄ-τοπος, -ον: strange, odd, extraordinary, 9
ἄχθομαι: to be burdened, grieved, pained, 1
βοηθέω: to come to help, rescue, aid (dat) 2
δέομαι: lack, need, want; ask for (+ gen.) 7
δι-έρχομαι: to go or pass through, 5
δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 15
ἐν-δεῶς: defectively, insufficiently, 3
ἔν-δηλός, -όν: visible, manifest, clear, 1
Ζεύς, ὁ: Zeus, 6
θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel, be amazed at, 7
μετ-έρχομαι: to go after, pursue, 2
μήν: truly, surely, certainly, 22
παρα-γίγνομαι: to come near, be present, 11
πῇ: in what way, how, 5
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14
πρᾷος, -ον: mild, gentle, soft, 3
προ-δοκέω: seem good (beforehand), 1
πώ-ποτε: ever yet, ever, 6
συν-αποθνήσκω: to die together with, 1
ὑπο-μιμνήσκω: to remind, mention, 3

4 **ἀντιλαμβάνεται**: with partitive gen μου
καὶ...καὶ: *both…and*
τὸ...εἶναι: *namely that the soul…*; articular inf. is ind. discourse in apposition to λόγος
ὥσπερ: *as it were*
5 **ῥηθεὶς**: *the account spoken (by you)*; nom. sg. aor. pass. pple λέγω (ἐρ)
6 **καὶ...ταῦτα**: *these things too*; nom. subject
προυδέδοκτο: 3s plpf. mid.
7 **ἄλλου τινὸς λόγου**: gen. of separation, obj. of δέομαι
πείσει: fut. πείθω
8 **τοῦ ἀποθανόντος**: *of one…*; aor. pple ἀποθνήσκω
πρὸς Διὸς: *by Zeus!*; πρός + gen. is another common way of invoking the gods
9 **πότερον**: *whether…*
e1 **κα(ι ἐ)κεῖνος**: *that one also*; i.e. Socrates
ἔνδηλος: *clearly*; the adj. is often translated as an adv.
τι: *at all*; inner acc. with ἀχθόμενος
2 **ἀλλὰ**: *but instead, rather*
ἐβοήθησεν: aor. active βοηθέω
3 **δίελθε**: *go through*; i.e. relate, aor. sg. imperative διέρχομαι
ὡς...: *as…*; + 2s pres. δύναμαι
ἀκριβέστατα: superlative adv.
4 **καὶ μὴν**: *well certainly*; in acceptance of an invitation to speak (GP 356) but often used in tragedy to open a new scene or introduce a new character (S 2921)
5 **ἠγάσθην**: 1s aor. pass. dep. ἄγαμαι
μὲν οὖν: *certainly in fact*; in affirmation
τὸ...ἔχειν: *that (he) knew…*
ὅ τι λέγοι: *what he was to say*; deliberative
οὐδὲν ἄτοπον: *(it is) nothing strange that...*

ἔγωγε μάλιστα ἐθαύμασα αὐτοῦ πρῶτον μὲν τοῦτο, ὡς ἡδέως καὶ εὐμενῶς καὶ ἀγαμένως τῶν νεανίσκων τὸν λόγον ἀπεδέξατο, ἔπειτα ἡμῶν ὡς ὀξέως ᾔσθετο ὧ 'πεπόνθεμεν ὑπὸ τῶν λόγων, ἔπειτα ὡς εὖ ἡμᾶς ἰάσατο καὶ ὥσπερ πεφευγότας καὶ ἡττημένους ἀνεκαλέσατο καὶ προύτρεψεν πρὸς τὸ παρέπεσθαί τε καὶ συσκοπεῖν τὸν λόγον.

ΕΧ. *πῶς δή;*

ΦΑΙΔ. *ἐγὼ ἐρῶ. ἔτυχον γὰρ ἐν δεξιᾷ αὐτοῦ καθήμενος παρὰ τὴν κλίνην ἐπὶ χαμαιζήλου τινός, ὁ δὲ ἐπὶ πολὺ* **b** *ὑψηλοτέρου ἢ ἐγώ. καταψήσας οὖν μου τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ συμπιέσας τὰς ἐπὶ τῷ αὐχένι τρίχας—εἰώθει γάρ, ὁπότε τύχοι, παίζειν μου εἰς τὰς τρίχας—Αὔριον δή, ἔφη, ἴσως, ὦ Φαίδων, τὰς καλὰς ταύτας κόμας ἀποκερῇ.*

ἀγαμένως: with respect, with admiration1
αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 11
ἀνα-καλέω: to call back, rally, call up, 1
ἀπο-δέχομαι: to accept, receive, 9
ἀπο-κείρω: clip, cut off, 1
αὔριον: tomorrow, 2
αὐχήν, -ένος, ὁ: the neck, throat, 1
δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right hand or side, 1
εἴωθα: to be accustomed, 12
εὐ-μενής, -ές: well-disposed, favorable, 1
ἡδέως: sweetly, pleasantly, gladly, 6
ἡττάομαι: to be defeated, be inferior, 1
θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel, be amazed at, 7
θρίξ, τριχός ἡ: hair, 2
ἰάομαι: to heal, cure, 1
ἴσως: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 19
κάθ-ημαι: to sit, 4
κατα-ψάω: stroke with the hand, caress, 1
κεφαλή, ἡ: the head, 6
κλίνη, ἡ: couch, 2
κόμη, ἡ: hair, 1
νεανίσκος, ὁ: youth, 1
ὀξύς, -εῖα, -υ: sharp, keen, bitter, 1
ὁπότε: when, by what time, 6
παίζω: to play, jest, 1
παρ-έπομαι: follow alongside, accompany, 1
προ-τρέπω: urge on or forward, turn to, 1
συμ-πιέζω: to press or grasp together, 1
συ-σκοπέω: to contemplate together, 1
ὑψηλος, -ή, -όν: high, lofty, 1
φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 10
χαμαί-ζηλος -ον: low seat, stool, 1

2 **αὐτοῦ...τοῦτο**: *this (aspect) of him*; partitive gen.
πρῶτον: adverbial acc.
ὡς: *how…*; modifies the next three adverbs
4 **ὡς**: *how*
ἡμῶν...ᾔσθετο ὃ (ἐ)πεπόνθεμεν...λόγων: *he sensed ~~as~~ what we had experienced by his words*; aor. mid. αἰσθάνομαι governs a partitive gen., which is here used proleptically as the acc. obj. and is more suitably the subject of the plpf. πάσχω
5 **ὡς εὖ**: *how well*
ὥσπερ: *(us) as if*
πεφευτόγας: pf. acc. pple, φεύγω
9 **ἐρῶ**: fut. λέγω
ἔτυχον: 1s aor. + pple, see p. 20
b1 **παρὰ**: *beside…*
ὁ δὲ: *and he*; i.e. Socrates
ἐπὶ πολὺ ὑψηλοτέρου: *on a much higher* (position); Socrates is on the couch
4 **ὁπότε**: *whenever he happened*; indefinite temporal clause with opt. in secondary seq.
5 **ἀποκερῇ**: 2s fut. mid. ἀποκείρω

ἔοικεν, ἦν δ᾽ ἐγώ, ὦ Σώκρατες.

οὔκ, ἄν γε ἐμοὶ πείθῃ.

ἀλλὰ τί; ἦν δ᾽ ἐγώ.

τήμερον, ἔφη, κἀγὼ τὰς ἐμὰς καὶ σὺ ταύτας, ἐάνπερ γε
10 *ἡμῖν ὁ λόγος τελευτήσῃ καὶ μὴ δυνώμεθα αὐτὸν ἀναβιώ-*
c *σασθαι. καὶ ἔγωγ᾽ ἄν, εἰ σὺ εἴην καί με διαφεύγοι ὁ λόγος, ἔνορκον ἂν ποιησαίμην ὥσπερ Ἀργεῖοι, μὴ πρότερον κομήσειν, πρὶν ἂν νικήσω ἀναμαχόμενος τὸν Σιμμίου τε καὶ Κέβητος λόγον.*

5 *ἀλλ᾽, ἦν δ᾽ ἐγώ, πρὸς δύο λέγεται οὐδ᾽ ὁ Ἡρακλῆς οἷός τε εἶναι.*

ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐμέ, ἔφη, τὸν Ἰόλεων παρακάλει, ἕως ἔτι φῶς ἐστιν.

ἀνα-βιώσκομαι: to bring back to life, 6
ἀνα-μάχομαι: to fight back against, 1
Ἀργεῖος, ὁ: Argive, citizen of Argos, 1
δια-φεύγω: to flee, get away from, escape, 2
δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 15
ἐάν-περ: εἰ ἄν, if, if really (+ subj.), 3
ἐμός, -ή, -όν: my, mine, 7
ἔν-ορκος, -ον: under an oath, bound by oath 1
ἕως: until, as long as, 15
Ἡρακλέης, ὁ: Heracles, 3
Ἰόλεως, ὁ: Iolaus, 2
κομάω: wear long hair, plume oneself, 1
νικάω: to conquer, defeat, win, 1
παρα-καλέω: to summon, call to, 2
τήμερον: today, 2
φῶς (φάος), φάεος, τό: light, 1

6 **ἔοικεν**: *it's likely*
ἦν: 1s impf. ἠμί, see pg. 6
7 **ἄν**: *if…*; ἐὰν (ἐι ἄν)
πείθῃ: πείθε(σ)αι, 2s pres. mid.
8 **ἀλλὰ τί**: *well, what (then)*; GP 9
9 **κἀγὼ τὰς ἐμας (κόμας) καὶ σὺ ταύτας (κόμας)**: *I (will cut off)…and you (will cut off)…*; ellipsis, add verbs and obj. from b5
ἐάνπερ γε...: *if at any rate…*; + subj. (3s aor. τελευτάω and pres. δύναμαι) in a future more vivid condition
c1 **ἄν...ἂν ποιησαίμην**: the duplication of ἄν often emphasizing the intervening words
εἰ...εἴην..διαφεύγοι...ἂν ποιησαίμην: *if should…should, I would…*; a future less vivid condition (εἰ + opt., ἄν + opt.)
2 **ἔνορκον...ποιησαίμην**: *I would make an oath*; 'I would bring myself under an oath'
μὴ...κομήσειν: *not to.. …*; μή + inf. is often used in oaths (S 2716)
3 **ἂν νικήσω**: *I conquer*; ἄν + 1s aor. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause
5 **ἦν**: 1s impf. ἠμί, see pg. 6
πρὸς δύο: *against two*; i.e. two enemies
οὐδὲ ὁ Ἡρακλῆς: *not even Heracles*
οἷος τε εἶναι: *to be capable*; 'to be the sort'
7 **τὸ Ἰόλεων**: *as Iolaus*; assistant to Heracles, who helped Heracles cauterize the Hydra's necks as he fended off a large crab
παρακάλει: παρακαλε-ε; sg. imperative

παρακαλῶ τοίνυν, ἔφην, οὐχ ὡς Ἡρακλῆς, ἀλλ' ὡς Ἰόλεως τὸν Ἡρακλῆ.

οὐδὲν διοίσει, ἔφη. ἀλλὰ πρῶτον εὐλαβηθῶμέν τι πάθος μὴ πάθωμεν.

τὸ ποῖον; ἦν δ' ἐγώ.

μὴ γενώμεθα, ἦ δ' ὅς, μισόλογοι, ὥσπερ οἱ μισάνθρωποι γιγνόμενοι· ὡς οὐκ ἔστιν, ἔφη, ὅτι ἄν τις μεῖζον τούτου κακὸν πάθοι ἢ λόγους μισήσας. γίγνεται δὲ ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ τρόπου μισολογία τε καὶ μισανθρωπία. ἥ τε γὰρ μισανθρωπία ἐνδύεται ἐκ τοῦ σφόδρα τινὶ πιστεῦσαι ἄνευ τέχνης, καὶ ἡγήσασθαι παντάπασί γε ἀληθῆ εἶναι καὶ ὑγιῆ καὶ πιστὸν τὸν ἄνθρωπον, ἔπειτα ὀλίγον ὕστερον εὑρεῖν τοῦτον πονηρόν τε καὶ ἄπιστον, καὶ αὖθις ἕτερον· καὶ ὅταν τοῦτο

ἄνευ: without, 9
ἄ-πιστος, -ον:, ὁ: not trustworthy, distrustful 2
αὖθις: back again, later, 9
δια-φέρω: to carry over; differ, surpass, 8
ἐν-δύομαι: to go into, enter, 2
εὐλαβέομαι: be cautious, be careful, beware, 5
εὑρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 8
Ἡρακλέης, ὁ: Heracles, 3
Ἰόλεως, ὁ: Iolaus, 2
μισ-ανθρωπία, ἡ: hatred of mankind, 2
μισ-άνθρωπος, -ον: hating mankind, 1
μισέω: to hate, 4
μισο-λογία, ἡ: hatred of argument, 1
μισό-λογος, -ον: hating argument, 1
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small, 15
πάθος -εος τό: experience incident passion 11
παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15
παρα-καλέω: to summon, call to, 2
πιστεύω: to trust, believe in, rely on, 5
πιστός, -ή, -όν: trustworthy; credible 2
ποῖος, -α, -ον: what sort of? what kind of?, 9
πονηρός, -ά, -όν: bad, evil; painful, grievous 2
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18
τέχνη, ἡ: craft, art, 6
τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17
ὑγιής, -ές: sound, healthy, wholesome, 7
ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; *adv*. later 17

9 τοίνυν: accepting an invitation (GP 571)
ἔφην: see p. 6
ὡς: *as*
ὡς Ἰόλεως (παρακαλεῖ) τὸν Ἡρακλῆ: *as*…; supply verb from above
11 οὐδὲν διοίσει: *it will make no difference*; inner acc., fut. διαφέρω
πρῶτον: adverbial acc.
3 εὐλαβηθῶμεν: *let us*…; hortatory subj. aor. pass. deponent
12 μὴ πάθωμεν τι πάθος: *that*…; 'lest' fearing clause: μή + aor. subj. πάσχω
13 τὸ ποῖον: *what?*; the article is not unusual
ἦν: *I said*; impf. ἠμί (see pg. 6)

d1 μὴ γενώμεθα: *lest*…; a fearing clause in response to μὴ πάθωμεν above
2 ὡς οὐκ ἔστιν...ὅτι: *since it is not possible that*…; impersonal ἔστι
ἄν...πάθοι: *could suffer*; potential aor. opt.
3 μισήσας: nom. sg. aor. pple μισέω
ἐκ τοῦ...τρόπου: *from the same manner*
5 ἐκ τοῦ...πιστεῦσαι: *from trusting*…;
τινὶ: *someone*; dat. object
ἡγήσασθαι: *that (you) think that*…
6 ὑγιέ-α: 3rd decl. acc. sg. with ἄνθρωπον
7 ὀλίγον: *a little*; adv. (acc. extent by degree)
εὑρεῖν: *to find (this one)*; with πιστεῦσαι
8 ἕτερον: i..e the same outcome with another

πολλάκις πάθῃ τις καὶ ὑπὸ τούτων μάλιστα οὓς ἂν ἡγήσαιτο
e οἰκειοτάτους τε καὶ ἑταιροτάτους, τελευτῶν δὴ θαμὰ προσ-
κρούων μισεῖ τε πάντας καὶ ἡγεῖται οὐδενὸς οὐδὲν ὑγιὲς
εἶναι τὸ παράπαν. ἦ οὐκ ᾔσθησαί σύ πω τοῦτο γιγνόμενον;

πάνυ γε, ἦν δ' ἐγώ.

5 οὐκοῦν, ἦ δ' ὅς, αἰσχρόν, καὶ δῆλον ὅτι ἄνευ τέχνης τῆς
περὶ τἀνθρώπεια ὁ τοιοῦτος χρῆσθαι ἐπεχείρει τοῖς ἀνθρώ-
ποις; εἰ γάρ που μετὰ τέχνης ἐχρῆτο, ὥσπερ ἔχει οὕτως
90 ἂν ἡγήσατο, τοὺς μὲν χρηστοὺς καὶ πονηροὺς σφόδρα
ὀλίγους εἶναι ἑκατέρους, τοὺς δὲ μεταξὺ πλείστους.

πῶς λέγεις; ἔφην ἐγώ.

ὥσπερ, ἦ δ' ὅς, περὶ τῶν σφόδρα σμικρῶν καὶ μεγάλων·

αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 11
αἰσχρός -ά -όν: ugly, shameful, disgraceful 3
ἄνευ: without, 9
ἀνθρώπειος, -α, -ον: human, of a human, 3
δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 14
ἑκάτερος, -α, -ον: each of two, either, 5
ἐπι-χειρέω: attempt, try, put one's hand on, 8
ἑταιροτάτος, ὁ: closest companion, 1
θαμά: often, 2
μεταξύ: between, betwixt, 6
μισέω: to hate, 4
οἰκεῖος, -α, -ον: one's own; *subst*. relatives, 4
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small, 15
παρά-παν: altogether, absolutely, 3
πλεῖστος, -η, -ον: most, greatest, 3
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14
πονηρός, -ά, -όν: bad, evil; painful, grievous 2
προσ-κρούω: to clash; knock against, 1
πω: yet, up to this time, 1
σμικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little, 19
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18
τέχνη, ἡ: craft, art, 6
ὑγιής, -ές: sound, healthy, wholesome, 7
χράομαι: to use, employ, engage, (+ dat.) 11
χρηστός, -ή, -όν: good, worthy, 1

3 **ἄν...πάθῃ**: 3s aor. subj. πάσχω in a indefinite temporal clause
ὑπὸ τούτων: *because of these (men)*; gen. of cause
μάλιστα: *especially*
ἂν ἡγήσαιτο: *he might consider (x) (y)*; potential aor. opt. governs a double acc. (object and predicate)
e1 **τελευτῶν δὴ**: *finally*; pple as adverb
2 **οὐδενὸς οὐδεν**: *that nothing of anyone is altogether sound*
3 **ᾔσθησαι**: 2s pf. mid. αἰσθάνομαι
4 **πάνυ γε**: *quite so*
ἦν: 1s impf. ἠμί, see p. 6
5 **οὐκοῦν...αἰσχρόν...δῆλον**: *Then, (is it) not disgraceful and clear that*; add linking verb
ἦ δ'ὅς: see note on pg. 9
τῆς περὶ τ(ὰ) ἀνθρώπεια: *regarding human nature*; prepositional phrase in the attributive position modifying τέχνης
6 **χρῆσθαι**: *to engage with*; + dat.
7 **εἰ...ἐχρῆτο,...ἂν ἡγήσατο**: *if he were engaging…he would have considered.* mixed contrafactual condition (εἰ + impf., ἄν + aor. indicative)
ἔχει οὕτως: *is so*; see p. 7
90a1 **τοὺς μὲν...τοὺς δὲ**: *namely that…and that…*; ind. disc. governed by ἡγήσατο
πλείστους: *(are) very many*; predicate
3 **λέγεις**: *do you mean*

οἴει τι σπανιώτερον εἶναι ἢ σφόδρα μέγαν ἢ σφόδρα σμικρὸν ἐξευρεῖν ἄνθρωπον ἢ κύνα ἢ ἄλλο ὁτιοῦν; ἢ αὖ ταχὺν ἢ βραδὺν ἢ αἰσχρὸν ἢ καλὸν ἢ λευκὸν ἢ μέλανα; ἢ οὐχὶ ᾔσθησαι ὅτι πάντων τῶν τοιούτων τὰ μὲν ἄκρα τῶν ἐσχάτων σπάνια καὶ ὀλίγα, τὰ δὲ μεταξὺ ἄφθονα καὶ πολλά;

πάνυ γε, ἦν δ' ἐγώ

οὐκοῦν οἴει, ἔφη, εἰ πονηρίας ἀγὼν προτεθείη, πάνυ ἂν **b** *ὀλίγους καὶ ἐνταῦθα τοὺς πρώτους φανῆναι;*

εἰκός γε, ἦν δ' ἐγώ.

εἰκὸς γάρ, ἔφη. ἀλλὰ ταύτῃ μὲν οὐχ ὅμοιοι οἱ λόγοι τοῖς ἀνθρώποις, ἀλλὰ σοῦ νυνδὴ προάγοντος ἐγὼ ἐφεσπόμην, ἀλλ' ἐκείνῃ, ᾗ, ἐπειδάν τις πιστεύσῃ λόγῳ τινὶ ἀληθεῖ

ἀγών, ἀγῶνος, ὁ: contest, 1
αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 11
αἰσχρός -ά -όν: ugly, shameful, disgraceful 3
ἄκρος, -η, -ον: topmost, peak; end, extreme, 3
ἄ-φθονος, ον: ungrudging; abundant, 1
βραδύς, -εῖα, -ύ: slow, 2
εἰκός, ότος, τό: likely, probable, reasonable 18
ἐνταῦθα: here, hither, there, thither, then, 5
ἐξ-ευρίσκω: to find out, discover, 3
ἔσχατος, -η, -ον: extreme, last, furthest, 5
ἐφ-έπομαι: to follow after, pursue after, 1
κύων, κυνός, ὁ: a dog, 2
λευκός, -ή, -όν: white, bright, brilliant, 3
μέλας, μέλαινα, μέλαν: black, dark, 1
μεταξύ: between, betwixt, 6
νυν-δή: just now, 15
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small, 15
ὅστισ-οῦν, ἥτισουν, ὅτι-οῦν: whosoever, 11
πιστεύω: to trust, believe in, rely on (dat) 5
πονηρία, ή: wickedness, vice, 1
προ-άγω: to lead the way, bring forth, 1
προ-τίθημι: to set forth, set out, propose, 2
σμικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little, 19
σπάνιος, -α, -ον: rare, scarce, 2
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18
ταχύς, εῖα, ύ: quick, swift, hastily, 9

5 **οἴει**: *do you think…?*; 2s pres. οἴομαι
in a very lengthy question
σπανιώτερον: i.e. more unusual
7 **ἢ οὐχὶ ᾔσθησαι**: *or have you not perceived*; 2s pf. αἰσθάνομαι
8 **τὸ ἄκρα...ἐσχάτων**: *the ends of the extremes (are)…*; add a linking verb
10 **τὰ δὲ μεταξὺ**: *but those inbetween*
5 **πάνυ γε**: *quite so, quite indeed*; affirmative
οἴει: see line 5
b1 **εἰ...προτεθείη,...ἂν...φανῆναι**: *if…should be proposed, would appear*; fut. less vivid, here with aor. pass. opt. and an aor. pass. inf. (ἄν aor. pass. inf is equiv. to aor. pass. opt. in direct speech)
ἀγὼν: a noun, not pple
2 **καὶ ἐνταῦθα**: *there also*; i.e. in that case
3 **γε**: *quite, indeed*; for emphasis
4 **εἰκὸς γάρ**: *(yes) for it is likely*
ταύτῃ: *in this way*; dat. of manner
ὅμοιοι (εἰσί): predicate; add linking verb
5 **σοῦ...προάγοντος**: gen. abs.
ἐφεσπόμην: 1s aor. mid. ἐφ-έπομαι
6 **ἐκείνῃ, ᾗ**: *(I followed) in that way, in which (way one follows)…*; dat. of manner, demonstrative and relative
πιστεύσῃ...ἀληθεῖ εἶναι: *believes some account to be true…*; ἀληθεῖ is a dat. sg. predicate following εἶναι

εἶναι ἄνευ τῆς περὶ τοὺς λόγους τέχνης, κἄπειτα ὀλίγον ὕστερον αὐτῷ δόξῃ ψευδὴς εἶναι, ἐνίοτε μὲν ὤν, ἐνίοτε δ᾽ οὐκ ὤν, καὶ αὖθις ἕτερος καὶ ἕτερος·—καὶ μάλιστα δὴ οἱ
c *περὶ τοὺς ἀντιλογικοὺς λόγους διατρίψαντες οἶσθ᾽ ὅτι τελευ-τῶντες οἴονται σοφώτατοι γεγονέναι καὶ κατανενοηκέναι μόνοι ὅτι οὔτε τῶν πραγμάτων οὐδενὸς οὐδὲν ὑγιὲς οὐδὲ βέβαιον οὔτε τῶν λόγων, ἀλλὰ πάντα τὰ ὄντα ἀτεχνῶς ὥσπερ*
5 *ἐν Εὐρίπῳ ἄνω κάτω στρέφεται καὶ χρόνον οὐδένα ἐν οὐδενὶ μένει.*

πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφην ἐγώ, ἀληθῆ λέγεις.

οὐκοῦν, ὦ Φαίδων, ἔφη, οἰκτρὸν ἂν εἴη τὸ πάθος, εἰ ὄντος δή τινος ἀληθοῦς καὶ βεβαίου λόγου καὶ δυνατοῦ

ἄνευ: without, 9
ἀντι-λογικός -όν: contradictory, disputatous 2
ἄνω: up, above, 6
ἀ-τεχνῶς: simply, absolutely, really, 6
αὖθις: back again, later, 9
βέβαιος, -α, -ον: steadfast, steady, firm, 3
δια-τρίβω: to spend time, waste time, 5
δυνατός, -ή, -όν: capable, strong, possible, 8
ἐνί-οτε: sometimes, 7
Εὐρίπος, ὁ: Euripus (strait off Euboea) 1
κατα-νοέω: to understand, observe well, 2
κάτω: downwards, below, beneath, 6
οἰκτρός, -ή, -όν: pitable, pitiful, miserable, 2
πάθος -εος τό: experience incident passion 11
πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18
σοφός, -ή, -όν: wise, skilled, 5
στρέφω: to turn (about), wheel around, 1
τέχνη, ἡ: craft, art, 6
ὑγιής, -ές: sound, healthy, wholesome, 7
ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; *adv*. later 17
ψευδής, -ές: false, lying, 1

7 **κἄπειτα...δόξῃ**: καὶ ἔπειτα…; 3s aor. subj. δοκέω parallel to πιστεύσῃ
ὀλίγον: *a little*; adv. acc. (acc. of extent by degree)
8 **αὐτῳ**: *to him*; dat. of reference, refers to the τις in line 6
ἐνίοτε μὲν...ἐνίοτε δ᾽: *sometimes…at other times*
ὤν (ψευδὴς): *being (false)*; pple εἰμί, add the same missing predicate to both pples
9 **ἕτερος καὶ ἕτερος**: *the next one and the next one*; i.e. the same is true again and again
c1 **οἶσθ(α) ὅτι**: *you know (that)*; 2s οἶδα, the clause is almost parenthetical here
τελευτῶντες: *in the end*; or ‘finally’ the pple is often translated as an adv.
2 **γεγονέναι**: pf. inf. γίγνομαι
κατανενοηκέναι: pf. inf.
3 **οὔτε...οὐδενὸς οὐδὲν (ἐστί)...λόγων**: *that nothing of anything is sound and steadfast-neither among the state of affairs nor among the arguments*; supply a linking verb, οὐδὲν is neuter subject; πραγμάτων and λόγων are partitive gen. with οὐδενὸς; πραγμάτων refer to τὰ ὄντα ‘the things which are’ in the next line
4 **τὰ ὄντα**: *the things which are*
5 **ἐν Εὐρίπῳ**: i.e. the tide in the Euripus
χρόνον οὐδένα: *for…*; acc. duration
οὐδενὶ: i.e. place, dat. of place where
7 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
8 **ἂν εἴη**: *would be*; potential opt. εἰμί
9 **ὄντος...δυνατοῦ**: *while an argument is…*; gen. abs. εἰμί

κατανοῆσαι, ἔπειτα διὰ τὸ παραγίγνεσθαι τοιούτοις τισὶ **d**
λόγοις, τοῖς αὐτοῖς τοτὲ μὲν δοκοῦσιν ἀληθέσιν εἶναι, τοτὲ
δὲ μή, μὴ ἑαυτόν τις αἰτιῷτο μηδὲ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ἀτεχνίαν,
ἀλλὰ τελευτῶν διὰ τὸ ἀλγεῖν ἅσμενος ἐπὶ τοὺς λόγους ἀφ᾽
ἑαυτοῦ τὴν αἰτίαν ἀπώσαιτο καὶ ἤδη τὸν λοιπὸν βίον μισῶν 5
τε καὶ λοιδορῶν τοὺς λόγους διατελοῖ, τῶν δὲ ὄντων τῆς
ἀληθείας τε καὶ ἐπιστήμης στερηθείη.

νὴ τὸν Δία, ἦν δ᾽ ἐγώ, οἰκτρὸν δῆτα.

πρῶτον μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη, τοῦτο εὐλαβηθῶμεν, καὶ μὴ **e**
παρίωμεν εἰς τὴν ψυχὴν ὡς τῶν λόγων κινδυνεύει οὐδὲν
ὑγιὲς εἶναι, ἀλλὰ πολὺ μᾶλλον ὅτι ἡμεῖς οὔπω ὑγιῶς ἔχομεν,
ἀλλὰ ἀνδριστέον καὶ προθυμητέον ὑγιῶς ἔχειν, σοὶ μὲν οὖν

αἰτιάομαι: accuse, charge; blame, 4
ἀλγέω: to feel pain, suffer, grief, 1
ἀνδριστεός, -ον: one must play the man, 1
ἀπ-ωθέω: to push away, repel, reject, 1
ἄσμενος, -η, -ον: well-pleased, glad, 4
ἀ-τεχνία, ἡ: lack of skill, lack of art, 1
δῆτα: certainly, to be sure, of course, 5
δια-τελέω: continue, live; accomplish, 1
εὐλαβέομαι: be cautious, be careful, beware, 5
Ζεύς, ὁ: Zeus, 11
κατα-νοέω: to understand, observe well, 2
κινδυνεύω: to risk, venture; it is likely, 7
λοιδορέω: to abuse, rail against, revile, 1
λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest, 3
μισέω: to hate, 4
νή: by…(+ acc, invoking a god), 14
οἰκτρός, -ή, -όν: pitable, pitiful, miserable, 2
οὔ-πω: not yet, 3
παρ-ίημι: to admit; let pass, let in, 1
παρα-γίγνομαι: to come near, be present, 11
προθυμητεός, -ον: one must be eager, 1
στερέω: to deprive from, rob, defraud, 5
τοτέ: sometimes, at some time, 4
ὑγιής, -ές: sound, healthy, wholesome, 7

d1 **κατανοῆσαι**: *capable to understand*; i.e. ‘capable to be understood’ aor. inf. as an epexegetic (explanatory) inf. with the adj. δυνατοῦ; English would prefer a pass. inf.
διὰ...παραγίγνεσθαι: *on account of (his) meeting with*; the missing subj. is a person
τοιούτοις...λόγοις: dat. of compound verb
2 **τοῖς αὐτοῖς**: *the same (arguments)…*; in apposition to λόγοις
τοτὲ μὲν...τοτὲ δὲ: *at one time…at another*
δοκοῦσιν: dat. pl. pres. pple
3 **μὴ...αἰτιῷτο**: *(if) one should not…*; the opt. (αἰτιάοιτο) is the main verb of the protasis starting with εἰ in c8; a pres. mid. optative in a fut. less vivid condition
4 **τελευτῶν**: *finally*; pple as adv.
ἅσμενος: *gladly*; an adj. in the nom. can often be translated as an adverb
ἐπὶ: *onto…*
5 **ἀπώσαιτο**: *should…*; aor. opt. ἀπ-ωθέω parallel to αἰτιῷτο
τὸν λοιπὸν βίον: *for…*; acc. of duration
3 **διατελοῖ**: *should…*; opt. in same protasis
6 **τῶν ὄντων**: *of the things which are*
τῆς ἀληθείας...ἐπιστήμης: *from…*; gen. of separation
7 **στερηθείη**: *(that one) should be…*; 3s aor pass. opt. in still the same protasis from c8
8 **τὸν Δία**: *Zeus*; acc. sg.
e1 **εὐλαβηθῶμεν...μὴ παρίωμεν**: *let us…and let us not…*; hortatory subj., aor. pass. dep. and pres. subj. παρ-ίημι
ὡς...ὅτι.: *that…that…*; object of παρίωμεν
2 **ἔχομεν**: *we are…*; + adv., see p. 7
3 **ἀνδριστέον...**: *one must be a man and be eager*; impers. verbal adj. for obligation

καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις καὶ τοῦ ἔπειτα βίου παντὸς ἕνεκα, ἐμοὶ δὲ
91 *αὐτοῦ ἕνεκα τοῦ θανάτου, ὡς κινδυνεύω ἔγωγε ἐν τῷ παρόντι περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου οὐ φιλοσόφως ἔχειν ἀλλ᾽ ὥσπερ οἱ πάνυ ἀπαίδευτοι φιλονίκως. καὶ γὰρ ἐκεῖνοι ὅταν περί του ἀμφισβητῶσιν, ὅπῃ μὲν ἔχει περὶ ὧν ἂν ὁ λόγος ᾖ οὐ φροντί-*
5 *ζουσιν, ὅπως δὲ ἃ αὐτοὶ ἔθεντο ταῦτα δόξει τοῖς παροῦσιν, τοῦτο προθυμοῦνται. καὶ ἐγώ μοι δοκῶ ἐν τῷ παρόντι τοσοῦτον μόνον ἐκείνων διοίσειν· οὐ γὰρ ὅπως τοῖς παροῦσιν ἃ ἐγὼ λέγω δόξει ἀληθῆ εἶναι προθυμήσομαι, εἰ μὴ εἴη πάρεργον, ἀλλ᾽ ὅπως αὐτῷ ἐμοὶ ὅτι μάλιστα δόξει οὕτως*
b *ἔχειν. λογίζομαι γάρ, ὦ φίλε ἑταῖρε—θέασαι ὡς πλεονεκτικῶς—εἰ μὲν τυγχάνει ἀληθῆ ὄντα ἃ λέγω, καλῶς δὴ*

ἀμφισ-βητέω: stand apart, disagree, dispute, 1
ἀ-παίδευτος, -ον: uneducated, crude, 1
δια-φέρω: to differ, surpass; carry over; 8
ἕνεκα: for (the sake of), because of, (gen.) 13
ἑταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate, 11
θεάομαι: to see, watch, look at; consider, 3
καλῶς: well; beautifully, 11
κινδυνεύω: to risk, venture; it is likely, 7
λογίζομαι: to reason, calculate, count, 9
ὅπῃ: where; in what way, how, 11
ὅπως: how, in what way; in order that, that 10
πάρ-εργον, τό: secondary or indirect matter 1
πλεονεκτικός, -ή, -όν: greedy, grasping, 1
προ-θυμέομαι: be eager for, zealous for, 12
τίθημι: to set, put, place, arrange, 10
τοσοῦτος, -αύτη, -οῦτο: so great, so many, 3
φιλο-νίκος, -ον: fond of victory, ambition, 1
φίλος -η -ον: dear, friendly; *noun* friend, kin 8
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18
φροντίζω: to think, worry, give heed to, 3

4 **τοῦ ἔπειτα βίου**: *future life*; 'life hereafter'
91a1 **αὐτοῦ ἕνεκα...θανάτου**: *for the sake of my death itself*
ὡς: *since*
κινδυνεύω: as often, this verb governs an inf. an may be translated as 'run to risk to…' or 'is likely to'
παρόντι: *present (moment);* pple πάρειμι
2 **φιλοσόφως ἔχειν**: *to be philosophic, to be disposed philosophically,*; see p. 7
3 **φιλονίκως (ἔχειν)**: parallel to line 2 above
καὶ γὰρ: *for in fact*
του: *something*; alternative to gen. τινος
ἀμφισβητῶσιν: 3p pres. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause
4 **ὅπῃ...ἔχει περὶ...λόγος ᾖ**: this is the object of φροντίζουσι; ὅπῃ...ἔχει, 'how it is…,' refers to whether the λόγος is true or false; ᾖ is 3s subj. εἰμί in an indefinite relative clause beginning with περὶ ὧν
5 **ὅπως....δόξει**: *but that…will seem*; in apposition to τοῦτο in l. 6
ἃ...ἔθεντο: *which they themselves proposed* aor. mid. τίθημι (θε), the antecedent is ταῦτα, the neuter pl. subject of δόξει
τοῖς παροῦσιν: dat. pl. pple πάρειμι
7 **τοσοῦτον μόνον**: *only so much*; inner acc. + adverbial acc.
ἐκείνων: *from those*; i.e. οἱ ἀπαίδευτοι, gen. of comparison with διαφέρω (S 1401)
διοίσειν: fut. διαφέρω
ὅπως...δόξει: see line 5 above
8 **(ταῦτα) ἃ..λέγω**: *these things which*…; add antecedent ταῦτα as subject of δόξει
εἰ μὴ...πάρεργον: *except it is…*
9 **ὅτι μάλιστα**: *as much as possible*
(ἃ...λέγω) δόξει: *(what I say) seem*
b1 **θέασαι ὡς**: *watch how…!*; aor. imperative

ἔχει τὸ πεισθῆναι· εἰ δὲ μηδέν ἐστι τελευτήσαντι, ἀλλ᾽ οὖν τοῦτόν γε τὸν χρόνον αὐτὸν τὸν πρὸ τοῦ θανάτου ἧττον τοῖς παροῦσιν ἀηδὴς ἔσομαι ὀδυρόμενος, ἡ δὲ ἄνοιά μοι αὕτη οὐ συνδιατελεῖ—κακὸν γὰρ ἂν ἦν—ἀλλ᾽ ὀλίγον ὕστερον ἀπολεῖται. παρεσκευασμένος δή, ἔφη, ὦ Σιμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, οὑτωσὶ ἔρχομαι ἐπὶ τὸν λόγον· ὑμεῖς μέντοι, ἂν ἐμοὶ πείθησθε, σμικρὸν φροντίσαντες Σωκράτους, τῆς δὲ ἀληθείας πολὺ μᾶλλον, ἐὰν μέν τι ὑμῖν δοκῶ ἀληθὲς λέγειν, συνομολογήσατε, εἰ δὲ μή, παντὶ λόγῳ ἀντιτείνετε, εὐλαβούμενοι ὅπως μὴ ἐγὼ ὑπὸ προθυμίας ἅμα ἐμαυτόν τε καὶ ὑμᾶς ἐξαπατήσας, ὥσπερ μέλιττα τὸ κέντρον ἐγκαταλιπὼν οἰχήσομαι.

ἀλλ᾽ ἰτέον, ἔφη. πρῶτόν με ὑπομνήσατε ἃ ἐλέγετε, ἐὰν μὴ φαίνωμαι μεμνημένος. Σιμμίας μὲν γάρ, ὡς ἐγῷμαι,

---

ἀ-ηδής, -ές: unpleasant, disagreeable
ἄ-νοια, ἡ: folly, lack of understanding, 3
ἀντι-τείνω: to resist, strive against (dat) 2
ἐγ-καταλείπω: to leave behind, leave out, 1
ἐξ-απατάω: to deceive, beguile, 4
εὐλαβέομαι: be cautious, be careful, beware, 5
ἧττων, -ον: less, weaker, inferior, 16
ἰτέος, -ον: one must go (ἔρχομαι), 2
κέντρον, τό: sting; spur, goad, 1
μελιττα, ἡ: bee, 2
μιμνήσκω: to remind, recall, recollect, 6
ὀδύρομαι: to lament, bewail, mourn, 1
οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 14
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small, 15
ὅπως: how, in what way; in order that, that 10
οὑτωσί: in this way, thus, so, 2
παρα-σκευάζω: to get ready, prepare, 8
προ-θυμία, ἡ: eagerness, zeal, enthusiasm, 1
σμικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little, 19
συν-διατελέω: to continue, last (to the end) 1
συν-ομολογέω: to agree with, say the same, 4
ὑπο-μιμνήσκω: to remind, mention, 3
ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; *adv*. later 17
φροντίζω: think, worry, give heed to, (gen) 3

3 **καλῶς δὴ ἔχει**: see p. 7
τὸ πεισθῆναι: articular inf. as subject; aor. pass. inf. πείθω
τελευτήσαντι: *(for me) after dying*; aor. pple; i.e. no afterlife
ἀλλ(ὰ) οὖν...γε: *well, at any rate*; γε emphasizes the preceding (GP 444, S 2957)
4 **τοῦτόν...τοῦ θανάτου**: *during, at least,…*; acc. of duration
ἧττον: *less*; comparative adv. with ἀηδὴς
τοῖς παροῦσιν: *to those…*; pple πάρειμι
5 **ἔσομαι**: 1s fut. deponent εἰμί
ὀδυρόμενος: *by…*; pple is causal in sense
ἄνοια....αὕτη: i.e. the belief in an afterlife
μοι: *of mine*; dat. of possession
6 **συνδιατελεῖ**: fut. tense
ἂν ἦν: *it would be…*; ἄν + impf. is present (unrealized) potential
ὀλίγον: *a little*; adv. (acc. extent by degree)
ἀπολεῖται: fut. ἀπόλλυμι
9 **οὑτωσὶ**: *in this here way*; deictic ί ending intensifies the demonstrative
ἔρχομαι ἐπὶ...: *I come to…*; i.e. approach…
ἂν: *if…*; (ἐ)ἀν + 2p pres. subj. πείθω
c1 **σμικρὸν**: *little*; inner acc.
Σωκράτους: Σωκράτε-ος, obj. of pple
τῆς δὲ ἀληθείας...μᾶλλον (φροντίσαντες): *but…*; add pple, parallel to previous phrase
2 **συνομολογήσατε, ἀντιτείνετε**: imperatives
4 **ὅπως μὴ**: *that…not*; effort cl.+ fut (S 2231)
6 **ἰτέον**: *(we) must go on*; impers. verbal adj.
7 **φαίνωμαι**: *appear to have…*; + pf. pple.

ἀπιστεῖ τε καὶ φοβεῖται μὴ ἡ ψυχὴ ὅμως καὶ θειότερον καὶ
d *κάλλιον ὂν τοῦ σώματος προαπολλύηται ἐν ἁρμονίας εἴδει*
οὖσα· Κέβης δέ μοι ἔδοξε τοῦτο μὲν ἐμοὶ συγχωρεῖν,
πολυχρονιώτερόν γε εἶναι ψυχὴν σώματος, ἀλλὰ τόδε
ἄδηλον παντί, μὴ πολλὰ δὴ σώματα καὶ πολλάκις κατα-
5 *τρίψασα ἡ ψυχὴ τὸ τελευταῖον σῶμα καταλιποῦσα νῦν*
αὐτὴ ἀπολλύηται, καὶ ᾗ αὐτὸ τοῦτο θάνατος, ψυχῆς ὄλε-
θρος, ἐπεὶ σῶμά γε ἀεὶ ἀπολλύμενον οὐδὲν παύεται. ἆρα
ἄλλ' ἢ ταῦτ' ἐστίν, ὦ Σιμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, ἃ δεῖ ἡμᾶς
ἐπισκοπεῖσθαι;
e *συνωμολογείτην δὴ ταῦτ' εἶναι ἄμφω.*
πότερον οὖν, ἔφη, πάντας τοὺς ἔμπροσθε λόγους οὐκ
ἀποδέχεσθε, ἢ τοὺς μέν, τοὺς δ' οὔ;

ἄ-δηλος, -ον: unclear, unknown, obscure, 1
ἄμφω: both (dual), 1
ἀ-πιστέω: to distrust, not believe (+ dat.), 8
ἀπο-δέχομαι: to accept, receive, 9
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
ἔμ-προσθεν: before, former; earlier, 7
ἐπι-σκοπέω: to examine, inspect, 3
θεῖος, -α, -ον: divine, sent by the gods, 15
καλλιων, -ον: more noble or beautiful, 7
κατα-λείπω: to leave behind, abandon, 1
κατα-τρίβω: wear out, rub down, 4
ὄλεθρος, ὁ: death, ruin, destruction, 3
ὅμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 13
παύω: to stop, make cease, 6
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14
πολυ-χρόνιος, -α, -ον: long-existing, 6
πότερος, -α, -ον: (untranslated), whether, 19
προ-απόλλυμαι: to perish beforehand, 1
συγ-χωρέω: agree, yield, come together, 13
συν-ομολογέω: to agree with, say the same, 4
τελευταῖος, -α, -ον: last, final, 5
φοβέω: to terrify, frighten; *mid*. fear, 15

7 **ὡς ἐγῷμαι**: *as…*; ἐγὼ οἶμαι; or οἴομαι
8 **μὴ...προαπολλύηται.**: *that…*; 'lest,' fearing clause (μή + subj.)
ὅμως...ὂν: *although…*; neuter sg. pple εἰμί is concessive in sense, modifies fem. ψυχή
d1 **τοῦ σώματος**: *than…*; gen. of comparison
ἐν ἁρμονίας εἴδει οὖσα: *since…*; pple is causal in sense, dat. sg. εἶδος
2 **ἐμοὶ**: *with me*; dat. of compound
3 **πολυχρονιώτερον...**: *(namely) that…*; in apposition to τοῦτο, obj. of συγχωρεῖν
σώματος: *than…*; gen. of comparison
4 **τόδε ἄδηλον παντί (εἶναι)**: *(he says that) this (is) unclear to everyone*
μὴ...ἀπολλύηται: *that…*; 'lest,' μή + subj. in a fearing clause following ἄδηλον
5 **τὸ τελευταῖον**: *finally*; adv. acc.
καταλιποῦσα: aor. pple καταλείπω
6 **αὐτὴ**: *itself*; intensive ἡ ψυχή
ᾗ: *is*; 3s pres. subj. in same clause, αὐτὸ τοῦτο is subject, and θάνατος is predicate
ψυχῆς ὄλεφρος: in apposition
7 **ἐπεὶ**: *since…*; causal in sense
οὐδὲν: *not at all*; inner acc.
παύεται: *cease* + complementary pple
8 **ἄλλ(ο) ἢ ταῦτ(α) ἐστίν**: *are these the things…?*; 'is it other than these things…?' ἄλλο τι ἤ often introduces a direct question and may be left untranslated
ἃ: *which…*; ταῦτα is the antecedent
e1 **συνωμολογείτην**: 3rd pl. dual impf.
ἄμφω: *both*; dual nom. subj.
2 **πότερον....ἤ**: *then do you…accept…or…?*
3 **τοὺς μέν, τοῦς δ' οὔ**: *some…not others*

τοὺς μέν, ἐφάτην, τοὺς δ᾽ οὔ.

τί οὖν, ἦ δ᾽ ὅς, περὶ ἐκείνου τοῦ λόγου λέγετε ἐν ᾧ ἔφαμεν τὴν μάθησιν ἀνάμνησιν εἶναι, καὶ τούτου οὕτως ἔχοντος ἀναγκαίως ἔχειν ἄλλοθι πρότερον ἡμῶν εἶναι τὴν ψυχήν, πρὶν ἐν τῷ σώματι ἐνδεθῆναι; 92

ἐγὼ μέν, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, καὶ τότε θαυμαστῶς ὡς ἐπείσθην ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ καὶ νῦν ἐμμένω ὡς οὐδενὶ λόγῳ.

καὶ μήν, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας, καὶ αὐτὸς οὕτως ἔχω, καὶ πάνυ ἂν θαυμάζοιμι εἴ μοι περί γε τούτου ἄλλο ποτέ τι δόξειεν.

καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης, ἀλλὰ ἀνάγκη σοι, ἔφη, ὦ ξένε Θηβαῖε, ἄλλα δόξαι, ἐάνπερ μείνῃ ἥδε ἡ οἴησις, τὸ ἁρμονίαν μὲν εἶναι σύνθετον πρᾶγμα, ψυχὴν δὲ ἁρμονίαν τινὰ ἐκ τῶν κατὰ τὸ

ἄλλο-θι: in another place, elsewhere, 7
ἀνά-μνησις, -εως, ἡ: recollection, recall, 11
δόξα, ἡ: opinion, reputation, honor, glory, 7
ἐμ-μένω: to abide in, remain, 1
ἐν-δέω: to bind, bind in, imprison, 3
θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel, be amazed at, 7
θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wonderful, marvelous, 11
Θηβαῖος, -η, -ον: Theban, 2
μάθησις, -εως, ἡ: learning, instruction, 6
μένω: to stay, remain, 8
ξένος, ὁ: guest-friend, friend, stranger, 3
οἴησις, -εως, ἡ: opinion, notion, 1
πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό: thing, act; matter, affair 18
σύν-θετος, -ον: put together, composite, 4

4 **τοὺς μέν, τοῦς δ᾽οὔ**: interlocutors often repeat the question (l. 3) to express assent
ἐφάτην: 3rd pers. dual impf. φημί
5 **ἦ δ᾽ὅς**: see note on p. 9
6 **τούτου...ἔχοντος**: gen. abs.; see p. 7
7 **ἀναγκαίως ἔχειν**: *that it is necessary that*; 'that it is disposed necessarily'
ἡμῶν: possessive with acc. subj. ψυχήν
92a1 **ἐνδεθῆναι**: aor. pass. inf. ἐνδέω, πρίν often governs an inf.
2 **καὶ...καὶ**: *both…and*
θαυμαστῶς ὡς: *how marvelously…*; once, 'it is marvelous how…' the neut. predicate θαυμαστόν has assimilated to the adv. ὡς
ἐπείσθην: 1s aor. pass. πείθω
3 **ὡς οὐδενὶ λόγῳ**: *as…*; dat. of compound verb
4 **καὶ μὴν**: *well certainly*; in acceptance of an invitation to speak (GP 356) but often used in tragedy to open a new scene or introduce a new character (S 2921)
5 **ἂν θαυμάζοιμι εἴ...δόξειεν**: *I would…, if… should seem good*; fut. less vivid condition (εί opt., ἄν + opt.), pres. and aor. opt.
περί γε τούτου: *concerning this, at least*
6 **ἀνάγκη**: *(it is) necessary*
7 **δόξαι**: aor. inf. δοκέω
μείνῃ: 3s aor. μένω
τὸ...εἶναι: *(namely) that…*; in apposition to οἴησις, articular inf.
8 **ἁρμονίαν τινὰ**: in apposition to ψυχὴν, the acc. subject of συγκεῖσθαι
κατὰ τὸ σῶμα: *in the body*

σῶμα ἐντεταμένων συγκεῖσθαι· οὐ γάρ που ἀποδέξῃ γε
b σαυτοῦ λέγοντος ὡς πρότερον ἦν ἁρμονία συγκειμένη, πρὶν ἐκεῖνα εἶναι ἐξ ὧν ἔδει αὐτὴν συντεθῆναι. ἢ ἀποδέξῃ;

οὐδαμῶς, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες.

αἰσθάνῃ οὖν, ἦ δ' ὅς, ὅτι ταὐτά σοι συμβαίνει λέγειν,
5 ὅταν φῇς μὲν εἶναι τὴν ψυχὴν πρὶν καὶ εἰς ἀνθρώπου εἶδός τε καὶ σῶμα ἀφικέσθαι, εἶναι δὲ αὐτὴν συγκειμένην ἐκ τῶν οὐδέπω ὄντων; οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἁρμονία γέ σοι τοιοῦτόν ἐστιν ᾧ ἀπεικάζεις, ἀλλὰ πρότερον καὶ ἡ λύρα καὶ αἱ χορδαὶ καὶ
c οἱ φθόγγοι ἔτι ἀνάρμοστοι ὄντες γίγνονται, τελευταῖον δὲ πάντων συνίσταται ἡ ἁρμονία καὶ πρῶτον ἀπόλλυται. οὕτος οὖν σοι ὁ λόγος ἐκείνῳ πῶς συνᾴσεται;

αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 11
ἀν-άρμοστος, -ον: not fitting, out-of-tune, 1
ἀπ-εικάζω: compare, copy from a model, 2
ἀπο-δέχομαι: to accept, receive, 9
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
ἐν-τείνω: to stretch, strain tight, 3
λύρα, ἡ: lyre, 11
οὐδαμῶς: in no way, not at all, 11
οὐδέ-πω: not yet, not as yet, 1
συγ-κείμαι: be composed, be compounded, 6
συμ-βαίνω: to happen, occur, result, 8
συν-ᾴδω: sing with, be attune with, agree, 1
συν-ίστημι: to set together, unite, combine, 2
συν-τίθημι: put together, combine, 7
τελευταῖος, -α, -ον: last, final, 5
φθόγγος, ὁ: voice, utterance, sound 2
χορδή, ἡ: string, gut-string, 7

9 **ἐντεταμένων**: *things…*; pf. pass. pple, the image of strings stretched and in harmony
ἀποδέξῃ: 2s fut. mid.
γε: *not indeed*; emphasizing οὐ
b1 **σ(ε)αυτοῦ λέγοντος**: gen. abs.
ὡς: *that…*; ind. disc.
πρότερον: adv. acc.
ἦν...συγκειμένη: *was (already) composed*; periphastic form impf. εἰμί + pple (S 1961)
2 **εἶναι**: *existed*
συντεθῆναι: pf. pass. inf. συντίθημι
ἀποδέξῃ: ἀποδέξε(σ)αι, 2s fut. mid.
4 **αἰσθάνῃ**: αἰσθάνε(σ)αι, 2s pres. mid.
5 **ἦ δ'ὅς**: see note on p. 9
ταῦτα...λέγειν: *you happen to say these things*; 'it happens to you to say these things,' impers. verb and dat. of interest
φῇς: 2s pres. subj. φημί in a indefinite temporal clause
εἶναι: *exists*
ἀνθρώπου: modifies both εἶδος and σῶμα
6 **ἀφικέσθαι**: aor. inf., τὴν ψυχήν is subject
εἶναι δὲ αὐτὴν συγκειμένην: *but it is (already) composed*; see line b1
τῶν...ὄντων: *things which are*
7 **οὐ γὰρ δὴ**: *for of course…not*; employed with ge to eliminate a possibilty (GP 244)
8 **ᾧ**: *to which*; dat. of compound verb
c1 **ἔτι...ὄντες**: pple, εἰμί
τελευταῖον πάντων: *the last of all*; adv. acc. and partitive gen.
2 **οὕτος...ὁ λόγος**: *this argument*; i.e. that the soul is a harmony
3 **ἐκείνῳ (λόγῳ)**: *with that argument*; i.e. that the soul is recollection; dat. compound

οὐδαμῶς, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας.

καὶ μήν, ἦ δ' ὅς, πρέπει γε εἴπερ τῳ ἄλλῳ λόγῳ συνῳδῷ εἶναι καὶ τῷ περὶ ἁρμονίας.

πρέπει γάρ, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας.

οὗτος τοίνυν, ἔφη, σοὶ οὐ συνῳδός· ἀλλ' ὅρα πότερον αἱρῇ τῶν λόγων, τὴν μάθησιν ἀνάμνησιν εἶναι ἢ ψυχὴν ἁρμονίαν;

πολὺ μᾶλλον, ἔφη, ἐκεῖνον, ὦ Σώκρατες. ὅδε μὲν γάρ μοι γέγονεν ἄνευ ἀποδείξεως μετὰ εἰκότος τινὸς καὶ εὐπρεπείας, ὅθεν καὶ τοῖς πολλοῖς δοκεῖ ἀνθρώποις· ἐγὼ δὲ τοῖς διὰ τῶν εἰκότων τὰς ἀποδείξεις ποιουμένοις λόγοις σύνοιδα οὖσιν ἀλαζόσιν, καὶ ἄν τις αὐτοὺς μὴ φυλάττηται, εὖ μάλα

αἱρέω: to seize, take; *mid*. choose, 4
ἀλαζών, -όνος, ὁ, ἡ: pretentious, braggart; subst. imposter, pretender, vagabond, 1
ἀνά-μνησις, -εως, ἡ: recollection, recall, 11
ἄνευ: without, 9
ἀπό-δειξις, εως, ἡ: demonstration, proof, 4
εἰκός, ότος, τό: likely, probable, reasonable 18
εὐ-πρεπεία, ἡ: attractiveness; plausibility, 1
μάθησις, -εως, ἡ: learning, instruction, 6
μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 10
ὅ-θεν: from where, from which, 4
οὐδαμῶς: in no way, not at all, 11
πρέπει: it is fitting, it is suitable (impers.) 8
σύν-οιδα: to know of, be conscious of (dat), 1
συν-ῳδός, -ον: in tune, in harmony, 2
φυλάττω: to guard, keep watch over, 1

5 **καὶ μὴν...γε**: *and yet…in fact*; καὶ μὴν can often be positive, but here it is adversative and γε introduces a point of greater importance (GP 358)
ἦ δ'ὅς: see note on p. 9
πρέπει...ἁρμονίας: *it is appropriate--if any other argument to be in tune—in fact for the (argument) concerning harmony (to be in tune)*; i.e. the argument of the soul as harmony should in tune with the argument of the soul as recollection; πρέπει governs a dative; καί is adverbial
7 **γὰρ**: *(yes), for…*
8 **ὅρα**: ὅρα-ε, imperative
9 **αἱρῇ**: 2s pres. mid.
τῶν λόγων: partitive gen. with πότερον, 'which one'
11 **πολύ**: *far, by far*; adv. acc. (acc. of extent by degree)
ἐκεῖνον: i.e. the λόγος that learning is recollection
ὅδε: *this (other) one*; i.e. the λόγος that the soul is harmony
d1 **γέγονεν**: pf. γίγνομαι
εἰκότος: *likelihood, probabilty*
2 **ὅθεν**: i.e. for which reason
καὶ: *also*
3 **διὰ τῶν εἰκότων...ποιουμένοις**: *having made their proofs through likelihoods*
4 **οὖσιν**: dat. pl. pple εἰμί
ἀλαζόσιν: dat. predicate
d1 **ἄν...φυλάττηται**: *if…is on guard against*; (ἐ)ἀν, a present general condition (εἰ ἄν subj., pres. ind.)

5 *ἐξαπατῶσι, καὶ ἐν γεωμετρίᾳ καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις ἅπασιν. ὁ δὲ περὶ τῆς ἀναμνήσεως καὶ μαθήσεως λόγος δι' ὑποθέσεως ἀξίας ἀποδέξασθαι εἴρηται. ἐρρήθη γάρ που οὕτως ἡμῶν εἶναι ἡ ψυχὴ καὶ πρὶν εἰς σῶμα ἀφικέσθαι, ὥσπερ αὐτῆς ἐστιν ἡ οὐσία ἔχουσα τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν τὴν τοῦ 'ὃ ἔστιν'*

e *ἐγὼ δὲ ταύτην, ὡς ἐμαυτὸν πείθω, ἱκανῶς τε καὶ ὀρθῶς ἀποδέδεγμαι. ἀνάγκη οὖν μοι, ὡς ἔοικε, διὰ ταῦτα μήτε ἐμαυτοῦ μήτε ἄλλου ἀποδέχεσθαι λέγοντος ὡς ψυχή ἐστιν ἁρμονία.*

τί δέ, ἦ δ' ὅς, ὦ Σιμμία, τῇδε; δοκεῖ σοι ἁρμονίᾳ ἢ ἄλλῃ

93 *τινὶ συνθέσει προσήκειν ἄλλως πως ἔχειν ἢ ὡς ἂν ἐκεῖνα ἔχῃ ἐξ ὧν ἂν συγκέηται;*

οὐδαμῶς.

ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 14
ἀνά-μνησις, -εως, ἡ: recollection, recall, 11
ἄξιος, -α, -ον: worthy of, deserving of, 15
ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: every, quite all, 14
ἀπο-δέχομαι: to accept, receive, 9
γεω-μετρία, ἡ: geometry, land survey, 1
ἐξ-απατάω: to deceive, beguile, 4
ἐπωνυμία, ἡ: a nickname, surname, 5
μάθησις, -εως, ἡ: learning, instruction, 6
μή-τε: and not, neither...nor, 15
οὐδαμῶς: in no way, not at all, 11
οὐσία, ἡ: being, essence, substance, 6
προσ-ήκει: it belongs to, it is fitting, befits 15
πως: somehow, in any way, 3
συγ-κείμαι: be composed, be compounded, 6
συν-θέσις, -εως ἡ: composition, combination 1
τῇδε: here; in this way, thus, 8
ὑπο-θέσις, -εως, ἡ: proposal, hypothesis, 6

5 **ἐξαπατῶσι**: *(the arguments) deceive (us)*; 3p pres. or possibly dat. pl. α-contract pple modifying λόγοις in d3
καὶ...καὶ...: *both…and*
7 **ἀξίας ἀποδέξασθαι**: *worthy to accept*; an aor. mid. epexegetic (explanatory) inf., English prefers the passive: 'worthy to be accepted'
εἴρηται: pf. pass. λέγω (ἐρ-)
ἐρρήθη: 3s aor. pass. λέγω (ἐρ-)
8 **καὶ πρὶν**: *even before…*
ὥσπερ...'ὃ ἔστιν': *just as being exists, having the name of "what it is"*; The use of gen. αὐτῆς is not easy to determine. Rowe prefers the less attestable reading αὐτή, 'being itself'
e1 **ταύτην**: referring to fem. sg. ἡ οὐσία
ἀποδέδεγμαι: pf. mid. ἀποδέχομαι
2 **ἀνάγκη…ἀποδέχεσθαι**: *(it is) necessary to accept*
3 **ἐμαυτοῦ...ἄλλου...λέγοντος**: *from… nor from…*; gen. of source, ἀποδέχεσθαι is dependent on ἀνάγκη, not the genitive
4 **τί δέ**: *what (about)*; as often, employed to make a further point
ἦ δ'ὅς: see note on p. 9
ἁρμονίᾳ...προσήκειν: *that it belongs to harmony or…*; προσήκειν is impersonal and governs a dat. of compound verb
3 **ἄλλως πως ἔχειν**: *to be…*; the true subject of προσήκειν; for ἔχω + adv., see p. 7
93a1 **ἢ ὡς ἂν...ἔχῃ**: *than in whatever way those things are (disposed)*; ἔχω + adv.
2 **ἐξ ὧν ἂν...**: ἄν + subj. in an indefinite relative clause

οὐδὲ μὴν ποιεῖν τι, ὡς ἐγῷμαι, οὐδέ τι πάσχειν ἄλλο παρ' ἃ ἂν ἐκεῖνα ἢ ποιῇ ἢ πάσχῃ; συνέφη.

οὐκ ἄρα ἡγεῖσθαί γε προσήκει ἁρμονίαν τούτων ἐξ ὧν ἂν συντεθῇ, ἀλλ' ἕπεσθαι. συνεδόκει.

πολλοῦ ἄρα δεῖ ἐναντία γε ἁρμονία κινηθῆναι ἂν ἢ φθέγξασθαι ἤ τι ἄλλο ἐναντιωθῆναι τοῖς αὑτῆς μέρεσιν.

πολλοῦ μέντοι, ἔφη.

τί δέ; οὐχ οὕτως ἁρμονία πέφυκεν εἶναι ἑκάστη ἁρμονία ὡς ἂν ἁρμοσθῇ;

οὐ μανθάνω, ἔφη.

ἢ οὐχί, ἦ δ' ὅς, ἂν μὲν μᾶλλον ἁρμοσθῇ καὶ ἐπὶ πλέον, εἴπερ ἐνδέχεται τοῦτο γίγνεσθαι, μᾶλλόν τε ἂν ἁρμονία εἴη καὶ **b**
πλείων, εἰ δ' ἧττόν τε καὶ ἐπ' ἔλαττον, ἧττων τε καὶ ἐλάττων;

ἁρμόζω: harmonize, fit together, join, adapt 7
ἐναντιόομαι: to oppose, contradict (dat) 5
ἐν-δέχομαι: allow, admit; is allowed, 3
ἕπομαι: to follow, accompany, escort, 9
ἧττων, -ον: less, weaker, inferior, 16
κινέω: to set in motion, move, 3
μανθάνω: to learn, understand, 12
μέρος, -έος, τό: a part, share, portion, 4
πλέ(ι)ων, -ον: more, greater, 17
προσ-ήκει: it belongs to, it is fitting, befits 15
σύμ-φημι: to agree, approve, 3
συν-δοκέω: to seem good also, 6
συν-τίθημι: put together, combine, compose 7
φθέγγομαι: to utter a sound, voice, speak, 2
φύω: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by nature, 14

4 **οὐδὲ μὴν...πάσχῃ**: *certainly (does it seem to you belong to harmony) neither to do something, as I suppose, nor to suffer something other contrary to whatever those things either do or suffer?*; supply δοκεῖ σοι προσήκειν ἁρμονίᾳ; παρά + acc. here means 'contrary to' and introduces an indefinite relative clause (ἄν + 3s subj.)
οὐδὲ μὴν: *certainly neither…*; GP 339
ὡς ἐγῷμαι: *as…*; ἐγὼ οἶμαι (οἴομαι)
5 **συνέφη**: *he agreed*; 3s impf. σύνφημι
6 **ἡγεῖσθαι**: *lead*; in contrast to ἕπεσθαι
προσήκει: *it is fitting*; governs acc. subj. + inf. construction
ἂν συντεθῇ: 3s aor. pass. subj. συντίθημι in an indefinite relative clause
7 **συνεδόκει**: *he agrees*
8 **πολλοῦ...δεῖ**: *is far from* + inf.; 'lacks from much,' gen. of separation, the subject is ἁρμονία
ἐναντία: *in opposite directions*; inner acc.
κινηθῆναι: *moving*; aor. pass. inf. deponent
ἄν: leave untranslated, ἄν + inf. is equiv. here to past potential in dir. disc., see l. 14
9 **τι ἄλλο ἐναντιωθῆναι**: *doing any other thing opposing*; inner acc., aor. pass. deponent inf.
τοῖς (ἑ)αυτῆς μέρεσιν: obj of ἐναντιωθῆναι
10 **πολλοῦ μέντοι**: repeating l. 8 as an assent
11 **τί δὲ**: *what (then)?*; a new argument
πέφυκεν εἶναι: *is by nature*; 'has grown by nature to be'; pf. φύω is often translated 'is by nature' but here with a superfluous inf.
12 **ὡς ἂν**: *in whatever way…*; 3s aor. pass.
14 **ἢ οὐχί (ἐ)ὰν...,ἂν εἴη.**: *or if it is harmonized would harmony not be…?*; mixed condition εἰ ἄν + subj. (aor. pass.), ἄν + opt.. (εἰμί)
καὶ ἐπὶ πλέον: *and to a greater extent*
b2 **εἰ δ'ἧττον...**: *if (it is harmonized)*; add verb
ἐπ(ι) ἔλαττον: *and to a lesser extent*

πάνυ γε.

ἦ οὖν ἔστι τοῦτο περὶ ψυχήν, ὥστε καὶ κατὰ τὸ σμικρό-
5 *τατον μᾶλλον ἑτέραν ἑτέρας ψυχῆς ἐπὶ πλέον καὶ μᾶλλον ἢ ἐπ᾽ ἔλαττον καὶ ἧττον αὐτὸ τοῦτο εἶναι, ψυχήν;*

οὐδ᾽ ὁπωστιοῦν, ἔφη.

φέρε δή, ἔφη, πρὸς Διός· λέγεται ψυχὴ ἡ μὲν νοῦν τε ἔχειν καὶ ἀρετὴν καὶ εἶναι ἀγαθή, ἡ δὲ ἄνοιάν τε καὶ μοχθηρίαν
c **c** *καὶ εἶναι κακή; καὶ ταῦτα ἀληθῶς λέγεται;*

ἀληθῶς μέντοι.

τῶν οὖν θεμένων ψυχὴν ἁρμονίαν εἶναι τί τις φήσει ταῦτα ὄντα εἶναι ἐν ταῖς ψυχαῖς, τήν τε ἀρετὴν καὶ τὴν
5 *κακίαν; πότερον ἁρμονίαν αὖ τινα ἄλλην καὶ ἀναρμοστίαν; καὶ τὴν μὲν ἡρμόσθαι, τὴν ἀγαθήν, καὶ ἔχειν ἐν αὑτῇ*

ἀν-αρμοστία, ἡ: discord, lack of harmony, 4
ἄ-νοια, ἡ: folly, lack of understanding, 3
ἀρετή, ἡ: excellence, goodness, virtue, 9
ἁρμόζω: harmonize, fit together, join, adapt 7
Ζεύς, ὁ: Zeus, 6
ἧττων, -ον: less, weaker, inferior, 16
κακία, ἡ: wickedness, flaw, cowardice, 6
μοχθηρία, ἡ: badness, depravity, 2
νοῦς, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14
ὁπωστιοῦν: in any way whatever, 5
πλέων, -ον: more, greater, 17
σμικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little, 19
τίθημι: to set, put, place, arrange, 10

4 **ἦ οὖν ἔστι τοῦτο...**: *in truth this the case...?*
ὥστε: *so that…*; result, governs acc. + inf.
5 **καὶ κατὰ τὸ σμικρότατον μᾶλλον**: *even in the smallest (degree)*; καὶ is adverbial, μᾶλλον is repeated and likely redundant
ἑτέραν (ψυχήν εἶναι) ἑτέρας ψυχῆς ἐπὶ πλέον καὶ μᾶλλον...ψυχήν: *that one (soul is) to a greater extent and more (fully) a soul than another soul…*; gen. comparison
6 **ἢ ἐπ᾽ἔλαττον...ἧττον**: *or to a lesser degree and less fully*; parallel to clause above
8 **φέρε δή**: *come now*; 'carry on, now'
πρὸς Διός: *by Zeus*; πρός + gen. is often used in invocation
ψυχὴ ἡ μὲν...ἡ δὲ: *one soul….another…*;
9 **ἄνοιάν...μοχθηρίαν (ἔχειν)**: supply the infinitive for parallelism
c3 **τῶν θεμένων**: *among those setting forth that…*; partitive gen., aor. mid. τίθημι
τί: *what*; interrogative
φήσει: fut. φημί
4 **ὄντα...ἐν ταῖς ψυχαῖς**: *being in the souls*; this phrase modifies acc. subject ταῦτα
τήν τε ἀρετῆν...: in apposition to ταῦτα
5 **πότερον**: leave untranslated
6 **καὶ τὴν μὲν ἡρμόσθαι**: *and that the one is in harmony*; τὴν μὲν is acc. subject and is explained by the appositive τὴν ἀγαθήν, pf. pass. ἁρμόζω denotes a state
ἐν (ἑ)αυτῇ...: *in itself*; modified by the pple εἰμί and a dat. predicate, ἁρμονίᾳ οὔσῃ; Socrates suggests harmony within harmony

Philosophical Vocabulary: The following comparatives are near equivalents in the argument.

ἐπὶ πλέον (to a greater extent)	is equivalent to	μᾶλλον (more fully)
ἐπὶ ἔλαττον (to a less extent)	is equivalent to	ἧττον (less fully)

ἁρμονίᾳ οὔσῃ ἄλλην ἁρμονίαν, τὴν δὲ ἀνάρμοστον αὐτήν τε εἶναι καὶ οὐκ ἔχειν ἐν αὑτῇ ἄλλην;

οὐκ ἔχω ἔγωγ', ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας, εἰπεῖν· δῆλον δ' ὅτι τοιαῦτ' ἄττ' ἂν λέγοι ὁ ἐκεῖνο ὑποθέμενος.

ἀλλὰ προωμολόγηται, ἔφη, μηδὲν μᾶλλον μηδ' ἧττον **d** *ἑτέραν ἑτέρας ψυχὴν ψυχῆς εἶναι· τοῦτο δ' ἔστι τὸ ὁμολόγημα, μηδὲν μᾶλλον μηδ' ἐπὶ πλέον μηδ' ἧττον μηδ' ἐπ' ἔλαττον ἑτέραν ἑτέρας ἁρμονίαν ἁρμονίας εἶναι. ἦ γάρ;*

πάνυ γε.

τὴν δέ γε μηδὲν μᾶλλον μηδὲ ἧττον ἁρμονίαν οὖσαν μήτε μᾶλλον μήτε ἧττον ἡρμόσθαι· ἔστιν οὕτως;

ἔστιν.

ἀν-άρμοστος, -ον: not fitting, out-of-tune, 1
ἁρμόζω: harmonize, fit together, join, adapt 7
δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 14
ἦ: in truth, truly (begins open question), 5
ἧττων, -ον: less, weaker, inferior, 16
ὁμολόγημα, -ατος, τό: what is agreed upon 1
πλέων, -ον: more, greater, 17
προ-ομολογέω: agree or grant beforehand, 1
ὑπο-τίθημι: to set up, suppose, propose, 4

7 **τὴν δὲ**: *but the other is*..
ἀναρμοστον: fem. sg. adj., acc. predicate
8 **ἐν αὑτῇ**: ἐν ἑαυτῇ
ἄλλην (ἁρμονίαν): parallel to lines 6-7
9 **ἔχω**: *I am able*; 'I have the capacity to'
δῆλον ὅτι: *(it is) clear that…*; or 'clearly'
ἄττ(α): *some*; an alternative form for the indefinite neuter pl. τινά
ἂν λέγοι: *would…*; potential opt.
ὁ...ὑποθέμενος: aor. mid. pple; ὑποτίθημι
d1 **προωμολόγηται**: *it*…; impers. pf. pass.
μηδὲν: *that not at all*; adv. acc. (acc. of extent by degree) modifies 2 comparatives
2 **μᾶλλον μηδὲ ἧττον**: see box on p. 136
ἑτέραν ἑτέρας ψυχὴν ψυχῆς: ἑτέραν ψυχὴν is acc. subj. while ἑτέρας ψυχῆς is gen. of comparison; the stylistic device (interlocking word order) is synchesis
3 **μηδὲν**: *that not at all*; see line d1
μᾶλλον... ἐπὶ ἔλαττον: see box on p. 136
4 **ἑτέραν ἑτέρας ἁρμονίαν ἁρμονίας**: parallel to d2 above
ἦ γάρ: *is this so?* (S 2805)
5 **πάνυ γε**: *quite so*
3 **τὴν δέ γε (ἁρμονίαν)...οὖσαν**: *but has that harmony being…*; acc. subj. of ἁρμόσθαι
6 **μηδὲν**: *not at all*; see line d1
ἡρμόσθαι: *is in harmony*; pf. pass. denotes a state rather than an activity

ἡ δὲ μήτε μᾶλλον μήτε ἧττον ἡρμοσμένη ἔστιν ὅτι πλέον
10 *ἢ ἔλαττον ἁρμονίας μετέχει, ἢ τὸ ἴσον;*

τὸ ἴσον.

οὐκοῦν ψυχὴ ἐπειδὴ οὐδὲν μᾶλλον οὐδ' ἧττον ἄλλη
e *ἄλλης αὐτὸ τοῦτο, ψυχή, ἐστίν, οὐδὲ δὴ μᾶλλον οὐδὲ ἧττον ἥρμοσται;*

οὕτω.

τοῦτο δέ γε πεπονθυῖα οὐδὲν πλέον ἀναρμοστίας οὐδὲ
5 *ἁρμονίας μετέχοι ἄν;*

οὐ γὰρ οὖν.

τοῦτο δ' αὖ πεπονθυῖα ἆρ' ἄν τι πλέον κακίας ἢ ἀρετῆς μετέχοι ἑτέρα ἑτέρας, εἴπερ ἡ μὲν κακία ἀναρμοστία, ἡ δὲ ἀρετὴ ἁρμονία εἴη;

ἀν-αρμοστία, ἡ: discord, lack of harmony, 4
ἀρετή, ἡ: excellence, goodness, virtue, 9
ἁρμόζω: harmonize, fit together, join, adapt 7
ἧττων, -ον: less, weaker, inferior, 16
κακία, ἡ: wickedness, flaw, cowardice, 6
μετ-έχω: to partake of, have share in (gen) 13
πλέων, -ον: more, greater, 17

9 **ἡ δὲ (ἁρμονία)...ἡρμοσμένη ἔστιν ὅτι**: *and that being neither more fully nor less fully harmonized, is it because…*; pf. pass. pple, the comparatives are adverbs
πλέον ἢ ἔλαττον: *greater (share) or lesser (share)…*; inner acc.; possibly equivalent to ἐπὶ πλέον, ἐπὶ ἔλαττον, see p. 136
10 **ἁρμονίας**: partitive gen. obj. of μετέχει
τὸ ἴσον: *equal (share)*; an inner acc.
12 **οὐκοῦν ψυχὴ...ἐστίν**: *then a soul, since one is not at all more fully nor less fully this itself, a soul, than another*; ἄλλης is a gen. of comparison; αὐτὸ τοῦτο is a predicate and ψυχή in apposition
e1 **δὴ**: *then, therefore*; inferential (GP 225)
2 **ἥρμοσται**: 3s pf. pass.
4 **πεπονθυῖα (ψυχὴ)**: *(a soul) having experienced…*; pf. pple. πάσχω , fem. sg. modifying the missing subject ψυχή
οὐδὲν: *not at all*; adv. acc. (acc. of extent by degree) modifying πλέον
πλέον: *greater (share)*; inner acc.
5 **μετέχοι ἄν**: *would…*; potential opt.
6 **οὐ γὰρ οὖν**: *no for certain*; 'no for sure' (S 2958) (GP 447)
7 **πεπονθυῖα (ψυχὴ)**: *(a soul)…*; pf. pple. πάσχω, supply a noun
ἆρ(α) ἄν...μετέχοι: introducing a yes/no question, potential opt.
τι: *at all*; adv. acc. (acc. of extent of degree) modifying πλέον
8 **ἑτέρα ἑτέρας**: *one (soul)…than another (soul)*; nom. subj. and gen. of comparison
εἴπερ...εἴη: *if…should*; protasis in a fut. less vivid condition (εἰ opt., ἄν + opt.)

οὐδὲν πλέον.

μᾶλλον δέ γέ που, ὦ Σιμμία, κατὰ τὸν ὀρθὸν λόγον **94**
κακίας οὐδεμία ψυχὴ μεθέξει, εἴπερ ἁρμονία ἐστίν· ἁρμονία γὰρ δήπου παντελῶς αὐτὸ τοῦτο οὖσα, ἁρμονία, ἀναρμοστίας οὔποτ᾽ ἂν μετάσχοι.

οὐ μέντοι.

οὐδέ γε δήπου ψυχή, οὖσα παντελῶς ψυχή, κακίας.

πῶς γὰρ ἔκ γε τῶν προειρημένων;

ἐκ τούτου ἄρα τοῦ λόγου ἡμῖν πᾶσαι ψυχαὶ πάντων ζῴων ὁμοίως ἀγαθαὶ ἔσονται, εἴπερ ὁμοίως ψυχαὶ πεφύκασιν αὐτὸ τοῦτο, ψυχαί, εἶναι.

ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες.

ἀν-αρμοστία, ἡ: discord, lack of harmony, 4
δή-που: perhaps, I suppose; of course, 8
ζῷον, τό: a living being, animal, 6
κακία, ἡ: wickedness, flaw, cowardice, 6
μετ-έχω: to partake of, have share in (gen) 13
οὔ-ποτε: never, 1
παντελῶς: altogether, utterly, absolutely, 3
πλέων, -ον: more, greater, 17
προ-λέγω: to say or mention beforehand, 4
φύω: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by nature, 14

94a1 **οὐδὲν**: *not at all*; adv. acc. (acc. of extent by degree)
μᾶλλον δέ γέ: *but rather…*; μᾶλλον δέ, 'but rather' often makes a further point while δὲ γέ, 'yes, but' or 'and yet' often adds a remark to those of the previous speaker (GP 154)
κατὰ: *according to…*
2 **μεθέξει**: fut. μετέχω, governing a partitive gen.
3 **αὐτὸ τοῦτο**: predicate
ἁρμονία: in apposition to αὐτὸ τοῦτο
ἀναρμοστίας: gen. sg.
6 **οὐδέ γε**: *yes, but…not*; 'and, yet…not' a negative counterpart to δέ γέ, 'yes, but' in a2 (GP 156)
κακίας (ἂν μετάχοι): gen. obj., supply verb from above
7 **προειρημένων**: pf. pass. pple προλέγω
9 **ἔσονται**: 3p fut. dep. εἰμί
πεφύκασιν εἶναι: *are by nature*; 'have grown by nature to be'; pf. φύω is often translated 'is/are by nature' but here with a superfluous inf. 93a11
10 **ψυχαί**: in apposition to αὐτὸ τοῦτο

ἦ καὶ καλῶς δοκεῖ, ἦ δ' ὅς, οὕτω λέγεσθαι, καὶ πάσχειν
b *ἂν ταῦτα ὁ λόγος εἰ ὀρθὴ ἡ ὑπόθεσις ἦν, τὸ ψυχὴν ἁρμονίαν*
εἶναι;

οὐδ' ὁπωστιοῦν, ἔφη.

τί δέ; ἦ δ' ὅς· τῶν ἐν ἀνθρώπῳ πάντων ἔσθ' ὅτι ἄλλο
5 *λέγεις ἄρχειν ἢ ψυχὴν ἄλλως τε καὶ φρόνιμον;*

οὐκ ἔγωγε.

πότερον συγχωροῦσαν τοῖς κατὰ τὸ σῶμα πάθεσιν ἢ καὶ
ἐναντιουμένην; λέγω δὲ τὸ τοιόνδε, οἷον καύματος ἐνόντος
καὶ δίψους ἐπὶ τοὐναντίον ἕλκειν, τὸ μὴ πίνειν, καὶ πείνης
10 *ἐνούσης ἐπὶ τὸ μὴ ἐσθίειν, καὶ ἄλλα μυρία που ὁρῶμεν*
c *ἐναντιουμένην τὴν ψυχὴν τοῖς κατὰ τὸ σῶμα· ἢ οὔ;*

ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 14
ἄρχω: to rule, be leader of; begin; 12
δίψος, -εος, τό: thirst, 1
ἕλκω: to draw, drag; weigh, 3
ἐναντιόομαι: to oppose, contradict (dat) 5
ἔν-ειμι: to be in or within, 8
ἐσθίω: to eat, 3
καλῶς: well; beautifully, 11
καῦμα, -ατος, τό: fever, heat, 1
μυρίος, -η, -ον: countless, infinite, 6
ὁπωστιοῦν: in any way whatever, 5
πάθος -εος τό: experience incident passion 11
πείνη, ἡ: hunger, longing; famine, 2
πίνω: to drink, 16
πότερος, -α, -ον: (untranslated), whether, 19
συγ-χωρέω: agree, yield, come together, 13
ὑπο-θέσις, -εως, ἡ: proposal, hypothesis, 6
φρόνιμος, -ον: sensible, wise, prudent, 8

12 **καὶ καλῶς**: *quite well*; καὶ is adv. (S 2882)
δοκεῖ: the subject is ὁ λόγος in b1
ἦ δ'ὅς: see note on pg. 9
καὶ πάσχειν ἂν ταῦτα...εἰ...ἦν: *and would experience..., if...were*; equiv. to a present contrafactual condition in direct speech (εἰ + impf., ἄν + impf.); ταῦτα is an inner acc

b1 **τὸ...εἶναι**: *(namely) that*…; articular inf. in apposition to ἡ ὑπόθεσις

4 **τί δέ;**: *What then?*; 'what about this?' often introduces a new point and precedes another question
τῶν...πάντων: *among*...; partitive gen.
ἔσ(τι) ὅτι: *is there (anything) which*...; ἔστιν ὅ τι is missing an antecedent: 'is there (anything) which' (S 2513), ὅ τι is acc. subject of ἄρχειν

5 **ἄλλως τε καὶ**: *especially a sensible one*; 'both otherwise and,' φρόνιμον is fem. sg.

7 **(ψυχὴν) συγχωροῦσαν**: *yielding*...; + dat. both participles agree with understood ψυχὴν from l. 5, there is no finite verb
κατὰ τὸ σῶμα: *in the body*
καὶ: *even*

8 **λέγω δὲ τὸ τοιόνδε**: *I mean this sort*...
οἷον...ἕλκειν: *such as to draw*...; i.e. the question is whether the soul will be drawn to the opposite of the body itself; an epexegetic (explanatory) inf.
καύματος...δίψους: *(when) fear and thirst are in (the body)*; gen. abs.

9 **ἐπὶ τοὐνανίον**: *to*...; τὸ ἐναντίον
τὸ μὴ πίνειν: *(namely) not to be thirsty*; in apposition to τὸ ἐναντίον
πείνης ἐνούσης: *when*…; i.e. in the body, gen. abs. parallel to line 8

10 **ἐπὶ...ἐσθίειν**: parallel to ἐπὶ τοὐνανίον
ἄλλα μυρία: *in countless other ways*; 'in respect to…' acc. of respect

c1 **τοῖς...**: *those in*…; dat. of special verb

πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

οὐκοῦν αὖ ὡμολογήσαμεν ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν μήποτ' ἂν αὐτήν, ἁρμονίαν γε οὖσαν, ἐναντία ᾄδειν οἷς ἐπιτείνοιτο καὶ χαλῷτο καὶ ψάλλοιτο καὶ ἄλλο ὁτιοῦν πάθος πάσχοι ἐκεῖνα ἐξ ὧν τυγχάνοι οὖσα, ἀλλ' ἔπεσθαι ἐκείνοις καὶ οὔποτ' ἂν ἡγεμονεύειν;

ὡμολογήσαμεν, ἔφη· πῶς γὰρ οὔ;

τί οὖν; νῦν οὐ πᾶν τοὐναντίον ἡμῖν φαίνεται ἐργαζομένη, ἡγεμονεύουσά τε ἐκείνων πάντων ἐξ ὧν φησί τις αὐτὴν εἶναι, καὶ ἐναντιουμένη ὀλίγου πάντα διὰ παντὸς τοῦ βίου καὶ δεσπόζουσα πάντας τρόπους, τὰ μὲν χαλεπώτερον κολάζουσα καὶ μετ' ἀλγηδόνων, τά τε κατὰ τὴν γυμναστικὴν καὶ

ᾄδω (ἀείδω): to sing, play a song, 7
ἀλγηδών, -όνος, ἡ: pain, suffering, grief, 2
γυμναστική, ἡ: gymnastics, 1
δεσπόζω: to be master, lord, 3
ἐναντιόομαι: to oppose, contradict, 5
ἐπι-τείνω: to stretch over, tighten, 3
ἕπομαι: to follow, accompany, escort, 9
ἐργάζομαι: to work, labor, toil, 4
ἡγεμονεύω: to lead, rule, command (+gen) 3
κολάζω: to punish, correct, check, 1
μή-ποτε: not ever, never, 1
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small, 15
ὅστισ-οῦν, ἥτισουν, ὅτι-οῦν: whosoever, 11
οὔ-ποτε: never, 1
πάθος -εος τό: experience incident passion 11
πρόσθεν: before, 10
τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17
χαλάω: to loosen, release, slacken, 3
χαλεπός, -ά, -όν: difficult, hard, harmful, 5
ψάλλω: to pull, pluck, vibrate, play a lyre, 1

2 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
3 **ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν (λόγοις)**: *in the previous conversation*
μήποτε ἂν...ᾄδειν: *could sing things opposing*; equiv. to potential opt. in direct discourse
4 **αὐτὴν**: *that it…*; i.e. the soul, acc. subject
ἁρμονίαν γε οὖσαν: *since…*; pple εἰμί is conditional in force; ἁρμονίαν is predicate
οἷς ἐπιτείνοιτο...ἐκεῖνα...οὖσα:; *to (the things) which those (*ἐκεῖνα*) out of which (the soul) happens to be (composed) tighten and loosen and vibrate and experience whatever other experience*; neut. pl. ἐκεῖνα is subject of 3s opt verbs in an indefinite relative clause in secondary sequence; the relative οἷς (τούτοις ἃ) is acc. pl. Attracted into the dat. of the missing antecedent, a dat. of special adj. ἐναντία)
6 **ἔπεσθαι, ἡγεμονεύειν**: parallel to ᾄδειν , the soul is still acc. subject
8 **πῶς γὰρ οὔ**: *how (could it) not?*; lit. '(yes), for how could it not'
9 **πᾶν τ(ὸ) ἐναντίον**: acc. direct object
φαίνεται: supply ἡ ψυχή as subject
10 **ἐξ ὧν φησί τις αὐτὴν εἶναι**: *from which one says that it is (composed)*
d1 **ὀλίγου πάντα**: *in almost all things*; acc. of respect and gen. of separation, i.e. almost is lit. 'from a little' (see also 80c9)
2 **πάντας τρόπους**: *in all ways*; acc. respect
τὰ μὲν..τὰ δὲ...: *some (things)…other (things)*; 'some corrections…' inner acc.
χαλεπώτερον: comparative adv.
3 **τὰ τε κατὰ...**: *those in…*; in apposition

τὴν ἰατρικήν, τὰ δὲ πρᾳότερον, καὶ τὰ μὲν ἀπειλοῦσα, τὰ δὲ
5 *νουθετοῦσα, ταῖς ἐπιθυμίαις καὶ ὀργαῖς καὶ φόβοις ὡς ἄλλη οὖσα ἄλλῳ πράγματι διαλεγομένη; οἷόν που καὶ Ὅμηρος ἐν Ὀδυσσείᾳ πεποίηκεν, οὗ λέγει τὸν Ὀδυσσέα·*

στῆθος δὲ πλήξας κραδίην ἠνίπαπε μύθῳ·

e *'τέτλαθι δή, κραδίη· καὶ κύντερον ἄλλο ποτ' ἔτλης.'*

ἆρ' οἴει αὐτὸν ταῦτα ποιῆσαι διανοούμενον ὡς ἁρμονίας αὐτῆς οὔσης καὶ οἵας ἄγεσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν τοῦ σώματος παθη-
μάτων, ἀλλ' οὐχ οἵας ἄγειν τε ταῦτα καὶ δεσπόζειν, καὶ
5 *οὔσης αὐτῆς πολὺ θειοτέρου τινὸς πράγματος ἢ καθ' ἁρμονίαν;*

νὴ Δία, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ.

ἄγω: to lead, to bring, to carry, to convey, 12
ἀπ-ειλέω: to threaten; boast, promise, 1
δεσπόζω: to be master, lord, 3
δια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 13
δια-νοέομαι: to think, consider, intend, 6
ἐνίπτω: to upbraid, chide, reprove, 1
ἐπιθυμία, ἡ: desire, longing, yearning, 10
Ζεύς, ὁ: Zeus, 11
θεῖος, -α, -ον: divine, sent by the gods, 15
ἰατρική, ἡ: medicine, 1
κραδίη, ἡ: heart, 2
κύντερος, -η, -ον: more shameless/audacious 1
μῦθος, ὁ: story, word, speech, 7
νή: by…(+ acc, invoking a god), 14
νουθετέω: to admonish, warn; put in mind; 1
Ὀδυσσεία, ἡ: *the Odyssey*, 1
Ὀδυσσεύς, ὁ: Odysseus, 1
Ὅμηρος, ὁ: Homer, 3
ὀργή, ἡ: anger; temperment, passion, 2
πάθημα, -ατος, τό: experience, misfortune, 4
πλήττω: to strike, smite, 1
πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18
πρᾷος, -ον: mild, gentle, soft, 3
στῆθος, τό: chest, 1
τλάω: to suffer, undergo, 2
φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic, 10

4 **τὰ δὲ πρᾳότερον (κολάζουσα)**: *correcting other things more mildly*; add the missing pple, an inner acc. and comparative adv.
καὶ τὰ μὲν...τὰ δὲ: *and some(things)…other (things)*; inner acc.
5 **ταῖς ἐπιθυμίαις...**: *with*…; all are dat. of compound verb/ind. obj. with διαλεγομένη
ὡς ἄλλη οὖσα ἄλλῳ πράτματι: *as if being one thing (conversing) with another thing*; i.e. as if the soul is different from that from which it is composed
6 **οἷον**: *which sort of thing*…
καὶ: *also*
7 **οὗ**: *where*; relative adv.
τὸν Ὀδδυσέα: *(about) Odysseus*
8 **πλήξας**: nom. sg. aor. pple; πλήττω with neut. στῆθος as object; *Odys.* 20.17-18
ἠνίπαπε: aor. ἐνίπτω
μύθῳ: *in a speech*; dat. of means
e1 **τέτλαθι**: 2s pf. imperative, τλάω, δή
δὴ: *now*; or 'just,' an intensive particle
κραδίη: vocative, direct address
ἔτλης: aor. τλάω
2 **οἴει**: 2s pres. οἴομαι
αὐτὸν: *that he*…; i.e. Odysseus
ὡς...: *on the grounds that it (the soul) is a harmony and*…; ὡς + pple, alleged cause
3 **οἵας ἄγεσθαι**: *the sort to be led*…, gen. sg. predicate of οὔσης + explanatory inf.
οἵας ἄγεσθαι: *the sort to lead* …, gen.
5 **οὔσης αὐτῆς**: *(on the grounds that) it is*…
πολύ: *far*; adv. acc. (acc. extent by degree)
ἢ κατὰ...: *than for harmony* (S 1690.2.c), i.e. than compared to harmony

οὐκ ἄρα, ὦ ἄριστε, ἡμῖν οὐδαμῇ καλῶς ἔχει ψυχὴν ἁρμονίαν τινὰ φάναι εἶναι· οὔτε γὰρ ἄν, ὡς ἔοικεν, Ὁμήρῳ θείῳ ποιητῇ ὁμολογοῖμεν οὔτε αὐτοὶ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς.

ἔχει οὕτως, ἔφη.

εἶεν δή, ἦ δ' ὃς ὁ Σωκράτης, τὰ μὲν Ἁρμονίας ἡμῖν τῆς Θηβαϊκῆς ἵλεά πως, ὡς ἔοικε, μετρίως γέγονεν· τί δὲ δὴ τὰ Κάδμου, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, πῶς ἱλασόμεθα καὶ τίνι λόγῳ;

σύ μοι δοκεῖς, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, ἐξευρήσειν· τουτονὶ γοῦν τὸν λόγον τὸν πρὸς τὴν ἁρμονίαν θαυμαστῶς μοι εἶπες ὡς παρὰ δόξαν. Σιμμίου γὰρ λέγοντος ὅτε ἠπόρει, πάνυ ἐθαύμαζον εἴ τι ἔξει τις χρήσασθαι τῷ λόγῳ αὐτοῦ· πάνυ οὖν μοι ἀτόπως ἔδοξεν εὐθὺς τὴν πρώτην ἔφοδον οὐ δέξασθαι

ἀ-πορέω: be at a loss, puzzled, bewildered, 4
ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent, 6
ἄ-τοπος, -ον: strange, odd, extraordinary, 9
γοῦν: γε οὖν, at least, at any rate, any way, 4
δόξα, ἡ: opinion, reputation, honor, glory, 7
ἐξ-ευρίσκω: to find out, discover, 3
εὐθύς: right away, straight, directly, at once, 9
ἐφ-οδος, ἡ: attack, approach, access;, 1
θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel, be amazed at, 7
θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wonderful, marvelous, 11
θεῖος, -α, -ον: divine, sent by the gods, 15
Θηβαϊκός, -ή, -ον: Theban, 1
ἵλαος, -ον: propitious, gracious (Ion. **ἵλεος**) 2
ἱλάσκομαι: to propitiate, make propitious, 1
Κάδμος, -ου, ὁ: Cadmus, 2
καλῶς: well; beautifully, 11
μέτριος, -α, -ον: moderate, in due measure, 7
Ὅμηρος, ὁ: Homer, 3
οὐδαμῇ: in no place, in no way, not at all, 3
ποιητής, οῦ, ὁ: maker, creator, poet, 6
πως: somehow, in any way, 3
χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.) 11

8 **οὐκ...οὐδαμῇ**: *not…in any way*; redundant
καλῶς ἔχει: *it is good*; see p. 7
φάναι: inf. φημί
95a1 **ἄν...ὁμολογοῖμεν**: *we should agree with*
2 **αὐτοὶ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς**: *we ourselves (agree) with outselves*; Intensive and reflexive
3 **εἶεν δή**: *very well*; εἶεν is a particle based on the 3p opt. form of εἰμί
ἦ δ'ὃς ὁ Σωκράτης: Socrates here said; note on p. 9
4 **τὰ μὲν Ἁρμονίας...γέγονεν**: *the affairs of Harmonia, the Theban, have somehow, as it seems, turned to be moderately propitious for us*; the goddess Harmonia was the wife of Cadmus, the mythical founder of the city of Thebes, Simmis and Cebes' home city
5 **τί δὲ δὴ...τίνι λόγῳ**: *Just what (are) the affairs of Cadmus? Cebes, how and with what account will we propitiate (him)?*
7 **τουτονὶ**: *this here*; deictic iota
8 **πρὸς...**: *against…*
θαυμαστῶς...ὡς παρὰ δόξαν: *marvellously how contrary to expectation*; "it is amazing how…' a predicate assimilated into an adv.
εἶπες: 2s aor. λέγω
9 **Σιμμίου λέγοντος**: gen. abs.
ἐθαύμαζον: *I wondered*…; 1s impf.
b1 **ἕξει**: *would be able*; fut. ἔχω, secondary sequence
χρήσασθαι: i.e. engage with or deal with
3 **δέξασθαι**: *not to have withstood the first attack…*; i.e. not to have received an attack and to have survived

τοῦ σοῦ λόγου. ταὐτὰ δὴ οὐκ ἂν θαυμάσαιμι καὶ τὸν τοῦ Κάδμου λόγον εἰ πάθοι.

ὠγαθέ, ἔφη ὁ Σωκράτης, μὴ μέγα λέγε, μή τις ἡμῖν βασκανία περιτρέψῃ τὸν λόγον τὸν μέλλοντα ἔσεσθαι. ἀλλὰ δὴ ταῦτα μὲν τῷ θεῷ μελήσει, ἡμεῖς δὲ Ὁμηρικῶς ἐγγὺς ἰόντες πειρώμεθα εἰ ἄρα τι λέγεις. ἔστι δὲ δὴ τὸ κεφάλαιον ὧν ζητεῖς· ἀξιοῖς ἐπιδειχθῆναι ἡμῶν τὴν ψυχὴν
c ἀνώλεθρόν τε καὶ ἀθάνατον οὖσαν, εἰ φιλόσοφος ἀνὴρ μέλλων ἀποθανεῖσθαι, θαρρῶν τε καὶ ἡγούμενος ἀποθανὼν ἐκεῖ εὖ πράξειν διαφερόντως ἢ εἰ ἐν ἄλλῳ βίῳ βιοὺς ἐτελεύτα, μὴ ἀνόητόν τε καὶ ἠλίθιον θάρρος θαρρήσει. τὸ δὲ ἀποφαίνειν ὅτι ἰσχυρόν τί ἐστιν ἡ ψυχὴ καὶ θεοειδὲς καὶ ἦν ἔτι

ἀ-νόητος, -ον: foolish, unintelligent, 5
ἀν-ώλεθρος, -α, -ον: indestructible, 12
ἀξιόω: to think worthy, deem right, 3
ἀπο-φαίνω: to show, make clear; perform, 2
βασκανία, ἡ: slander, malice; witchery, 1
δια-φερόντως: especially; differently, 4
ἐγγύς: near (+ gen.); adv. nearby, 5
ἐπι-δείκνυμι: to indicate, point out, prove, 5
εὖ: well, 19
ζητέω: to seek, look for, investigate, 9
ἠλίθιος, -ον: foolish, silly; idle, vain, 1
θαρρέω: be confident, take courage; be bold 9
θάρρος, τό: courage, confidence, boldness, 1
θαυμάζω: wonder, be surprised at, amazed, 7
θεο-ειδής, -ές: god-like, of divine form, 1
ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν: strong, powerful; severe, 5
Κάδμος, -ου, ὁ: Cadmus, 2
κεφάλαιον, τό: chief point, main point, 1
μέλει: there is a care for (dat.) for (gen.), 4
μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
Ὁμηρικῶς: in the manner of Homer, 1
πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 11
περι-τρέπω: turn or bring around, divert 1
πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18

3 **ταὐτὰ δὴ**: *the same very things*; τὰ αὐτὰ obj. of aor. opt.πάθοι
ἂν θαυμάσαιμι... εἰ πάθοι: *I would…if it should…*; fut. less vivid, the λόγον is both the object of θαυμάσαιμι and the subject of πάθοι (aor. opt. πάσχω)
καὶ: *also*
5 **ὠγαθέ**: ὦ ἀγαθέ; vocative, direct address
μὴ...λέγε: negative imperative
μέγα: *haughty words*; i.e. 'big words' often denotes words that provoke divine wrath
μή...περιτρέψῃ: *lest...*; '(I fear) that..' a fearing clause with μή + 3s aor. subj.
6 **ἔσεσθαι**: fut. inf. εἰμί following μέλλοντα
ἀλλὰ δὴ: *well then* (GP 241)
7 **μελήσει**: fut. μέλει, neuter pl. subject
8 **ἰόντες**: pple ἔρχομαι
πειρώμεθα: *let us…*; hortatory subj.
τι: *something (important)*
ἔστι δὲ δὴ: *but now…..is (this)*
9 **ἀξιοῖς**: 2nd sg. pres. ἀξιόω
ἐπιδειχθῆναι: aor. pass. inf.
c2 **ἀποθανεῖσθαι**: fut. mid. ἀποθνήσκω
3 **εὖ πράξειν**: *that…will fare well*; fut. inf.
διαφερόντως ἢ: *differently from, better than*
ἐν ἄλλῳ βίῳ: *in a different life*; i.e. in a non-philosophic life
4 **μὴ ἀνόητόν...θαρρήσει**: *will not (prove to) have a senseless and silly confidence*; inner acc., μή is employed instead of οὐ in a protasis, the subject is φιλόσοφος ἀνὴρ
τὸ δὲ ἀποφαίνειν ὅτι: *but as for showing that…*; 'in respect to showing' acc. respect
5 **ἦν**: *existed*

πρότερον, πρὶν ἡμᾶς ἀνθρώπους γενέσθαι, οὐδὲν κωλύειν φῂς πάντα ταῦτα μηνύειν ἀθανασίαν μὲν μή, ὅτι δὲ πολυχρόνιόν τέ ἐστιν ψυχὴ καὶ ἦν που πρότερον ἀμήχανον ὅσον χρόνον καὶ ἤδει τε καὶ ἔπραττεν πολλὰ ἄττα· ἀλλὰ γὰρ οὐδέν τι μᾶλλον ἦν ἀθάνατον, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ εἰς ἀνθρώπου σῶμα ἐλθεῖν ἀρχὴ ἦν αὐτῇ ὀλέθρου, ὥσπερ νόσος· καὶ ταλαιπωρουμένη τε δὴ τοῦτον τὸν βίον ζῴη καὶ τελευτῶσά γε ἐν τῷ καλουμένῳ θανάτῳ ἀπολλύοιτο. διαφέρειν δὲ δὴ φῂς οὐδὲν εἴτε ἅπαξ εἰς σῶμα ἔρχεται εἴτε πολλάκις, πρός γε τὸ ἕκαστον ἡμῶν φοβεῖσθαι· προσήκει γὰρ φοβεῖσθαι, εἰ μὴ ἀνόητος εἴη, τῷ μὴ εἰδότι μηδὲ ἔχοντι λόγον διδόναι ὡς ἀθάνατόν ἐστι. τοιαῦτ᾽ ἄττα ἐστίν, οἶμαι, ὦ Κέβης, ἃ

d

5

e

ἀ-θανασία, ἡ: immortality, 1
ἀ-μήχανος, -ον: impossible, inconceivable, 5
ἀ-νόητος, -ον: foolish, unintelligent, 5
ἅπαξ: once, once only, once for all, 2
ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning; rule, office, 8
δια-φέρω: to carry over; differ, surpass, 8
εἴ-τε: either...or; whether...or, 13
ζωή, ἡ: living, way of life, 5
κωλύω: to hinder from, prevent from + inf. 5
μηνύω: to reveal, make known, inform, 1
νόσος, ὁ: illness, sickness, 5
ὄλεθρος, ὁ: death, ruin, destruction, 3
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14
πολυ-χρόνιος, -α, -ον: long-existing, 6
πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12
προσ-ήκει: it belongs, it is fitting, befits 15
ταλαιπωρέω: suffer hardship, distress, 1
φοβέω: to terrify, frighten; *mid*. fear, 15

6 **οὐδὲν κωλύειν φῂς...**: *you claim that nothing hinders (acc) from (inf)*
7 **ἀθανασίαν μὲν μὴ, ὅτι δὲ πολυχρόνιον...**: *not immorality but that…*'; there is a lack of parallelism but the meaning is clear
πολυχρόνιον: predicate, Plato often offers neuter predicates for masc. or fem. subjects
ἀμήχανον...χρόνον: *for an inconceivable, long time*; acc. duration, (S 2535), see 80c9
8 **ἦν**: 3s impf. εἰμί
9 **ἤδει**: 3s plpf. οἶδα, simple past with no obj.
ἄττα: *other things*; alternative to τινά
ἀλλὰ γὰρ: *but in fact*; 'and yet,' introducing an objection (S 2819, GP 105)
d1 **οὐδέν τι μᾶλλον**: *not at all more*; modifies the comparative adjectives that follow; οὐδέν τι are acc. of extent by degree
ἦν: ἡ ψυχή is subject
ἀθάνατον: neuter predicate, see line 7
καὶ: *in fact*
τὸ...ἐλθεῖν: *entering…*; articular aor. inf., subject of ἦν
2 **αὐτῇ**: *for…*; dat. of interest, i.e. ψυχῇ
3 **καὶ...τε...καὶ**: *and…both…and*; δὴ and γε are intensives with the preceding pples
ζῴη...ἀπολλύοιτο: 3s pres. opt. as if ind. disc. in secondary seq. (opt. replaces pres. indicative) ζάω, translate in present
4 **καλουμένῳ**: *what is called*; or 'so-called'
διαφέρειν...οὐδὲν: *that it makes no difference*; impersonal, inner acc.
δὲ δὴ: *but now*; introducing a new point (S 2839)
5 **πρός γε**: *at least, in regard to…*; γε is restrictive
7 **εἰ μὴ...εἴη**: *unless…should…*
τῷ μὴ εἰδότι...: *for one (if) not knowing…*; pple οἶδα is conditional in sense
λόγον: *an account*; i.e. a proof
e1 **ἄττα**: *other things*; alternative to τινά

λέγεις· καὶ ἐξεπίτηδες πολλάκις ἀναλαμβάνω, ἵνα μή τι διαφύγῃ ἡμᾶς, εἴ τέ τι βούλει, προσθῇς ἢ ἀφέλῃς.

καὶ ὁ Κέβης, ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲν ἔγωγε ἐν τῷ παρόντι, ἔφη,
5 *οὔτε ἀφελεῖν οὔτε προσθεῖναι δέομαι· ἔστι δὲ ταῦτα ἃ λέγω.*

ὁ οὖν Σωκράτης συχνὸν χρόνον ἐπισχὼν καὶ πρὸς ἑαυτόν τι σκεψάμενος, οὐ φαῦλον πρᾶγμα, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, ζητεῖς· ὅλως γὰρ δεῖ περὶ γενέσεως καὶ φθορᾶς τὴν αἰτίαν δια-
96 *πραγματεύσασθαι. ἐγὼ οὖν σοι δίειμι περὶ αὐτῶν, ἐὰν βούλῃ, τά γε ἐμὰ πάθη· ἔπειτα ἄν τί σοι χρήσιμον φαίνηται ὧν ἂν λέγω, πρὸς τὴν πειθὼ περὶ ὧν δὴ λέγεις χρήσῃ.*

ἀνα-λαμβάνω: to take up, find, resume, 3
ἀφ-αιρέω: to take away, take away from, 2
γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: coming-to-be, generation, 16
δέομαι: lack, need, want; ask for (+ gen.) 7
δι-έρχομαι: go through, narrate, describe, 1
δια-πραγματεύομαι: examine thoroughly, 2
δια-φεύγω: to flee, get away from, escape, 2
ἐμός, -ή, -όν: my, mine, 7
ἐξεπίτηδες: on purpose, 1
ἐπ-ίσχω: hold up, restrain; wait, stop, 4
ζητέω: to seek, look for, investigate, 9
ἵνα: in order that (+ subj.); where (+ ind.), 7
ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 9
πείθω, -όος, ἡ: persuasion, conviction, 1
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14
πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18
προσ-τίθημι: to add, attribute, impose, give 10
σκέπτομαι: look at, examine, consider, 9
συχνός, -ή, -όν: long, much, great, 4
φαῦλος –η -ον: slight, paltry, cheap, trifling 9
φθορά, ἡ: destruction, ruin, 4
χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.) 11
χρήσιμος, -η, -ον: useful, serviceable, 1

2 **ἀναλαμβάνω**: *I am taking up (it) again*; i.e. restating it
ἵνα μή...διαφύγῃ: *so that…may*; purpose, 3s. aor. subj.; indefinite τι is subject
3 **βούλει**: 2s pres. mid.
προσθῇς, ἀφέλῃς: you may…you may…; same purpose clause, aor. subj. προστίθημι (θε-), ἀφαιρέω (ἑλ-)
4 **παρόντι**: *present (moment);* pple πάρειμι
οὐδὲν: *not at all*; inner acc. with δέομαι
5 **ἀφελεῖν, προσθεῖναι**: aor. infs., προστίθημι (θε-), ἀφαιρέω (ἑλ-), same verbs as in l. 3
5 **ἔστι...ταῦτα**: *these things are…*; i.e. what Socrates has restated
7 **συχνὸν χρόνον**: *for…*; acc. of duration

96a1 **δίειμι**: 1s fut. διέρχομαι
2 **βούλῃ**: βούλη(σ)αι, 2s pres. mid. subj. in a fut. more vivid (εἰ ἄν + subj., fut. ind.)
τὰ...πάθη: *my own experiences*
ἄν...φαίνηται,...χρήσῃ: ἄν = ἐὰν, another fut. more vivid condition, χρήσε(σ)αι is 2s fut. χράομαι
τί: *something*; indefinite τι, nom. subject
3 **ὧν ἄν...**: *of (the things) which*; or 'or whatever,' ἄν + subj. in an indefinite relative clause
πρὸς τὴν πείθω: *with regard to…*; πείθω (πείθο-α) is 3rd decl. acc. sg.; this noun is often personified as the goddess Peitho

ἀλλὰ μήν, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, βούλομαί γε.

ἄκουε τοίνυν ὡς ἐροῦντος. ἐγὼ γάρ, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, νέος ὢν θαυμαστῶς ὡς ἐπεθύμησα ταύτης τῆς σοφίας ἣν δὴ καλοῦσι περὶ φύσεως ἱστορίαν· ὑπερήφανος γάρ μοι ἐδόκει εἶναι, εἰδέναι τὰς αἰτίας ἑκάστου, διὰ τί γίγνεται ἕκαστον καὶ διὰ τί ἀπόλλυται καὶ διὰ τί ἔστι. καὶ πολλάκις ἐμαυτὸν ἄνω κάτω μετέβαλλον σκοπῶν πρῶτον τὰ τοιάδε· **b** ἆρ' ἐπειδὰν τὸ θερμὸν καὶ τὸ ψυχρὸν σηπεδόνα τινὰ λάβῃ, ὥς τινες ἔλεγον, τότε δὴ τὰ ζῷα συντρέφεται; καὶ πότερον τὸ αἱμά ἐστιν ᾧ φρονοῦμεν, ἢ ὁ ἀὴρ ἢ τὸ πῦρ; ἢ τούτων μὲν οὐδέν, ὁ δ' ἐγκέφαλός ἐστιν ὁ τὰς αἰσθήσεις παρέχων τοῦ ἀκούειν καὶ ὁρᾶν καὶ ὀσφραίνεσθαι, ἐκ τούτων

ἀήρ, ἀέρος m.: air, mist 16
αἷμα, -ατος τό: blood, 1
αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἄνω: up, above, 6
ἐγ-κέφαλος, ὁ: brain, 2
ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for (gen) 10
ζῷον, τό: a living being, animal, 6
θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wonderful, marvelous, 11
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm; subst. heat, 11
ἱστορία, ἡ: inquiry, investigation, 1
κάτω: downwards, below, beneath, 6
μετα-βάλλω: turn (position), shift, change, 1
νέος, -α, -ον: young; new, novel, strange, 1
ὀσφραίνομαι: to catch scent of, smell, 1
παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14
πότερος, -α, -ον: (untranslated), whether, 19
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 14
σηπεδών, -όνος, ἡ: decay, putrefication, 2
σοφία, ἡ: wisdom, judgment, intelligence, 2
συν-τρέφομαι: to grow by composition, be organized; feed together, 1
ὑπερήφανος, -ον: magnificent; overweening 1
φρονέω: to think, to be wise, prudent, 2
φύσις, -εως, ἡ: nature, character; form, 11
ψυχρός, -ά, -όν: cold, chill, frigid, 10

5 **ἀλλὰ μήν…γε**: *well, certainly*; in assent, γε emphasizes the verb, GP 343-4
6 **ὡς ἐροῦντος**: *as (I)*…; 'on the grounds that' or 'since' + fut. pple ἐρέω, ὡς + pple is causal and ὡς + fut. pple often expresses purpose
7 **θαυμαστῶς ὡς**: *how marvelously*…; once, 'it is marvelous how…' the neut. predicate θαυμαστόν has assimilated to the adv. ὡς
ἣν δὴ: *which very thing*…
8 **καλοῦσι**: *call (x) (y)*; governs a double acc.
9 **εἰδέναι**: inf. οἶδα
διὰ τί: *why*; 'on account of what' or 'for what reason'
b1 **ἄνω κάτω**: *back and forth*
μετέβαλλον: 1s impf.
πρῶτον: *first (of all)*; adverbial acc.
3 **λάβῃ**: 3s aor. subj. λαμβάνω
ὥς τινες ἔλεγον: *as some used to say*; iterative impf.
τότε δὴ: *at that very moment*
4 **ᾧ**: *by which we think*; or 'because of which' dat. of means or cause
5 **ὁ...παρέχων**: *the one providing*…
6 **τοῦ ἀκούειν...**: *of*...; all three infinitives are articular infinitives

δὲ γίγνοιτο μνήμη καὶ δόξα, ἐκ δὲ μνήμης καὶ δόξης λα-
βούσης τὸ ἠρεμεῖν, κατὰ ταῦτα γίγνεσθαι ἐπιστήμην; καὶ
αὖ τούτων τὰς φθορὰς σκοπῶν, καὶ τὰ περὶ τὸν οὐρανόν
c *τε καὶ τὴν γῆν πάθη, τελευτῶν οὕτως ἐμαυτῷ ἔδοξα πρὸς*
ταύτην τὴν σκέψιν ἀφυὴς εἶναι ὡς οὐδὲν χρῆμα. τεκμή-
ριον δέ σοι ἐρῶ ἱκανόν· ἐγὼ γὰρ ἃ καὶ πρότερον σαφῶς
ἠπιστάμην, ὥς γε ἐμαυτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐδόκουν, τότε
5 *ὑπὸ ταύτης τῆς σκέψεως οὕτω σφόδρα ἐτυφλώθην, ὥστε*
ἀπέμαθον καὶ ταῦτα ἃ πρὸ τοῦ ᾤμην εἰδέναι, περὶ ἄλλων τε
πολλῶν καὶ διὰ τί ἄνθρωπος αὐξάνεται. τοῦτο γὰρ ᾤμην
πρὸ τοῦ παντὶ δῆλον εἶναι, ὅτι διὰ τὸ ἐσθίειν καὶ πίνειν·
d *ἐπειδὰν γὰρ ἐκ τῶν σιτίων ταῖς μὲν σαρξὶ σάρκες προσ-*
γένωνται, τοῖς δὲ ὀστοῖς ὀστᾶ, καὶ οὕτω κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν

ἀπο-μανθάνω: to unlearn, lose knowledge, 1
ἀ-φυής, -ές: witless, naturally unsuited, 1
αὐξάνω: to increase, augment, 2
δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 14
δόξα, ἡ: opinion, reputation, honor, glory, 7
ἐπίσταμαι: know, know how, understand, 13
ἐσθίω: to eat, 3
ἠρεμέω: to keep quiet, be at rest, 1
μνήμη, ἡ: memory, remembrance, 2
ὀστέον, τό: bone, 9
οὐρανός, ὁ: sky, heaven, 10
πάθος -εος τό: experience incident passion 11
πίνω: to drink, 16
πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 13
προσ-γίγνομαι: to come to be in addition to 4
σάρξ, σαρκός, ἡ: flesh, 3
σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
σιτίον, τό: grain, bread; provisions, 2
σκέψις, -εως, ἡ: viewing, observation, 4
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18
τεκμήριον, τό: sign, indication, proof, 5
τυφλόω: to make blind, 2
φθορά, ἡ: destruction, ruin, 4
χρῆμα, -ατος, τό: thing, money, possessions 6

7 **γίγνοιτο**: *comes to be*; an unexpected shift to opt., which may be replacing an indicative in ind. disc. in secondary seq.
ἐκ...μνήμης...λαβούσης...ἐπιστήμην: *and from memory and opinion, taking a resting, does knowledge come to be in this way?*; aor. pple with articular inf. as direct object
9 **τὰ...πάθη**: *the happenings*; πάθε-α
c1 **τελευτῶν**: *finally, at last*; pple as adv.
πρὸς...: *with regard to…*
2 **οὕτως...ὡς οὐδὲν χρῆμα**: *as…as no other creature*; χρῆμα can denote the strange or extraordinary in kind: ‘monster,’ ‘creature’
ἐρῶ: fut. λέγω
3 **ἃ καὶ...ἠπιστάμην**: *(the things) which in fact…*; ταῦτα ἃ, the missing antecedent is subject of ἔδόκουν, καί is adverbial
4 **ὥς γε.. ἐδόκουν**: *since they…*; ὥς γε is causal in sense, the subject of ἔδόκουν is the missing neuter pl. ταῦτα above
5 **ὑπὸ...**: *because of*; gen. of cause
ἐτυφλώθην: 1s aor. pass.
6 **πρὸ τοῦ**: *before this (time)*
ᾤμην: impf. οἴομαι
εἰδέναι: inf. οἶδα
7 **διὰ τί**: *why*; ‘on account of what or ‘for what reason’
8 **πρὸ τοῦ**: *before this this*
διὰ...: *on account of…*; + acc.
d2 **κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον**: *in the same way*

λόγον καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις τὰ αὐτῶν οἰκεῖα ἑκάστοις προσγένηται, τότε δὴ τὸν ὀλίγον ὄγκον ὄντα ὕστερον πολὺν γεγονέναι, καὶ οὕτω γίγνεσθαι τὸν σμικρὸν ἄνθρωπον μέγαν. οὕτως τότε ᾤμην· οὐ δοκῶ σοι μετρίως;

ἔμοιγε, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης.

σκέψαι δὴ καὶ τάδε ἔτι. ᾤμην γὰρ ἱκανῶς μοι δοκεῖν, ὁπότε τις φαίνοιτο ἄνθρωπος παραστὰς μέγας σμικρῷ μείζων εἶναι αὐτῇ τῇ κεφαλῇ, καὶ ἵππος ἵππου· καὶ ἔτι γε τούτων ἐναργέστερα, τὰ δέκα μοι ἐδόκει τῶν ὀκτὼ πλέονα εἶναι διὰ τὸ δύο αὐτοῖς προσεῖναι, καὶ τὸ δίπηχυ τοῦ πηχυαίου μεῖζον εἶναι διὰ τὸ ἡμίσει αὐτοῦ ὑπερέχειν.

νῦν δὲ δή, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, τί σοι δοκεῖ περὶ αὐτῶν;

δέκα: ten, 3
δί-πηχυς, -υ: two cubits, two cubits long, 2
ἐν-αργής, -ές: visible, distinct, manifest, 4
ἥμισυς, -εια, -υ: half, 5
ἵππος, ὁ: a horse, 4
κεφαλή, ἡ: the head, 6
μέτριος, -α, -ον: moderate, in due measure, 7
ὄγκος, ὁ: bulk, mass, size, 1
οἰκεῖος, -α, -ον: one's own, proper; kin, 4
ὀκτώ: eight, 2
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small, 15
ὁπότε: when, by what time, 6
παρ-ίστημι: to stand near, present, offer, 3
πηχυαῖος, -η, -ον: a cubit, a cubit long, 2
πλέων, -ον: more, greater, 17
προσ-γίγνομαι: to come to be in addition, 4
πρόσ-ειμι: to be added to, add, 1
σκέπτομαι: look at, examine, consider, 9
σμικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little, 19
ὑπερ-έχω: to exceed, hold over or above, 8
ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; *adv*. later 17

3 **τοῖς ἄλλοις...προσγένηται**: *things proper to each of them are added to his other (parts)*; οἰκεῖος governs a dat. or gen., aor. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause
4 **τότε δὴ**: *at that very moment*
τὸν...ὄντα: *that the thing being*…; acc. subject, ὀλίγον ὄγκον is predicate of the pple
γεγονέναι: pf. inf. γίγνομαι
6 **ᾤμην**: impf, οἴομαι
8 **σκέψαι**: aor. mid. imperative
δὴ: *just, now*; an intensive frequently employed with an imperative
καὶ: *also*
9 **ὅπότε**: *whenever*...; indefinite temporal, opt. replaces ἄν + subj. in secondary seq.
παραστὰς: nom. sg. aor. pple
σμικρῷ: *beside a short one*; dat. compound **μείζων**: i.e. taller
e1 **αὐτῇ τῇ κεφαλῇ**: *by*...; dat. of degree of difference
ἵππου: *than*..., gen. of comparison, supply verbs from earlier, φαίνοιτο εἶναι μείζων
καὶ...γε: *and*...; emphasizing the intervening word (S 2829)
τούτων: gen. of comparative
2 **τὰ δέκα, τῶν ὀκτὼ**: *ten, eight*; ignore the the article in translation; gen. comparison
3 **διὰ τὸ...προσεῖναι**: articular inf.
αὐτοῖς: *to*…; dat. of compound verb
τοῦ πηχυαίου: gen. of comparison;
4 **δια τὸ...ὑπερέχειν**: articular inf.
ἡμίσει αὐτοῦ: *by*...; dat. sg. ἥμισυς, dat. of degree of difference and partitive gen.
5 **νῦν δὲ δή**: *and just now*

πόρρω που, ἔφη, νὴ Δία ἐμὲ εἶναι τοῦ οἴεσθαι περὶ τούτων του τὴν αἰτίαν εἰδέναι, ὅς γε οὐκ ἀποδέχομαι ἐμαυτοῦ οὐδὲ ὡς ἐπειδὰν ἑνί τις προσθῇ ἕν, ἢ τὸ ἓν ᾧ προσετέθη δύο γέγονεν, ἢ τὸ προστεθέν, ἢ τὸ προστεθὲν καὶ ᾧ προσ-
97 *ετέθη διὰ τὴν πρόσθεσιν τοῦ ἑτέρου τῷ ἑτέρῳ δύο ἐγένετο· θαυμάζω γὰρ εἰ ὅτε μὲν ἑκάτερον αὐτῶν χωρὶς ἀλλήλων ἦν, ἓν ἄρα ἑκάτερον ἦν καὶ οὐκ ἦστην τότε δύο, ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπλησίασαν ἀλλήλοις, αὕτη ἄρα αἰτία αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο τοῦ δύο*
5 *γενέσθαι, ἡ σύνοδος τοῦ πλησίον ἀλλήλων τεθῆναι. οὐδέ γε ὡς ἐάν τις ἓν διασχίσῃ, δύναμαι ἔτι πείθεσθαι ὡς αὕτη αὖ αἰτία γέγονεν, ἡ σχίσις, τοῦ δύο γεγονέναι· ἐναντία γὰρ*
b *γίγνεται ἢ τότε αἰτία τοῦ δύο γίγνεσθαι. τότε μὲν γὰρ ὅτι*

ἀπο-δέχομαι: to accept, admit, receive, 9
δια-σχίζω: to divide; split asunder, 2
δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 15
ἑκάτερος, -α, -ον: each of two, either, 5
Ζεύς, ὁ: Zeus, 11
θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel, be amazed at, 7
νή: by…(+ acc, invoking a god), 14
πλησιάζω: to bring near, 2
πλησίος, -η, -ον: near, close to, (gen) 4
πόρρω: far from, far off; further into, 1
προσ-θέσις, ἡ: adding, addition, 3
προσ-τίθημι: to add; attribute, impose, give 10
σύν-οδος, ἡ: an assembly, meeting, 1
σχίσις, -εως, ἡ: division, parting, cleavage, 4
χωρίς: separately; apart from, without (gen) 6

6 **πόρρω...τοῦ οἴεσθαι**: *that I am far from thinking…!*; this acc. + inf. is an infinitive of exclamation: employed as main clause to express surprise or indignation (S 2015)
Δία: acc. sg. Ζεύς
7 **του**: *of anything*; gen. sg. of indefinite τις
εἴδεναι: inf. οἶδα
ὅς γε...ἀποδέχομαι...ὡς: *since I do not accept from myself even that…*; a relative pronoun + γε is often causal (S 2826)
8 **ἑνί...ἕν**: dat. sg. of compound verb and acc. obj., both neuter from εἷς, μία, ἕν
προσθῇ: 3s aor. subj. προστίθημι (θε-)
τὸ ἕν: nom. subject, hence the article
ᾧ προσετέθη: *to which…*; 3s aor. pass. προστίθημι
9 **γέγονεν**: pf. γίγνομαι,
ἢ τὸ πρόστεθέν ἢ: *either the one …or*; neut. sg. aor. pass. pple, beginning a new clause
ᾧ προσετέθη: *and (the one) to which it was added*; the missing antecedent is part of the subject

97a1 **τῷ ἑτέρῳ** : *to the other*; dat. governed by τὴν πρόσθεσιν
3 **ἓν ἑκάτερον**: the first word is the predicate and the second is the subject
ἦστην: 3rd pers. dual impf.
4 **αὕτη ἄρα**: *this, it turns out,…*; αὕτη is the subject and αἰτία, the predicate
τοῦ...γενέσθαι: *for…*; articular inf., an objective gen. following αἰτία
5 **ἡ σύνοδος**: in apposition to αὕτη;
τοῦ τεθῆναι: *of…*; aor. pass. inf. τίθημι
6 **οὐδέ γε ὡς**: *and yet that…not*; parallel to οὐδε ὡς in line 96e8; οὐδὲ γέ ὡς, introduces a negative counterpart (GP 156)
διασχίσῃ: 3s aor. subj.
πείθεσθαι: *to be persuaded*; passive
ἡ σχίσις: in apposition to αὕτη
b1 **ἐναντία...γίγνεται...γίγνεσθαι**: *for (this) turns out to be opposite ~~than~~ the cause of their becoming two at that (earlier) time;* ἐναντία ἤ, 'opposite than,' is unusual
2 **ὅτι**: *because*

συνήγετο πλησίον ἀλλήλων καὶ προσετίθετο ἕτερον ἑτέρῳ, νῦν δ᾽ ὅτι ἀπάγεται καὶ χωρίζεται ἕτερον ἀφ᾽ ἑτέρου. οὐδέ γε δι᾽ ὅτι ἓν γίγνεται ὡς ἐπίσταμαι, ἔτι πείθω ἐμαυτόν, οὐδ᾽ ἄλλο οὐδὲν ἐνὶ λόγῳ δι᾽ ὅτι γίγνεται ἢ ἀπόλλυται ἢ ἔστι, κατὰ τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον τῆς μεθόδου, ἀλλά τιν᾽ ἄλλον τρόπον αὐτὸς εἰκῇ φύρω, τοῦτον δὲ οὐδαμῇ προσίεμαι.

ἀλλ᾽ ἀκούσας μέν ποτε ἐκ βιβλίου τινός, ὡς ἔφη, Ἀναξαγόρου ἀναγιγνώσκοντος, καὶ λέγοντος ὡς ἄρα νοῦς ἐστιν ὁ διακοσμῶν τε καὶ πάντων αἴτιος, ταύτῃ δὴ τῇ αἰτίᾳ ἥσθην τε καὶ ἔδοξέ μοι τρόπον τινὰ εὖ ἔχειν τὸ τὸν νοῦν εἶναι πάντων αἴτιον, καὶ ἡγησάμην, εἰ τοῦθ᾽ οὕτως ἔχει, τόν γε νοῦν κοσμοῦντα πάντα κοσμεῖν καὶ ἕκαστον τιθέναι ταύτῃ ὅπῃ

αἴτιος, -α, -ον: responsible, blameworthy, 8
ἀνα-γιγνώσκω: read; recognize, persuade, 3
Ἀναξαγόρας, ου, ὁ: Anaxagoras, 2
ἀπ-άγω: to remove, lead away, carry off, 3
βιβλίον, τό: a scroll, book, 1
δια-κοσμέω: to arrange, order, 2
εἰκῇ: without plan or purpose, heedlessly, 1
ἐπίσταμαι: know, know how, understand, 13
ἥδομαι: to delight in, be pleased (dat) 6
κοσμέω: to order, arrange, adorn, 5
μεθ-όδος, ἡ,: pursuit, investigation, method, 2
νοῦς, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14
ὅπῃ: where; in what way, how, 11
οὐδαμῇ: in no place, in no way, not at all, 3
πλησίος, -η, -ον: near, close to; neighbors, 4
προσ-ίημι: to admit, send to, let come to, 2
προσ-τίθημι: to add, attribute, impose, give 10
πλησίος, -η, -ον: near, close to, (gen) 4
τίθημι: to set, put, place, arrange, 10
τρόπος, ὁ: a method, manner, way; turn, 17
φύρω: to mix up, jumble up; 1
χωρίζω: to separate, sever, divide, 3

2 **ἕτερον ἑτέρῳ**: *one…to the other*…; neuter nom. subj. and dat. object
3 **ὅτι**: *because…*
ἀπάγεται: *is removed*
ἕτερον: neuter nom. subj.
οὐδέ γε...ἔτι πείθω ἐμαυτόν: *and yet I no longer persuade myself that…*; governs ὡς ἐπίσταμαι and δι(ὰ)... γίγνεται is governed by to ἐπίσταμαι, (GP 156)
4 **δι(ὰ) ὅτι**: *why…*; 'on account of that'
5 **ἄλλο οὐδὲν**: subject of the following verbs, here used proleptically: 'I do not know nothing other why…' is equivalent to 'I do not know why nothing other…'
ἐνὶ λόγῳ: *in one word*; i.e. in brief, dat. of manner
δι(ὰ) γίγνεται...ἔστι: all governed by ἐπίσταμαι
6 **κατὰ...τρόπον**: *according to this method*
7 **τούτον (τρόπον) οὐδαμῇ προσίεμαι**: 1s pres. mid.
c1 **ἀναγιγνώσκοντος, καὶ λέγοντος**: *from (someone) reading and…*; the missing noun is a gen. of source following ἀκούσας, the genἈναξαγόρου modifies βιβλίου
νοῦς: *Mind, Nous*; subject, scholars often leave the noun capitalized and in Greek
2 **ταύτῃ...αἰτίᾳ**: *by*…; or 'in', dat. of means
ἥσθην: 1s aor. pass. deponent; ἥδομαι
3 **εὖ ἔχειν**: *is good*; see p. 7
τὸ...εἶναι: *(namely) that…*; ind. discourse
4 **οὕτως ἔχει**: see p. 7
5 **ἕκαστον**: *each thing*; obj. of τιθέναι
ταύτῃ: *in this way*; dat. of manner

ἂν βέλτιστα ἔχῃ· εἰ οὖν τις βούλοιτο τὴν αἰτίαν εὑρεῖν περὶ ἑκάστου ὅπῃ γίγνεται ἢ ἀπόλλυται ἢ ἔστι, τοῦτο δεῖν περὶ αὐτοῦ εὑρεῖν, ὅπῃ βέλτιστον αὐτῷ ἐστιν ἢ εἶναι ἢ
d ἄλλο ὁτιοῦν πάσχειν ἢ ποιεῖν· ἐκ δὲ δὴ τοῦ λόγου τούτου οὐδὲν ἄλλο σκοπεῖν προσήκειν ἀνθρώπῳ καὶ περὶ αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου καὶ περὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀλλ᾽ ἢ τὸ ἄριστον καὶ τὸ βέλτιστον. ἀναγκαῖον δὲ εἶναι τὸν αὐτὸν τοῦτον καὶ τὸ χεῖρον εἰδέναι·
5 τὴν αὐτὴν γὰρ εἶναι ἐπιστήμην περὶ αὐτῶν. ταῦτα δὴ λογιζόμενος ἅσμενος ηὑρηκέναι ᾤμην διδάσκαλον τῆς αἰτίας περὶ τῶν ὄντων κατὰ νοῦν ἐμαυτῷ, τὸν Ἀναξαγόραν, καί μοι φράσειν πρῶτον μὲν πότερον ἡ γῆ πλατεῖά ἐστιν ἢ
e στρογγύλη, ἐπειδὴ δὲ φράσειεν, ἐπεκδιηγήσεσθαι τὴν αἰτίαν

Ἀναξαγόρας, ου, ὁ: Anaxagoras, 2
ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent, 6
ἅσμενος, -η, -ον: well-pleased, glad, 4
βέλτιστος, -η, -ον: best, 14
διδάσκαλος, ὁ: teacher, 1
ἐπεκ-διηγέομαι: to explain in addition, 3
εὑρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 8
λογίζομαι: to reason, calculate, count, 9
νοῦς, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14
ὅπῃ: where; in what way, how, 11
ὅστισ-οῦν, ἥτισουν, ὅτι-οῦν: whosoever, 11
πλατύς, -εία, -ύ: wide, broad, flat, 3
προσ-ήκει: it belongs, it is fitting, befits 15
στρογγύλος, -η, -ον: round, spherical, 1
φράζω: to point out, tell, indicate, 6
χείρων, -ον, (-οντος): worse, inferior, 5

6 **βέλτιστα**: ἔχω + superlative adv. (see p. 7); 3s subj. in an indefinite relative clause
7 **βούλοιτο**: *wished*; opt. replacing ἄν + subj. in ind. disc. in secondary seq.
7 **τοῦτο…ὅπῃ**: *this…(namely) in what way*; object of εὑρεῖν
δεῖν: *that is was necessary…*; ind. disc. continuing from ἡγησάμην in c4
8 **περὶ αὐτοῦ**: *concerning it*; i.e. ἑκάστου, whatever object of inquiry
αὐτῷ: *for it*; dat. of interest
ἢ εἶναι...ἢ ποεῖν: subject infinitives of ἐστιν
d2 **προσήκειν**: *that it is fitting*; impersonal, still governed by ἡγησάμην in line c4
καὶ...καὶ: *both…and*
ἀλλ(ὰ) ἤ: *but*; οὐδὲν...ἀλλ(ὰ) ἤ is an elliptical expression: 'nothing but' (S 2778)
4 **εἶναι**: *that it is…*; parallel to προσήκειν in d2 and also governed by ἡγησάμην (l. c4)
τὸν αὐτὸν τοῦτον: *that this same (man)…* acc. subj. of inf. οἶδα
καὶ: *also*
ταῦτα δὴ: *these very things*; intensive δή
6 **ηὑρηκέναι**: pf. inf. εὑρίσκω
ᾤμην: impf. οἴομαι
7 **τῶν ὄντων**: *the things which are*; pple
κατὰ νοῦν: *according to my mind*; likely a wordplay on Anaxagoras' *Nous*
τὸν Ἀναξαγόραν: in apposition
8 **φράσειν**: *that (he)…*; assume Anaxagoras as acc. subject of this fut. inf., governed by ᾤμην
πρῶτον: *first*; adverbial acc.
e1 **φράσειεν**: *he had told (me)*; aor. opt. may replace ἄν + subj. in ind. disc. in secondary sequence

καὶ τὴν ἀνάγκην, λέγοντα τὸ ἄμεινον καὶ ὅτι αὐτὴν ἄμεινον
ἦν τοιαύτην εἶναι· καὶ εἰ ἐν μέσῳ φαίη εἶναι αὐτήν, ἐπεκ-
διηγήσεσθαι ὡς ἄμεινον ἦν αὐτὴν ἐν μέσῳ εἶναι· καὶ εἴ μοι
ταῦτα ἀποφαίνοι, παρεσκευάσμην ὡς οὐκέτι ποθεσόμενος 98
αἰτίας ἄλλο εἶδος. καὶ δὴ καὶ περὶ ἡλίου οὕτω παρεσκευ-
άσμην ὡσαύτως πευσόμενος, καὶ σελήνης καὶ τῶν ἄλλων
ἄστρων, τάχους τε πέρι πρὸς ἄλληλα καὶ τροπῶν καὶ τῶν
ἄλλων παθημάτων, πῇ ποτε ταῦτ᾽ ἄμεινόν ἐστιν ἕκαστον 5
καὶ ποιεῖν καὶ πάσχειν ἃ πάσχει. οὐ γὰρ ἄν ποτε αὐτὸν
ᾠμην, φάσκοντά γε ὑπὸ νοῦ αὐτὰ κεκοσμῆσθαι, ἄλλην τινὰ
αὐτοῖς αἰτίαν ἐπενεγκεῖν ἢ ὅτι βέλτιστον αὐτὰ οὕτως ἔχειν
ἐστὶν ὥσπερ ἔχει· ἑκάστῳ οὖν αὐτῶν ἀποδιδόντα τὴν αἰτίαν **b**

ἀμείνων, -ον (-ονος): better, 10
ἀπο-δίδωμι: to give back, return, render, 5
ἀπο-φαίνω: to show, make clear; perform, 2
ἄστρον, τὸ: a star, 5
βέλτιστος, -η, -ον: best, 14
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
ἐπεκ-διηγέομαι: to explain in addition, 3
ἐπι-φέρω: to introduce; bring, attack, 6
ἥλιος, ὁ: the sun, 7
κοσμέω: to order, arrange, adorn, 5
μέσος, - η, -ον: middle, in the middle of, 8
νοῦς, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14
πάθημα, -ατος, τό: experience, misfortune, 4
παρα-σκευάζω: to get ready, prepare, 8
πῇ: in what way, how, 5
ποθέω: to long for, yearn after, 1
πυνθάνομαι: to learn by inquiry or hearsay, 3
σελήνη, ἡ: the moon, 2
ταχύς, εῖα, ύ: quick, swift, hastily, 9
τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17
φάσκω: to say, speak, assert, 1
ὡσ-αύτως: in the same manner, just so, 4

2 **τὴν ἀνάγκην**: *the necessity*; i.e. why it must be so
τὸ ἄμεινον: *what is better*; i.e. round or flat
αὐτὴν...εἶναι τοιαυτὴν: *that it*; i.e. τὴν γῆν
3 **εἰ...φαίη**: *if he said*; pres. opt. replacing ἄν + subj. in ind. disc. in secondary sequence
αὐτὴν: *that it*…; i.e. τὴν γῆν
4 **ὡς...ἦν**: *how it*…; impersonal verb
98a1 **εἰ...ἀποφαίνοι**: *if he showed*; pres. opt. replacing ἄν + subj. in secondary sequence in ind. disc. governed by παρεσκευάσμην
παρεσκευάσμην: *I had prepared myself*; plpf. mid., mid. is often reflexive in sense
ὡς...ποθεσόμενος...εἶδος: *to long no longer for*…; 'so as going to long for.' While readers expect ind. disc., Plato employs ὡς + fut pple (mid.) to express purpose.
2 **καὶ δὴ καὶ**: *in particular*; 'and indeed also'
3 **πευσόμενος**: fut. pple πυνθάνομαι again expressing purpose, i.e. 'intending to...'
(περὶ) σελήνης: ellipsis, supply preposition
4 **τάχους...πέρι**: περὶ τάχους; gen. τάχε-ος
πρὸς ἄλληλα: *compared to one another*
5 **πῇ ποτε...ἄμεινόν ἐστιν**: *how in the world...*
ταῦτα...ἕκαστον: acc. obj. and acc. subject
6 **ἄν ᾠμην**: *I would suppose*;. ἄν + impf. expresses present (unrealized) potential
7 **φάσκοντα**: *that (Anaxagoras), claiming*…; supply acc. subj of aor. inf. ἐπιφέρω
7 **ὑπὸ νοῦ**: *by Mind, by Nous*; gen. of agent
αὐτοῖς: *for these things*; dat. interest
ἐπ-ενεγκεῖν: aor. inf. ἐπι-φέρω
8 **ἢ ὅτι**: *than that*…; following ἄλλην
βέλτιστον...ἐστὶν: *it is*…; impersonal
b1 **ἀποδιδόντα...αἰτίαν**: *then (the one) assigning a cause to*…

καὶ κοινῇ πᾶσι τὸ ἑκάστῳ βέλτιστον ᾤμην καὶ τὸ κοινὸν πᾶσιν ἐπεκδιηγήσεσθαι ἀγαθόν· καὶ οὐκ ἂν ἀπεδόμην πολλοῦ τὰς ἐλπίδας, ἀλλὰ πάνυ σπουδῇ λαβὼν τὰς βίβλους ὡς τάχιστα οἷός τ' ἦ ἀνεγίγνωσκον, ἵν' ὡς τάχιστα εἰδείην τὸ βέλτιστον καὶ τὸ χεῖρον.

ἀπὸ δὴ θαυμαστῆς ἐλπίδος, ὦ ἑταῖρε, ᾠχόμην φερόμενος, ἐπειδὴ προϊὼν καὶ ἀναγιγνώσκων ὁρῶ ἄνδρα τῷ μὲν νῷ οὐδὲν χρώμενον οὐδέ τινας αἰτίας ἐπαιτιώμενον εἰς τὸ διακοσμεῖν τὰ πράγματα, ἀέρας δὲ καὶ αἰθέρας καὶ ὕδατα αἰτιώμενον καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ καὶ ἄτοπα. καί μοι ἔδοξεν ὁμοιότατον πεπονθέναι ὥσπερ ἂν εἴ τις λέγων ὅτι Σωκράτης πάντα ὅσα πράττει νῷ πράττει, κἄπειτα ἐπιχειρήσας λέγειν

ἀήρ, ἀέρος m.: air, mist 16
αἰθήρ, -έρος ὁ: aether, air, sky, 4
αἰτιάομαι: assign, accuse, charge; blame, 4
ἀνα-γιγνώσκω: recognize, persuade; read, 3
ἀπο-δίδωμι: to give back, return, render, 5
ἄ-τοπος, -ον: strange, odd, extraordinary, 9
βέλτιστος, -η, -ον: best, 14
βίβλος, ὁ: book, 1
δια-κοσμέω: to arrange, order, 2
ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ: hope, expectation, 9
ἐπ-αιτιάομαι: assign (as cause), accuse 1
ἐπεκ-διηγέομαι: to explain in addition, 3
ἐπι-χειρέω: put one's hand on, attempt, try, 8
ἑταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate, 11
θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wonderful, marvelous, 11
ἵνα: in order that (+ subj.); where (+ ind.), 7
κοινός, -ή, -όν: common, ordinary; public, 3
νοῦς, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14
οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 14
πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18
πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12
προ-έρχομαι: to go forth, advance, 1
σπουδή, ἡ: haste, earnestness, enthusiasm, 1
ταχύς, εῖα, ύ: quick, swift, hastily, 9
ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water, 14
χείρων, -ον, (-οντος): worse, inferior, 5
χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.) 11

2 **καὶ κοινῇ πᾶσι**: *and to everything in common*; parallel to ἑκάστῳ in b1
τὸ...ᾤμην...ἀγαθόν: *I thought that (the one)…would explain what is best for each and what is the good common to all*; the missing acc. subj. governs ἀποδιδόντα
3 **ἂν ἀπεδόμην πολλοῦ τὰς ἐλπίδας**: *and I would not give up (my) hopes for a great price*; i.e. I had high hopes; ἄν + aor. mid. expresses past unrealized potential; the mid. of ἀποδίδωμι often means 'sell' or 'exchange and governs a gen. of price
4 **ὡς τάχιστα οἷός τ(ε) ἦ**: *as quickly as I was able*; '…I was the sort to…' οἷος τε εἰμί is a common idiom for 'I am able…'
5 **ἵνα...εἰδείην**: *so that…might…*; purpose, 1s. opt. οἶδα in secondary sequence
ὡς τάχιστα: *as…as possible*; + superlative
7 **φερόμενος**: *carried along*; pass. pple
8 **προϊὼν**: nom. sg. pres. pple προέρχομαι
τῷ νῷ: dat. sg. νοῦς, obj. of χρώμενον
9 **οὐδὲν**: *not at all*; inner acc.
εἰς: *for…*; expressing purpose
c2 **αἰτιώμενον**: *assigning (as causes)...*; i.e. to point out as responsible
3 **ὁμοιότατον**: superlative adv.
πεπονθέναι: *to have happened*; pf. πάσχω
ὥσπερ ἂν εἴ: *just as if…*; ὥσπερ εἰ, see 1.5
4 **νῷ**: *with mind, with nous*; dat. of means
κἄπειτα: καὶ ἔπειτα

τὰς αἰτίας ἑκάστων ὧν πράττω, λέγοι πρῶτον μὲν ὅτι διὰ ταῦτα νῦν ἐνθάδε κάθημαι, ὅτι σύγκειταί μου τὸ σῶμα ἐξ ὀστῶν καὶ νεύρων, καὶ τὰ μὲν ὀστᾶ ἐστιν στερεὰ καὶ διαφυὰς ἔχει χωρὶς ἀπ᾽ ἀλλήλων, τὰ δὲ νεῦρα οἷα ἐπιτείνεσθαι καὶ ἀνίεσθαι, περιαμπέχοντα τὰ ὀστᾶ μετὰ τῶν σαρκῶν καὶ δέρματος ὃ συνέχει αὐτά· αἰωρουμένων οὖν τῶν ὀστῶν ἐν ταῖς αὑτῶν συμβολαῖς χαλῶντα καὶ συντείνοντα τὰ νεῦρα κάμπτεσθαί που ποιεῖ οἷόν τ᾽ εἶναι ἐμὲ νῦν τὰ μέλη, καὶ διὰ ταύτην τὴν αἰτίαν συγκαμφθεὶς ἐνθάδε κάθημαι· καὶ αὖ περὶ τοῦ διαλέγεσθαι ὑμῖν ἑτέρας τοιαύτας αἰτίας λέγοι, φωνάς τε καὶ ἀέρας καὶ ἀκοὰς καὶ ἄλλα μυρία τοιαῦτα αἰτιώμενος, ἀμελήσας τὰς ὡς ἀληθῶς αἰτίας λέγειν,

---

ἀήρ, ἀέρος m.: air, mist 16
αἰτιάομαι: assign, accuse, charge; blame, 4
αἰωρέω: to lift up, raise, 2
ἀκοή, ἡ: hearing, 1
ἀμελέω: to have no care for, neglect, 5
ἀν-ίημι: to relax, let loose, send up, 1
δέρμα, -ατος, τό: skin, 1
δια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 13
διαφυή, ἡ: joint, 1
ἐπι-τείνω: to stretch over, tighten, 3
κάθ-ημαι: to sit, 4
κάμπτομαι, ἡ: bend, curve, 1
μέλος, -έος, τό: limb, 1
νεῦρον, τό: sinew, tendon, nerve, 6
ὀστέον, τό: bone, 9
περι-αμπέχω: put on round, put on, clothe, 1
πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12
σάρξ, σαρκός, ἡ: flesh, 3
στερεός, -ά, -όν: solid, firm, 1
συγ-κάμπτω: to bend, bend together, 2
συγ-κείμαι: be composed, be compounded, 6
συμ-βολή, ἡ: ligament, 1
συν-έχω: to hold together, contain, 4
συν-τείνω: to draw tight, strain, 4
φωνή, ἡ: speech, voice, 2
χαλάω: to slacken, loosen, release, 3
χωρίς: separately; apart from, without (gen) 6

5 **ὧν**: *which*; ἅ, acc. pl. relative pronoun attracted into the gen. of the antecedent
(ὥσπερ ἄν εἴ) λέγοι: *(just as if) one should say*; opt. in a protasis beginning in line 3; the ἄν is part of a suppressed apodosis (ἄν + opt) and can be left untranslated (S 2478)
6 **ἐνθάδε**: *here*
ὅτι: *(namely) that…*; or 'namely because...' in apposition to διὰ ταῦτα
ἐξ: i.e. as a result from…;
8 **(ἐστίν) οἷα**: *are the sort to…*; add a linking verb; οἷα is a predicate that governs two epexegetic (explanatory) infinitives
d2 **ὃ συνέχει αὐτὰ**: *which contains them*
αἰωρουμένων...ὀστῶν ἐν...συμβολαῖς: gen. abs., includes the prepositional phrase
4 **τὰ νεῦρα**: nom. subject of ποιεῖ
κάμπτεσθαι τὰ μέλη: governed by οἷον τε εἶναι
ποιεῖ οἷόν τ(ε) εἶναι ἐμὲ: *makes me able to…*; 'makes me be the sort to… '
5 **συγκαμφθεὶς**: nom. sg. aor. pass. pple
6 **τοῦ διαλέγεσθαι ὑμῖν**: *conversing with you*
7 **λέγοι**: *(just as if) one should say*; parallel to λέγοι in c5 in the same protasis from line c3
8 **αἰτιώμενος**: *assigning (as causes)*
ὡς ἀληθῶς: *truly*; τὰς ὡς ἀληθῶς αἰτίας may be translated as 'the causes in reality' or just 'the real causes'

ὅτι, ἐπειδὴ Ἀθηναίοις ἔδοξε βέλτιον εἶναι ἐμοῦ καταψηφίσασθαι, διὰ ταῦτα δὴ καὶ ἐμοὶ βέλτιον αὖ δέδοκται ἐνθάδε καθῆσθαι, καὶ δικαιότερον παραμένοντα ὑπέχειν τὴν δίκην
5 *ἣν ἂν κελεύσωσιν· ἐπεὶ νὴ τὸν κύνα, ὡς ἐγῷμαι, πάλαι ἂν*
99 *ταῦτα τὰ νεῦρα καὶ τὰ ὀστᾶ ἢ περὶ Μέγαρα ἢ Βοιωτοὺς ἦν, ὑπὸ δόξης φερόμενα τοῦ βελτίστου, εἰ μὴ δικαιότερον ᾤμην καὶ κάλλιον εἶναι πρὸ τοῦ φεύγειν τε καὶ ἀποδιδράσκειν ὑπέχειν τῇ πόλει δίκην ἥντιν' ἂν τάττῃ. ἀλλ' αἴτια μὲν*
5 *τὰ τοιαῦτα καλεῖν λίαν ἄτοπον· εἰ δέ τις λέγοι ὅτι ἄνευ τοῦ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἔχειν καὶ ὀστᾶ καὶ νεῦρα καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα ἔχω οὐκ ἂν οἷός τ' ἦ ποιεῖν τὰ δόξαντά μοι, ἀληθῆ ἂν λέγοι· ὡς μέντοι διὰ ταῦτα ποιῶ ἃ ποιῶ, καὶ ταῦτα νῷ πράττων, ἀλλ' οὐ*

ἄ-τοπος, -ον: strange, odd, extraordinary, 9
Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον: Athenian, of Athens, 6
ἄνευ: without, 9
ἀπο-διδράσκω: to run away, flee, escape, 2
βέλτιστος, -η, -ον: best, 14
βελτίων, -ον (-ονος): better, 7
Βοιωτός, ὁ: Boeotian, 1
δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right(eous), fair, 13
δόξα, ἡ: opinion, reputation, honor, glory, 7
ἐν-θάδε: here, hither, thither, 17
κάθ-ημαι: to sit, 4
καλλιων, -ον: more noble or beautiful, 7
κατα-ψηφίζομαι: to vote against (gen) 1
κελεύω: to bid, order, command, exhort, 8
κύων, κυνός, ὁ: a dog, 2
λίαν: very, exceedingly, 1
Μέγαρα, τά: Megara, 1
νεῦρον, τό: sinew, tendon, nerve, 6
νή: by…(+ acc, invoking a god), 14
νοῦς, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14
ὀστέον, τό: bone, 9
πάλαι: for some time, long ago, of old, 13
παρα-μένω: to abide, remain, 2
πόλις, ἡ: a city, 1
πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12
πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 13
τάττω: to order, arrange, marshall, 2
ὑπ-έχω: to bear, suffer, undergo, 3
φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 10

2 **ὅτι**: *(namely) that…, (namely) because…*
3 **ταῦτα δή**: *these very things, precisely these*
καὶ: *also, too*
δέδοκται: *it…*; pf. pass. δοκέω
4 **καὶ δικαιότερον**: *and (it has seemed) to be more just that I…*; supply δέδοκται
δίκην: *penalty*
5 **ἣν ἄν**: *whatever*; indefinite relative + subj.
ἐπεὶ: *since…*; causal
ἐγῷμαι: ἐγὼ οἶομαι
πάλαι ἂν...ἦν.... εἰ...ᾤμην: *would have been long ago….if I did not think*; present contrafactual (εἰ + impf., ἄν + impf.); ἦν governs a neuter pl. subject, and πάλαι suggests that ἦν is progressive in sense
99a1 **ἢ περὶ Μέγαρα ἢ (περὶ) Βοιωτοὺς**: *either around Megara or around the Boeotians*; note the lack of parallelism
2 **ὑπὸ**: *by…*; gen. of cause
3 **πρὸ...ἀποδιδράσκειν**: *instead of…*; + infs.
4 **τῇ πόλει**: *for the city*; dat. of interest
ἥντινα ἂν: *whatever*; indefinite relative
5 **(ἐστίν) ἄτοπον**: *it is absurd*; add verb
εἰ λέγοι...ἂν λέγοι: *should…would say*
6 **καὶ ὀστᾶ...ἔχω**: in apposition to τοιαῦτα
7 **οὐκ ἄν οἷός τ(ε) ἦ**: *I would be able…*
ὡς...: *(to say) that…*; ind. disc.
8 **νῷ**: *with mind, with intention*

τῇ τοῦ βελτίστου αἱρέσει, πολλὴ ἂν καὶ μακρὰ ῥᾳθυμία εἴη b
τοῦ λόγου. τὸ γὰρ μὴ διελέσθαι οἷόν τ᾽ εἶναι ὅτι ἄλλο μέν
τί ἐστι τὸ αἴτιον τῷ ὄντι, ἄλλο δὲ ἐκεῖνο ἄνευ οὗ τὸ αἴτιον
οὐκ ἄν ποτ᾽ εἴη αἴτιον· ὃ δή μοι φαίνονται ψηλαφῶντες οἱ
πολλοὶ ὥσπερ ἐν σκότει, ἀλλοτρίῳ ὀνόματι προσχρώμενοι, 5
ὡς αἴτιον αὐτὸ προσαγορεύειν. διὸ δὴ καὶ ὁ μέν τις δίνην
περιτιθεὶς τῇ γῇ ὑπὸ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ μένειν δὴ ποιεῖ τὴν γῆν,
ὁ δὲ ὥσπερ καρδόπῳ πλατείᾳ βάθρον τὸν ἀέρα ὑπερείδει·
τὴν δὲ τοῦ ὡς οἷόν τε βέλτιστα αὐτὰ τεθῆναι δύναμιν οὕτω c
νῦν κεῖσθαι, ταύτην οὔτε ζητοῦσιν οὔτε τινὰ οἴονται δαι-
μονίαν ἰσχὺν ἔχειν, ἀλλὰ ἡγοῦνται τούτου Ἄτλαντα ἄν
ποτε ἰσχυρότερον καὶ ἀθανατώτερον καὶ μᾶλλον ἅπαντα

ἀήρ, ἀέρος m.: air, mist 16
αἵρεσις, -εως, ἡ: choice, deliberation; taking, 1
αἴτιος, -α, -ον: responsible, blameworthy, 8
ἀλλότριος -α -ον: not belonging, of another, 3
ἄνευ: without, 9
ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: every, quite all, 14
Ἄτλας, -αντος, ὁ: Atlas, 1
βάθρον, τό: base, pedestal, 1
βέλτιστος, -η, -ον: best, 14
δαιμονίος, -α, -ον: divine, of a god, 1
δι-αιρέω (ἑλ): to divide, separate, discern, 3
δίνη, ἡ: vortex, rotation; whirlpool, eddy, 1
διό: δι᾽ ὅ, for which reason, for this reason, 4
δύναμις, -εως, ἡ: power, wealth, strength, 3
ζητέω: to seek, look for, investigate, 9
ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν: strong, powerful; severe, 5
ἰσχύς, -ύος, ἡ: strength, might, power, force, 2
καρδόπος, ἡ: kneading-trough, 1
κεῖμαι: to lie, set down, be placed, establish, 4
μακρός, ά, όν: long, far, distant, large, 4
μένω: to stay, remain, 8
οὐρανός, ὁ: sky, heaven, 10
περι-τίθημι: to put or place around, envelop 1
πλατύς, -εία, -ύ: wide, broad, flat, 3
προσ-αγορεύω: to call (x) (y), name, 1
προσ-χράομαι: to use in addition (+ dat.), 2
ῥᾳ-θυμία, ἡ,: carelessness; laziness, 1
σκότος, -εος, τό: darkness, gloom, 1
ὑπ-ερείδω: to put under as support, 1
ψηλαφάω: to grope for, touch, feel for, 1

b1 **τῇ...αἱρέσει**: *because of…*; dat. of cause
ἂν εἴη: *would be*; ῥᾳθυμία is predicate; the clause (ὡς...αἱρέσει, a7-b1) is the subject
2 **τοῦ λόγου**: *of talking*; or 'of speech'
τὸ γὰρ μὴ διελέσθαι οἷον τ(ε) εἶναι: *(it is remarkable) that one is not able to distinguish…!*; an inf. of exclamation, is used to express surprise or indignation (S 2015), see 96e6
3 **ὅτι ἄλλο μέν...ἄλλὸ δὲ...αἴτιον**: *that the cause in reality is one thing but that without which the cause would not ever be a cause (is) another thing*; τὸ αἴτιον is 'the thing responsible,' hence 'cause' or 'reason'; τῷ ὄντι is adverbial
4 **ὃ δή**: *which very thing…*; obj. of the pple
6 **ὡς...**: *so as to…*; result clause.
ὁ μὲν τις...γῆν: *a certain man by placing a vortex around the earth makes the earth just stay under the sky*; dat. of compound
8 **ὁ δὲ...ὑπερείδει**: *another puts air as a base under (the earth) as if (under) a flat trough*
c1 **τὴν δὲ...ζητοῦσιν**: *but they do not seek this, (namely) the power for their being placed as best as it is possible to be placed just now*; τοῦ τεθῆναι is an articular inf. aor. pass. τίθημι; κεῖσθαι is an explanatory inf.
3 **τινα...ἔχειν**: *that it has some divine force*
τούτου: *than this one*; gen. of comparison
Ἄτλαντα: *that a (new) Atlas…*

συνέχοντα ἐξευρεῖν, καὶ ὡς ἀληθῶς τὸ ἀγαθὸν καὶ δέον συνδεῖν καὶ συνέχειν οὐδὲν οἴονται. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν τῆς τοιαύτης αἰτίας ὅπῃ ποτὲ ἔχει μαθητὴς ὁτουοῦν ἥδιστ᾽ ἂν γενοίμην· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ταύτης ἐστερήθην καὶ οὔτ᾽ αὐτὸς εὑρεῖν οὔτε παρ᾽ ἄλλου μαθεῖν οἷός τε ἐγενόμην, τὸν δεύτερον
d *πλοῦν ἐπὶ τὴν τῆς αἰτίας ζήτησιν ᾗ πεπραγμάτευμαι βούλει σοι, ἔφη, ἐπίδειξιν ποιήσωμαι, ὦ Κέβης;*

ὑπερφυῶς μὲν οὖν, ἔφη, ὡς βούλομαι.

ἔδοξε τοίνυν μοι, ἦ δ᾽ ὅς, μετὰ ταῦτα, ἐπειδὴ ἀπειρήκη τὰ ὄντα σκοπῶν, δεῖν εὐλαβηθῆναι μὴ πάθοιμι ὅπερ οἱ τὸν ἥλιον ἐκλείποντα θεωροῦντες καὶ σκοπούμενοι πάσχουσιν· διαφθείρονται γάρ που ἔνιοι τὰ ὄμματα, ἐὰν μὴ ἐν ὕδατι ἢ

ἀπο-λέγω: to renounce, refuse, decline, 1
δεύτερος, -η, -ον: second, 1
δια-φθείρω: to destroy, corrupt, kill, 6
ἐκ-λείπω: to leave, abandon, eclipse, 1
ἔνιοι, -αι, -α: some, 7
ἐξ-ευρίσκω: to find out, discover, 3
ἐπί-δειξις, ἡ: exhibition, display, 1
εὐλαβέομαι: be cautious, be careful, beware, 5
εὑρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 8
ζήτησις, εως, ἡ: seeking, examining, 3
ἡδύς, -εῖα, -ύ: sweet, pleasant, glad, 5
ἥλιος, ὁ: the sun, 7
θεωρέω: to see, watch, look at, 3
μαθητής, οῦ, ὁ: a learner, student, pupil, 1
μανθάνω: to learn, understand, 12
ὄμμα, -ατος, τό: the eye, 5
ὅπῃ: where; in what way, how, 11
ὅστις-οῦν, ἥτισουν, ὅτι-οῦν: whosoever, 11
πλόος (πλοῦς) ὁ: sailing, voyage, 1
πραγματεύομαι: busy oneself, take trouble, 2
στερέω: to deprive from, rob, defraud (gen) 5
συν-δέω: to bind together, bind fast, 1
συν-έχω: to hold together, contain, 4
ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water, 14
ὑπερφυῶς: extraordinarily, enormously, 3

5 **. . . συνέχοντα**: *more all-encompassing*
ἂν...ἐξευρειν: *would…*; ἄν + aor. inf. is the equiv. to a potential opt. in direct disc.
ὡς ἀληθῶς: *truly*
τὸ ἀγαθὸν καὶ δέον: *what is good and binding*; 'the good and binding', neut. pple
6 **οὐδὲν**: *not at all.*; inner acc. with οἴονται
τῆς...αἰτίας...μαθητὴς ὁτουοῦν: *a pupil of whosoever of such a cause*; objective gen.
7 **ὅπῃ ποτὲ ἔχει**: *how in the world it is*; p. 7
ἥδιστ(α): superlative adv. ἡδύς
8 **ἐστερήθην**: 1s aor. pass. + gen. separation
9 **παρ(ὰ)**: *from…*; place of source
οἷός τε ἐγενόμην: *I turned out to be able*; or'came to be able', οἷος τε εἰμί, 'I am the sort to' is a common idiom for 'I am able' (here, with the aor. of γίγνομαι)
τὸν δεύτερον...ζήτησιν: *a second sailing for seeking the cause*; + πεπραγμάτευμαι
d1 **ᾗ** : *in what way…*; dat. of manner
πεπτραγμάτευμαι: pf. mid.
2 **βούλει...ποιήσωμαι...**: *do you wish that I create…*; 2s βούλομαι often accompanies a deliberative subj. conflating two questions: 'what do you want?' and 'am I to create?'
3 **ὑπερφυῶς...ὡς**: *(it is) extraordinary how*; ὑπερφυές ἐστιν ὡς, nominative predicate is often attracted by the adverb ὡς
μὲν οὖν: *certainly indeed*; strong assent
ἀπειρήκη: plpf. ἀπολέγω (ἐρ-)
5 **τὰ ὄντα**: *the things which are*
δεῖν: *it is necessary*; impersonal δεῖ
εὐλαβηθῆναι: aor. pass. deponent inf.
μὴ πάθοιμι: *lest I experience*; fearing clause

τινι τοιούτῳ σκοπῶνται τὴν εἰκόνα αὐτοῦ. τοιοῦτόν τι καὶ e
ἐγὼ διενοήθην, καὶ ἔδεισα μὴ παντάπασι τὴν ψυχὴν τυφλω-
θείην βλέπων πρὸς τὰ πράγματα τοῖς ὄμμασι καὶ ἑκάστῃ
τῶν αἰσθήσεων ἐπιχειρῶν ἅπτεσθαι αὐτῶν. ἔδοξε δή μοι
χρῆναι εἰς τοὺς λόγους καταφυγόντα ἐν ἐκείνοις σκοπεῖν 5
τῶν ὄντων τὴν ἀλήθειαν. ἴσως μὲν οὖν ᾧ εἰκάζω τρόπον
τινὰ οὐκ ἔοικεν· οὐ γὰρ πάνυ συγχωρῶ τὸν ἐν [τοῖς] λόγοις 100
σκοπούμενον τὰ ὄντα ἐν εἰκόσι μᾶλλον σκοπεῖν ἢ τὸν ἐν
[τοῖς] ἔργοις. ἀλλ᾽ οὖν δὴ ταύτῃ γε ὥρμησα, καὶ ὑποθέμενος
ἑκάστοτε λόγον ὃν ἂν κρίνω ἐρρωμενέστατον εἶναι, ἃ μὲν
ἄν μοι δοκῇ τούτῳ συμφωνεῖν τίθημι ὡς ἀληθῆ ὄντα, καὶ 5
περὶ αἰτίας καὶ περὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἁπάντων [ὄντων], ἃ δ᾽ ἂν

αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: every, quite all, 14
ἅπτω: fasten, grasp (gen); kindle, set fire; 11
βλέπτω: to look at, see, 3
δείδω: fear, dread, shrink from, feel awe, 11
δια-νοέομαι: to think, consider, intend, 6
εἰκάζω: to liken, compare; *pass*. be like, 1
εἰκών, -όνος, ἡ: a likeness, image; statue, 3
ἑκάστ-οτε: each time, on each occasion, 4
ἐπι-χειρέω: put one's hand on, attempt, try, 8
ἔργον, τό: work, labor, deed, act, 5
ἐρρωμένος -η -ον: strong, healthy, powerful 1
ἴσως: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 19
κατα-φεύγω: to flee to refuge, seek refuge, 2
κρίνω: to pick out choose; judge, decide, 2
ὄμμα, -ατος, τό: the eye, 5
ὁρμάω: to set in motion; set out, begin, 5
παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15
πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18
συγ-χωρέω: agree, yield, come together, 13
συμ-φωνέω: be in harmony, agree (+dat.) 2
τίθημι: to set forth, put, place, arrange, 10
τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17
τυφλόω: to make blind, 2
ὑπο-τίθημι: to set up, suppose, propose, 4

e1 **τινι τοιούτῳ**: *(in) some sort of thing*
σκοπῶνται: *they examine*; ἄν + subj. in a pres. general condition (εἰ ἄν subj., pres.)
2 **διενοήθην**: 1s aor. pass. deponent
μὴ...τυφλωθείην: *that…*; 'lest', fearing, μή + 1s aor. pass. opt. in secondary sequence
τὴν ψυχὴν: *in the soul*; acc. of respect
3 **τοῖς ὄμμασι...ἑκάστῃ**: both dat. of means
4 **αὐτῶν**: *them*; a partitive gen. is a common object of verbs of grasping or touching
5 **χρῆναι**: inf. χρή
τοὺς λόγους: i.e. things said
6 **τῶν ὄντων**: *of the things which are*
ἴσως μὲν...ἔοικεν: *perhaps in a way it is not like (this) which I am comparing it*; i.e. perhaps the metaphor is not apt; ᾧ (τούτῳ ὅ) is an acc. (εἰκάζω + acc.) attracted into the dat. of a missing obj. of ἔοικεν

100a1 **τὸν...σκοπούμενον**: *one examining…*
τὰ ὄντα: *the things which are*
τὸν ἐν ἔργοις (σκοπούμενον): *the one…*
3 **ἀλλ(ὰ) οὖν δὴ...γε**: *well, in all events…*; δή reinforces the particles, γε emphasizes the preceding word; GP 445, S 2957
ταύτῃ: *in this way*; dat. of manner
ὑποθέμενος: aor. mid. pple ὑποτίθημι
4 **ὃν ἂν**: *whichever…*; ἄν + subj., relative
ἃ μὲν...: *(these things) which*; (ταῦτα) ἅ
5 **τούτῳ**: i.e. the ἐρρωμενέστατος λόγος
ὡς ἀληθῆ ὄντα: *on the grounds of being true*; i.e. as true; ὡς + pple, alleged cause
ἃ δ(έ): *and whatever…*; in reply to ἃ μὲν

μή, ὡς οὐκ ἀληθῆ. βούλομαι δέ σοι σαφέστερον εἰπεῖν ἃ λέγω· οἶμαι γάρ σε νῦν οὐ μανθάνειν.

οὐ μὰ τὸν Δία, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, οὐ σφόδρα.

b *ἀλλ', ἦ δ' ὅς, ὧδε λέγω, οὐδὲν καινόν, ἀλλ' ἅπερ ἀεί τε ἄλλοτε καὶ ἐν τῷ παρεληλυθότι λόγῳ οὐδὲν πέπαυμαι λέγων. ἔρχομαι [γὰρ] δὴ ἐπιχειρῶν σοι ἐπιδείξασθαι τῆς αἰτίας τὸ εἶδος ὃ πεπραγμάτευμαι, καὶ εἶμι πάλιν ἐπ' ἐκεῖνα*
5 *τὰ πολυθρύλητα καὶ ἄρχομαι ἀπ' ἐκείνων, ὑποθέμενος εἶναί τι καλὸν αὐτὸ καθ' αὑτὸ καὶ ἀγαθὸν καὶ μέγα καὶ τἆλλα πάντα· ἃ εἴ μοι δίδως τε καὶ συγχωρεῖς εἶναι ταῦτα, ἐλπίζω σοι ἐκ τούτων τὴν αἰτίαν ἐπιδείξειν καὶ ἀνευρήσειν ὡς ἀθάνατον [ἡ] ψυχή.*

ἄλλ-οτε: at another time, at other times, 4
ἀν-ευρίσκω: to find out, discover, 2
ἄρχω: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 12
δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 15
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
ἐλπίζω: to hope, expect, 2
ἐπι-δείκνυμι: to indicate, point out, prove, 5
ἐπι-χειρέω: put one's hand on, attempt, try, 8
Ζεύς, ὁ: Zeus, 11
καινός, -ή, -όν: new, novel, strange, 2
μά: by…(in oaths and invocations), 3
μανθάνω: to learn, understand, 12
παρ-έρχομαι: to go pass, enter, 5
παύω: to stop, make cease, 6
πολυ-θρύλητος, -ον: much spoken of, well known, 1
πραγματεύομαι: busy oneself, take trouble, 2
σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
συγ-χωρέω: agree, yield, come together, 13
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18
ὑπο-τίθημι: to set up, suppose, propose, 4
ὧδε: in this way, so, thus, 4

7 **ὡς οὐκ ἀληθῆ (ὄντα)**: *on the grounds of not being true*; i.e. as not true; ὡς + pple, expressed alleged cause
σαφέστερον: comparative adv.
λέγω: *I mean*
τὸν Δία: acc. sg. Ζεύς
b1 **ἀλλὰ**: *well*; as often, beginning a speech (S 2784)
ἦ δ' ὅς: see note on p. 9
οὐδὲν...: *nothing (is)*; add verb
2 **παρεληλυθότι**: *past*; pf. pple παρ-έχομαι
οὐδὲν: *not at all*; 'made no ceasing,' inner acc.
πέπαυμαι: pf. mid. + complementary pple
4 **εἶδος**: i.e. kind
πεπραγμάτευμαι: pf. mid.
εἶμι: fut. ἔρχομαι
ἐπὶ: *to…*; acc. place to which
5 **ὑποθέμενος**: aor. mid. pple ὑποτίθημι
εἶναι: *that there exists…*
6 **τι καλὸν**: *something beautiful*
6 **αὐτὸ κατ(ὰ) (ἑ)αυτὸ**: *itself in itself*
τἆλλα: τὰ ἄλλα
7 **ἃ**: *(things) which*; (ταῦτα) ἃ
δίδως: *you grant*; 2s pres.
8 **ὡς ἀθάνατον (ἐστίν) ψυχή**: *that a soul…*; Plato often employs neuter predicates through the subject is masc. or fem.; supply a linking verb

ἀλλὰ μήν, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, ὡς διδόντος σοι οὐκ ἂν **c**
φθάνοις περαίνων.

σκόπει δή, ἔφη, τὰ ἑξῆς ἐκείνοις ἐάν σοι συνδοκῇ ὥσπερ ἐμοί. φαίνεται γάρ μοι, εἴ τί ἐστιν ἄλλο καλὸν πλὴν αὐτὸ τὸ καλόν, οὐδὲ δι' ἓν ἄλλο καλὸν εἶναι ἢ διότι μετέχει ἐκείνου τοῦ καλοῦ· καὶ πάντα δὴ οὕτως λέγω. τῇ τοιᾷδε αἰτίᾳ συγχωρεῖς;

συγχωρῶ, ἔφη.

οὐ τοίνυν, ἦ δ' ὅς, ἔτι μανθάνω οὐδὲ δύναμαι τὰς ἄλλας αἰτίας τὰς σοφὰς ταύτας γιγνώσκειν· ἀλλ' ἐάν τίς μοι λέγῃ διὰ ὅτι καλόν ἐστιν ὁτιοῦν, ἢ χρῶμα εὐανθὲς ἔχον ἢ σχῆμα **d**
ἢ ἄλλο ὁτιοῦν τῶν τοιούτων, τὰ μὲν ἄλλα χαίρειν ἐῶ,

γιγνώσκω: learn to know, to learn, realize 12
δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 15
δι-ότι: because, for the reason that, 1
δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 15
ἐάω: to permit, allow, let be, suffer, 9
ἑξῆς: one after another, in a row, in order, 1
εὐ-ανθής, -ές: bright, glowing, flowery, 1
μανθάνω: to learn, understand, 12
μετ-έχω: to partake of, have share in (gen) 13
ὅστισ-οῦν, ἥτισουν, ὅτι-οῦν: whosoever, 11
περαίνω: to bring to an end, finish, 1
πλήν: except, but (+ gen.), 7
σοφός, -ή, -όν: wise, skilled, clever, 5
συγ-χωρέω: agree, yield, come together, 13
συν-δοκέω: to seem good also, 6
σχῆμα, -ατος, τό: form, figure, appearance, 3
φθάνω: to anticipate, do first, 1
χαίρω: to rejoice, be glad, enjoy; fare well 12
χρῶμα, -ατος, τό: color, complexion, 9

c1 **ἀλλὰ μήν**: *well certainly, well surely*; here a strong assent; cf. 61d9, 63a4, etc.
ὡς διδόντος σοι: *since (I) grant (it) to you*; 'on the grounds that…' ὡς + pple (here gen. abs.) expresses alleged cause
οὐκ...περαίνων: *you could not be too quick in finishing (the task)*; φθάνω governs a complementary pple (S 2096d); potential opt. is used here as a command
3 **σκόπει**: σκόπε-ε, imperative
τὰ ἑξῆς ἐκείνοις: *the things next to those*; i.e. the next point
4 **εἴ...καλὸν**: *if anything other is…*; τι
αὐτὸ τὸ καλόν: *the beautiful itself*
5 **οὐδὲ δι(ὰ) ἓν ἄλλο**: *that for no other reason*; 'on account of not one other thing' οὐδὲ... ἓν is here equiv. to οὐδὲν
μετέχει: *partakes of, participates in..*; this common philosophical term governs a partitive gen.
6 **πάντα δὴ**: *absolutely everything*; intensive, S 2843
τῇ αἰτίᾳ: *with…*; dat. of compound verb
9 **ἦ δ'ὅς**: see note on pg. 9
τὰ σοφὰς ταύτας: all modify αἰτίας
d1 **δι(ὰ) ὅτι**: *for what reason, on account of what*
ὁτιοῦν: *whatsoever*; neut. nom. sg. subject
ἢ....ἔχον: *(by) having either…or…or*; the pple is neut. modifying neut. sg. ὁτιοῦν
2 **χαίρειν ἐῶ**: *I dismiss the other things*; ἐάω 'I allow the others to say farewell' a idiom that relies on the fact that χαῖρε, 'fare well' is a usual way of saying goodbye; the ἄλλα refers to τὰς αἰτίας in c9-10

—ταράττομαι γὰρ ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσι—τοῦτο δὲ ἁπλῶς καὶ ἀτέχνως καὶ ἴσως εὐήθως ἔχω παρ᾽ ἐμαυτῷ, ὅτι οὐκ ἄλλο τι
5 *ποιεῖ αὐτὸ καλὸν ἢ ἡ ἐκείνου τοῦ καλοῦ εἴτε παρουσία εἴτε κοινωνία εἴτε ὅπῃ δὴ καὶ ὅπως †προσγενομένη· οὐ γὰρ ἔτι τοῦτο διισχυρίζομαι, ἀλλ᾽ ὅτι τῷ καλῷ πάντα τὰ καλὰ [γίγνεται] καλά. τοῦτο γάρ μοι δοκεῖ ἀσφαλέστατον εἶναι καὶ ἐμαυτῷ ἀποκρίνασθαι καὶ ἄλλῳ, καὶ τούτου ἐχόμενος*
e *ἡγοῦμαι οὐκ ἄν ποτε πεσεῖν, ἀλλ᾽ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι καὶ ἐμοὶ καὶ ὁτῳοῦν ἄλλῳ ἀποκρίνασθαι ὅτι τῷ καλῷ τὰ καλὰ [γίγνεται] καλά· ἢ οὐ καὶ σοὶ δοκεῖ;*

δοκεῖ.

5 *καὶ μεγέθει ἄρα τὰ μεγάλα μεγάλα καὶ τὰ μείζω μείζω, καὶ σμικρότητι τὰ ἐλάττω ἐλάττω;*

ἀ-σφαλής, -ές: safe, secure, not liable to fall 6
ἀ-τεχνῶς: simply, absolutely, really, 6
ἁπλῶς: singly, plainly, absolutely, 2
ἀπο-κρίνομαι: to answer, reply, 13
δι-ισχυρίζομαι: affirm confidently; rely on, 5
εἴ-τε: either...or; whether...or, 13
εὐ-ήθης, -ες: foolish, simple-natured, silly, 3
ἴσως: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 19
κοινωνία, ἡ: community, association, 2
μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size, magnitude, height, 17
ὅπῃ: in what way; where, how, 11
ὅπως: how, in what way; in order that, that 10
ὅστις-οὖν, ἥτισουν, ὅτι-οὖν: whosoever, 11
παρ-ουσία, ἡ: presence, 1
πίπτω: to fall, 3
προσ-γίγνομαι: to come to be in addition, 4
σμικρότης, -τητος, ἡ: smallness, 10
ταράττω: to trouble, stir, agitate, confuse, 6

3 **ἐν**: *among…*; readers might prefer ‘by’ and a dat. of cause in this context
4 **ἔχω**: *I hold*
παρ(ὰ) ἐμαυτῷ: *close to myself*
ὅτι: *(namely) that...*; in apposition to τοῦτο
ἄλλο τι: subject
5 **ἐκείνου τοῦ καλοῦ**: *of that beautiful*
6 **ὅπῃ δὴ καὶ ὅπως προσγενομένη**: *or in just what way or how (it makes it beautiful) by being added (to it)*; i.e. mid. pple is causal in sense
7 **ἀλλ(ὰ) (διισχυρίζομαι) ὅτι**: *but (I affirm confidently) that…*; supply missing verb
τῷ καλῷ: *by the beautiful*; dat. of cause
9 **ἄλλῳ**: *to anyone else*; dat. ind. object
τούτου ἐχόμενος: *clinging to this*; partitive gen. is common with verbs of touching
e1 **ἄν...πεσεῖν**: *that I would fall short*; i.e. fail, ἄν + inf. (aor. πίπτω) in place of potential opt. in direct disc.
5 **ὁτῳοῦν**: dat. ind. obj., ὅστις-οὖν
τῷ καλῷ: *because of the beautiful*; ‘by…’ dat. of means or cause
5 **μεγέθει**: *by…*; dat. of cause
σμικρότητι: *by…*; dat. of cause
μείζω: μειζο(ν)α, neut. nom. pl.
6 **ἐλάττω**: ἐλαττο(ν)α, neut. nom. pl.

ναί.

οὐδὲ σὺ ἄρ᾽ ἂν ἀποδέχοιο εἴ τίς τινα φαίη ἕτερον ἑτέρου τῇ κεφαλῇ μείζω εἶναι, καὶ τὸν ἐλάττω τῷ αὐτῷ τούτῳ ἐλάττω, ἀλλὰ διαμαρτύροιο ἂν ὅτι σὺ μὲν οὐδὲν ἄλλο λέγεις 101
ἢ ὅτι τὸ μεῖζον πᾶν ἕτερον ἑτέρου οὐδενὶ ἄλλῳ μεῖζόν ἐστιν ἢ μεγέθει, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο μεῖζον, διὰ τὸ μέγεθος, τὸ δὲ ἔλαττον οὐδενὶ ἄλλῳ ἔλαττον ἢ σμικρότητι, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἔλαττον, διὰ τὴν σμικρότητα, φοβούμενος οἶμαι μή τίς σοι 5
ἐναντίος λόγος ἀπαντήσῃ, ἐὰν τῇ κεφαλῇ μείζονά τινα φῇς εἶναι καὶ ἐλάττω, πρῶτον μὲν τῷ αὐτῷ τὸ μεῖζον μεῖζον εἶναι καὶ τὸ ἔλαττον ἔλαττον, ἔπειτα τῇ κεφαλῇ σμικρᾷ οὔσῃ τὸν μείζω μείζω εἶναι, καὶ τοῦτο δὴ τέρας εἶναι, τὸ σμικρῷ τινι b
μέγαν τινὰ εἶναι· ἢ οὐκ ἂν φοβοῖο ταῦτα;

ἀπ-αντάω: to encounter, meet with (dat.), 1
ἀπο-δέχομαι: to accept, receive, 9
δια-μαρτύρομαι: protest, insist; call gods and men to witness, 1
κεφαλή, ἡ: the head, 6
μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size, magnitude, height, 17
ναί: yes, yea, 15
σμικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little, 19
σμικρότης, -τητος, ἡ: smallness, 10
τέρας, τό: wonder, marvel, portent, 1
φοβέω: to put to flight, terrify, frighten, 15

7 **ἂν ἀποδέχοι(σ)ο**: would…; 2s pres. mid., fut. less vivid condition
8 **φαίη**: *should claim*; pres. opt.
ἑτέρου: *than…*; gen. of comparison
9 **τῇ κεφαλῇ**: *by…*; dat. of degree of difference
μείζω: μειζο(ν)α, acc. sg. subject
τὸν ἐλάττω (εἶναι): ἐλαττο(ν)α, acc. sg. subject; supply inf.
τῷ αὐτῷ τούτῳ: *by*…; dat. of degree of difference
101a1 **διαμαρτύροι(σ)ο ἂν**: *you would protest*; parallel to ἀποδέχοιο
2 **τὸ μεῖζον πᾶν ἕτερον**: *every greater thing*
ἑτέρου: *than…*; gen. of comparison
οὐδενὶ ἄλλῳ: *by*…; dat. of degree of difference
3 **μεγέθει**: *by…*; ‘because of…’ dat. of cause
μεῖζον: *(it is) greater*; add linking verb
διὰ τὸ μέγεθος: in apposition to διὰ τοῦτο
τὸ ἔλαττον...σμικρότητα: parallel to a2-3
5 **διὰ τὴν σμικρότητα**: in apposition to διὰ τοῦτο in line 4
οἶμαι: οἴομαι, parenthetical
μὴ...ἀπαντήσῃ: *that…*; ‘lest’, fearing clause; μή + subj. (3s aor.. pple)
6 **τῇ κεφαλῇ**: dat. of degree of difference
μείζονά...καὶ ἐλάττω: i.e. greater or smaller; ἐλαττο(ν)α, both predicates of εἶναι, τινα is acc. subject
7 **τῷ αὐτῷ**: *by*…; dat., degree of difference
8 **σμικρᾷ ουσῃ**: σμικρᾷ is predicate of the sg. pple εἰμί
b1 **καὶ...δὴ**: *and…indeed*; emphasizing the intervening word just as καὶ...γε
τὸ...εἶναι: articular inf. in apposition to τοῦτο, τινα is acc. subj.
σμικρῷ τινι: dat. of cause
2 **φοβοῖ(σ)ο**: 2s see e7 above

καὶ ὁ Κέβης γελάσας, ἔγωγε, ἔφη.

οὐκοῦν, ἦ δ᾽ ὅς, τὰ δέκα τῶν ὀκτὼ δυοῖν πλείω εἶναι, καὶ διὰ ταύτην τὴν αἰτίαν ὑπερβάλλειν, φοβοῖο ἂν λέγειν, ἀλλὰ μὴ πλήθει καὶ διὰ τὸ πλῆθος; καὶ τὸ δίπηχυ τοῦ πηχυαίου ἡμίσει μεῖζον εἶναι ἀλλ᾽ οὐ μεγέθει; ὁ αὐτὸς γάρ που φόβος.

πάνυ γ᾽, ἔφη.

τί δέ; ἑνὶ ἑνὸς προστεθέντος τὴν πρόσθεσιν αἰτίαν εἶναι **c** τοῦ δύο γενέσθαι ἢ διασχισθέντος τὴν σχίσιν οὐκ εὐλαβοῖο ἂν λέγειν; καὶ μέγα ἂν βοῴης ὅτι οὐκ οἶσθα ἄλλως πως ἕκαστον γιγνόμενον ἢ μετασχὸν τῆς ἰδίας οὐσίας ἑκάστου οὗ ἂν μετάσχῃ, καὶ ἐν τούτοις οὐκ ἔχεις ἄλλην τινὰ αἰτίαν τοῦ δύο γενέσθαι ἀλλ᾽ ἢ τὴν τῆς δυάδος μετάσχεσιν, καὶ

ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 14
βοάω: to cry aloud, shout, 3
γελάω: to laugh, 6
δέκα: ten, 3
δια-σχίζω: to cleave or rend asunder, 2
δί-πηχυς, -υ: two cubits, two cubits long, 2
δυάς, δυάδος, ἡ: two, pair, dyad, duality, 3
εὐλαβέομαι: be cautious, be careful, beware, 5
ἥμισυς, -εια, -υ: half, 5
ἴδιος, -α, -ον: peculiar, proper, personal, 1
μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size, magnitude, length, 17
μετ-έχω: to partake of, have share in (gen) 13
μετάσχεσις, ἡ: participation, 1
ὀκτώ: eight, 2
οὐσία, ἡ: being, essence, substance, 6
πηχυαῖος, -η, -ον: a cubit, a cubit long, 2
πλέων, -ον: more, greater, 17
πλῆθος, ἡ: number, multitude; size, crowd, 3
προσ-θέσις, ἡ: adding, addition, 3
προσ-τίθημι: to add, attribute, impose, give 10
πως: somehow, in any way, 3
σχίσις, -εως, ἡ: division, parting, cleavage, 4
ὑπερ-βάλλω: overshoot, exceed, go beyond 1
φοβέω: to put to flight, terrify, frighten, 15
φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic, 10

3 **γελάσας**: *bursting into laughter*; inceptive aor. pple, nom. sg., compare 64a10
4 **τὰ δέκα**: *ten*; do not translate the article
τῶν ὀκτὼ: gen. of comparison
δυοῖν: *by…*; dual dat. of degree of difference
πλείω: πλείο(ν)α, acc. sg. predicate
5 **φοβοῖ(σ)ο ἄν**: 2s pres mid., potential opt.
6 **πλήθει**: *by…*; ‘because of…’ dat. of cause
τοῦ πηχυαίου: gen. of comparison
7 **ἡμίσει**: dat. of degree of difference
μεγέθει: dat. of degree of difference
ὁ...φόβος: *(there would be)*; supply verb
9 **τί δέ**: *what (about this)?*
ἑνὶ: dat. of compound verb (pple), εἷς
ἑνὸς προστεθέντος: *one…*; gen. abs., aor. pass. pple προστίθημι
c1 **τοῦ δύο γενέσθαι**: articular inf., δύο is the predicate
(ἑνὸς) διαχισθέντος: one…; gen. absolute; aor. pass. pple, parallel to line 9
εὐλαβοῖ(σ)ο ἄν: *would you not avoid*; + inf., potential opt.; anticipates a ‘yes’ reply
2 **μέγα**: *loudly*; adverbial acc.
ἂν βοᾴης: βοάοιης, (alt. to βοάοις) opt.
οἶσθα: 2s. οἶδα
3 **ἕκαστον γιγνόμενον**: *each coming to be*
μετασχὸν: neuter sg. aor. pple.; see p. 27
4 **οὗ...μετάσχῃ**: *whatever…*; 3s aor. subj. in an indefinite relative clause; see p. 27
οὐκ ἔχεις: *you do not hold that…*; i.e. accept
5 **ἀλλ(ὰ) ἢ**: *but…*; or ‘rather than’

δεῖν τούτου μετασχεῖν τὰ μέλλοντα δύο ἔσεσθαι, καὶ μονάδος ὃ ἂν μέλλῃ ἓν ἔσεσθαι, τὰς δὲ σχίσεις ταύτας καὶ προσθέσεις καὶ τὰς ἄλλας τὰς τοιαύτας κομψείας ἐᾷς ἂν χαίρειν, παρεὶς ἀποκρίνασθαι τοῖς σεαυτοῦ σοφωτέροις· σὺ δὲ δεδιὼς ἄν, τὸ λεγόμενον, τὴν σαυτοῦ σκιὰν καὶ τὴν ἀπειρίαν, ἐχόμενος d
ἐκείνου τοῦ ἀσφαλοῦς τῆς ὑποθέσεως, οὕτως ἀποκρίναιο ἄν. εἰ δέ τις αὐτῆς τῆς ὑποθέσεως ἔχοιτο, χαίρειν ἐᾷς ἂν καὶ οὐκ ἀποκρίναιο ἕως ἂν τὰ ἀπ' ἐκείνης ὁρμηθέντα σκέψαιο εἴ σοι ἀλλήλοις συμφωνεῖ ἢ διαφωνεῖ· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐκείνης 5
αὐτῆς δέοι σε διδόναι λόγον, ὡσαύτως ἂν διδοίης, ἄλλην αὖ ὑπόθεσιν ὑποθέμενος ἥτις τῶν ἄνωθεν βελτίστη φαίνοιτο, ἕως ἐπί τι ἱκανὸν ἔλθοις, ἅμα δὲ οὐκ ἂν φύροιο ὥσπερ οἱ e

---

ἄνω-θεν: from above, from on high, 2
ἀ-πειρία, ἡ: inexperience, 1
ἀπο-κρίνομαι: to answer, reply, 13
ἀ-σφαλής, -ές: safe, secure, not liable to fall 6
βέλτιστος, -η, -ον: best, 14
δείδω: fear, dread, shrink from, feel awe, 11
διαφωνέω: be in disharmony, disagree +dat 1
δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 15
ἐάω: to permit, allow, let be, suffer, 9
ἕως: until, as long as, 15
κομψεία, ἡ: subtleties, refinement, 1
μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
μετ-έχω: to partake of, have share in (gen) 13
μονάς, μονάδος ἡ: unity, monad; solitary, 1
ὁρμάω: to set in motion; set out, begin, 5
παρ-ίημι: to permit; let or allow pass, 1
προσ-θέσις, ἡ: adding, addition, 3
σαυτοῦ (σεαυτοῦ), -ῆ, -οῦ: yourself, 4
σκέπτομαι: look at, examine, consider, 9
σκια, ἡ: shadow, 1
σοφός, -ή, -όν: wise, skilled, 5
συμ-φωνέω: be in harmony, agree (+dat.) 2
σχίσις, -εως, ἡ: division, parting, cleavage, 4
ὑπο-θέσις, -εως, ἡ: hypothesis; proposal, 6
φύρω: to mix up, jumble up, 2
ὡσ-αύτως: in the same manner, just so, 4

6 **δεῖν**: *that it is necessary…*; following ἔχεις
μετασχεῖν: aor. inf.; see p. 27
τὰ μέλλοντα...: things…; acc. subj.
ἔσεσθαι: fut. inf. εἰμί
μονάδος (μετασχεῖν): add inf. to be parallel
7 **ὃ**: *(that) which…*; τοῦτο ὅ, acc. subj.
8 **ἐᾷς ἂν χαίρειν**: *you should dismiss*; opt., ἐάω χαίρειν, 'allow…to say farewell' is an idiom (see100d2), the verb is set in contrast to ἔχεις in c4
παρεὶς: *permitting*: + dat. + inf., nom. sg. aor. pple παρ-ίημι
9 **σεαυτοῦ**: gen. of comparison
δεδιὼς: nom. sg. pf. pple δείδω
ἄν...ἄν: *as the saying goes*; 'in
τὸ λεγόμενον: *as the saying goes*; 'in respect to what is sai' acc. respect
d1 **ἐχόμενος**: *clinging to…*; + partitive gen.
2 **τοῦ ἀσφαλοῦς**: *the safety*; ἀσφαλέος, a substantive
ἀποκρίναι(σ)ο: 2s potential aor. opt.
3 **εἰ...ἔχοιτο, ἐᾷς ἂν**: *if...should lay hold of...,you would*; otherwise, 'should attack'
4 **ἕως ἂν...σκέψαι(σ)ο**: indefinite temporal, assuming potential opt. of the main verb
τὰ...ὁρμηθέντα: *things having arisen from that (hypothesis)*; i.e. consequences
5 **ἐπειδὴ...δέοι, ἂν διδοίης**: *when it should be necessary…*; equiv. to a fut. less vivid
6 **δίδόναι λόγον**: *to give an account*
ὑποθέμενος: *by…*; causal, aor. mid. pple
τῶν ἄνωθεν: *among those above*
e1 **ἔλθοις**: aor. opt. ἔρχομαι, indef. temporal
ἂν φυοι(σ)ο: *you would not jumble them*

ἀντιλογικοὶ περί τε τῆς ἀρχῆς διαλεγόμενος καὶ τῶν ἐξ ἐκείνης ὡρμημένων, εἴπερ βούλοιό τι τῶν ὄντων εὑρεῖν; ἐκείνοις μὲν γὰρ ἴσως οὐδὲ εἷς περὶ τούτου λόγος οὐδὲ φροντίς· ἱκανοὶ γὰρ ὑπὸ σοφίας ὁμοῦ πάντα κυκῶντες ὅμως δύνασθαι αὐτοὶ αὑτοῖς ἀρέσκειν· σὺ δ', εἴπερ εἶ τῶν φιλοσόφων,
102 *οἶμαι ἂν ὡς ἐγὼ λέγω ποιοῖς.*

ἀληθέστατα, ἔφη, λέγεις, ὅ τε Σιμμίας ἅμα καὶ ὁ Κέβης.

ΕΧ. *νὴ Δία, ὦ Φαίδων, εἰκότως γε· θαυμαστῶς γάρ μοι δοκεῖ ὡς ἐναργῶς τῷ καὶ σμικρὸν νοῦν ἔχοντι εἰπεῖν ἐκεῖνος ταῦτα.*

ΦΑΙΔ. *πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ὦ Ἐχέκρατες, καὶ πᾶσι τοῖς παροῦσιν ἔδοξεν.*

ἀντι-λογικός -όν: disputatious, contradictory; subst. disputant, 2
ἀρέσκω: to please, satisfy, appease (+ dat). 1
δια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 13
εἰκότως: suitably, reasonably, fairly, 5
ἐν-αργής, -ές: visible, distinct, manifest, 4
εὑρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 8
Ζεύς, ὁ: Zeus, 11
θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wonderful, marvelous, 11
ἴσως: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 19
κυκάω: to stir up, throw into confusion, 1
νή: by…(+ acc, invoking a god), 14
νοῦς, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14
ὁμοῦ: at the same place, together, 3
ὅμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 13
ὁρμάω: to set in motion; set out, begin, 5
σμικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little, 19
σοφία, ἡ: wisdom, judgment, intelligence, 2
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18
φροντίς, -ίδος, ὁ: care, concern, throught, 1

2 **τῆς ἀρχῆς**: *the beginning*
(περὶ) τῶν...ὡρμημένων: pf. pass. ὁρμάω, i.e.consequences, see c4
3 **ἐκείνης**: i.e. τῆς ἀρχῆς
βούλοι(σ)ο: 2s pres. mid. opt.
τῶν ὄντων: *of the things which are*
4 **ἐκείνοις**: *to those (there is)…*; referring to the οἱ ἀντιλογικοί, a dat. of possession with missing linking verb
οὐδὲ εἷς...οὐδὲ (εἷς): *not even one account and not even (one) concern*
5 **ἱκανοὶ...ἀρέσκειν**: *for because of wisdom they (are) capable, (although) confusing everything together, nevertheless to be able to be pleased with themselves*; ἱκανοί is a predicate, add a linking verb; ἀντιλογικοί think that they are wise but are not
ὑπὸ...: *because of…*; gen. of cause
ὁμοῦ...κυκῶντες: *although…*; pple is concessive in sense
6 **αὑτοῖς**: ἑαυτοῖς ; reflexive
εἶ: 2s pres. εἰμί
τῶν φιλοσόφων: *among…*; partitive gen.
102a1 **οἶμαι**: οἴομαι
ὡς...λέγω: *just as…*
3 **Δία**: *Zeus*; acc. sg.
θαυμαστῶς ὡς ἐναργῶς: *how marvelously clearly…*' once, '(it is) marvelous how clearly' the neut. predicate θαυμαστόν has assimilated to become an adv. before ὡς
4 **μοῖ δοκεῖ**: ἐκεῖνος is subject
τῷ...νοῦν ἔχοντι: *to one having even little sense*; dat. indirect object with εἰπεῖν
6 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
7 **τοῖς παροῦσιν**: dat. pl. pple πάρ-ειμι

ΕΧ. *καὶ γὰρ ἡμῖν τοῖς ἀποῦσι, νῦν δὲ ἀκούουσιν. ἀλλὰ τίνα δὴ ἦν τὰ μετὰ ταῦτα λεχθέντα;*

ΦΑΙΔ. *ὡς μὲν ἐγὼ οἶμαι, ἐπεὶ αὐτῷ ταῦτα συνεχωρήθη,* 10
καὶ ὡμολογεῖτο εἶναί τι ἕκαστον τῶν εἰδῶν καὶ τούτων **b**
τἆλλα μεταλαμβάνοντα αὐτῶν τούτων τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν ἴσχειν,
τὸ δὴ μετὰ ταῦτα ἠρώτα, εἰ δή, ἦ δ' ὅς, ταῦτα οὕτως λέγεις,
ἆρ' οὐχ, ὅταν Σιμμίαν Σωκράτους φῇς μείζω εἶναι, Φαίδωνος
δὲ ἐλάττω, λέγεις τότ' εἶναι ἐν τῷ Σιμμίᾳ ἀμφότερα, καὶ 5
μέγεθος καὶ σμικρότητα;

ἔγωγε.

ἀλλὰ γάρ, ἦ δ' ὅς, ὁμολογεῖς τὸ τὸν Σιμμίαν ὑπερέχειν
Σωκράτους οὐχ ὡς τοῖς ῥήμασι λέγεται οὕτω καὶ τὸ ἀληθὲς
ἔχειν; οὐ γάρ που πεφυκέναι Σιμμίαν ὑπερέχειν τούτῳ, τῷ **c**

ἀμφότερος, -α, -ον: each of two, both, 5
ἄπ-ειμι: to be away, absent, distant, 1
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
ἐπωνυμία, ἡ: a nickname, surname, 5
ἐρωτάω: to ask, inquire, question, 10
ἴσχω: to have, hold back, check, restrain, 3
μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size, magnitude, height, 17
μείζων, μείζον: larger, greater, 26
μετα-λαμβάνω: take a share of, partake in 2
ῥῆμα, -ατος, τό: word, phrase, saying, 1
σμικρότης, -τητος, ἡ: smallness, 10
συγ-χωρέω: agree, yield, come together, 13
ὑπερ-έχω: exceed, hold over or above (gen) 8
φύω: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by nature, 14

8 **καὶ γὰρ**: *and in fact…*
τοῖς ἀποῦσι...ἀκούουσιν: pres. participles ἄπ-ειμι, ἀκούω
9 **τὰ...λεχθέντα**: aor. pass. pple λέγω
10 **ὡς**: *as…*; parenthentical
συνεχωρήθη: 3s aor. pass. συγχωρέω
b1 **εἶναι τι...εἰδῶν**: *that each of the forms is something*; i.e. exist
τούτων: partitive gen. of the pple
b2 **καὶ...τἆλλα**: *and other things…*; τὰ ἄλλα, acc. subject of ἴσχειν
αὐτῶν τούτων: *from…*; gen. of source i.e. from τῶν εἰδῶν
3 **ἠρώτα**: ἠρώτα-ε, 3s impf. ἐρωτάω Socrates is subject
τὸ δὴ μετὰ ταῦτα: *the very thing after these*
ἦ δ'ὅς: see note on pg. 9
4 **Σωκράτους**: gen. of comparison
μείζω: μείζο(ν)α, acc. sg. predicate
Φαίδωνος: gen. of comparison
5 **ἐλάττω**: ἐλάττο(ν)α, acc. sg. predicate
6 **μέγεθος**: greatness; i.e. magnitude
8 **ἀλλὰ γάρ**: *and yet…*; GP 102
τὸ τὸν Σιμμίαν ὑπερέχειν Σωκράτους: *in respect to Simmias' exceeding Socrates*; this articular inf. is an acc.of respect
οὐχ ὡς...λέγεται οὕτω...ἔχειν: *that the truth in fact is not thus as it is said with (these) words*; τὸ ἀληθὲς is acc. subject, καί is adverbial, ἔχειν + οὕτως is 'is thus' (see p. 7), and οὕτως and ὡς are correlatives. τοῖς. ῥήμασι refers to Simmias' overcoming Socrates
c1 **οὐ γάρ...(ὁμολογεῖς) πεφυκέναι...**
ὑπερέχειν: *for I suppose (you agree that) Simmias is not disposed by nature to exceed*
τούτῳ: *because of this*; dat. of cause.
τῷ...εἶναι: *(namely) because of…*

Σιμμίαν εἶναι, ἀλλὰ τῷ μεγέθει ὃ τυγχάνει ἔχων· οὐδ' αὖ Σωκράτους ὑπερέχειν ὅτι Σωκράτης ὁ Σωκράτης ἐστίν, ἀλλ' ὅτι σμικρότητα ἔχει ὁ Σωκράτης πρὸς τὸ ἐκείνου μέγεθος;

ἀληθῆ.

οὐδέ γε αὖ ὑπὸ Φαίδωνος ὑπερέχεσθαι τῷ ὅτι Φαίδων ὁ Φαίδων ἐστίν, ἀλλ' ὅτι μέγεθος ἔχει ὁ Φαίδων πρὸς τὴν Σιμμίου σμικρότητα;

ἔστι ταῦτα.

οὕτως ἄρα ὁ Σιμμίας ἐπωνυμίαν ἔχει σμικρός τε καὶ μέγας εἶναι, ἐν μέσῳ ὢν ἀμφοτέρων, τοῦ μὲν τῷ μεγέθει **d** *ὑπερέχειν τὴν σμικρότητα ὑπέχων, τῷ δὲ τὸ μέγεθος τῆς σμικρότητος παρέχων ὑπερέχον. καὶ ἅμα μειδιάσας, ἔοικα,*

ἀμφότερος, -α, -ον: each of two, both, 5
ἐπωνυμία, ἡ: a nickname, surname, 5
μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size, magnitude, height, 17
μειδιάω: to smile, grin 2
μέσος, - η, -ον: middle, in the middle of, 8
παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16
σμικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little, 19
σμικρότης, -τητος, ἡ: smallness, 10
ὑπ-έχω: to undergo, bear, suffer; submit, 3
ὑπερ-έχω: exceed, surpass, hold over (gen) 8

2 **τῷ...εἶναι**: *(namely) because of…*; dat. of cause, in apposition to τούτῳ
τῷ μεγέθει: i.e. greatness, dat. of cause
τυγχάνει : + pple, see p. 20
3 **(Σιμμίαν) ὑπερέχειν**: *that…*; supply acc. subject
ὅτι: *because…*
4 **πρὸς**: *in relation to…in comparison to..*
6 **οὐδέ γε**: *yes, but…not*; (GP 156) compare 94a6
τῷ: *because of this*; demonstrative, dat. of
(Σιμμίαν) ὑπερέχεσθαι: *(you agree) that Simmias is…*; add acc. subject; ind. disc. governed by ὁμολογεῖς in b8
τῷ: *because of this*; demonstrative, cause
ὅτι: *(namely) because…*
7 **πρὸς**: *in relation to…in comparison to..*
9 **ἔστι**: *are the case*; i.e. are true
10 **ἐπωνυμίαν**: *in (respect) to….*; acc. respect
ἔχει: *is able*
11 **ὤν**: pple εἰμί
ἀμφοτέρων: i.e. Phaedo and Socrates
τοῦ μὲν...τῷ δὲ: *one…the other…*; Phaedo and Socrates respectively; lines c11-d2 can be interpreted a number of ways
d1 **τοῦ μὲν...μεγέθει...ὑπέχων**: *submitting his smallness to the largeness of one (i.e. Phaedo) to exceed*; inf. of purpose (S 2008)
2 **τῷ δὲ...ὑπερέχον**: *and providing to the other largeness exceeding his (i.e. Socrates') smallness*; neut. pple ὑπερέχω
μειδιάσας: *beginning to smile*; inceptive aor., nom. sg. pple, compare 64a10, 101b3
ἔοικα: *I seem, I look (as if)* + inf.

ἔφη, καὶ συγγραφικῶς ἐρεῖν, ἀλλ᾽ οὖν ἔχει γέ που ὡς λέγω. συνέφη.

λέγω δὴ τοῦδ᾽ ἕνεκα, βουλόμενος δόξαι σοὶ ὅπερ ἐμοί. ἐμοὶ 5
γὰρ φαίνεται οὐ μόνον αὐτὸ τὸ μέγεθος οὐδέποτ᾽ ἐθέλειν
ἅμα μέγα καὶ σμικρὸν εἶναι, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ ἐν ἡμῖν μέγεθος
οὐδέποτε προσδέχεσθαι τὸ σμικρὸν οὐδ᾽ ἐθέλειν ὑπερέχεσθαι,
ἀλλὰ δυοῖν τὸ ἕτερον, ἢ φεύγειν καὶ ὑπεκχωρεῖν ὅταν αὐτῷ **e**
προσίῃ τὸ ἐναντίον, τὸ σμικρόν, ἢ προσελθόντος ἐκείνου
ἀπολωλέναι· ὑπομένον δὲ καὶ δεξάμενον τὴν σμικρότητα
οὐκ ἐθέλειν εἶναι ἕτερον ἢ ὅπερ ἦν. ὥσπερ ἐγὼ δεξάμενος
καὶ ὑπομείνας τὴν σμικρότητα, καὶ ἔτι ὢν ὅσπερ εἰμί, οὗτος
ὁ αὐτὸς σμικρός εἰμι· ἐκεῖνο δὲ οὐ τετόλμηκεν μέγα ὂν 5

ἐθέλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17
ἕνεκα: for (the sake of), because of, (gen.) 13
μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size, magnitude, height, 17
οὐδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 11
προσ-δέχομαι: to receive to, accept, admit, 1
προσ-έρχομαι: to come or go to, approach, 4
προσ-ἵημι: send to, let come to, let approach 2
σμικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little, 19
σμικρότης, -τητος, ἡ: smallness, 10
συγ-γραφικός, -ή, -όν: like a book, bookish 1
σύμ-φημι: to agree, approve, 3
τολμάω: to dare, undertake, endure, 2
ὑπ-εκ-χωρέω: to withdraw, move away, 4
ὑπερ-έχω: to hold over or above, 8
ὑπο-μένω: to abide, endure, stay firm, 8
φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 10

2 **ἐρεῖν**: *to be about to speak*; fut. inf.
3 **καὶ συγγραφικῶς**: *very much like a book*; i.e. with great detail, καί acts as a intensive (S 2882, GP 319)
ἀλλ(ὰ) οὖν...γε: *well, in all events…*; γε emphasizes the preceding word; GP 443, S 2957, compare 100a3
ἔχει (οὕτως): *it is (thus)*
4 **συνέφη**: impf.; Cebes is subject
5 **δὴ**: *of course*; or 'accordingly' S 2841
δόξαι: aor. inf. δοκέω
ὅπερ: *just as…*; 'the very thing (seemed good)'
6 **οὐ μόνον...ἀλλὰ καὶ**: *not only…but also*
ἐθέλειν: *to tend, to strive, to be able*; + inf. the meaning here is similar to δύναμαι; this verb is often used with inanimate objects
8 **ἐθέλειν**: *is it able, does it tend*; see l 6
9 **δυοῖν**: dual partitive gen
τὸ ἕτερον: *one*
αὐτῷ: *to it*; i.e. to the ἕτερον, dat. of compound verb
e1 **προσίῃ**: 3s pres. subj. προσέρχομαι in an indefinite temporal clause
τὸ σμικρόν: in apposition to ἐναντίον
προσελθόντος ἐκείνου: gen. abs., i.e smallness
2 **ἀπολωλέναι**: pf. inf. ἀπόλλυμι, τὸ μέγεθος is the acc. subject
ὑπομένον δὲ: *but abiding*; i.e. τὸ μέγεθος
3 **ἐθέλειν**: *is able, tends*; see l 6
ἦν: 3s impf. εἰμί
ὥσπερ: *in just this way*
4 **ὑπομείνας**: transitive, nom. sg. aor. pple
ὢν: nom. sg. pple εἰμί
5 **ἐκεῖνο**: i.e. τὸ μέγεθος
οὐ τετόλμηκεν: *has not endured*; pf. act.
μέγα ὂν: neuter acc. sg. pple εἰμί

σμικρὸν εἶναι· ὡς δ᾽ αὕτως καὶ τὸ σμικρὸν τὸ ἐν ἡμῖν οὐκ ἐθέλει ποτὲ μέγα γίγνεσθαι οὐδὲ εἶναι, οὐδ᾽ ἄλλο οὐδὲν τῶν
103 *ἐναντίων, ἔτι ὂν ὅπερ ἦν, ἅμα τοὐναντίον γίγνεσθαί τε καὶ εἶναι, ἀλλ᾽ ἤτοι ἀπέρχεται ἢ ἀπόλλυται ἐν τούτῳ τῷ παθήματι.*

παντάπασιν, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, οὕτω φαίνεταί μοι.

καί τις εἶπε τῶν παρόντων ἀκούσας—ὅστις δ᾽ ἦν, οὐ
5 *σαφῶς μέμνημαι—πρὸς θεῶν, οὐκ ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν ἡμῖν λόγοις αὐτὸ τὸ ἐναντίον τῶν νυνὶ λεγομένων ὡμολογεῖτο, ἐκ τοῦ ἐλάττονος τὸ μεῖζον γίγνεσθαι καὶ ἐκ τοῦ μείζονος τὸ ἔλαττον, καὶ ἀτεχνῶς αὕτη εἶναι ἡ γένεσις τοῖς ἐναντίοις, ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων; νῦν δέ μοι δοκεῖ λέγεσθαι ὅτι τοῦτο οὐκ*
10 *ἄν ποτε γένοιτο.*

ἀπ-έρχομαι: to go away, depart, 14
ἀ-τεχνῶς: simply, absolutely, really, 6
αὕτως: in the same manner, just, as it is, 2
γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: coming-to-be, generation, 16
ἐθέλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17
ἤτοι: now surely, truly, 4
μιμνήσκω: to remind, recall, recollect, 6
νυνί: just now, here now; as it is, 2
πάθημα, -ατος, τό: experience, suffering, 4
παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15
πρόσθεν: before, 10
σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
σμικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little, 19

6 **ὡς δ(ὲ) αὕτως καὶ**: *and in the same way also*; i.e. ὡσαύτως
7 **ἐθέλει**: *tends, is able, strives* + inf. the meaning here is similar to that of δύναμαι
ἄλλο οὐδὲν...ἐναντίων (ἐθέλει...εἶναι): nom. subj. supply verbs for parallelism
103a1 **ὄν**: neut. sg. pple εἰμί
ὅπερ ἦν: *just as…*; 'which very thing'
τοὐναντίον: τὸ ἐναντίον
2 **ἤτοι..ἤ**: *either, you know,…or*; ἤτοι opens a disjunction where the first choice is more probable (GP 553)
4 **εἶπε**: aor. λέγω
τῶν παρόντων: partitive gen. πάρειμι
5 **μέμνημαι**: pf. μιμνήσκω, present sense
πρὸς θεῶν: *By the gods!*; an exclamation
ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν...λόγοις: *in the previous conversation*
ἡμῖν: *for us*; dat. of interest
οὐκ...ὡμολογεῖτο: *was not…agreed upon?* anticipating a yes response
7 **(ὡμολογεῖτο) γίγνεσθαι...εἶναι**: *(was agreed) to…*; supply verb from above
8 **ἡ γένεσις τοῖς ἐναντίοις**: *coming-to-be for the opposites*; dat. of possession
τοῖς ἐναντίοις: *past*; pf. pple πέχομαι
10 **ἄν...γένοιτο**: *could…*; potential opt.

καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης παραβαλὼν τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ ἀκούσας, ἀνδρικῶς, ἔφη, ἀπεμνημόνευκας, οὐ μέντοι ἐννοεῖς τὸ b
διαφέρον τοῦ τε νῦν λεγομένου καὶ τοῦ τότε. τότε μὲν
γὰρ ἐλέγετο ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου πράγματος τὸ ἐναντίον πρᾶγμα
γίγνεσθαι, νῦν δέ, ὅτι αὐτὸ τὸ ἐναντίον ἑαυτῷ ἐναντίον οὐκ
ἄν ποτε γένοιτο, οὔτε τὸ ἐν ἡμῖν οὔτε τὸ ἐν τῇ φύσει. 5
τότε μὲν γάρ, ὦ φίλε, περὶ τῶν ἐχόντων τὰ ἐναντία ἐλέγο-
μεν, ἐπονομάζοντες αὐτὰ τῇ ἐκείνων ἐπωνυμίᾳ, νῦν δὲ περὶ
ἐκείνων αὐτῶν ὧν ἐνόντων ἔχει τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν τὰ ὀνομαζό-
μενα· αὐτὰ δ᾽ ἐκεῖνα οὐκ ἄν ποτέ φαμεν ἐθελῆσαι γένεσιν c
ἀλλήλων δέξασθαι. καὶ ἅμα βλέψας πρὸς τὸν Κέβητα
εἶπεν, ἆρα μή που, ὦ Κέβης, ἔφη, καὶ σέ τι τούτων
ἐτάραξεν ὧν ὅδε εἶπεν;

ἀνδρικῶς: like a man, in a manly way, 1
ἀπο-μνημονεύω: recount, recall, 1
βλέπτω: to look at, see, 3
γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: coming-to-be, generation, 16
δια-φέρω: to carry over; differ, surpass, 8
ἔν-ειμι: to be in or within, 8
ἐν-νοέω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
ἐπ-ονομάζω: to name after, 3
ἐπωνυμία, ἡ: a nickname, surname, 5
κεφαλή, ἡ: the head, 6
ὀνομάζω: to name, call by name, 6
παρα-βάλλω: to cast or put to one side, 1
πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18
ταράττω: to trouble, stir, agitate, 6
φίλος -η -ον: dear, friendly; *noun* friend, kin 8
φύσις, -εως, ἡ: nature, character; form, 11

b1 **ἀνδρικῶς...ἀπεμνημόνευκας**: 2s pf.
τὸ διαφέρον: *the difference*; ‘ the differing thing’
2 **τοῦ τε νῦν λεγομένου καὶ τοῦ πότε (λεγομένου)**: *between…*; gen. of comparison with διαφέρον
4 **ἑαυτῷ**: *to itself*; dat. of special adjective, the following ἐναντίον, a predicate
5 **ἄν...γένοιτο**: *could become*; potential opt.
οὔτε τὸ ἐν ἡμῖν...φύσει: *either that in us or that in nature*; referring to τὸ ἐναντίον
6 **τῶν ἐχόντων τὰ ἐναντία**: *things possessing the oppositesa*
7 **τῇ...ἐπωνυμίᾳ**: *by…*; dat. of means
2 **νῦν δὲ περὶ...ἐνόντων...ὀνομαζόμενα**: *but now (we are talking) about those very things, of which, being in (them), the things named have the name*; pple ἔν-ειμι
c1 **αὐτὰ δὲ ἐκεῖνα…δέξασθαι**: *we say that those very things would not ever tend to accept a coming-to-be from one another*; ἄν...ἐθελῆσαι, ‘would tend,’ aor, inf., in is equivalent to a potential opt. in direct disc. (see 102d6 for meaning), ἀλλήλων is a gen. of source
3 **μὴ...**: introduces a question expecting a ‘no’ response (e.g. ‘did…not…,did it?)
καὶ σέ: *you also, you too*
τι τούτων: nom. subj.
4 **ὧν...**: *which*; ἅ, acc. pl. relative pronoun attracted into the gen. of the antecedent τούτων; ὅδε refers to Socrates

οὐδ᾽ αὖ, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, οὕτως ἔχω· καίτοι οὔτι λέγω ὡς οὐ πολλά με ταράττει.

συνωμολογήκαμεν ἄρα, ἦ δ᾽ ὅς, ἁπλῶς τοῦτο, μηδέποτε ἐναντίον ἑαυτῷ τὸ ἐναντίον ἔσεσθαι.

παντάπασιν, ἔφη.

ἔτι δή μοι καὶ τόδε σκέψαι, ἔφη, εἰ ἄρα συνομολογήσεις. θερμόν τι καλεῖς καὶ ψυχρόν;

ἔγωγε.

ἆρ᾽ ὅπερ χιόνα καὶ πῦρ;

d μὰ Δί᾽ οὐκ ἔγωγε.

ἀλλ᾽ ἕτερόν τι πυρὸς τὸ θερμὸν καὶ ἕτερόν τι χιόνος τὸ ψυχρόν;

ἁπλῶς: singly, plainly, absolutely, 2
Ζεύς, ὁ: Zeus, 11
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm; subst. heat, 11
καίτοι: and yet, and indeed, and further, 8
μά: by…(in oaths,), 3
μηδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 8
οὔ-τις, οὔ-τι: no one, not a thing, nothing, 1
παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 14
σκέπτομαι: look at, examine, consider, 9
συν-ομολογέω: to agree with, say the same, 4
ταράττω: to trouble, stir, agitate, 6
χιών, χιόνος, ἡ: snow, 7
ψυχρός, -ά, -όν: cold, chill, frigid, 10

5 **αὖ**: *again*; i.e. not as before
οὕτως ἔχω: see p. 7
οὔτι: *not at all*; inner acc.
6 **ὡς**: *that*…; neut. pl. πολλά is subject
7 **συνωμολογήκαμεν**: pf.
ἦ δ᾽ὅς: see note on pg. 9
μηδέποτε...ἔσεσθαι: *that…*; in apposition to τοῦτο, fut. inf. εἰμί
10 **ἔτι δή**: *still then…*; δή is inferential
μοι: *please*; 'for me,' an ethical dative (S 1486)
σκέψαι: aor. mid. sg. imperative
11 **καλεῖς**: *you call (x) (y)*; governs a double acc.
13 **ἄρ(α) ὅπερ (καλεῖς)**: *the very thing which (you call)…?*; or 'just as…' supply verb
d1 **Δί(α)**: *Zeus*; acc. sg.
2 **πυρὸς, χιόντος**: *from…*; both are gen. of comparison following ἕτερον, 'different'

ναί.

ἀλλὰ τόδε γ' οἶμαι δοκεῖ σοι, οὐδέποτε χιόνα γ' οὖσαν 5
δεξαμένην τὸ θερμόν, ὥσπερ ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν ἐλέγομεν,
ἔτι ἔσεσθαι ὅπερ ἦν, χιόνα καὶ θερμόν, ἀλλὰ προσιόντος
τοῦ θερμοῦ ἢ ὑπεκχωρήσειν αὐτῷ ἢ ἀπολεῖσθαι.

πάνυ γε.

καὶ τὸ πῦρ γε αὖ προσιόντος τοῦ ψυχροῦ αὐτῷ ἢ 10
ὑπεξιέναι ἢ ἀπολεῖσθαι, οὐ μέντοι ποτὲ τολμήσειν δεξά-
μενον τὴν ψυχρότητα ἔτι εἶναι ὅπερ ἦν, πῦρ καὶ ψυχρόν.

ἀληθῆ, ἔφη, λέγεις. **e**

ἔστιν ἄρα, ἦ δ' ὅς, περὶ ἔνια τῶν τοιούτων, ὥστε μὴ
μόνον αὐτὸ τὸ εἶδος ἀξιοῦσθαι τοῦ αὐτοῦ ὀνόματος εἰς τὸν

ἀξιόω: to think worthy of, deem right (gen) 3
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
ἔνιοι, -αι, -α: some, 7
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm; *subst*. heat, 11
ναί: yes, yea, 15
ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: name, 7
οὐδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 11
προσ-έρχομαι: to come or go to, approach, 4
πρόσθεν: before, 10
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 14
τολμάω: to dare, undertake, endure, 2
ὑπ-εκ-χωρέω: to withdraw, 4
ὑπ-εξ-έρχομαι: to withdraw gradually, 2
χιών, χιόνος, ἡ: snow, 7
ψυχρός, -ά, -όν: cold, chill, frigid, 10
ψυχρότης, ὁ: coldness, cold, 1

5 **ἀλλὰ...γε**: *but this*...; or 'well,' γε emphasizes the preceding noun
οἶμαι: οἴομαι, parenthetical
οὐδέποτε...θερμόν: *(namely) that snow, (while) being (snow), (after) accepting heat—just as we said in the previous conversation —will not longer be the very thing it was*; γε + pple suggests that the main clause is valid only *insofar as* the participle is value (GP 143)
7 **χιόνα καὶ θερμόν**: in apposition
προσιόντος...θερμοῦ: gen. abs., pple προσέρχομαι
8 **ὑπεκχωρήσειν, ἀπολεῖσθαι**: χιόνα is acc. subject; both fut. infs. ἀπόλλυμι
9 **πάνυ γε**: *quite so, quite indeed*
10 **καὶ...γε**: *and*...; always emphasizing the intervening words
προσιόντος...ψυχροῦ: gen. abs.
αὐτῷ: dat. of compound in the gen. abs.
11 **ὑπεξιέναι...τολμήσειν...εἶναι**: supply verb δοκεῖ σοι and acc. subj. τὸ πῦρ from a bove; fut. ὑπεξέρχομαι
δεξάμενον: *(after) accepting*...; modifies missing τὸ πῦρ, parallel to lines 5-7
e2 **ἔστιν ἄρα...**: *it is the case then*...
ὥστε...: *so that*…; acc. + inf., result clause
μὴ μόνον...ἀλλὰ καὶ: *not only*...*but also*
3 **ἀξιοῦσθαι**: *is thought worthy of*; or 'is deemed worthy of…' + gen.
αὐτοῦ: reflexive (ἑαυτοῦ)
εἰς τὸν ἀεὶ χρόνον: *for everylasting time*

ἀεὶ χρόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄλλο τι ὃ ἔστι μὲν οὐκ ἐκεῖνο, ἔχει δὲ τὴν ἐκείνου μορφὴν ἀεί, ὅτανπερ ᾖ. ἔτι δὲ ἐν τῷδε ἴσως ἔσται σαφέστερον ὃ λέγω· τὸ γὰρ περιττὸν ἀεί που δεῖ τούτου τοῦ ὀνόματος τυγχάνειν ὅπερ νῦν λέγομεν· ἢ οὔ;

πάνυ γε.

ἆρα μόνον τῶν ὄντων—τοῦτο γὰρ ἐρωτῶ—ἢ καὶ ἄλλο τι ὃ ἔστι μὲν οὐχ ὅπερ τὸ περιττόν, ὅμως δὲ δεῖ αὐτὸ μετὰ τοῦ ἑαυτοῦ ὀνόματος καὶ τοῦτο καλεῖν ἀεὶ διὰ τὸ οὕτω πεφυκέναι ὥστε τοῦ περιττοῦ μηδέποτε ἀπολείπεσθαι; λέγω δὲ αὐτὸ εἶναι οἷον καὶ ἡ τριὰς πέπονθε καὶ ἄλλα πολλά. σκόπει δὲ περὶ τῆς τριάδος. ἆρα οὐ δοκεῖ σοι τῷ τε αὑτῆς ὀνόματι ἀεὶ προσαγορευτέα εἶναι καὶ τῷ τοῦ περιττοῦ, ὄντος

ἀπο-λείπω: leave behind, abandon, forsake, 7
ἐρωτάω: to ask, inquire, question, 10
ἴσως: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 19
μηδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 8
μορφή, ἡ: form, shape, 2
ὅμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 13
ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: name, 7
ὅτανπερ: whenever, 2
περιττός -ή -όν: odd, remarkable, 15
προσ-αγορευτέος, -α, -ον: to be called, 1
σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
τριάς, τριάδος, ἡ: three, triad, 7
φύω: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by nature, 14

4 **ἀλλὰ καὶ**: *but also…*
ἄλλο τι (ἀξιοῦσθαι...ὀνόματος): *something else…*; supply 'is thought worthy of the its name…' from the previous clause
5 **ᾖ**: *it exists*; 3s pres. subj. εἰμί in an indefinite temporal clause
ἔτι δὲ: *and furthermore, and in addtion*
ἐν τῷδε: *in the following*; 'in this here'
6 **ἔσται**: *it…*; impersonal, fut. εἰμί
7 **τυγχάνειν**: + partitive gen., see p. 20
8 **πάνυ γε**: *quite so, quite indeed*; affirmative
9 **μόνον τῶν ὄντων (δεῖ...ὀνόματος τυγχάνειν)**: *(is it necessary that) this alone of the things which are (always attains this name)…*; supply clause from above
καὶ...: *(is there) also…*

104a1 **ὅπερ (ἐστίν)...**: *the very thing which …(is)*; add linking verb
αὐτὸ...καὶ τοῦτο καλεῖν: *to call it this also*; double acc., αὐτὸ refers to ἄλλο τι, τοῦτο refers to τὸ περιττόν
2 **τὸ...πεφυκέναι**: *being (naturally)*; pf. φύω
3 **τοῦ περιττοῦ**: *from…*; gen. of separation
4 **οἷον**: *the sort which…*
πέπονθε: 3s pf. πάσχω
5 **σκόπει**: σκόπε-ε; sg. imperative
τῷ...ὀνόματι: *by…*; dat. of means
αὑτῆς: ἑαυτῆς
6 **προσαγορευτέα εἶναι**: *they must be addressed*; 'it is to be addressed' a verbal adj. + εἰμί expresses necessity or obligation
τῷ (ὀνόματι) τοῦ περιττοῦ: *by…*; means

Philosophical Vocabulary: τὸ περιττόν *the odd* (*oddness*) τὸ ἄρτιον *the even* (*evenness*)

Another everyday word that Plato employs in a technical sense is δέχομαι ('accept,' 'admit'). Socrates will frequently say, for example, that three *accepts*, δέχεται, the form of the odd but does not *accept*, δέχεται, the even. This usage starts in 102d8 and continues in what follows.

οὐχ ὅπερ τῆς τριάδος; ἀλλ᾽ ὅμως οὕτως πέφυκε καὶ ἡ τριὰς καὶ ἡ πεμπτὰς καὶ ὁ ἥμισυς τοῦ ἀριθμοῦ ἅπας, ὥστε οὐκ ὢν ὅπερ τὸ περιττὸν ἀεὶ ἕκαστος αὐτῶν ἐστι περιττός· **b** *καὶ αὖ τὰ δύο καὶ τὰ τέτταρα καὶ ἅπας ὁ ἕτερος αὖ στίχος τοῦ ἀριθμοῦ οὐκ ὢν ὅπερ τὸ ἄρτιον ὅμως ἕκαστος αὐτῶν ἄρτιός ἐστιν ἀεί· συγχωρεῖς ἢ οὔ;*

πῶς γὰρ οὔκ; ἔφη. 5

ὃ τοίνυν, ἔφη, βούλομαι δηλῶσαι, ἄθρει. ἔστιν δὲ τόδε, ὅτι φαίνεται οὐ μόνον ἐκεῖνα τὰ ἐναντία ἄλληλα οὐ δεχόμενα, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὅσα οὐκ ὄντ᾽ ἀλλήλοις ἐναντία ἔχει ἀεὶ τἀναντία, οὐδὲ ταῦτα ἔοικε δεχομένοις ἐκείνην τὴν ἰδέαν ἢ ἂν τῇ ἐν αὐτοῖς οὔσῃ ἐναντία ᾖ, ἀλλ᾽ ἐπιούσης αὐτῆς ἤτοι 10

ἀθρέω: to gaze at, observe, 1
ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: every, quite all, 14
ἀριθμός, ὁ: number, amount, quantity, 3
ἄρτιος, -α, -ον: even; exactly fitted, proper, 14
δηλόω: to make clear, show, reveal, 3
ἐπ-έρχομαι: to come upon, approach, 8
ἥμισυς, -εια, -υ: half, 5
ἤτοι: now surely, truly, 4
ἰδέα, ἡ: idea, character; appearance, form, 8
ὅμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 13
πεμπτάς, -άδος, ἡ: five, pentad, 1
περιττός -ή -όν: odd, remarkable, 15
στίχος, ὁ: series, line, row, 1
συγ-χωρέω: agree, yield, come together, 13
τέτταρες, -α: four, 2
τριάς, τριάδος, ἡ: three, triad, 7
φύω: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by nature, 14

7 **ὄντος οὐχ ὅπερ τὴς τριάδος**: *(although) not being what three is*; one expects ὅπερ ἐστί ἡ τριάς; nom. is attracted into the gen.
πέφυκε: *is naturally*; pf. φύω
οὕτως...ὥστε: *so…that*; correlatives

b1 **οὐκ ὢν ὅπερ (ἐστί) τὸ περιττόν**: *although not being…*; concessive; see a7 above

2 **τὰ δύο, τὰ τέτταρα**: *two*, *four*; as often, do not translate with the article

3 **οὐκ ὢν ὅπερ (ἐστί) τὸ ἄρτιον**: see b1

5 **πῶς γὰρ οὔ**: *how could (I) not?*; ‘yes for how not?’ γὰρ offer assent

6 **ὃ**: *(that) which…*; missing antecedent is object of ἄθρει
ἄθρει: ἄθρε-ε, sg. imperative

7 **ὅτι**: *(namely) that…*
οὐ μόνον...ἀλλὰ καὶ: *not only…but also*

8 **δεχόμενα**: *accepting, admitting*, ἄλληλα is an object
οὐκ ὄντ(α)...ἐναντία: *although…*; pple εἰμί in concessive in sense
ἔχει: i.e. contain
τἀναντία: τὰ ἐναντία

9 **οὐδὲ...τὴν ἰδέαν**: *nor are these like (those) accepting that form*
ἢ ἂν...ἐναντία ᾖ: *whichever is…*; ἄν + 3s subj. εἰμί in an indefinite relative clause
τῇ...οὔσῃ: i.e. τῇ ἰδέᾳ; pple. εἰμί

10 **ἐπιούσης αὐτῆς**: *(when) it is approaching*; gen. abs.
ἤτοι..ἤ...: *either, you know,…or…*; ἤτοι opens a disjunction where the first choice is more probable (GP 553)

c *ἀπολλύμενα ἢ ὑπεκχωροῦντα. ἢ οὐ φήσομεν τὰ τρία καὶ ἀπολεῖσθαι πρότερον καὶ ἄλλο ὁτιοῦν πείσεσθαι, πρὶν ὑπομεῖναι ἔτι τρία ὄντα ἄρτια γενέσθαι;*

πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης.

οὐδὲ μήν, ἦ δ᾽ ὅς, ἐναντίον γέ ἐστι δυὰς τριάδι.

οὐ γὰρ οὖν.

οὐκ ἄρα μόνον τὰ εἴδη τὰ ἐναντία οὐχ ὑπομένει ἐπιόντα ἄλληλα, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄλλ᾽ ἄττα τὰ ἐναντία οὐχ ὑπομένει ἐπιόντα.

ἀληθέστατα, ἔφη, λέγεις.

βούλει οὖν, ἦ δ᾽ ὅς, ἐὰν οἷοί τ᾽ ὦμεν, ὁρισώμεθα ὁποῖα ταῦτά ἐστιν;

ἀπο-λείπω: leave behind, abandon, forsake, 7
ἄρτιος, -α, -ον: even; exactly fitted, proper, 14
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
ἐπ-έρχομαι: to come upon, approach, 8
δυάς, δυάδος, ἡ: two; pair, dyad, 3
ὁποῖος, -α, -ον: of what sort or kind, 2
ὁρίζω: to define, mark out, limit, 3
ὅστισ-οῦν, ἥτισουν, ὅτι-οῦν: whosoever, 11
τρεῖς, τρία: three, 9
τριάς, τριάδος, ἡ: three, triad, 7
ὑπ-εκ-χωρέω: to withdraw, 4
ὑπο-μένω: to abide, stay firm; endure, 8

c1 **ἢ οὐ φήσομεν**: *or will we not agree that…*; anticipating a 'yes' response
καὶ...καὶ: *both…and*
2 **ἀπολεῖσθαι**: fut. ἀπόλλυμι
πρότερον: adverbial acc.
πείσεσθαι: fut. πάσχω
ὑπομεῖναι...γενέσθαι: *abide to become*; ; aor. inf. ὑπομένω + complementary inf.
3 **ἔτι τρία ὄντα**: *while…*; circumstantial pple
4 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
5 **οὐδὲ μήν**: *and certainly…not*
ἦ δ᾽ὅς: see note on p. 9
ἐναντίον γε: the predicate governs a dat. of special adj. , δυὰς is subject
6 **οὐ γὰρ οὖν**: *for in fact it is not*; (S 2958) (GP 447), compare 93e6
7 **οὐκ...μόνον...ἀλλὰ καὶ**: *not only…but also*
τὰ εἴδη τὰ ἐναντία: *opposite forms*
ὑπομένει ἐπιόντα: *abide…*; ὑπομένω governs a complementary pple here or, as in c2, a complementary inf.; ἐπέρχομαι
8 **τὰ ἐναντία**: acc. object, ἄλλ(α) ἄττα is subject (ἄττα is neuter pl. of τις)
11 **βούλει...ὁρισώμεθα**: *do you wish to define*; 2s mid. βούλομαι often accompanies a deliberative subj., here aor., conflating two questions: 'what do you want?' and 'are we to define…?'; see 70b6, 79a6
οἷός τε ὦμεν: οἷος τε εἰμί, 'I am the sort to' is a common idiom for 'I am able'; here with 1p pres. subj. εἰμί

πάνυ γε.

ἆρ᾽ οὖν, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, τάδε εἴη ἄν, ἃ ὅτι ἂν κατάσχῃ d
μὴ μόνον ἀναγκάζει τὴν αὑτοῦ ἰδέαν αὐτὸ ἴσχειν, ἀλλὰ καὶ
ἐναντίου αὐτῷ ἀεί τινος;

πῶς λέγεις;

ὥσπερ ἄρτι ἐλέγομεν. οἶσθα γὰρ δήπου ὅτι ἃ ἂν ἡ τῶν 5
τριῶν ἰδέα κατάσχῃ, ἀνάγκη αὐτοῖς οὐ μόνον τρισὶν εἶναι
ἀλλὰ καὶ περιττοῖς.

πάνυ γε.

ἐπὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον δή, φαμέν, ἡ ἐναντία ἰδέα ἐκείνῃ τῇ
μορφῇ ἣ ἂν τοῦτο ἀπεργάζηται οὐδέποτ᾽ ἂν ἔλθοι. 10

οὐ γάρ.

εἰργάζετο δέ γε ἡ περιττή;

ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 10
ἀπ-εργάζομαι: produce, complete, finish, 2
ἄρτι: just, exactly, 4
δή-που: perhaps, I suppose; of course, 8
ἐργάζομαι: to work, labor, toil, 4
ἰδέα, ἡ: idea, character; appearance, form, 8
ἴσχω: to have, hold back, check, restrain, 3
κατ-έχω: to hold fast, possess, grasp, 5
μορφή, ἡ: form, shape, 2
οὐδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 11
περιττός -ή -όν: odd, remarkable, 15
τρεῖς, τρία: three, 9

13 **πάνυ γε**: *quite so, quite indeed*
d1 **εἴη ἄν**: *would*…; potential opt. εἰμί
ἃ...ἀναγκάζει...ἴσχειν: *(things) which compel whatever possesses (them) itself not only to have its character*; vague pronoun references, ellipsis, and nested clauses make this passage a challenge to interpret
2 **ἐναντίου...τινος (τὴν ἰδέαν)**: *but also always (the form) of some opposite to it*
4 **πῶς λέγεις**: i.e. What do you mean?
5 **οἶσθα**: 2s οἶδα, pf. with pres. sense
ἅ...κατάσχῃ: *whatever*…; ἄν + aor. subj. κατέχω in an indefinite relative clause
6 **ἀνάγκη**: *(it is) necessary*...
αὐτοῖς: *for them*; dat. of interest, the remaining datives would otherwise be accusative but all agree with αὐτοῖς
τρισὶν: predicate, dat. τρία; see note above
9 **ἐπὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον δή, φαμεν**: *then, to this sort of thing*; governed by ἔλθοι; δή is inferential
φαμεν: parenthetical, p. 6
ἐκείνῃ τῇ μορφῇ: dat. of special adjective ἐναντία
ἣ ἂν τοῦτο ἀπεργάζηται: *this (result)*; inner. acc. in an indefinite relative clause
ἂν ἔλθοι: *could*…; potential aor. opt. ἔρχομαι
11 **οὐ γὰρ**: *no indeed*; ‘no for (it could not)’
12 **εἰργάζετο**: *produced (it)*; ‘produces it (as it appears)’ impf. for a truth just realized (S 1902), a present fact that is just recognized but was true before as well
ἡ περιττή: fem. agreeing with ἡ ἰδέα

ναί.

ἐναντία δὲ ταύτῃ ἡ τοῦ ἀρτίου;

ναί.

e *ἐπὶ τὰ τρία ἄρα ἡ τοῦ ἀρτίου ἰδέα οὐδέποτε ἥξει.*

οὐ δῆτα.

ἄμοιρα δὴ τοῦ ἀρτίου τὰ τρία.

ἄμοιρα.

5 *ἀνάρτιος ἄρα ἡ τριάς.*

ναί.

ὃ τοίνυν ἔλεγον ὁρίσασθαι, ποῖα οὐκ ἐναντία τινὶ ὄντα ὅμως οὐ δέχεται αὐτό, τὸ ἐναντίον—οἷον νῦν ἡ τριὰς τῷ ἀρτίῳ οὐκ οὖσα ἐναντία οὐδέν τι μᾶλλον αὐτὸ δέχεται, τὸ

ἄ-μοιρος, -ον: without a share in (gen.), 3
ἀν-άρτιος, -ον: uneven, 4
ἄρτιος, -α, -ον: even; exactly fitted, proper, 14
δῆτα: certainly, to be sure, of course, 5
ἥκω: to have come, be present, 14
ἰδέα, ἡ: idea, character; appearance, form, 8
ναί: yes, yea, 15
ὅμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 13
ὁρίζω: to define, mark out, limit, 3
οὐδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 11
τρεῖς, τρία: three, 9
τριάς, τριάδος, ἡ: three, triad, 7

14 **ἐναντία δὲ ταύτῃ (μορφῇ) ἡ τοῦ ἀρτίου (ἰδέα ἐστί)**: supply a linking verb and fem. nouns understood from d9-10
e1 **ἐπὶ...**: *to*…
ἥξει: fut. ἥκω
3 **ἄμοιρα (ἐστί)**: predicate, supply a linking verb; δή is inferential: 'then'
7 **ὃ...ἔλεγον ὁρίσασθαι**: *as for what I said to define*; 'in respect to (that) which…' acc. of respect, see 104c12 (βούλει…ὁρισώμεθα ὁποῖα ταὐτά ἐστιν;)
ποῖα: *what things*…; subject of 3s verb
ἐναντία τινὶ ὄντα: predicate and pple εἰμί modifying ποῖα
τινὶ: *to something*; indefinite
8 **δέχεται**: see box on p. 174
τὸ ἐναντίον: in apposition to αὐτό, the object of δέχεται
οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to such,' acc. of respect
τῷ ἀρτίῳ...οὖσα ἐναντία: although…; the pple is concessive in sense
9 **οὐδέν τι μᾶλλον**: *not at all*; acc. of extent by degree
αὐτὸ: i.e. τὸ ἄρτιον

γὰρ ἐναντίον ἀεὶ αὐτῷ ἐπιφέρει, καὶ ἡ δυὰς τῷ περιττῷ καὶ τὸ πῦρ τῷ ψυχρῷ καὶ ἄλλα πάμπολλα—ἀλλ᾽ ὅρα δὴ εἰ οὕτως ὁρίζῃ, μὴ μόνον τὸ ἐναντίον τὸ ἐναντίον μὴ δέχεσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκεῖνο, ὃ ἂν ἐπιφέρῃ τι ἐναντίον ἐκείνῳ, ἐφ᾽ ὅτι ἂν αὐτὸ ἴῃ, αὐτὸ τὸ ἐπιφέρον τὴν τοῦ ἐπιφερομένου ἐναντιότητα μηδέποτε δέξασθαι. πάλιν δὲ ἀναμιμνήσκου· οὐ γὰρ χεῖρον πολλάκις ἀκούειν. τὰ πέντε τὴν τοῦ ἀρτίου οὐ δέξεται, οὐδὲ τὰ δέκα τὴν τοῦ περιττοῦ, τὸ διπλάσιον. τοῦτο μὲν οὖν καὶ αὐτὸ ἄλλῳ ἐναντίον, ὅμως δὲ τὴν τοῦ περιττοῦ οὐ δέξεται· οὐδὲ δὴ τὸ ἡμιόλιον οὐδὲ τἆλλα τὰ τοιαῦτα, τὸ ἥμισυ, τὴν τοῦ ὅλου, καὶ τριτημόριον αὖ καὶ πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα, εἴπερ ἕπῃ τε καὶ συνδοκεῖ σοι οὕτως.

ἀνα-μιμνήσκω: remind, recall (acc. gen.) 16
ἄρτιος, -α, -ον: even; exactly fitted, proper, 14
δέκα: ten, 3
δι-πλάσιος, -α, -ον: double, two-fold, 1
δυάς, δυάδος, ἡ: two; pair, dyad, 3
ἐναντιότης, ὁ: opposite(ness) contrariety, 1
ἐπι-φέρω: to carry up; attack, rush on, 6
ἕπομαι: to follow, accompany, escort, 9
ἡμι-όλιος, -η, -ον: one and a half, 1
ἥμισυς, -εια, -υ: one-half, 5
μηδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 8
ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 9
ὅμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 13
ὁρίζω: to define, mark out, limit, 3
πάμ-πολυς, -πόλλη, -πολυ: very many, 1
πέντε: five, 1
περιττός -ή -όν: odd, remarkable, 15
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 14
συν-δοκέω: to seem good also, 6
τριτ-ημόριος, -ον: a third part, a third, 1
χείρων, -ον, (-οντος): worse, inferior, 5
ψυχρός, -ά, -όν: cold, chill, frigid, 10

10 **ἐπιφέρει**: *for it brings the opposite to it*; αὐτῷ (i.e. τὸ ἄρτιον) is dat. of compound verb; the subject is still ἡ τριάς from e8
ἡ δυὰς (ἐπιφέρει) τῷ περιττῷ καὶ τὸ πῦρ (ἐπιφέρει)...: ellipsis, supply the verbs
105a1 **ὅρα δὴ**: *just see…!*; ὅρα-ε imperative
2 **ὁρίζῃ**: ὁρίζε(σ)αι, 2s pres. id.
μὴ μόνον...ἀλλὰ καὶ: *not only…but also*
3 **ἐκεῖνο, ὃ ἂν...δέξασθαι**: *that that which brings some opposite to that, to which it itself approaches, (i.e.) the thing itself bringing, never accepts the opposite of the thing being brought*; αὐτὸ τὸ ἐπιφέρον is in apposition to ἐκεῖνο acc. subj.
4 **ἂν ἴῃ**: 3s subj. ἔρχομαι, indefinite relative
5 **ἀναμιμνήσκου**: ἀναμιμνήσκε(σ)ο, pres. mid. sg. imperative
6 **οὐ χεῖρον (ἐστίν)**: *we may as well*; litotes, 'it is not bad' + inf.
τὴν (ἰδέαν): *the character*
7 **τὸ διπλάσιον**: in apposition to τὰ δέκα
8 **τοῦτο..(ἐστίν)...ἄλλῳ ἐναντίον**: *then, this (the double) is itself also opposite to something else*; τοῦτο refers to διπλάσιον
τὴν (ἰδέαν): *the character*
b1 **οὐδὲ δὴ...**: *then neither one-and-a-half nor other such things, the half, (accept) the (character) of the whole and again one-third and all such other things*; i.e. mixed fractions
3 **ἕπῃ**: *you follow (me)*; i.e. you understand me; ἕπε(σ)αι, 2s pres. mid. ἕπομαι

πάνυ σφόδρα καὶ συνδοκεῖ, ἔφη, καὶ ἕπομαι.

πάλιν δή μοι, ἔφη, ἐξ ἀρχῆς λέγε. καὶ μή μοι ὃ ἂν ἐρωτῶ ἀποκρίνου, ἀλλὰ μιμούμενος ἐμέ. λέγω δὴ παρ᾽ ἣν τὸ πρῶτον ἔλεγον ἀπόκρισιν, τὴν ἀσφαλῆ ἐκείνην, ἐκ τῶν νῦν λεγομένων ἄλλην ὁρῶν ἀσφάλειαν. εἰ γὰρ ἔροιό με ᾧ ἂν τί ἐν τῷ σώματι ἐγγένηται θερμὸν ἔσται, οὐ τὴν c *ἀσφαλῆ σοι ἐρῶ ἀπόκρισιν ἐκείνην τὴν ἀμαθῆ, ὅτι ᾧ ἂν θερμότης, ἀλλὰ κομψοτέραν ἐκ τῶν νῦν, ὅτι ᾧ ἂν πῦρ· οὐδὲ ἂν ἔρῃ ᾧ ἂν σώματι τί ἐγγένηται νοσήσει, οὐκ ἐρῶ ὅτι ᾧ ἂν νόσος, ἀλλ᾽ ᾧ ἂν πυρετός· οὐδ᾽ ᾧ ἂν ἀριθμῷ τί ἐγγένηται περιττὸς ἔσται, οὐκ ἐρῶ ᾧ ἂν περιττότης, ἀλλ᾽ ᾧ ἂν μονάς, καὶ τἆλλα οὕτως. ἀλλ᾽ ὅρα εἰ ἤδη ἱκανῶς οἶσθ᾽ ὅτι βούλομαι.*

ἀ-μαθής, -ές: unlearned, ignorant, stupid, 1
ἀπο-κρίνομαι: to answer, reply, 13
ἀπο-κρισις, ἡ: reply, answer, 4
ἀριθμός, ὁ: number, amount, quantity, 3
ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning; rule, office, 8
ἀ-σφάλεια, ἡ: steadfastness, assurance, 1
ἀ-σφαλής, -ές: safe, secure, not liable to fall 6
ἐγ-γίγνομαι: to come in be inborn, innate, happen,; *impers*. to be possible, 6
ἕπομαι: to follow, accompany, escort, 9
ἔρομαι: to ask, enquire, question, 12
ἐρωτάω: to ask, inquire, question, 10
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm; subst. heat, 11
θερμότης, -τητος, ἡ: heat, 3
κομψός, -ή, -όν: refined, clever, ingenious, 1
μιμέομαι: imitate, represent, portray, 1
μονάς, μονάδος ἡ: number one, monad; unit, 1
νοσέω: to be sick, ill, 2
νόσος, ὁ: illness, sickness, 5
περιττός -ή -όν: odd, remarkable, 15
περιττότης, -ητος, ἡ: oddness, 1
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 14
πυρετός, ὁ: fire; fiery heat, fever, 1
συν-δοκέω: to seem good also, 6
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18

4 **ἕπομαι**: i.e. understand
μή...ἀποκρινε(σ)ο: neg. mid. imperative
6 **ἀλλὰ μιμούμενος ἐμέ**: *but by*…; pple is causal in sense
λέγω δὴ...: *I am speaking now beyond what response I spoke first, that safe (response), now seeing another safe refuge from the things being said*
8 **εἰ...ἔροι(σ)ο...ἐρῶ**: *if you should*…; 2s pres. opt. + fut. λέγω in a mixed condition
9 **ᾧ ἂν...ἐγγένηται...εσται**: *what (τί), in whichever (part) in the body (it) comes to be, will be hot*; confusing word order: indirect question (τί...θερμὸν ἔσται) with an indefinite relative modifying τί
τὴν ἀσφαλῆ..ἀπόκρισιν...ἀμαθῆ: *that safe (but) ignorant response*
c1 **ὅτι ᾧ ἂν θερμότης (ἐγγένηται)**: *(namely) that in whichever (part) heat (comes to be)*; the reply repeats vocabulary in the question
2 **κομψοτέραν (ἀποκρισιν)**: comparative adj., supply acc. fem. sg. ἀπόκρισιν from above
ἐκ τῶν νῦν (λεγόμενων): add pass. pple
ὅτι ᾧ ἂν πῦρ: see c1
3 **ἂν ἔρῃ**: *if you ask;* εἰ ἄν + 2s mid. subj.
ᾧ ἂν...νοσήσει: for translation, see b9
ὅτι ᾧ ἂν νόσος (ἐγγένηται): see c1
4 **ᾧ ἂν...ἀριθμῷ**: for translation, see b9
5 **ᾧ ἂν περττότης (ἐγγένηται)**: see c1
7 **οἶσθ(α)**: 2s οἶδα, pf. with pres. sense

ἀλλὰ πάνυ ἱκανῶς, ἔφη.

ἀποκρίνου δή, ἦ δ᾽ ὅς, ᾧ ἂν τί ἐγγένηται σώματι ζῶν ἔσται;

ᾧ ἂν ψυχή, ἔφη.

οὐκοῦν ἀεὶ τοῦτο οὕτως ἔχει; **d**

πῶς γὰρ οὐχί; ἦ δ᾽ ὅς.

ψυχὴ ἄρα ὅτι ἂν αὐτὴ κατάσχῃ, ἀεὶ ἥκει ἐπ᾽ ἐκεῖνο φέρουσα ζωήν;

ἥκει μέντοι, ἔφη.

πότερον δ᾽ ἔστι τι ζωῇ ἐναντίον ἢ οὐδέν;

ἔστιν, ἔφη.

τί;

θάνατος.

ἀπο-κρίνομαι: to answer, reply, 13
ἐγ-γίγνομαι: to be inborn, innate; *impers*. to be possible, 6
ζωή, ἡ: living, way of life, 5
ἥκω: to have come, be present, 14
κατ-έχω: to hold fast, possess, grasp, 5

8 **ἀλλὰ πάνυ ἱκανῶς**: *well, quite…* (GP 19)
9 **ἀποκρίνε(σ)ο**: 2s mid. imperative
δή: *just, now*
ἦ δ᾽ὅς: see note on pg. 9
ᾧ ἂν...ἐγγένηται...εσται: *what (τί), in whichever (part) in the body (it) comes to be, will be living*; confusing word order: indirect question (τί...ζῶν ἔσται) with an indefinite relative modifying τί; see c9
11 **ᾧ ἂν ψυχή (ἐγγένηται)**: *in whichever the soul comes to be*
d1 **οὕτως ἔχει**: see p. 7
2 **πῶς γὰρ οὐχί**: *how could (it) not?*; 'yes for how not?' γὰρ offers assent
3 **ὅτι ἂν...κατάσχῃ**: *whatever (the soul) itself) possesses*; aor. subj. κατέχω
ἐπὶ ἐκεῖνο: *to that one*; neut. sg. referring to ὅτι..κατασχῇ
5 **μέντοι**: *certainly*; affirmative
6 **ζωῇ**: dat. sg. with special adj. ἐναντίον

οὐκοῦν ψυχὴ τὸ ἐναντίον ᾧ αὐτὴ ἐπιφέρει ἀεὶ οὐ μή ποτε δέξηται, ὡς ἐκ τῶν πρόσθεν ὡμολόγηται;

καὶ μάλα σφόδρα, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης.

τί οὖν; τὸ μὴ δεχόμενον τὴν τοῦ ἀρτίου ἰδέαν τί νυνδὴ ὠνομάζομεν;

ἀνάρτιον, ἔφη.

τὸ δὲ δίκαιον μὴ δεχόμενον καὶ ὃ ἂν μουσικὸν μὴ δέχηται;

e *ἄμουσον, ἔφη, τὸ δὲ ἄδικον.*

εἶεν· ὃ δ᾽ ἂν θάνατον μὴ δέχηται τί καλοῦμεν;

ἀθάνατον, ἔφη.

οὐκοῦν ψυχὴ οὐ δέχεται θάνατον;

οὔ.

ἀθάνατον ἄρα ψυχή.

ἄ-δικος, -ον: unrighteous, unjust, 6
ἄ-μουσος, -ον: unmusical, unrefined, rude, 1
ἀν-άρτιος, -ον: uneven, not even, 4
ἄρτιος, -α, -ον: even; exactly fitted, proper, 14
δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right(eous), fair, 13
ἐπι-φέρω: to carry upon; attack, rush on, 6
ἰδέα, ἡ: idea, character; appearance, form, 8
μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 10
μουσικός -ή -όν: musical, educated, cultured, 1
νυν-δὴ: just now, 15
ὀνομάζω: to name, call by name, 6
πρόσθεν: before, 10
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18

10 **ᾧ...ἐπιφέρει ἀεὶ**: *to that which (the soul) itself always brings*; ἐκείνῳ ὅ; acc. relative attracted into the dat. of missing antecedent (dat. of special adjective ἐναντίον); see 104e10
οὐ μὴ ποτε: *absolutely not ever*…; οὐ μή + aor. subj. expresses a strong denial (S 1804, 2755); for δέχομαι, see 174
11 **ὡς**: *as*…
ἐκ τῶν πρόσθεν (λεγόμενων): add noun
ὡμολόγηται: 3s pf. ὁμόλογέω
12 **καὶ μάλα**: *quite very*; καί is adverbial and my emphasize adverbs (S 2882, GP 318)
13 **τὸ μὴ δεχόμενον...ἰδέαν**: *the thing not accepting*...; obj. of ὠνομάζομεν
τί: *what…?*; interrogative, also acc. obj.
16 **τὸ...δέχόμενον**: *the thing not accepting*...; supply τί νυνδὴ ὠνομάζομεν
ὃ...δέχηται: *whatever*...; 'the thing which...' indefinite relative clause (ἄν + subj); add τί νυνδὴ ὠνομάζομεν
e1 **(τὸ) ἄμουσον...τὸ δὲ ἄδικον**: δέ is simply a conjunction 'and' joining the two answers
2 **εἶεν**: *well then*; a particle based on the 3p opt. form of εἰμί
ὃ...τί καλοῦμεν: *and what will we*…?; καλοῦμεν is future and governs a double acc.
6 **ψυχή**: subject, supply linking verb

ἀθάνατον.

εἶεν, ἔφη· τοῦτο μὲν δὴ ἀποδεδεῖχθαι φῶμεν; ἢ πῶς δοκεῖ; καὶ μάλα γε ἱκανῶς, ὦ Σώκρατες.

τί οὖν, ἦ δ' ὅς, ὦ Κέβης; εἰ τῷ ἀναρτίῳ ἀναγκαῖον ἦν ἀνωλέθρῳ εἶναι, ἄλλο τι τὰ τρία ἢ ἀνώλεθρα ἂν ἦν; 106

πῶς γὰρ οὔ;

οὐκοῦν εἰ καὶ τὸ ἄθερμον ἀναγκαῖον ἦν ἀνώλεθρον εἶναι, ὁπότε τις ἐπὶ χιόνα θερμὸν ἐπάγοι, ὑπεξῄει ἂν ἡ χιὼν οὖσα σῶς καὶ ἄτηκτος; οὐ γὰρ ἂν ἀπώλετό γε, οὐδ' αὖ ὑπομένουσα ἐδέξατο ἂν τὴν θερμότητα.

ἀληθῆ, ἔφη, λέγεις.

ὡς δ' αὕτως οἶμαι κἂν εἰ τὸ ἄψυκτον ἀνώλεθρον ἦν, ὁπότε ἐπὶ τὸ πῦρ ψυχρόν τι ἐπῄει, οὔποτ' ἂν ἀπεσβέννυτο

ἀ-θερμος, -ον: without heat, without warmth 1
ἀν-άρτιος, -ον: uneven, odd, 4
ἀν-ώλεθρος, -α, -ον: indestructible, 12
ἀπο-δείκνυμι: demonstrate, prove 11
ἀπο-σβέννυμι: to extinguish, quench, 1
ἄ-τηκτος, -ον: unmelted, 1
αὔτως: in the same manner, just, as it is, 2
ἄ-ψυκτος, -ον: not able to be cooled, 1
ἐπ-άγω: to bring to, 1
ἐπ-έρχομαι: to come upon, approach, 8
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm; subst. heat, 11
θερμότης, -τητος, ἡ: heat, 3
μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 10
ὁπότε: when, by what time, 6
οὔ-ποτε: never, 1
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 14
σῶς, ὁ, ἡ: whole, sound, safe and sound, 6
τρεῖς, τρία: three, 9
ὑπ-εξ-έρχομαι: to withdraw gradually, 2
ὑπο-μένω: to abide, stay firm; endure, 8
χιών, χιόνος, ἡ: snow, 7
ψυχρός, -ά, -όν: cold, chill, frigid, 10

8 **εἶεν**: *well then*
ἀποδεδεῖχθαι: pf. pass. inf.
φῶμεν: *are we to say…?*; deliberative subj.
9 **καὶ...γε**: *and*…; καὶ...γε emphasizes the intervening word
10 **εἰ...ἦν...ἂν ἦν**: *if…it were…, it would be*…; present contrafactual condition (εἰ + impf., impf.)
106a1 **ἄλλο τι...ἢ**: *anything other…than*
πῶς γὰρ οὐχί: *how could (it) not?*; 'yes for how not?' γὰρ offers assent
3 **εἰ...ἀναγκαῖον ἦν...ἂν ὑπεξῄει**: *if it were…, would…*; present contrafactual, εἰμί, ὑπεξέρχομαι
καὶ: *actually, in fact*; adverbial
4 **ὁπότε...ἐπέγοι**: *whenever*…; opt. ἐπάγω replaces ἄν+ subj. in an indefinite temporal clause in secondary sequence
οὖσα: fem. sg. pple εἰμί
5 **ἂν ἀπώλετο**: *could have…*; ἄν + aor. is past (unrealized) potential, ἀπόλλυμι; ἡ χιών is the subject;
6 **ἐδέξατο ἂν**: *could have*…; ἄν + aor. mid. is also past (unrealized) potential
8 **ὡς δ(ὲ) αὕτως**: *and in the same way*; i.e. ὡσαύτως
οἶμαι: οἴομαι
κἂν εἰ...ἦν...ἂν ἀπεσβέννυτο: *even if*…; καὶ ἄν, another present contrafactual condition, the initial ἄν anticipates the second and should be left untranslated
9 **ἐπῄει**: impf. ἐπέρχομαι

10 *οὐδ᾽ ἀπώλλυτο, ἀλλὰ σῶν ἂν ἀπελθὸν ᾤχετο.*

b *ἀνάγκη, ἔφη.*

οὐκοῦν καὶ ὧδε, ἔφη, ἀνάγκη περὶ τοῦ ἀθανάτου εἰπεῖν; εἰ μὲν τὸ ἀθάνατον καὶ ἀνώλεθρόν ἐστιν, ἀδύνατον ψυχῇ, ὅταν θάνατος ἐπ᾽ αὐτὴν ἴῃ, ἀπόλλυσθαι· θάνατον μὲν γὰρ
5 *δὴ ἐκ τῶν προειρημένων οὐ δέξεται οὐδ᾽ ἔσται τεθνηκυῖα, ὥσπερ τὰ τρία οὐκ ἔσται, ἔφαμεν, ἄρτιον, οὐδέ γ᾽ αὖ τὸ περιττόν, οὐδὲ δὴ πῦρ ψυχρόν, οὐδέ γε ἡ ἐν τῷ πυρὶ θερ-μότης. ‘ἀλλὰ τί κωλύει,’ φαίη ἄν τις, ‘ἄρτιον μὲν τὸ περιττὸν μὴ γίγνεσθαι ἐπιόντος τοῦ ἀρτίου, ὥσπερ ὡμολόγη-*
c *ται, ἀπολομένου δὲ αὐτοῦ ἀντ᾽ ἐκείνου ἄρτιον γεγονέναι;’ τῷ ταῦτα λέγοντι οὐκ ἂν ἔχοιμεν διαμαχέσασθαι ὅτι οὐκ*

ἀ-δύνατος, -ον: unable, incapable, impossible, 6
ἀνάγκη, ἡ: necessity, force, constraint, 36
ἀν-ώλεθρος, -α, -ον: indestructible, 12
ἀντί: instead of, in place of (+ gen.), 3
ἀπ-έρχομαι: to go away, depart, 14
ἄρτιος, -α, -ον: even; exactly fitted, proper, 14
δια-μάχομαι: fight, strive, struggle against 3
ἐπ-έρχομαι: to come upon, approach, 8
θερμότης, -τητος, ἡ: heat, 3
κωλύω: to hinder or prevent, 5
οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 14
περιττός -ή -όν: odd, remarkable, 15
προ-λέγω: to say or mention beforehand, 4
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 14
σῶς, ὁ, ἡ: safe and sound, safe, sound, 6
τρεῖς, τρία: three, 9
ψυχρός, -ά, -όν: cold, chill, frigid, 10
ὧδε: in this way, so, thus, 4

10 **(ἂν) ἀπώλλυτο**: still part of the apodosis of the contrafactual, impf. ἀπόλλυμι
ἂν...ᾤχετο: *would*…; still part of the apodosis of a contrafactual, impf. οἴχομαι, a verb that governs a complementary pple (S 2099)
ἀπελθὸν: neuter sg. aor. pple ἀπ-έρχομαι
b1 **ἀνάγκη (ἐστί)**: *(it is) necessary*
2 **καὶ**: *also, too*; adverbial, also in b3
ἀδύνατον (ἐστί): (*it) is impossible*
ψυχῇ: *for*…; dat. of interest
3 **ἴῃ**: 3s pres. subj. ἔρχομαι + ἄν in an indefinite temporal clause
4 **μὲν γὰρ δή**: *for…certainly in fact*; μὲν δή expresses positive certainty (S 2900)
5 **προειρημένων**: pf. pass. pple προλέγω
δέξεται: fut., see box on p. 174
ἔσται: fut. εἰμί
τεθνηκυῖα: fem. pf. pple ἀποθνήσκω
ἄρτιον: neut. pred. with masc./fem. subject
6 **οὐδέ γε**: *and neither …*; introducing a negative counterpart (GP 156); γε may be marking the ellipsis of a verb (S 2828)
7 **τὸ περιττόν (ἔσται ἄρτιον)**: add verb
οὐδὲ δὴ: *nor then…*; inferential, add ἐστίν
οὐδέ γε: *nor…*; introducing a negative counterpart (GP 156); γε may be marking the ellipsis of a verb (S 2828)
8 **φαίη ἄν τις**: *one might say*; potential opt.
9 **μὴ γίγνεσθαι**: *from not becoming*…; ‘that…not become…’
ἐπιόντος...ἀρτίου: gen. abs. ἐπέρχομαι, i.e. the doubling of an odd number
c1 **ἀπολομένου αὐτοῦ**: gen. abs.; ~περιττὸν
ἀντ(ὶ) ἐκείνου: *in place of that*; ~περιττὸν
γεγονέναι: pf. inf. γίγνομαι
2 **τῷ...λέγοντι**: *with the one…*; the verb μάχομαι governs a dat. of association
ἂν ἔχοιμεν: *we would be able*; potential opt.

ἀπόλλυται· τὸ γὰρ ἀνάρτιον οὐκ ἀνώλεθρόν ἐστιν· ἐπεὶ εἰ τοῦτο ὡμολόγητο ἡμῖν, ῥᾳδίως ἂν διεμαχόμεθα ὅτι ἐπελθόντος τοῦ ἀρτίου τὸ περιττὸν καὶ τὰ τρία οἴχεται ἀπιόντα· καὶ περὶ πυρὸς καὶ θερμοῦ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων οὕτως ἂν διεμαχόμεθα. ἦ οὔ;

πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

οὐκοῦν καὶ νῦν περὶ τοῦ ἀθανάτου, εἰ μὲν ἡμῖν ὁμολογεῖται καὶ ἀνώλεθρον εἶναι, ψυχὴ ἂν εἴη πρὸς τῷ ἀθάνατος εἶναι καὶ ἀνώλεθρος· εἰ δὲ μή, ἄλλου ἂν δέοι λόγου. **d**

ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲν δεῖ, ἔφη, τούτου γε ἕνεκα· σχολῇ γὰρ ἄν τι ἄλλο φθορὰν μὴ δέχοιτο, εἰ τό γε ἀθάνατον ἀίδιον ὂν φθορὰν δέξεται.

ἀίδιος, -ον: everlasting, 1
ἀν-άρτιος, -ον: uneven, odd, 4
ἀν-ώλεθρος, -α, -ον: indestructible, 12
ἀπ-έρχομαι: to go away, depart, 14
ἄρτιος, -α, -ον: even; exactly fitted, proper, 14
δια-μάχομαι: contend, fight, struggle, 3
ἕνεκα: for the sake of, (+ preceding gen.) 13
ἐπ-έρχομαι: to come upon, approach, 8
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm; subst. heat, 11
οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 14
περιττός -ή -όν: odd, remarkable, 15
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 14
ῥᾴδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 9
σχολή, ἡ: leisure, rest; **σχολῇ**, scarcely, 3
τρεῖς, τρία: three, 9
φθορά, ἡ: destruction, ruin, 4

εἰ ὡμολόγητο,...ἂν διεμαχόμεθα: *if this were..., we would...*; present contrafactual (εἰ impf., ἄν + impf.) ὡμολόγητο is plpf. or doric impf.
ἡμῖν: *by/with us*; dat. of compound verb
4 **ἐπελθόντος τοῦ ἀρτίου**: gen. abs., aor. pple ἐπέρχομαι
οἴχεται ἀπιόντα: οἴχομαι, a verb that governs a complementary pple (S 2099); ἀπέρχομαι
8 **πάνυ μὲν οὖν**: *quite certainly indeed*; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
9 **καὶ**: *also*
ἡμῖν: *by/with us*; dat. of compound verb
ἂν διεμαχόμεθα: *we could...*; present (unrealized) potential or merely part of the apodosis of the contrafactual
10 **ἂν εἴη**: *would be*; potential opt.
πρὸς τῷ...εἶναι: *in addition to being*…; articular inf.
d1 **ἂν δέοι**: *there would be need of*…; + abl. of separation, i.e. ‘there is a lack from,’ impersonal, potential opt.
2 **οὐδὲν δεῖ**: *there is not at all a need*; inner acc.
σχολῇ: *scarely, hardly*
ἂν...δέχοιτο: *would accept*; τι ἄλλο is subject
3 **ὄν**: neut. pple εἰμί

5 *ὁ δέ γε θεὸς οἶμαι, ἔφη ὁ Σωκράτης, καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ τῆς ζωῆς εἶδος καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο ἀθάνατόν ἐστιν, παρὰ πάντων ἂν ὁμολογηθείη μηδέποτε ἀπόλλυσθαι.*

παρὰ πάντων μέντοι νὴ Δί', ἔφη, ἀνθρώπων τέ γε καὶ ἔτι μᾶλλον, ὡς ἐγῷμαι, παρὰ θεῶν.

e *ὁπότε δὴ τὸ ἀθάνατον καὶ ἀδιάφθορόν ἐστιν, ἄλλο τι ψυχὴ ἤ, εἰ ἀθάνατος τυγχάνει οὖσα, καὶ ἀνώλεθρος ἂν εἴη;*

πολλὴ ἀνάγκη.

5 *ἐπιόντος ἄρα θανάτου ἐπὶ τὸν ἄνθρωπον τὸ μὲν θνητόν, ὡς ἔοικεν, αὐτοῦ ἀποθνῄσκει, τὸ δ' ἀθάνατον σῶν καὶ ἀδιάφθορον οἴχεται ἀπιόν, ὑπεκχωρῆσαν τῷ θανάτῳ.*

ἀ-διάφθορος, -ον: imperishable, 2
ἀν-ώλεθρος, -α, -ον: indestructible, 12
ἀπ-έρχομαι: to go away, depart, 14
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
ἐπ-έρχομαι: to come upon, approach, 8
ζωή, ἡ: living, way of life, 5
θνητός, -ή, -όν: mortal, liable to death, 7
μηδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 8
νή: by…(+ acc, invoking a god), 14
οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 14
ὁπότε: when, by what time, 6
σῶς, ὁ, ἡ: safe and sound, safe, sound, 6
ὑπ-εκ-χωρέω: to withdraw, 4

6 **οἶμαι**: οἴομαι, parenthetical
παρὰ πάντων: *by us*; gen. of agent
7 **ὁμολογηθείη**: *would*…; 3s verb with 3p subject, aor. pass. potential opt.
8 **Δία**: *Zeus*; acc. sg.
μέντοι: affirmative
τέ γε: γε is emphasizing the word preceding τέ: ἀνθρώμπων, which in turn follows παρὰ πάντων
9 **ἐγῷμαι**: ἐγὼ οἴομαι
παρὰ θεῶν: gen. of agent
e1 **ὁπότε δὴ**: *since then*…; ὁπότε is causal and δή is inferential
ἄλλο τι...ἢ: *anything other than…*
2 **τυγχάνει**: + pple εἰμί, see p. 20
πολλὴ ἀνάγκη (ἐστί): add linking verb
5 **ἐπιόντος...θανάτου ἐπὶ...ἄνθρωπον**: gen. abs. ἐπέρχομαι
τὸ μὲν θνητόν...τὸ δ(ὲ) ἀθάνατον: *the mortal (part)…the immortal (part)*, both are nom. subject
6 **αὐτοῦ**: *of him*; partitive gen.
7 **οἴχεται ἀπιόν**: οἴχομαι often governs a complementary pple (S 2099); ἀπέρχομαι
τῷ θανάτῳ: *from…*; dat. of compound verb

φαίνεται.

παντὸς μᾶλλον ἄρα, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, ψυχὴ ἀθάνατον καὶ ἀνώλεθρον, καὶ τῷ ὄντι ἔσονται ἡμῶν αἱ ψυχαὶ ἐν Ἅιδου. 107

οὔκουν ἔγωγε, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔφη, ἔχω παρὰ ταῦτα ἄλλο τι λέγειν οὐδέ πῃ ἀπιστεῖν τοῖς λόγοις. ἀλλ᾽ εἰ δή τι Σιμμίας ὅδε ἤ τις ἄλλος ἔχει λέγειν, εὖ ἔχει μὴ κατασιγῆσαι· ὡς οὐκ οἶδα εἰς ὅντινά τις ἄλλον καιρὸν ἀναβάλλοιτο 5
ἢ τὸν νῦν παρόντα, περὶ τῶν τοιούτων βουλόμενος ἤ τι εἰπεῖν ἢ ἀκοῦσαι.

ἀλλὰ μήν, ἦ δ᾽ ὃς ὁ Σιμμίας, οὐδ᾽ αὐτὸς ἔχω ἔτι ὅπῃ ἀπιστῶ ἔκ γε τῶν λεγομένων· ὑπὸ μέντοι τοῦ μεγέθους περὶ ὧν οἱ λόγοι εἰσίν, καὶ τὴν ἀνθρωπίνην ἀσθένειαν ἀτιμάζων, b

---

Ἅιδης, -ου ὁ: Hades, 15
ἀν-ώλεθρος, -α, -ον: indestructible, 12
ἀνα-βάλλω: to throw back; put off, delay 1
ἀνθρώπινος, -η, -ον: belonging to human, human, 7
ἀ-πιστέω: to distrust, not believe (+ dat.), 8
ἀ-σθένεια, ἡ: weakness, feebleness, 4
ἀ-τιμάζω: to dishonor, insult, slight, 4
καιρός, ὁ: time, (right) moment, 1
κατα-σιγάω: to remain silent, 1
μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size, magnitude, height, 17
ὅπῃ: in what way, how; where, 11
οὔκ-ουν: certainly not, not in fact, 2
πῃ: in some way, somehow, 4

9 **παντὸς**: *than anything*; gen. of comparison
107a1 **τῷ ὄντι**: *actually, really*; the pple is used as an adverbial
ἔσονται: 3p pres. dep. εἰμί
ἐν Ἅιδου: in (the house) of Hades
2 **ἔχω**: *I am able*
παρὰ: *contrary to…, against…*
4 **ὅδε**: *here*; as if he is pointing to Simmias
εὖ ἔχει: see p. 7
5 **ὡς**: *as, since*
εἰς ὅντινα…ἄλλον καιρὸν: *to what other…*
ἀναβάλλοιτο (ἄν): *he might put (it) off*; a potential opt. without ἄν (S 1821, 1822)
τὸν νῦν παρόντα (καιρόν): i.e. the present
8 **ἀλλὰ μήν**: *well, certainly*; in assent GP 343
8 **ὃς ὁ Σιμμίας**: *Simmias here, this Simmias*; ὅς is a demonstrative
ἔχω: *I know*
9 **ὑπὸ τοῦ μεγέθους…**: *because of…*; gen. of cause
b1 **ἀτιμάζων**: *having a poor opinion of…*

ἀναγκάζομαι ἀπιστίαν ἔτι ἔχειν παρ᾽ ἐμαυτῷ περὶ τῶν εἰρημένων.

οὐ μόνον γ᾽, ἔφη, ὦ Σιμμία, ὁ Σωκράτης, ἀλλὰ ταῦτά τε εὖ λέγεις καὶ τάς γε ὑποθέσεις τὰς πρώτας, καὶ εἰ πισταὶ ὑμῖν εἰσιν, ὅμως ἐπισκεπτέαι σαφέστερον· καὶ ἐὰν αὐτὰς ἱκανῶς διέλητε, ὡς ἐγῷμαι, ἀκολουθήσετε τῷ λόγῳ, καθ᾽ ὅσον δυνατὸν μάλιστ᾽ ἀνθρώπῳ ἐπακολουθῆσαι· κἂν τοῦτο αὐτὸ σαφὲς γένηται, οὐδὲν ζητήσετε περαιτέρω.

ἀληθῆ, ἔφη, λέγεις.

ἀλλὰ τόδε γ᾽, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, δίκαιον διανοηθῆναι, ὅτι, εἴπερ ἡ ψυχὴ ἀθάνατος, ἐπιμελείας δὴ δεῖται οὐχ ὑπὲρ τοῦ χρόνου τούτου μόνον ἐν ᾧ καλοῦμεν τὸ ζῆν, ἀλλ᾽ ὑπὲρ τοῦ

ἀκολουθέω: to follow (dat.) 1
ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 10
ἀ-πιστία, ἡ: disbelief, distrust, doubt, 6
δέομαι: lack, need, want; ask for (+ gen.) 7
δι-αιρέω: to divide, separate, distinguish, 3
δια-νοέομαι: to think, consider, intend, 6
δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right(eous), fair, 13
δυνατός, -ή, -όν: capable, strong, possible, 8
ἐπ-ακολουθέω: to follow after, pursue (dat) 3
ἐπι-μέλεια, ἡ: care, attention; pursuit, 1
ἐπι-σκέπτεός -ον: one must examine, inspect 1
ζητέω: to seek, look for, investigate, 9
ὅμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 13
περαίτερω: further, (comp. of **πέρα**)1
πιστός, -ή, -όν: trustworthy; credible 2
σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
ὑπέρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); over, beyond (acc.), 6
ὑπο-θέσις, -εως, ἡ: proposal, hypothesis, 6

2 **παρ(ὰ) ἐμαυτῷ**: *in my mind* (S 1692.b)
εἰρημένων: pf. pass. pple λέγω (stem ερ)
4 **οὐ μόνον γ(ε)...ἀλλὰ**: *Yes, no only (this) but (also)…*;
5 **τάς ὑποθέσεις...πρώτας**: parallel to ταῦτα (note τε...καί), object of λέγεις
καὶ εἰ: *even if*…; condition is concessive
εἰσιν: 3p εἰμί
6 **ἐπισκεπτέαι (εἰσιν)**: *they must be examined*; 'are to be examined,' this verbal adj. + εἰμί, here understood, expresses obligation; the missing subject is αἱ ὑποθέσεις
6 **σαφέστερον**: comparative adv.
ἐὰν...διέλητε, ἀκολουθήσετε: *if you analyze …, you will*…; 'distinguish' a fut. more vivid condition (εἰ ἄν + subj., fut.), διέλητε is 2s aor. subj. of διαιρέω (ἑλ)
7 **ἐγῷμαι**: ἐγὼ οἴομαι
8 **κατ(ὰ) ὅσον δυνατόν (ἐστι)**: *inasmuch as*
ἀνθρώπῳ: *for*…; dat. of interest
ἐπακολουθῆσαι: aor. inf.
κἂν...γένηται, ζητήσετε: *and if*…; καὶ ἐὰν, a fut. more vivid condition (εἰ ἄν + subj., fut.)
11 **ἀλλὰ...γε**: *but*…; or 'well,' γε emphasizes the preceding noun
δίκαιον (ἐστί): *it is right*
διανοηθῆναι: aor. pass. dep. inf.
c1 **δεῖται**: *needs*…; + partitive gen., 3s pres. δέομαι
δὴ: *then, accordingly*; inferential
οὐχ...μόνον...ἀλλ(ὰ): *not only…but (also)*
ὑπὲρ: *for*…; i.e. 'concerning' (S 1697.1b)
2 **ἐν ᾧ**: *in which (time)*
τὸ ζῆν: articular inf. ζάω
ὑπὲρ παντὸς: *for all (time)*; see c1

παντός, καὶ ὁ κίνδυνος νῦν δὴ καὶ δόξειεν ἂν δεινὸς εἶναι, εἴ τις αὐτῆς ἀμελήσει. εἰ μὲν γὰρ ἦν ὁ θάνατος τοῦ παντὸς ἀπαλλαγή, ἕρμαιον ἂν ἦν τοῖς κακοῖς ἀποθανοῦσι τοῦ τε σώματος ἅμ᾽ ἀπηλλάχθαι καὶ τῆς αὐτῶν κακίας μετὰ τῆς ψυχῆς· νῦν δ᾽ ἐπειδὴ ἀθάνατος φαίνεται οὖσα, οὐδεμία ἂν εἴη αὐτῇ ἄλλη ἀποφυγὴ κακῶν οὐδὲ σωτηρία πλὴν τοῦ ὡς **d** *βελτίστην τε καὶ φρονιμωτάτην γενέσθαι. οὐδὲν γὰρ ἄλλο ἔχουσα εἰς Ἅιδου ἡ ψυχὴ ἔρχεται πλὴν τῆς παιδείας τε καὶ τροφῆς, ἃ δὴ καὶ μέγιστα λέγεται ὠφελεῖν ἢ βλάπτειν τὸν τελευτήσαντα εὐθὺς ἐν ἀρχῇ τῆς ἐκεῖσε πορείας. λέγεται δὲ οὕτως, ὡς ἄρα τελευτήσαντα ἕκαστον ὁ ἑκάστου δαίμων, ὅσπερ ζῶντα εἰλήχει, οὗτος ἄγειν ἐπιχειρεῖ εἰς δή τινα*

ἄγω: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 12
Ἅιδης, -ου ὁ: Hades, 15
ἀμελέω: to have no care for, neglect, 5
ἀπ-αλλαγή, ἡ: escape; release, departure, 7
ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15
ἀπο-φυγή, ἡ: escape; refuge, 1
ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning; rule, office, 8
βέλτιστος, -η, -ον: best, 14
βλάπτω: to harm, hurt, 1
δαίμων, -ονος, ὁ: a divine being or spirit, 3
δεινός, -ή, -όν: terrible; wondrous, clever, 6
ἐκεῖ-σε: thither, to that place, 10
ἐπι-χειρέω: put one's hand on, attempt, try, 8
ἕρμαιον, τό: a god-send, gift of the gods, stroke of luck, 1
εὐθύς: right away, straight, directly, at once, 9
κακία, ἡ: wickedness, flaw, cowardice, 6
κίνδυνος, ὁ: risk, danger, venture, 2
λαγχάνω: to obtain by lot; be the tutelary deity over, preside over, 1
μέγιστος, -η, -ον: very big, greatest, most, 6
παιδεία, ἡ: education, culture, learning, 1
πλήν: except, but (+ gen.), 7
πορεία, ἡ: journey; way, march, 3
σωτηρία, ἡ: deliverance, salvation, 1
τροφή, ἡ: rearing, upbringing; food, 4
φρόνιμος, -ον: sensible, wise, prudent, 8
ὠφελέω: to help, to be of use, benefit, 1

4 **νῦν δὴ**: *now already*; 'just now, i.e. if it were true now that the soul is immortal
καὶ: *actually*; adverbial καί, potential opt.
5 **ἀμελήσει**: *will care*…; a fut. replaces opt. in future less vivid to express heightened emotion (emotional future less vivid)
εἰ...ἦν...ἂν ἦν: *if...were,..would be*...; pres. contrafactual (εἰ impf., impf.), εἰμί
τοῦ παντὸς: *from*…; gen. of separation
6 **ἂν ἦν**: *it would be*; impersonal
τοῖς κακοῖς (ἀνθρώποις): dat. interest
ἀποθανοῦσι: aor. pple
τοῦ σώματος: *from*…; separation
7 **ἀπηλλάχθαι**: aor. pass. inf.
τῆς...κακίας: *from*…; separation, parallel to σώματος
8 **νῦν δ(ὲ)**: *but as it is*…; as often following a contrafactual condition
φαίνεται οὖσα: *appears to*; + pple
ἂν εἴη: *would*…; potential opt. εἰμί
d1 **αὐτῇ**: *for it*; i.e. soul, dat. of interest
κακῶν: *from*…; separation
ὡς...: *as…as possible*; + superlative
3 **εἰς Ἅιδου**: *into Hades' (house)*
ἃ δὴ: *which very things*…; with sg. verb
4 **καὶ**: *quite*; an intensive modifying an adv.
μέγιστα: superlative adv.
τὸν τελευτήσαντα: *the one having died*
6 **ὡς**: *that…*
7 **εἰλήχει**: plpf. λαγχάνω
ζῶντα: *that one (while) being alive*
δή τινα: *a certain (fixed)*; intensive δή

τόπον, οἳ δεῖ τοὺς συλλεγέντας διαδικασαμένους εἰς Ἅιδου
e πορεύεσθαι μετὰ ἡγεμόνος ἐκείνου ᾧ δὴ προστέτακται τοὺς
ἐνθένδε ἐκεῖσε πορεῦσαι· τυχόντας δὲ ἐκεῖ ὧν δὴ τυχεῖν
καὶ μείναντας ὃν χρὴ χρόνον ἄλλος δεῦρο πάλιν ἡγεμὼν
κομίζει ἐν πολλαῖς χρόνου καὶ μακραῖς περιόδοις. ἔστι δὲ
ἄρα ἡ πορεία οὐχ ὡς ὁ Αἰσχύλου Τήλεφος λέγει· ἐκεῖνος
108 μὲν γὰρ ἁπλῆν οἶμόν φησιν εἰς Ἅιδου φέρειν, ἡ δ' οὔτε
ἁπλῆ οὔτε μία φαίνεταί μοι εἶναι. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν ἡγεμόνων
ἔδει· οὐ γάρ πού τις ἂν διαμάρτοι οὐδαμόσε μιᾶς ὁδοῦ
οὔσης. νῦν δὲ ἔοικε σχίσεις τε καὶ τριόδους πολλὰς ἔχειν·
5 ἀπὸ τῶν θυσιῶν τε καὶ νομίμων τῶν ἐνθάδε τεκμαιρόμενος
λέγω. ἡ μὲν οὖν κοσμία τε καὶ φρόνιμος ψυχὴ ἕπεταί τε

Ἅιδης, -ου ὁ: Hades, 15
Αἰσχύλος, ὁ: Aeschylus (the playwright) 1
ἁπλός, ή, όν: single, simple, plain, 3
δια-δικάζω: give judgment in a case, decide 2
δι-αμαρτάνω: to go astray, miss entirely, 1
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
ἐν-θάδε: here, hither, thither, 17
ἐν-θένδε: hence, from here, 3
ἕπομαι: to follow, accompany, escort, 9
ἡγεμών, ὁ: guide, leader, commander, 5
θυσία, ἡ: sacrifice, offering, rite, 2
κομίζω: to carry, convey; travel, journey, 2
κόσμιος, -η, -ον: well-ordered, regular, 4
μακρός, ά, όν: long, far, distant, large, 4
μένω: to stay, remain, 8
νόμιμος, -η, -ον: customary, lawful, 2
ὁδός, ἡ: road, way, path, journey, 1
οἶμος, ὁ, ἡ: way, road, path, 1
οὐδαμό-σε: to no place, to nowhere, 2
περί-οδος, ἡ: cycle or period of time, circuit 1
πορεία, ἡ: journey; way, march, 3
πορεύω to conduct; *mid*. travel, journey, 7
προσ-τάττω: to order, assign, appoint (dat) 5
συλ-λέγω: to collect, gather, 4
σχίσις, -εως, ἡ: parting, cleavage, 4
τεκμαίρομαι: to judge by signs, conjecture, 1
Τήλεφος, ὁ: Telephus, (a lost tragedy) 1
τρί-οδος, ἡ: crossroads, meeting of roads, 1
φρόνιμος, -ον: sensible, wise, prudent, 8

8 **οἳ**: *to where*; relative adverb
συλλεγέντας: aor. pass. pple
διαδικασαμένους: aor. mid. pple.
εἰς Ἅιδου: *to Hades' (house)*
e1 **ᾧ δὴ**: *the very one whom, precisely whom*
προστέτακται: *it…*; impers., 3s pf. pass. προστάσσω
τοὺς ἐνθένδε: *those here*; object of inf.
2 **πορεῦσαι**: *to conduct*; aor. inf. πορεύω
τυχόντας δὲ ἐκεῖ ὧν δὴ (χρή) τυχεῖν: *(them) having attained there precisely what it is necessary to attain*; i.e. 'they ought to attain' aor. pple, inf. τυγχάνω, governing a partitive gen.
3 **μείναντας**: aor pple. μένω
ὃν…χρόνον: *for which time…*; acc. duration
5 **ὡς**: *just as…*
108a1 **φησιν**: *says*; 3s pres.
φέρειν: *leads…*; i.e. the path bears to…
ἡ δ(ὲ): *and it…*; i.e. the path, ἡ οἶμος
2 **ἂν…ἔδει**: *there would be a need for…*; ἄν + impf. expresses present (unrealized) potential; governing a partitive gen.
3 **διαμάρτοι**: *could…*; 3s aor. potential opt.
μιᾶς…οὔσης: *if…*; gen. abs., conditional
4 **σχίσεις**: i.e. forks in the road
5 **νομίμων…ἐνθάδε**: *ceremonies here*
ἕπεται: *follows (the guide)*

καὶ οὐκ ἀγνοεῖ τὰ παρόντα· ἡ δ᾽ ἐπιθυμητικῶς τοῦ σώματος
ἔχουσα, ὅπερ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν εἶπον, περὶ ἐκεῖνο πολὺν
χρόνον ἐπτοημένη καὶ περὶ τὸν ὁρατὸν τόπον, πολλὰ b
ἀντιτείνασα καὶ πολλὰ παθοῦσα, βίᾳ καὶ μόγις ὑπὸ τοῦ
προστεταγμένου δαίμονος οἴχεται ἀγομένη. ἀφικομένην δὲ
ὅθιπερ αἱ ἄλλαι, τὴν μὲν ἀκάθαρτον καί τι πεποιηκυῖαν
τοιοῦτον, ἢ φόνων ἀδίκων ἡμμένην ἢ ἄλλ᾽ ἄττα τοιαῦτα 5
εἰργασμένην, ἃ τούτων ἀδελφά τε καὶ ἀδελφῶν ψυχῶν ἔργα
τυγχάνει ὄντα, ταύτην μὲν ἅπας φεύγει τε καὶ ὑπεκτρέπεται
καὶ οὔτε συνέμπορος οὔτε ἡγεμὼν ἐθέλει γίγνεσθαι, αὐτὴ
δὲ πλανᾶται ἐν πάσῃ ἐχομένη ἀπορίᾳ ἕως ἂν δή τινες c
χρόνοι γένωνται, ὧν ἐλθόντων ὑπ᾽ ἀνάγκης φέρεται εἰς τὴν

ἀ-γνοέω: not know, be ignorant of, 1
ἄγω: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 12
ἀδελφός, -ή, -όν: akin to (gen); kindred, 2
ἄ-δικος, -ον: unrighteous, unjust, 6
ἀ-κάθαρτος, -ον: impure, not clean, 2
ἀντι-τείνω: to resist, strive against, 2
ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: every, quite all, 14
ἀ-πορία, ἡ: bewilderment, puzzlement, 1
ἅπτω: engage in, touch (gen); kindle 11
βία, βίας, ἡ: bodily strength, force, might, 2
δαίμων, -ονος, ὁ: a divine being or spirit, 3
ἔμ-προσθεν: before, former; earlier, 7
ἐπι-θυμητικός, -ή, -όν: desiring, coveting, 1
ἐργάζομαι: to work, labor, toil, 4
ἔργον, τό: work, labor, deed, act, 5
ἕως: until, as long as, 15
ἡγεμών, ὁ: leader, commander, guide, 5
μόγις: with difficulty, scarcely, hardly, 1
ὅθι-περ: where, the very place where, 1
οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 14
ὁρατός, -ή, -όν: visible, to be seen, 17
πλανάω: make wander; *mid*. wander, 4
προσ-τάττω: to order, assign, appoint, 5
πτοέω: to flutter, excite, terrify, scare, 1
συν-έμπορος ὁ: fellow-traveller, companion 2
ὑπ-εκ-τρέπω: to turn aside from + acc., 1
φεύγω: to flee, escape; avoid, 10
φόνος, ὁ: murder, slaughter, 2

7 **τὰ παρόντα**: *present circumstances*
ἡ δ᾽(ψυχή): *but (the soul)*; reply to ἡ μὲν...
ἐπιθυμητικῶς...ἔχουσα: *being desirous of*; ; + adv. (see p. 7); governing a partitive gen.
8 **ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν**: *in the (time) before*
πολὺν χρόνον: *for*…; acc. of duration
b1 **ἐπτοημένη**: pf. pass. pple πάσχω
πολλὰ: *much*; inner acc.
2 **πολλὰ**: *many things*; inner acc.
παθοῦσα: aor. pple πάσχω
βίᾳ: *by violence*; dat. of means
ὑπὸ...: *by*…; gen. of agent
3 **προστεταγμένου**: pf. pass.
οἴχεται: governs a complementary pple, here pass. pple (S 2099)
4 **αἱ ἄλλαι (ψυχαί)**: add noun
τὴν μὲν (ψυχὴν): *the soul…*
πεποιηκυῖαν: pf. act. pple ποιέω
5 **ἢ...ἢ...**: *either…or*
ἡμμένων: i.e. having committed; pf. mid. ἅπτω + partitive gen.
ἄττα: *some*; alternate form of neuter τινα
εἰργασμένην: pf. mid. pple
ἀδελφά, ἀδελφῶν: adjectives, not nouns
7 **τυγχάνει**: + pple, see p. 20
8 **αὐτὴ δὲ**: *but (the soul) itself…*; i.e. by itself
c1 **ἐν πάσῃ ἀπορίᾳ ἐχομένη**: pass. pple, note the word order
ἕως ἂν δή τινες...γένωνται: *while certain fixed times come to pass*; ἄν + aor. subj., indefinite temporal clause; intensive δή
2 **ὧν ἐλθόντων**: *these coming to pass*; abs.

αὐτῇ πρέπουσαν οἴκησιν· ἡ δὲ καθαρῶς τε καὶ μετρίως τὸν βίον διεξελθοῦσα, καὶ συνεμπόρων καὶ ἡγεμόνων θεῶν τυχοῦσα, ᾤκησεν τὸν αὐτῇ ἑκάστη τόπον προσήκοντα. εἰσὶν δὲ πολλοὶ καὶ θαυμαστοὶ τῆς γῆς τόποι, καὶ αὐτὴ οὔτε οἷα οὔτε ὅση δοξάζεται ὑπὸ τῶν περὶ γῆς εἰωθότων λέγειν, ὡς ἐγὼ ὑπό τινος πέπεισμαι.

d *καὶ ὁ Σιμμίας, πῶς ταῦτα, ἔφη, λέγεις, ὦ Σώκρατες; περὶ γάρ τοι γῆς καὶ αὐτὸς πολλὰ δὴ ἀκήκοα, οὐ μέντοι ταῦτα ἃ σὲ πείθει· ἡδέως οὖν ἂν ἀκούσαιμι.*

ἀλλὰ μέντοι, ὦ Σιμμία, οὐχ ἡ Γλαύκου τέχνη γέ μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι διηγήσασθαι ἄ γ' ἐστίν· ὡς μέντοι ἀληθῆ, χαλεπώτερόν μοι φαίνεται ἢ κατὰ τὴν Γλαύκου τέχνην, καὶ

Γλαύκων, ὁ: Glaucon, 2
δι-εξ-έρχομαι: to pass through, go through 5
δι-ηγέομαι: set out in detail, relate, narrate, 3
δοξάζω: to think, opine, suppose, imagine, 3
εἴωθα: to be accustomed, 12
ἡγεμών, ὁ: leader, commander, guide, 5
ἡδέως: sweetly, pleasantly, gladly, 6
θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wonderful, marvelous, strange, 11
μέτριος, -α, -ον: moderate, in due measure, 7
οἰκέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 15
οἴκησις, ἡ: dwelling, 5
πρέπει: it is fitting, it is suitable (impers.) 8
προσ-ήκει: it belongs, it is fitting, befits 15
συν-έμπορος ὁ: fellow-traveller, companion 1
τέχνη, ἡ: craft, art, 6
χαλεπός, -ά, -όν: difficult, hard, harmful, 5

3 **αὐτῇ**: *to it*; i.e. soul, dat. of interest with the pple
ἡ δὲ: *but the soul…*
5 **τυχοῦσα**: aor. pple + partitive gen., see p. 20
ᾤκησεν: aor. οἰκέω
εἰσὶν: 3p pres. εἰμί
6 **καὶ αὐτὴ οὔτε οἷα οὔτε ὅση**: *and (the earth) itself (is) neither the sort nor the size…*; add a linking verb
7 **εἰωθότων**: pf. pple εἴωθα, present in sense; gen. of agent
8 **πέπεισμαι**: pf. pass. πείθω
d1 **λέγεις**: i.e. what do you mean by these?
δὴ: *quite*
2 **ἀκήκοα**: 1s pf. ἀκούω
3 **πείθει**: *persuades you*; neuter pl. ἅ is the subject
ἂν ἀκούσαιμι: *would…*; potential opt.
4 **ἀλλὰ μέντοι**: *well, certainly*; ἀλλὰ as often in replies, μέντοι is confirmatory (GP 411)
ἡ Γλαύκου τέχνη...ἐστίν: *it does not seem to me to be the art of Glaucus at least to explain what indeed it is*; i.e. it does not take a genius to explain…; ἡ...τέχνη is an idiom of unclear, though speculated, origin
5 **ὡς...ἀληθῆ**: *that (these things are) true, however,…*; ἀληθέα is predicate, add verb
6 **χαλεπώτερόν (διηγήσασθαι)**: supply an epexegetic inf. with this comparative
ἢ κατὰ τὴν Γλαύκου τέχνην: *than compared to the art of Glaucus*; 'than according to…' for κατά, see S 1690c

ἅμα μὲν ἐγὼ ἴσως οὐδ' ἂν οἷός τε εἴην, ἅμα δέ, εἰ καὶ ἠπιστάμην, ὁ βίος μοι δοκεῖ ὁ ἐμός, ὦ Σιμμία, τῷ μήκει τοῦ λόγου οὐκ ἐξαρκεῖν. τὴν μέντοι ἰδέαν τῆς γῆς οἵαν πέπεισμαι εἶναι, καὶ τοὺς τόπους αὐτῆς οὐδέν με κωλύει e
λέγειν.

ἀλλ', ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας, καὶ ταῦτα ἀρκεῖ.

πέπεισμαι τοίνυν, ἦ δ' ὅς, ἐγὼ ὡς πρῶτον μέν, εἰ ἔστιν ἐν μέσῳ τῷ οὐρανῷ περιφερὴς οὖσα, μηδὲν αὐτῇ δεῖν μήτε 5
ἀέρος πρὸς τὸ μὴ πεσεῖν μήτε ἄλλης ἀνάγκης μηδεμιᾶς 109
τοιαύτης, ἀλλὰ ἱκανὴν εἶναι αὐτὴν ἴσχειν τὴν ὁμοιότητα τοῦ οὐρανοῦ αὐτοῦ ἑαυτῷ πάντῃ καὶ τῆς γῆς αὐτῆς τὴν ἰσορροπίαν· ἰσόρροπον γὰρ πρᾶγμα ὁμοίου τινὸς ἐν μέσῳ

ἀήρ, ἀέρος m.: air, mist 16
ἀρκέω: to suffice, be enough, ward off, 1
ἐξ-αρκέω: be enough for, suffice for (dat.), 1
ἐπίσταμαι: know, know how, understand, 13
ἰδέα, ἡ: idea, character; appearance, form, 8
ἰσό-ρροπία, ἡ: equilibrium, balance, 1
ἰσό-ρροπος, -ον: balanced, well-balanced, 1
ἴσχω: to have, hold back, check, restrain, 3
κωλύω: to hinder or prevent, 5
μέσος, - η, -ον: middle, in the middle of, 8
μῆκος, τό: length, 1
ὁμοιότης, -τητος, ἡ: similarity, resemblance, 3
οὐρανός, ὁ: sky, heaven, 10
πάντῃ: in every way, on every side, 1
περι-φερής, -ές: rounded, circular 1
πίπτω: to fall, 3
πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18

7 **ἅμα μὲν...ἅμα δέ**: i.e. both…and
οἷός τε εἴην: οἷος τε εἰμί, 'I am the sort to' is a common idiom for 'I am able'; here as, an potential opt.
εἰ καὶ ἠπιστάμην: *even if I had the knowledge*; aor. as a protasis of a mixed contrafactual
8 **τῷ μήκει**: *for…*; obj. of compound verb
9 **τοῦ λόγου**: *of the argument*
τὴν μέντοι...εἶναι: *what sort of character of the earth I have been persuaded that there is*; 'the character of the earth, what sort I have been persuaded that (it) is' pf. pass. , proleptic use of ἰδέαν
e1 **τόπους**: *regions*
οὐδέν: nom. subject
3 **ἀλλὰ**: *well*
4 **ἦ δ'ὅς**: see note on p. 9
ὡς: *that*; begins ind. disc. but is abandoned for acc + inf. in what follows
πρῶτον: adverbial acc.
ἔστιν: *(the earth) is*; add ἡ γῆ as subject
οὖσα: pple εἰμί
5 **μηδὲν αὐτῇ δεῖν**: *that for it there is not at all a need for…*; + partitive gen.; ind. disc. (ignoring ὡς) + πέπεισμαι, for μή, S 2726
109a1 **πρὸς...πεσεῖν**: *with regard to…*; articular inf. πίπτω
ἀνάγκης: *force*
2 **ἱκανὴν εἶναι αὐτὴν ἴσχειν**: *...are sufficient to hold it (in place)*; i.e. the earth; though ἱκανήν is sg., there are two acc. subjects
3 **ἑαυτῷ**: *to…*; dat. with ὁμοιότητα
πάντῃ: *on every side*
4 **πρᾶγμα**: *object*
ὁμοίου τινὸς...μέσῳ: *in the middle of something of this sort sort*; i.e. something homogenous like the sky

τεθὲν οὐχ ἕξει μᾶλλον οὐδ' ἧττον οὐδαμόσε κλιθῆναι, ὁμοίως δ' ἔχον ἀκλινὲς μενεῖ. πρῶτον μὲν τοίνυν, ἦ δ' ὅς, τοῦτο πέπεισμαι.

καὶ ὀρθῶς γε, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας.

ἔτι τοίνυν, ἔφη, πάμμεγά τι εἶναι αὐτό, καὶ ἡμᾶς οἰκεῖν **b** τοὺς μέχρι Ἡρακλείων στηλῶν ἀπὸ Φάσιδος ἐν σμικρῷ τινι μορίῳ, ὥσπερ περὶ τέλμα μύρμηκας ἢ βατράχους περὶ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκοῦντας, καὶ ἄλλους ἄλλοθι πολλοὺς ἐν πολλοῖσι τοιούτοις τόποις οἰκεῖν. εἶναι γὰρ πανταχῇ περὶ τὴν γῆν πολλὰ κοῖλα καὶ παντοδαπὰ καὶ τὰς ἰδέας καὶ τὰ μεγέθη, εἰς ἃ συνερρυηκέναι τό τε ὕδωρ καὶ τὴν ὁμίχλην καὶ τὸν ἀέρα· αὐτὴν δὲ τὴν γῆν καθαρὰν ἐν καθαρῷ κεῖσθαι

ἀ-κλινής, -ές: unbending, leaning either side, 1
ἀήρ, ἀέρος m.: air, mist 16
ἄλλο-θι: in another place, elsewhere, 7
βάτραχος, ὁ: frog, 1
Ἡρακλείος, -α, -ον: of Heracles, 1
ἧττων, -ον: less, weaker, inferior, 16
θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea, 12
ἰδέα, ἡ: idea, character; appearance, form, 8
κεῖμαι: to lie, lie down 4
κλίνω: to bend, swerve; incline, lean, 1
κοῖλος, -η, -ον: hollow, hollowed, 5
μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size, magnitude, height, 17
μένω: to stay, remain, 8
μέχρι: up to; until, as long as (+ gen.), 5
μόριον, τό: piece, portion, 2
μύρμηξ, μύρμηκος, ὁ: ant, 2
οἰκέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 15
ὁμίχλη, ἡ: mist, fog, 1
οὐδαμό-σε: to no place, to nowhere, 2
πάμ-μεγας, -άλη, -α: very great, immense, 1
παντα-χῇ: everywhere, in every way, 3
παντο-δαπός, -ή, -όν: of every kind, of all sorts 3
σμικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little, 19
στήλη, ἡ: pillar; slab, stele, 1
συρ-ρέω: to flow together, 4
τέλμα, τέλματος, τό: pond, 1
τίθημι: to set, put, place, arrange, 10
ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water, 14
Φάσις, Φάσιδος, ἡ: Phasis (River),1

5 **τεθὲν**: neut. sg. aor. pass. pple τίθημι
ἕξει: *will be able*; fut. ἔχω
ἧττον: *less*; compartive adverb
κλιθῆναι: aor. pass. inf.
6 **ὁμοίως ἔχον**: neut. pple modifying πρᾶγμα, for ἔχω + adv., see p. 7
ἦ δ'ὅς: see note on p. 9
7 **πέπεισμαι**: pf. pass. πείθω
8 **καὶ...γε**: *and rightly*; emphasing the intervening word
9 **πάμμεγά...αὐτό (πέπεισμαι)**: *(I am persuaded that it…*; supply verb
b1 **τοὺς μέχρι...στηλῶν...οἰκοῦντας**: *those…*; in apposition to ἡμᾶς; Phasis lies on the eastern shore of the Black sea and the pillars on the western end of the Mediterranean
3 **ἄλλους ἄλλοθι**: *some in some places, others in other places*; S 1274
5 **καὶ τὰς ἰδέας... μεγέθη**: *both in…and in…*; acc. respect
6 **εἰς ἃ**: *into which…*
συνερρυηκέναι: pf. inf. συρρέω, ind. disc. still governed by πέπεισμαι
7 **ἐν καθαρῷ...τῷ οὐρανῷ**: καθαρῷ modifies οὐρανῷ

τῷ οὐρανῷ ἐν ᾧπέρ ἐστι τὰ ἄστρα, ὃν δὴ αἰθέρα ὀνομάζειν
τοὺς πολλοὺς τῶν περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα εἰωθότων λέγειν· οὗ δὴ c
ὑποστάθμην ταῦτα εἶναι καὶ συρρεῖν ἀεὶ εἰς τὰ κοῖλα τῆς
γῆς. ἡμᾶς οὖν οἰκοῦντας ἐν τοῖς κοίλοις αὐτῆς λεληθέναι
καὶ οἴεσθαι ἄνω ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς οἰκεῖν, ὥσπερ ἂν εἴ τις ἐν
μέσῳ τῷ πυθμένι τοῦ πελάγους οἰκῶν οἴοιτό τε ἐπὶ τῆς 5
θαλάττης οἰκεῖν καὶ διὰ τοῦ ὕδατος ὁρῶν τὸν ἥλιον καὶ τὰ
ἄλλα ἄστρα τὴν θάλατταν ἡγοῖτο οὐρανὸν εἶναι, διὰ δὲ
βραδυτῆτά τε καὶ ἀσθένειαν μηδεπώποτε ἐπὶ τὰ ἄκρα τῆς d
θαλάττης ἀφιγμένος μηδὲ ἑωρακὼς εἴη, ἐκδὺς καὶ ἀνακύψας
ἐκ τῆς θαλάττης εἰς τὸν ἐνθάδε τόπον, ὅσῳ καθαρώτερος καὶ
καλλίων τυγχάνει ὢν τοῦ παρὰ σφίσι, μηδὲ ἄλλου

αἰθήρ, -έρος ὁ: aether, air, sky, 4
ἄκρος, -η, -ον: topmost, excellent, 3
ἀνα-κύπτω: to lift up one's head, 3
ἄνω: up, above, 6
ἀ-σθένεια, ἡ: weakness, feebleness, 4
ἄστρον, τὸ: a star, 5
βραδυτής, -τῆτος, ἡ: slowness, 2
εἴωθα: to be accustomed, 12
ἐκ-δύω: to come out; take off, strip, 1
ἐν-θάδε: here, hither, thither, 17
ἥλιος, ὁ: the sun, 7
θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea, 12
καλλιων, -ον: more noble or beautiful, 7
κοῖλος, -η, -ον: hollow, hollowed, 5
λανθάνω: to escape notice of; forget, 7
μέσος, - η, -ον: middle, in the middle of, 8
μηδε-πώποτε: not yet ever, never in the world 1
οἰκέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 15
ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: name, 7
οὐρανός, ὁ: sky, heaven, 10
πελάγος, ὁ: sea, 1
πυθμήν, -ένος ὁ: bottom, base, 2
συρ-ρέω: to flow together, 4
σφεῖς: they, 4
ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water, 14
ὑπο-στάθμη, ἡ: sediment, 1

8 **τῷ οὐρανῷ**: supply ἐν καθαρῷ
ὃν δὴ: *the very one which, precisely what…*
7 **εἰωθότων**: *of those accustomed*; partitive gen., pf. pple εἴωθα
c1 **οὗ δὴ**: *of which very thing*
2 **ταῦτα**: acc. subject, i.e. the water, mist, and air from b6-7
3 **ἡμὰς...οἰκοῦντας...λεληθέναι**: pf. act. inf. λανθάνω + complementary pple; often, the pple acts as main verb and λανθάνω is translated as 'unawares' or 'unknowlingly'
4 **ἄνω ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς**: *above on the earth*
ὥσπερ ἂν εἴ: *just as if…*; ὥσπερ εἰ, the ἄν suggests a suppressed (missing) apodosis
οἰκῶν: nom. sg. pple οἰκέω
5 **οἴοιτο...ἡγοῖτο**: *should…should…*; opt. in protasis of a future less vivid; οἴομαι
d2 **ἀφιγμένος (εἴη)**: *should have arrived*; opt. periphrastic pf. (pple + εἰμί) in same protasis, ἀφικνέομαι
ἑωρακὼς εἴη: periphratic pf., see above ὁράω
ἐκδὺς: *by…*; i.e. of the water; nom. sg. aor. pple, causal in sense
ἀνακύψας: aor. pple
3 **ὅσῳ...**: *how much…*; 'by how much,' the clause is governed by ἀκήκοὼς εἴη, a dat. of degree of difference
4 **τυγχάνει**: pple εἰμί, see p. 20
τοῦ παρὰ σφίσι: *than (the place) where they live*; gen. of comparison, dat. place where, παρὰ is similar to *apud* or *chez*

ἀκηκοὼς εἴη τοῦ ἑωρακότος. ταὐτὸν δὴ τοῦτο καὶ ἡμᾶς πεπονθέναι· οἰκοῦντας γὰρ ἔν τινι κοίλῳ τῆς γῆς οἴεσθαι ἐπάνω αὐτῆς οἰκεῖν, καὶ τὸν ἀέρα οὐρανὸν καλεῖν, ὡς διὰ τούτου οὐρανοῦ ὄντος τὰ ἄστρα χωροῦντα· τὸ δὲ εἶναι ταὐτόν, ὑπ᾽ ἀσθενείας καὶ βραδυτῆτος οὐχ οἵους τε εἶναι ἡμᾶς διεξελθεῖν ἐπ᾽ ἔσχατον τὸν ἀέρα· ἐπεί, εἴ τις αὐτοῦ ἐπ᾽ ἄκρα ἔλθοι ἢ πτηνὸς γενόμενος ἀνάπτοιτο, κατιδεῖν <ἂν> ἀνακύψαντα, ὥσπερ ἐνθάδε οἱ ἐκ τῆς θαλάττης ἰχθύες ἀνακύπτοντες ὁρῶσι τὰ ἐνθάδε, οὕτως ἄν τινα καὶ τὰ ἐκεῖ κατιδεῖν, καὶ εἰ ἡ φύσις ἱκανὴ εἴη ἀνασχέσθαι θεωροῦσα, γνῶναι ἂν ὅτι ἐκεῖνός ἐστιν ὁ ἀληθῶς οὐρανὸς καὶ τὸ ἀληθινὸν φῶς καὶ ἡ ὡς ἀληθῶς γῆ. ἥδε μὲν γὰρ ἡ γῆ καὶ οἱ λίθοι καὶ

ἀ-σθένεια, ἡ: weakness, feebleness, 4
ἀήρ, ἀέρος m.: air, mist 16
ἄκρος, -η, -ον: topmost, excellent, 3
ἀληθινός, -ή, -όν: truthful, true, real, 1
ἀν-έχω: to hold up; uphold, hold out, 1
ἀνα-κύπτω: to lift up one's head, 3
ἀνα-πέτομαι: to fly up, fly away, 1
ἄστρον, τὸ: a star, 5
βραδυτής, -τῆτος, ἡ: slowness, 2
γιγνώσκω: learn to know, to learn, realize 12
δι-εξ-έρχομαι: to pass through, go through 5
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
ἐν-θάδε: here, hither, thither, 17
ἐπ-άνω: above (+ gen.), 1
ἔσχατος, -η, -ον: extreme, last, furthest, 5
θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea, 12
θεωρέω: to see, watch, look at, 3
ἰχθύς, -ύος, ὁ: fish, 1
καθ-οράω: to look (down), perceive, 4
κοῖλος, -η, -ον: hollow, hollowed, 5
λίθος, ὁ: a stone, 8
οἰκέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 15
οὐρανός, ὁ: sky, heaven, 10
πτηνός, -ή, -όν: winged, feathered, , 1
φύσις, -εως, ἡ: nature, character; form, 11
φῶς (φάος), φάεος, τό: light, 1
χωρέω: to go, come; have room for, 4

5 **ἀκηκοὼς εἴη**: *should*…; same fut. less vivid, a periphrastic pf., ἀκούω
ἄλλου...τοῦ ἑωρακότος: *from another having*...; pf. act. pple ὁράω, a gen. of source, common with the verb ἀκούω
ταὐτὸν δὴ τοῦτο: *this very same thing*; τὸ αὐτὸν, inner acc.
καὶ: *also, too*
6 **πεπονθέναι**: pf. inf. πάσχω
7 **οἴεσθαι**: *that we*…; add acc. subj. ἡμᾶς
ὡς...ἄστρα χωροῦντα: *on the grounds that*…; 'since…', ὡς + pple expresses an alleged cause from a non-speaker's view
e1 **τὸ δὲ εἶναι ταῦτὸν**: *but this is the same*…; τὸ αὐτὸν, either τὸ is a demonsrative, the acc. subj. or this is an impers. inf. absolute; assume πέπεισμαι in a7 as the main verb
ὑπὸ: *because of*...; gen. of cause
οἵους τε εἶναι ἡμᾶς: *that we*…; acc. subject + inf. in apposition to the demonstrative τὸ; οἷος τε εἰμί, is an idiom for 'I am able'
2 **ἐπὶ ἔσχατον τὸν ἀέρα**: *to the upper air*
ἐπεὶ: *since*
αὐτοῦ: *of it*; i.e of the air
3 **ἔλθοι...ἀνάπτοιτο**: *should go, should fly up*
γενόμενος: aor. γίγνομαι + nom. predicate
κατίδειν: *then he would see*; inf. καθοράω
5 **τὰ ἐνθάδε**: *things here*
οὕτως...: *so one could see things there also*
6 **εἴη...**: *were sufficient to sustain seeing*
γνῶναι ἄν...: *he would know*; aor. inf.
ὡς ἀληθῶς: *in reality*

ἅπας ὁ τόπος ὁ ἐνθάδε διεφθαρμένα ἐστὶν καὶ καταβεβρωμένα, ὥσπερ τὰ ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ ὑπὸ τῆς ἅλμης, καὶ οὔτε φύεται ἄξιον λόγου οὐδὲν ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ, οὔτε τέλειον ὡς ἔπος εἰπεῖν οὐδέν ἐστι, σήραγγες δὲ καὶ ἄμμος καὶ πηλὸς ἀμήχανος καὶ βόρβοροί εἰσιν, ὅπου ἂν καὶ [ἡ] γῆ ᾖ, καὶ πρὸς τὰ παρ' ἡμῖν κάλλη κρίνεσθαι οὐδ' ὁπωστιοῦν ἄξια. ἐκεῖνα δὲ αὖ τῶν παρ' ἡμῖν πολὺ ἂν ἔτι πλέον φανείη διαφέρειν· εἰ γὰρ δὴ καὶ μῦθον λέγειν καλόν, ἄξιον ἀκοῦσαι, ὦ Σιμμία, οἷα τυγχάνει τὰ ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς ὑπὸ τῷ οὐρανῷ ὄντα.

ἀλλὰ μήν, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἡμεῖς γε τούτου τοῦ μύθου ἡδέως ἂν ἀκούσαιμεν.

ἀ-μήχανος, -ον: impossible, inconceivable, 5
ἅλμη, ἡ: sea-water, brine, 2
ἄμμος, ὁ: sand, 1
ἄξιος, -α, -ον: worthy of, deserving of, 15
βορβορός, ὁ: mire, filth, 2
δια-φέρω: to differ, surpass, carry over, 8
δια-φθείρω: to destroy, corrupt, kill, 6
ἐν-θάδε: here, hither, thither, 17
ἔπος, -εος, τό: a word, 4
ἡδέως: sweetly, pleasantly, gladly, 6
θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea, 12
κάλλος, -εος, τό: beauty, 2
κατα-βιβρώσκω: corrode, eat up, devour, 1
κρίνω: to choose, pick out; judge, decide, 2
μῦθος, ὁ: story, word, speech, 7
ὅπου: where, 1
ὁπωστιοῦν: in any way whatever, 5
οὐρανός, ὁ: sky, heaven, 10
πηλός, ὁ: mud, clay, earth, 4
πλέων, -ον: more, greater, 17
σῆραγξ, σήραγγος, ἡ: hollow rock, cave, 1
τέλειος, -α, -ον: perfect, completed, 1
φύω: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by nature, 14

2 **ὁ ἐνθάδε**: modifying ὁ τόπος
διεφθαρμένα ἐστὶν: periphratic pf. pass. (pf. pple + εἰμί), διαφθείρω ; the use of neuter pl. following plural subjects of different genders is not uncommon
καταβεβρωμένα (ἐστὶν): see above,
3 **τὰ...θαλάττῃ**: *things*…; supply verb
ὑπὸ...: gen. of cause
4 **ἄξιον λόγου**: *worthy of mention*
ὡς ἔπος εἰπεῖν: *so to speak*; an inf. absolute
6 **ἀμήχανος**: i.e. inconceivably immense
εἰσιν: 3rd pl. pres. εἰμί
ὅπου ἂν...ᾖ: *wherever*…; 3s pres. subj. εἰμί + ἄν in an indefinite relative clause
7 **πρὸς τὰ παρὰ ἡμῖν κάλλη**: *in comparison to beautiful things where we live they (are) in no way at all worthy to be judged*; κάλλεα; παρὰ is similar to *apud* or *chez*, see 109d4; κρίνεσθαι is an epexegetic inf.
8 **ἐκεῖνα δὲ**: *but those things*…; i.e. real earth
τῶν παρ(ὰ) ἡμῖν: *than those where we live*…; gen. of comparison with διαφέρειν, for παρὰ ἡμῖν, see a7
πολὺ: i.e. inconceivably immense
ἂν φανείη: *would appear*; 3s aor. pass. opt. φαίνω
b1 **εἰ γὰρ δὴ...καλόν (ἐστι)**: *if indeed (it is) right also*…; καλόν is impersonal, γὰρ is anticipatory, 'since' or 'for,' but here left untranslated
ἄξιον (ἐστί): (*it is*)…; predicate, supply a linking verb
2 **οἷα**: *the things which*…; the missing antecedent is obj. of ἀκοῦσαι
τυγχάνει: + pple, see p. 20
3 **ἀλλὰ μὴν**: *well certainly*; a strong assent
τούτου τοῦ μύθου: gen. of source, object of potential aor. opt. ἀκούσαιμεν

λέγεται τοίνυν, ἔφη, ὦ ἑταῖρε, πρῶτον μὲν εἶναι τοιαύτη ἡ γῆ αὐτὴ ἰδεῖν, εἴ τις ἄνωθεν θεῷτο, ὥσπερ αἱ δωδεκάσκυτοι σφαῖραι, ποικίλη, χρώμασιν διειλημμένη, ὧν καὶ τὰ ἐνθάδε εἶναι χρώματα ὥσπερ δείγματα, οἷς δὴ οἱ γραφῆς καταχρῶνται. ἐκεῖ δὲ πᾶσαν τὴν γῆν ἐκ τοιούτων εἶναι, καὶ πολὺ ἔτι ἐκ λαμπροτέρων καὶ καθαρωτέρων ἢ τούτων· τὴν μὲν γὰρ ἁλουργῆ εἶναι [καὶ] θαυμαστὴν τὸ κάλλος, τὴν δὲ χρυσοειδῆ, τὴν δὲ ὅση λευκὴ γύψου ἢ χιόνος λευκοτέραν, καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἄλλων χρωμάτων συγκειμένην ὡσαύτως, καὶ ἔτι πλειόνων καὶ καλλιόνων ἢ ὅσα ἡμεῖς ἑωράκαμεν. καὶ γὰρ αὐτὰ ταῦτα τὰ κοῖλα αὐτῆς, ὕδατός τε καὶ ἀέρος ἔκπλεα ὄντα, χρώματός τι εἶδος παρέχεσθαι στίλβοντα ἐν τῇ τῶν

ἀήρ, ἀέρος m.: air, mist 16
ἁλουργής, -ές: purple, of purple dye, 1
ἄνω-θεν: from above, from on high, 2
γραφεύς, -έως, ὁ: painter, 1
γύψος, ὁ: chalk, 1
δεῖγμα, ατος, τό: sample, pattern, sketch, 1
δια-λαμβάνω: receive separately, divide, seize by the middle (wrestling metaphor), 2
δωδεκά-σκυτος, -ον: of 12 strips of leather, 1
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
ἔκ-πλεος. -ον: quite full, complete, (gen), 1
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
ἐν-θάδε: here, hither, thither, 17
ἑταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate, 11
θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wonderful, marvelous, 11
θεάομαι: to see, watch, look at; consider, 3
καλλιων, -ον: more noble or beautiful, 7
κάλλος, -εος, τό: beauty, 2
κατα-χράομαι: use, employ (+ dat.), 1
κοῖλος, -η, -ον: hollow, hollowed, 5
λαμπρός, -ή, -όν, ὁ: bright, brilliant, 1
λευκός, -ή, -όν: white, bright, brilliant, 3
παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16
πλέων, -ον: more, greater, 17
ποικίλος, -η, -ον: varied; many-colored, 2
στίλβω: to gleam, flash, be bright, 1
συγ-κείμαι: be composed, be compounded, 6
σφαῖρα, ἡ: ball, sphere, globe, 1
ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water, 14
χιών, χιόνος, ἡ: snow, 7
χρυσο-ειδής, -ές: of gold, like gold, 1
χρῶμα, -ατος, τό: color, complexion, 9
ὡσ-αύτως: in the same manner, just so, 4

5 **λέγεται**: subject ἡ γῆ αὐτὴ
πρῶτον: adverbial acc.
τοιαύτη...ἰδεῖν: *this sort to look upon*; pred. + epexegetic inf., aor. inf. ὁράω
6 **θεῷτο**: *one should...*; pres. mid. opt.
7 **αἱ...σφαῖραι**: i.e. balls stitched together
χρώμασιν: dat. pl. of means
διειλημμένη: *divided*; i.e. separated; pf. pass
ὧν...τὰ...χρώματα: *of which the colors here*; the antecedent is σφαῖραι
8 **ὥσπερ δειγματα**: *just as samples*; i.e. paint samples
οἷς δὴ: *the very ones which…*
γραφῆς: γραφέ-ες, nom. pl. γραφεύς
c1 **τοιούτων**: i.e. varied colors
2 **πολὺ**: *much, far*; adv. acc. (acc. of extent of degree) modifying the comparative
(ἐκ) τούτων: supply missing preposition
3 **τὴν μὲν ἁλουρῆ**: *one part is purple*; ἁλουρέ-α
τὸ κάλλος: *in…*; acc. of respect
4 **τὴν δὲ χρυσοειδῆ**: *another part (is) golden*
τὴν δὲ ὅση: *and another part is as…as*
χιόνος: *than…*; gen. of compariston
6 **ἑωράκαμεν**: 1p pf. ὁράω
d1 **χρώματός...**: *the appearance of color*

ἄλλων χρωμάτων ποικιλίᾳ, ὥστε ἕν τι αὐτῆς εἶδος συνεχὲς ποικίλον φαντάζεσθαι. ἐν δὲ ταύτῃ οὔσῃ τοιαύτῃ ἀνὰ λόγον τὰ φυόμενα φύεσθαι, δένδρα τε καὶ ἄνθη καὶ τοὺς καρπούς· καὶ αὖ τὰ ὄρη ὡσαύτως καὶ τοὺς λίθους ἔχειν ἀνὰ τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον τήν τε λειότητα καὶ τὴν διαφάνειαν καὶ τὰ χρώματα καλλίω· ὧν καὶ τὰ ἐνθάδε λιθίδια εἶναι ταῦτα τὰ ἀγαπώμενα μόρια, σάρδιά τε καὶ ἰάσπιδας καὶ σμαράγδους καὶ πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα· ἐκεῖ δὲ οὐδὲν ὅτι οὐ τοιοῦτον εἶναι καὶ ἔτι τούτων καλλίω. τὸ δ᾽ αἴτιον τούτου εἶναι ὅτι ἐκεῖνοι οἱ λίθοι εἰσὶ καθαροὶ καὶ οὐ κατεδηδεσμένοι οὐδὲ διεφθαρμένοι ὥσπερ οἱ ἐνθάδε ὑπὸ σηπεδόνος καὶ ἅλμης ὑπὸ τῶν δεῦρο συνερρυηκότων, ἃ καὶ λίθοις καὶ γῇ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ζῴοις τε

ἀγαπάω: to love, be fond of; satisfy, 1
αἴτιος, -α, -ον: responsible, blameworthy, 8
ἅλμη, ἡ: sea-water, brine, 2
ἄνθη, -ης, ἡ: full bloom, 1
δένδρον, τό: tree, 1
δεῦρο: here, to this point, hither, 7
δια-φάνεια, ἡ: transparency, 1
δια-φθείρω: to destroy, corrupt, kill, 6
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
ἐν-θάδε: here, hither, thither, 17
ζῷον, τό: a living being, animal, 6
ἴασπις, ἰάσπιδος, ἡ: jasper, 1
καλλιων, -ον: more noble or beautiful, 7
καρπός, ὁ: crop, fruit, benefit, 1
κατ-εσθίω: to eat up, corrode, devour, 1
λειότης, -ητος, ἡ: smoothness, 1
λιθίδιον, τό: pebble, 1
λίθος, ὁ: a stone, 8
μόριον, τό: piece, portion, 2
ὄρος, -εος, τό: a mountain, hill, 2
ποικιλία, ἡ: variation, varied aspect, 1
ποικίλος, -η, -ον: varied; many-colored, 2
σάρδιον, τό: sard, the Sardian stone, 1
σηπεδών, -όνος, ἡ: decay, putrefication, 2
σμάραγδος, ὁ: emerald, 1
συν-εχής, -ές: continuous, contiguous to, 1
συρ-ρέω: to flow together, 4
φαντάζομαι: appear, seem, become visible 1
φύω: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by nature, 14
χρῶμα, -ατος, τό: color, complexion, 9
ὡσ-αύτως: in the same manner, just so, 4

2 **ὥστε...**: *so as to…*; result clause + inf.
ἕν τι...εἶδος...ποικίλον: neuter object, εἶδος
αὐτῆς: *of it*; i.e. of the earth
3 **ἐν...οὔσῃ τοιαύτῃ**: *on this (earth) being this sort*; pple εἰμί, ταύτῃ refers to earth
ἀνὰ λόγον: *correspondingly, in the same way, in proportion*; acc. of manner
4 **τὰ φυόμενα**: *things growing*
5 **ἀνὰ...λόγον**: *correspondingly, in the same way, in the same proportion*; acc. manner
7 **καλλίω**: καλλίο(ν)α, neuter acc. pl.
ὧν καὶ ...εἶναι...μόρια: *of which in fact… are fragments*; all other neuters modify acc. subj. λιθίδια; i.e. our precious stones are but fragments of theirs
8 **σάρδια...τοιαῦτα**: in apposition to λιθίδια
e1 **ὅ τι οὐ τοιοῦτον**: *which (is) not this sort*
2 **τούτων**: gen. comparison
καλλίω: καλλίο(ν)α, neuter acc. pl.
τούτου: *for this*; subjective gen.
3 **εἰσὶ**: 3p pres. εἰμί
κατεδηδεσμένοι: pf. pass. κατ-εσθίω 110a2
διεφθαρμένοι: pf. pass. διαφθείρω, 110a2
4 **ὑπὸ...**: *because of…*; gen. cause
5 **συνερρυηκότων**: pf. pple συρρέω
λίθοις...ζῴοις...: *to...*; dat. ind. object

καὶ φυτοῖς αἴσχη τε καὶ νόσους παρέχει. τὴν δὲ γῆν αὐτὴν κεκοσμῆσθαι τούτοις τε ἅπασι καὶ ἔτι χρυσῷ τε καὶ ἀργύρῳ καὶ
111 *τοῖς ἄλλοις αὖ τοῖς τοιούτοις. ἐκφανῆ γὰρ αὐτὰ πεφυκέναι, ὄντα πολλὰ πλήθει καὶ μεγάλα καὶ πανταχοῦ τῆς γῆς, ὥστε αὐτὴν ἰδεῖν εἶναι θέαμα εὐδαιμόνων θεατῶν. ζῷα δ᾽ ἐπ᾽ αὐτῇ εἶναι ἄλλα τε πολλὰ καὶ ἀνθρώπους, τοὺς μὲν ἐν*
5 *μεσογαίᾳ οἰκοῦντας, τοὺς δὲ περὶ τὸν ἀέρα ὥσπερ ἡμεῖς περὶ τὴν θάλατταν, τοὺς δ᾽ ἐν νήσοις ἃς περιρρεῖν τὸν ἀέρα πρὸς τῇ ἠπείρῳ οὔσας· καὶ ἑνὶ λόγῳ, ὅπερ ἡμῖν τὸ ὕδωρ τε καὶ ἡ θάλαττά ἐστι πρὸς τὴν ἡμετέραν χρείαν, τοῦτο ἐκεῖ*
b *τὸν ἀέρα, ὃ δὲ ἡμῖν ἀήρ, ἐκείνοις τὸν αἰθέρα. τὰς δὲ ὥρας αὐτοῖς κρᾶσιν ἔχειν τοιαύτην ὥστε ἐκείνους ἀνόσους εἶναι καὶ*

ἀήρ, ἀέρος m.: air, mist 16
αἰθήρ, -έρος ὁ: aether, air, sky, 4
αἴσχος, -εος, τό: ugliness; shame, disgrace, 1
ἄ-νοσος, -ον: without sickness or disease, 1
ἄργυρος, ὁ: silver, 1
ἐκ-φανής, -ές: showing itself, manifest, clear, 1
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
εὐ-δαίμων, -ον: happy, fortunate, blessed, 5
ζῷον, τό: a living being, animal, 6
ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our, 5
ἤπειρος, ἡ: land, mainland,
θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea, 12
θέαμα, -ατος, τό: sight, spectacle, 1
θεατής, ὁ: spectator, one who sees, 1
ἰδέα, ἡ: idea, character; appearance, form, 8
κοσμέω: to order, arrange, adorn, 5
κρᾶσις, -εως, ἡ: mixing, blending, 4
μεσο-γαία, ἡ: inland, interior (land), 1
νῆσος, ἡ: an island, 1
νόσος, ὁ: illness, sickness, 5
οἰκέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 15
παντα-χοῦ: everywhere, in all places, 3
παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16
περι-ρρέω: to flow around, 1
πλῆθος, ἡ: number, multitude; size, crowd, 3
ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water, 14
φυτόν, τό: a plant, tree, 1
φύω: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by nature, 14
χρεία, ἡ: use, advantage, service; need, want 2
χρυσός, ὁ: gold, 1
ὥρα, ἡ: season, time, 3

6 **αἴσχη**: αἴσχε-α, neuter acc. pl.
τὴν δὲ γῆν...κεκοσμῆσθαι: *that the earth itself is adorned…*; in extended ind. disc.
τούτοις ἅπασι..: *by*…; dat. means; ἅπας
111a1 **αὐτὰ πεφυκέναι**: *that they are by nature*…; pf. φύω, is often 'be by nature'
2 **πλήθει**: *in…*; dat. of respect with πολλὰ
ὥστε αὐτὴν ἰδεῖν εἶναι: *so that to look upon it is*…; result clause, αὐτὴν refers to earth
ἐπ(ὶ) αὐτῇ: *upon it*; i.e. upon earth
4 **τοὺς μὲν...τοὺς δὲ...τοὺς δὲ**: *some… others…and others*
7 **πρὸς**: *near*…; dat. place where
οὔσας: pple εἰμί
ἑνὶ λόγῳ : *in a word;* dat. of manner, εἷς
ἡμῖν...ἐστι: *we have*; 'there is to us,' dat. of possession
ἡμῖν...ἐστι *we have, is to us*; dat. possession
8 **τοῦτο (ἐστί)...**: *this (is)*; add linking verb
b1 **ὃ δὲ ἡμῖν...αἰθέρα** *but what (is)…*; dative of reference (point of view); add verbs
2 **αὐτοῖς.**: *for them*; dat. of interest
ὥστε...εἶναι.: *so that…*; result; acc. + inf.

χρόνον τε ζῆν πολὺ πλείω τῶν ἐνθάδε, καὶ ὄψει καὶ ἀκοῇ καὶ φρονήσει καὶ πᾶσι τοῖς τοιούτοις ἡμῶν ἀφεστάναι τῇ αὐτῇ ἀποστάσει ᾗπερ ἀήρ τε ὕδατος ἀφέστηκεν καὶ αἰθὴρ ἀέρος πρὸς καθαρότητα. καὶ δὴ καὶ θεῶν ἄλση τε καὶ ἱερὰ αὐτοῖς εἶναι, ἐν οἷς τῷ ὄντι οἰκητὰς θεοὺς εἶναι, καὶ φήμας τε καὶ μαντείας καὶ αἰσθήσεις τῶν θεῶν καὶ τοιαύτας συνουσίας γίγνεσθαι αὐτοῖς πρὸς αὐτούς· καὶ τόν γε ἥλιον καὶ σελήνην c
καὶ ἄστρα ὁρᾶσθαι ὑπ᾽ αὐτῶν οἷα τυγχάνει ὄντα, καὶ τὴν ἄλλην εὐδαιμονίαν τούτων ἀκόλουθον εἶναι.

καὶ ὅλην μὲν δὴ τὴν γῆν οὕτω πεφυκέναι καὶ τὰ περὶ τὴν γῆν· τόπους δ᾽ ἐν αὐτῇ εἶναι κατὰ τὰ ἔγκοιλα αὐτῆς κύκλῳ περὶ ὅλην πολλούς, τοὺς μὲν βαθυτέρους καὶ ἀνα-

---

ἀήρ, ἀέρος m.: air, mist 16
αἰθήρ, -έρος ὁ: aether, air, sky, 4
αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἀκοή, ἡ: hearing, 1
ἀκολουθέω: to follow, 1
ἄλσος, -εος, τό: grove, sacred grove, 1
ἀναπετάννυμι: to spread out, unfold, 1
ἀπό-στάσις, -εως, ἡ: distance, separation, 1
ἄστρον, τὸ: a star, 5
ἀφ-ίστημι: to stand away from, remove; to make revolt, 3
βαθύς, -εῖα, -ύ: deep, tall, 3
ἔγ-κοιλος, -ον: hollow, sunken, 1
ἐν-θάδε: here, hither, thither, 17
εὐ-δαιμονία, ἡ: happiness, good fortune, 2
ἥλιος, ὁ: the sun, 7
ἱερός, -ή, -όν: holy, divine; temple 2
καθαρότης, ὁ: purity, cleanliness, 1
κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, round, ring, 10
μαντεία, ἡ: oracle, prophecy, 1
οἰκητής, ὁ: inhabitant, dweller, 1
ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 9
πλέων, -ον: more, greater, 17
σελήνη, ἡ: the moon, 2
συν-ουσία, ἡ: association, company, 4
ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water, 14
φήμη, ἡ: utterance or saying (of the gods), 1
φρόνησις, -εως, ἡ: intelligence, wisdom, 15
φύω: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by nature, 14

3 **χρόνον...πολὺ πλείω**: *for…*; acc. duration, πλείο(ν)α is acc. sg
τῶν ἐνθάδε: gen. comparison
ὄψει...τοιούτοις: *in…*; acc. of respect
4 **ἡμῶν**: gen. of separation
ἀφεστάναι τῇ αὐτῇ ἀποστάσει: *that (they) are separated by the same distance*; i.e. are superior in the same way, pf. inf. ἀφ-ίστημι and dat. of degree of difference
5 **ᾗπερ**: *by which (distance)*; dat., degree
ὕδατος, ἀέρος: *from…* gen. of separation
ἀφέστηκεν: *is separated*; pf. ἀφ-ίστημι
6 **πρὸς...**: *in regard to…*
καὶ δὴ καὶ: *especially*; 'and indeed also'
αὐτοῖς εἶναι: *they have*; dat. of possession
7 **τῷ ὄντι**: *really, actually*; pple as adv.
c1 **αὐτοῖς**: dat. of interest, the inhabitants
πρὸς αὐτούς: *to them*; i.e. to the gods
καὶ...γε...καὶ...καὶ: *yes, and…and…and*
τυγχάνει ὄντα: *theyhappen to (really) be*
3 **ἀκόλουθον**: *the following*; predicate
4 **μὲν δὴ**: *certainly in fact*; S 2900
πεφυκέναι: *are by nature thus*; pf. φύω
τὰ περὶ...γῆν: *things around the earth*
5 **κατὰ...**: *in…*; 'over' distributive sense
6 **κύκλῳ...**: *in a circle round the whole*
τοὺς μὲν...: *some (are)…*; add verb
ἀνα-πεπταμένους: pf. pass. pple, i.e. wider

πεπταμένους μᾶλλον ἢ ἐν ᾧ ἡμεῖς οἰκοῦμεν, τοὺς δὲ βαθυ-
τέρους ὄντας τὸ χάσμα αὐτοὺς ἔλαττον ἔχειν τοῦ παρ᾽ ἡμῖν
d τόπου, ἔστι δ᾽ οὓς καὶ βραχυτέρους τῷ βάθει τοῦ ἐνθάδε
εἶναι καὶ πλατυτέρους. τούτους δὲ πάντας ὑπὸ γῆν εἰς
ἀλλήλους συντετρῆσθαί τε πολλαχῇ καὶ κατὰ στενότερα καὶ
εὐρύτερα καὶ διεξόδους ἔχειν, ᾗ πολὺ μὲν ὕδωρ ῥεῖν ἐξ
5 ἀλλήλων εἰς ἀλλήλους ὥσπερ εἰς κρατῆρας, καὶ ἀενάων
ποταμῶν ἀμήχανα μεγέθη ὑπὸ τὴν γῆν καὶ θερμῶν ὑδάτων
καὶ ψυχρῶν, πολὺ δὲ πῦρ καὶ πυρὸς μεγάλους ποταμούς,
πολλοὺς δὲ ὑγροῦ πηλοῦ καὶ καθαρωτέρου καὶ βορβορωδε-
e στέρου, ὥσπερ ἐν Σικελίᾳ οἱ πρὸ τοῦ ῥύακος πηλοῦ ῥέοντες
ποταμοὶ καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ ῥύαξ· ὧν δὴ καὶ ἑκάστους τοὺς τόπους

ἀ-μήχανος, -ον: impossible, inconceivable, 5
ἀέ-ναος, -ον: ever-flowing, 1
βαθύς, -εῖα, -ύ: deep, tall, 3
βάθος, βάθεος, τό: depth, 1
βορβορ-ώδης, -ες: muddy, miry, filthy
βραχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: short, shallow, 3
δι-εξ-όδος, ἡ: outlet; passage, passageway, 1
ἐν-θάδε: here, hither, thither, 17
εὐρύς, -εῖα, -ύ: wide, broad, 1
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm; subst. heat, 11
κρατήρ, -ῆρος, ἡ: mixed bowl; hollow, 1
μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size, magnitude, length, 17
οἰκέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 15
πηλός, ὁ: mud, clay, earth, 4
πλατύς, -εία, -ύ: wide, broad, flat, 3
πολλα-χῇ: in many places; many times, 1
ποταμός, ὁ: river, stream 8
πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 13
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 14
ῥέω: to flow, run, stream, 10
ῥύαξ, ῥύακος, ὁ: lava flow, rushing stream, 3
Σικελία, ἡ: Sicily, 1
στενός, -ή, -όν: narrow, 1
συν-τετραίνω: to join by channels, 1
ὑγρός, -ά, -όν: moist, wet, 4
ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water, 14
χάσμα, -ατος, τό: chasm, hollow, gulf 3
ψυχρός, -ά, -όν: cold, chill, frigid, 10

6 **τοὺς δὲ...ὄντας**: *others being*…; pple εἰμί
7 **τὸ χάσμα...ἔλαττον**: in contrast to ἀναπεπταμένους above
αὐτοὺς: *themselves*; intensive with τοὺς δὲ
τοῦ παρ(ὰ) ἡμὶν: *than the place where we live*; gen. of comparison; παρὰ is similar to *apud* or *chez*, see 109d4, 110a7, 110a8
d1 **ἔστι δ᾽οὓς**: *and there are (those) whom*; or just 'some,' a common idiom (S 2514)
τῷ βάθει: *in*…; dat. of respect
τοῦ ἐνθάδε: *than*…; gen. comparison
2 **ὑπὸ γῆν**: *beneath*…; acc. place to which
3 **συντετρῆσθαι**: pf. pass. συντέτραινω
καὶ κατὰ...καῖ κατὰ...: *both through and through*…; i.e. channels
4 **ᾗ**: *where*; or 'by which way,' relative adv.
6 **καὶ θερμῶν...καὶ**: *both of...and of*…; gen. of quality (or material) with ποταμῶν
8 **πολλοὺς (ποταμοὺς)**: *and many (rivers)…*
καὶ...καὶ...: *both…and*; i.e. some rivers had purer mud and others were muddier
e1 **πρὸ τοῦ ῥυάκος**: *before the lava flow*
πηλοῦ: gen. of quality with οἱ...ποταμοὶ
2 **ὧν δὴ...τόπους πληροῦσθαι**: *of which very things (i.e. water, fire, mud) in fact each region are filled*; relative pronoun is a partitive gen. of the passsive infinitive πληροῦσθαι

πληροῦσθαι, ὡς ἂν ἑκάστοις τύχῃ ἑκάστοτε ἡ περιρροὴ γιγνομένη. ταῦτα δὲ πάντα κινεῖν ἄνω καὶ κάτω ὥσπερ αἰώραν τινὰ ἐνοῦσαν ἐν τῇ γῇ· ἔστι δὲ ἄρα αὕτη ἡ αἰώρα διὰ φύσιν τοιάνδε τινά. ἕν τι τῶν χασμάτων τῆς γῆς ἄλλως τε μέγιστον τυγχάνει ὂν καὶ διαμπερὲς τετρημένον δι' ὅλης τῆς 112
γῆς, τοῦτο ὅπερ Ὅμηρος εἶπε, λέγων αὐτό

"τῆλε μάλ', ᾗχι βάθιστον ὑπὸ χθονός ἐστι βέρεθρον·

ὃ καὶ ἄλλοθι καὶ ἐκεῖνος καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῶν ποιητῶν Τάρταρον κεκλήκασιν. εἰς γὰρ τοῦτο τὸ χάσμα συρρέουσί τε 5
πάντες οἱ ποταμοὶ καὶ ἐκ τούτου πάλιν ἐκρέουσιν· γίγνονται δὲ ἕκαστοι τοιοῦτοι δι' οἵας ἂν καὶ τῆς γῆς ῥέωσιν. ἡ δὲ αἰτία ἐστὶν τοῦ ἐκρεῖν τε ἐντεῦθεν καὶ εἰσρεῖν πάντα τὰ b
ῥεύματα, ὅτι πυθμένα οὐκ ἔχει οὐδὲ βάσιν τὸ ὑγρὸν τοῦτο.

αἰώρα, ἡ: swing, halter, oscillation, 2
ἄλλο-θι: in another place, elsewhere, 7
ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 14
ἄνω: up, above, 6
βαθύς, -εῖα, -ύ: deep, tall, 3
βάσις, ἡ: bottom, foundation; pedestal, 1
βέρεθρον, τό: pit, gulf, 1
δι-αμπερές: right through; continuously, 1
εἰσ-ρέω: to stream into, flow in, 4
ἐκ-ρέω: to flow out, 2
ἑκάστ-οτε: on each occasion, each time, 4
ἔν-ειμι: to be in or within, 8
ἐντεῦθεν: from here, from there, 3
ᾗ-χι: where, whither, 1
κάτω: downwards, below, beneath, 6
κινέω: to set in motion, move, 3
μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 10
μέγιστος, -η, -ον: very big, greatest, 6
ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 9
Ὅμηρος, ὁ: Homer, 3
περι-ρροή, ἡ: a circling stream, 1
πληρόω: to fill, fill up of (gen.) 4
ποιητής, οῦ, ὁ: maker, creator, poet, 6
ποταμός, ὁ: river, stream 8
πυθμήν, -ένος ὁ: bottom, base, 2
ῥεῦμα, -ατος, τό: stream, current, 5
ῥέω: to flow, run, stream, 10
συρ-ρέω: to flow together, 4
Τάρταρος, ὁ: Tartarus, 7
τετραίνω: to bore or pierce through, 1
τῆλε: at a distance, far off, 1
τύχη, ἡ: chance, luck, fortune, 5
ὑγρός, -ά, -όν: liquid, moist, wet, 4
φύσις, -εως, ἡ: nature, character; form, 11
χάσμα, -ατος, τό: chasm, hollow, gulf 3
χθών, χθονός, ἡ: earth, ground, 1

3 **ὡς ἂν...γιγνομένη**: *as the circling stream happens to come to each on each occasion*
4 **ὥσπερ αἰώραν**: *as if some oscillation…*; αἰώραν denotes a swinging rope but here the activity itself: oscillation or fluctuation
5 **διὰ**: *according to…*; 'on account of…'
6 **ἄλλως τε...καὶ...τετρημένον**: *both in other respects* and *(by) being bored…*; pf. pass.
112a1 **τυγχάνει ὄν**: pple. εἰμί, see p. 20
3 **τῆλε...βέρεθρον**: *Iliad* 8.14
βάθιστον: superlative adj. βαθύς
4 **ὃ καὶ ἄλλοθι**: *which in fact elsewhere*; i.e. in other poetry; καὶ is adverbial
5 **κεκλήκασιν**: pf. καλέω with a double acc.
7 **τοιοῦτοι δι(ὰ) οἵας...**: *the sort through whatever sort of earth they actually flow*; i.e. they assume the qualities of the earth,
b1 **τοῦ ἐκρεῖν...εἰσρεῖν**: *of….both flowing out and flowing in*; ῥεύματα is acc. subject
2 **τὸ ὑγρὸν τοῦτο**: *this liquid matter*; subj.

αἰωρεῖται δὴ καὶ κυμαίνει ἄνω καὶ κάτω, καὶ ὁ ἀὴρ καὶ τὸ πνεῦμα τὸ περὶ αὐτὸ ταὐτὸν ποιεῖ· συνέπεται γὰρ αὐτῷ καὶ
5 *ὅταν εἰς τὸ ἐπ᾽ ἐκεῖνα τῆς γῆς ὁρμήσῃ καὶ ὅταν εἰς τὸ ἐπὶ τάδε, καὶ ὥσπερ τῶν ἀναπνεόντων ἀεὶ ἐκπνεῖ τε καὶ ἀναπνεῖ ῥέον τὸ πνεῦμα, οὕτω καὶ ἐκεῖ συναιωρούμενον τῷ ὑγρῷ τὸ πνεῦμα δεινούς τινας ἀνέμους καὶ ἀμηχάνους παρέχεται καὶ*
c *εἰσιὸν καὶ ἐξιόν. ὅταν τε οὖν ὑποχωρήσῃ τὸ ὕδωρ εἰς τὸν τόπον τὸν δὴ κάτω καλούμενον, τοῖς κατ᾽ ἐκεῖνα τὰ ῥεύματα διὰ τῆς γῆς εἰσρεῖ τε καὶ πληροῖ αὐτὰ ὥσπερ οἱ ἐπαντλοῦντες· ὅταν τε αὖ ἐκεῖθεν μὲν ἀπολίπῃ, δεῦρο δὲ ὁρμήσῃ,*
5 *τὰ ἐνθάδε πληροῖ αὖθις, τὰ δὲ πληρωθέντα ῥεῖ διὰ τῶν ὀχετῶν καὶ διὰ τῆς γῆς, καὶ εἰς τοὺς τόπους ἕκαστα ἀφικνούμενα, εἰς οὓς ἑκάστοις ὠδοποίηται, θαλάττας τε καὶ λίμνας*

ἀήρ, ἀέρος m.: air, mist 16
αἰωρέω: to oscillate; hang, swing up, raise, 2
ἀ-μήχανος, -ον: impossible, inconceivable, 5
ἀνα-πνέω: draw breath, breathe in, recover, 2
ἄνεμος, -ου, ὁ: wind, 4
ἄνω: up, above, 6
ἀπο-λείπω: leave behind, abandon, forsake, 7
αὖθις: back again, later, 9
δεινός, -ή, -όν: terrible; wondrous, clever, 6
δεῦρο: here, to this point, hither, 7
εἰσ-έρχομαι: to go in, enter, 6
εἰσ-ρέω: to stream into, flow in, 4
ἐκεῖ-θεν: thence, from that place, 3
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
ἐκ-πνέω: to breathe out, 1
ἐν-θάδε: here, hither, thither, 17
ἐξ-έρχομαι: to go out, come out, 5
ἐπαντλέω: to pump or pour over, irrigate, 2
θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea, 12
κάτω: downwards, below, beneath, 6
κυμαίνω: rise in waves, swell, 1
λίμνη, ἡ: a lake, 8
ὁρμάω: to set in motion; move, begin, 5
ὀχετός, ὁ: water channel or conduit, 1
παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16
πληρόω: to fill, 4
πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: breath, wind, blast, 5
ῥεῦμα, -ατος, τό: stream, current, 5
ῥέω: to flow, run, stream, 10
συν-αιωρέομαι: oscillate or swing with, 1
συν-έπομαι: follow along with (dat.) 1
ὑγρός, -ά, -όν: liquid, moist, wet, 4
ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water, 14
ὑπο-χωρέω: to go back, retire, withdraw, 1
ὠδο-ποιέω: to make passable, make a way, 1

3 **δὴ**: *accordingly*; 'then,' resumptive, S 2846
4 **τὸ περὶ αὐτο**: i.e. ὑγρόν, modifies πνεῦμα
ταὐτὸν ποιεῖ: *do the same*; plural subject
αὐτῷ: *it*; the liquid, τὸ ὑγρόν
5 **ὁρμήσῃ**: *it moves*; ἄν + aor. subj. ὁρμάω
εἰς τὸ..εἰς τὸ ἐπὶ...: *to that (part) of the earth over there and to that (part) over here*
6 **τῶν ἀναπνεόντων**: *of those breathing in*
7 **ῥέον**: neuter pple
8 **καὶ εἰσιὸν καὶ ἐξιόν**: *both…and…*; neut. pple
c1 **ὅταν...ὑποχωρήσῃ**: *whenever…*; ἄν + 3s aor. subj., indefinite temporal
2 **τὸν...κάτω καλούμενον**: *called 'the lower'*
τοῖς κατὰ ἐκεῖνα τὰ ῥεύματα εἰσρεῖ: *it flows through the earth into those (parts) in the streams there*; dat. of compound verb, compare l. 5 above
5 **τὰ ἐνθάδε (ῥεύματα)**: *streams here*; see c2
7 **εἰς οὓς...ὠδοποίηται** *into which it is made passable for each river*; antecedent τόπους

καὶ ποταμοὺς καὶ κρήνας ποιεῖ· ἐντεῦθεν δὲ πάλιν δυόμενα κατὰ τῆς γῆς, τὰ μὲν μακροτέρους τόπους περιελθόντα καὶ **d**
πλείους, τὰ δὲ ἐλάττους καὶ βραχυτέρους, πάλιν εἰς τὸν Τάρταρον ἐμβάλλει, τὰ μὲν πολὺ κατωτέρω ⟨ἢ⟩ ᾗ ἐπηντλεῖτο, τὰ δὲ ὀλίγον· πάντα δὲ ὑποκάτω εἰσρεῖ τῆς ἐκροῆς, καὶ ἔνια μὲν καταντικρὺ ⟨ἢ⟩ ᾗ εἰσρεῖ ἐξέπεσεν, ἔνια δὲ 5
κατὰ τὸ αὐτὸ μέρος· ἔστι δὲ ἃ παντάπασιν κύκλῳ περιελθόντα, ἢ ἅπαξ ἢ καὶ πλεονάκις περιελιχθέντα περὶ τὴν γῆν ὥσπερ οἱ ὄφεις, εἰς τὸ δυνατὸν κάτω καθέντα πάλιν ἐμβάλλει. δυνατὸν δέ ἐστιν ἑκατέρωσε μέχρι τοῦ μέσου καθιέναι, πέρα **e**
δ᾽ οὔ· ἄναντες γὰρ ἀμφοτέροις τοῖς ῥεύμασι τὸ ἑκατέρωθεν γίγνεται μέρος.

ἀμφότερος, -α, -ον: each of two, both, 5
ἀν-άντης, -ες: sloping, up-hill, steep, 1
ἅπαξ: once, once only, once for all, 2
βραχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: short, 3
δυνατός, -ή, -όν: capable, strong, possible, 8
δύω: enter, make sink, sink, plunge, 3
εἰσ-ρέω: to stream into, flow in, 4
ἑκατέρω-θεν: from each side or both sides, 1
ἑκατέρω-σε: on each side, to each side, 1
ἐκ-πίπτω: to fall out, be driven out, 3
ἐκ-ροή, ἡ: an outflow, exit, 1
ἐμ-βάλλω: throw in, put in; attack, 5
ἔνιοι, -αι, -α: some, 7
ἐντεῦθεν: from here, from there, 3
ἐπαντλέω: to pour over, pump upon, 2
καθ-ίημι: to rush down, let or send down, 3
καταντικρύ: right opposite, opposite, 4
κάτω: downwards, below, beneath, 6
κατωτέρω: lower, further, downwards, 2
κρήνη, ἡ: spring, fountain, 1
κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, round, ring, 10
μακρός, ά, όν: long, far, distant, large, 4
μέρος, -έος, τό: a part, share, portion, 4
μέσος, - η, -ον: middle, in the middle of, 8
μέχρι: up to; until, as long as (+ gen.), 5
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small, 15
ὄφις, ὄφεως, ὁ: serpent, snake, 1
παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15
πέρα: further, beyond, 1
περι-ελίττω: to wind, roll around, 4
περι-έρχομαι: to go around, 6
πλεονάκις: more often or frequently, 1
πλέων, -ον: more, greater, 17
ποταμός, ὁ: river, stream 8
ῥεῦμα, -ατος, τό: stream, current, 5
Τάρταρος, ὁ: Tartarus, 7
ὑπο-κάτω: below, under (+ gen.), 1

8 **δυόμενα**: supply τὰ ῥεύματα
κατὰ...: *below…*
d1 **τὰ μὲν (ῥεύματα)...τὰ δὲ**: *some…others…*
2 **πλείους, ἐλάττους**: πλείο(ν)ες, ἐλάττονες
3 **τὰ μὲν (ῥεύματα) πολύ...τὰ δὲ**: *some much below where they were pumped up and others a little (below)*; πολύ, ὀλίγον are acc. of extent by degree; ᾗ is a relative adv.
5 **ἔνια μὲν...ἔνια δὲ**: *some streams …others*
ᾗ εἰσρεῖ: *right opposite where*; relative adv.
ἐξέπεσεν: aor. ἐκπίπτω
6 **κατὰ τὸ αὐτὸ μέρος**: *over the same side*
ἔστι δὲ ἃ...: *there are (those) which*; S 2513
7 **περιελιχθέντα**: aor. pass. pple. περιελίττω
8 **εἰς τὸ δυνατὸν καθέντα**: *rushing below as far as possible*; aor. pple καθίημι
e1 **δυνατὸν ἐστιν**: *and it is possible…*
καθιέναι: *to rush down*; inf. καθίημι
2 **ἄναντες...μέρος**: *for a steep part rises from each side (of the earth) for both streams*

τὰ μὲν οὖν δὴ ἄλλα πολλά τε καὶ μεγάλα καὶ παντοδαπὰ
ῥεύματά ἐστι· τυγχάνει δ᾽ ἄρα ὄντα ἐν τούτοις τοῖς πολλοῖς
τέτταρ᾽ ἄττα ῥεύματα, ὧν τὸ μὲν μέγιστον καὶ ἐξωτάτω ῥέον
περὶ κύκλῳ ὁ καλούμενος Ὠκεανός ἐστιν, τούτου δὲ καταν-
τικρὺ καὶ ἐναντίως ῥέων Ἀχέρων, ὃς δι᾽ ἐρήμων τε τόπων
ῥεῖ ἄλλων καὶ δὴ καὶ ὑπὸ γῆν ῥέων εἰς τὴν λίμνην ἀφικνεῖται
τὴν Ἀχερουσιάδα, οὗ αἱ τῶν τετελευτηκότων ψυχαὶ τῶν
πολλῶν ἀφικνοῦνται καί τινας εἱμαρμένους χρόνους μείνασαι,
αἱ μὲν μακροτέρους, αἱ δὲ βραχυτέρους, πάλιν ἐκπέμπονται
εἰς τὰς τῶν ζῴων γενέσεις. τρίτος δὲ ποταμὸς τούτων κατὰ
μέσον ἐκβάλλει, καὶ ἐγγὺς τῆς ἐκβολῆς ἐκπίπτει εἰς τόπον

Ἀχερουσιάς, -άδος: Acherusian (fem. adj.), 4
Ἀχέρων, Ἀχέροντος ὁ: Acheron (river), 2
βραχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: short, 3
γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: coming-to-be, generation, 16
ἐγγύς: near (+ gen.); adv. nearby, 5
εἱμαρμένος, -η, -ον: destined, allotted, 3
ἐκ-βάλλω: to throw out of, cast away, 2
ἐκ-βολή, ἡ: outlet; issue, ejection, 1
ἐκ-πέμπω: to send out, 1
ἐκ-πίπτω: to fall out, be driven out, 3
ἐξωτάτω: outermost (superlative of **ἔξω**), 1
ἔρημος, -ον: alone, desolate, bereft of (gen) 2
ζῷον, τό: a living being, animal, 6
καταντικρύ: right opposite, 4
κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, round, ring, 10
λίμνη, ἡ: a lake, 8
μακρός, ά, όν: long, far, distant, large, 4
μένω: to stay, remain, 8
μέσος, - η, -ον: middle, in the middle of, 8
παντο-δαπός, -ή, -όν: of every kind or sort, 3
ποταμός, ὁ: river, stream 8
ῥεῦμα, -ατος, τό: stream, current, 5
ῥέω: to flow, run, stream, 10
τέτταρες, -α: four, 2
τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third, 1
Ὠκεανός, ὁ: Oceanus, 1

4 **μὲν οὖν δὴ**: *certainly then*; resumptive use of οὖν δὴ (GP 470), μέν corresponds to δέ
5 **τύγχανει**: pple εἰμί, see p. 20
ἄττα: *some*; alternate to indefinite τινά
6 **ῥέον**: neut. sg. pple
7 **περὶ κύκλῳ**: *around in a circle*
καλούμενος: *what is called*; or 'so-named'
τούτου δ(ὲ) καταντικρὺ: *opposite this*
ἐναντίως: i.e. in the opposite direction
113a1 **καὶ δὴ καὶ**: *especially, in particular*; 'and indeed also'
ὑπὸ: *beneath…*; acc. place to which
τὴν Ἀχερουσιάδα: modifying ἡ λίμνη
2 **οὗ**: *where*; a relative adverb
τῶν τετελευτηκότων: pf. pple τελευτάω (*die*) modified by πολλῶν
3 **τινας...χρόνους**: *for…*; acc. of duration
μείνασαι: aor. pple μένω
4 **αἱ μὲν...αἱ δὲ**: *some (souls)…other (souls)…*
μακροτέρους (χρόνους): *for…*; duration
5 **τούτων...μέσον**: *in the middle of these*

μέγαν πυρὶ πολλῷ καόμενον, καὶ λίμνην ποιεῖ μείζω τῆς παρ᾽ ἡμῖν θαλάττης, ζέουσαν ὕδατος καὶ πηλοῦ· ἐντεῦθεν δὲ χωρεῖ κύκλῳ θολεροὺς καὶ πηλώδης, περιελιττόμενος δὲ τῇ γῇ ἄλλοσέ τε ἀφικνεῖται καὶ παρ᾽ ἔσχατα τῆς Ἀχερουσιάδος λίμνης, οὐ συμμειγνύμενος τῷ ὕδατι· περιελιχθεὶς δὲ πολλάκις ὑπὸ γῆς ἐμβάλλει κατωτέρω τοῦ Ταρτάρου· οὗτος δ᾽ ἐστὶν ὃν ἐπονομάζουσιν Πυριφλεγέθοντα, οὗ καὶ οἱ ῥύακες ἀποσπάσματα ἀναφυσῶσιν ὅπῃ ἂν τύχωσι τῆς γῆς. τούτου δὲ αὖ καταντικρὺ ὁ τέταρτος ἐκπίπτει εἰς τόπον πρῶτον δεινόν τε καὶ ἄγριον, ὡς λέγεται, χρῶμα δ᾽ ἔχοντα ὅλον οἷον ὁ κυανός, ὃν δὴ ἐπονομάζουσι Στύγιον, καὶ τὴν λίμνην ἣν ποιεῖ ὁ ποταμὸς ἐμβάλλων, Στύγα· ὁ δ᾽ ἐμπεσὼν ἐνταῦθα

ἄγριος, -α, -ον: wild, fierce, 2
ἄλλο-σε: to another place, to elsewhere, 2
ἀνα-φυσάω: to blow up, spout up, 1
ἀπό-σπασμα, ατος, τό: torn-off piece, shred 1
Ἀχερουσιάς, -άδος: Acherusian (fem. adj.), 4
δεινός, -ή, -όν: terrible; wondrous, clever, 6
ἐκ-πίπτω: to fall out, be driven out, 3
ἐμ-βάλλω: throw in, put in; attack, 5
ἐμ-πίπτω: to fall in, fall upon; attack, 3
ἐνταῦθα: here, hither, there, thither, then, 5
ἐντεῦθεν: from here, from there, 3
ἐπ-ονομάζω: to name after, 3
ζέω: to boil up with, seethe with (gen.) 1
θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea, 12
θολερός, -ά, -όν: turbid (of water), muddy, 1
κάω (καίω): kindle, set on fire, burn, 2
καταντικρύ: right opposite, 4
κατωτέρω: lower, further, downwards, 2
κύανος, -η, -ον: dark-blue; *noun* lapis lazuli, 1
κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, round, ring, 10
λίμνη, ἡ: a lake, 8
ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 9
ὅπῃ: where; in what way, how, 11
περι-ελίττω: to wind, roll around, 4
πηλός, ὁ: mud, clay, earth, 4
πηλώδης, -ες: of clay, muddy with clay, 1
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14
ποταμός, ὁ: river, stream 8
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 14
Πυριφλεγέθων, -οντος, ὁ: Pyriphlegethon, 4
ῥύαξ, ῥύακος, ὁ: rushing stream, torrent, 3
Στύγιος, -η, -ον: Stygian, of Styx, 1
Στύξ, Στύγος ἡ: Styx (river), 1
συμ-μίγνυμι: mix with, commingle with 1
Τάρταρος, ὁ: Tartarus, 7
τέταρτος, -η, -ον: fourth, 1
ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water, 14
χρῶμα, -ατος, τό: color, complexion, 9
χωρέω: to go, come; have room for, 4

7 **μείζω**: μείζο(ν)α, acc. sg.
τῆς θαλάττης: *than*…; gen. comparison
παρ(ὰ) ἡμῖν: *where we live*; i.e. the Mediterranean sea; see 109d4 and 110a7-8
b1 **κύκλῳ**: *in a circle*; dat. of manner
τῇ γῇ: *around in the earth*; dat. compound
2 **παρὰ ἔσχατα**: *to*…; place to which
συμμειγνύμενος: mid. συμ-μίγνυμι
3 **περιελιχθεὶς**: aor. pass. pple περι-ελίττω
4 **κατωτέρω τοῦ Ταρτάρου**: *lower down in Tartarus*; partitive gen., not comparison
5 **οὗ καὶ**: *whose…in fact*; καί is adverbial
ἀποσπάσματα: *fragments (of it)*; acc. pl.
6 **τύχωσι**: *they happen* (*to sprout up*)
τούτου: with κατατικρύ
8 **οἷον ὁ κυανός (ἔχει)**: *which sort*…
c2 **ἐμπεσὼν**: aor. pple ἐμπίπτω

καὶ δεινὰς δυνάμεις λαβὼν ἐν τῷ ὕδατι, δὺς κατὰ τῆς γῆς, περιελιττόμενος χωρεῖ ἐναντίος τῷ Πυριφλεγέθοντι καὶ ἀπαντᾷ ἐν τῇ Ἀχερουσιάδι λίμνῃ ἐξ ἐναντίας· καὶ οὐδὲ τὸ τούτου ὕδωρ οὐδενὶ μείγνυται, ἀλλὰ καὶ οὗτος κύκλῳ περιελθὼν ἐμβάλλει εἰς τὸν Τάρταρον ἐναντίος τῷ Πυριφλεγέθοντι· ὄνομα δὲ τούτῳ ἐστίν, ὡς οἱ ποιηταὶ λέγουσιν, Κωκυτός.

d τούτων δὲ οὕτως πεφυκότων, ἐπειδὰν ἀφίκωνται οἱ τετελευτηκότες εἰς τὸν τόπον οἷ ὁ δαίμων ἕκαστον κομίζει, πρῶτον μὲν διεδικάσαντο οἵ τε καλῶς καὶ ὁσίως βιώσαντες καὶ οἱ μή. καὶ οἳ μὲν ἂν δόξωσι μέσως βεβιωκέναι, πορευθέντες ἐπὶ τὸν Ἀχέροντα, ἀναβάντες ἃ δὴ αὐτοῖς ὀχήματά ἐστιν, ἐπὶ τούτων ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὴν λίμνην, καὶ ἐκεῖ

ἀνα-βαίνω: to go up, climb, mount, 1
ἀπ-αντάω: to meet, encounter, 1
Ἀχερουσιάς, -άδος: Acherusian (fem. adj.), 4
Ἀχέρων, Ἀχέροντος ὁ: Acheron (river), 2
βιόω: to live, 4
δαίμων, -ονος, ὁ: a divine being or spirit, 3
δεινός, -ή, -όν: terrible; wondrous, clever, 6
δια-δικάζω: give judgment, submit for trial, 2
δύναμις, -εως, ἡ: power, wealth, strength, 3
δύω: enter, make sink, sink, plunge, 3
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
ἐμ-βάλλω: throw in, put in; attack, 5
καλῶς: well; beautifully, 11
κομίζω: to carry, convey; travel, journey, 2
κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, round, ring, 10
Κωκυτός, ὁ: Cocytus, 2
λίμνη, ἡ: a lake, 8
μέσως: moderately, in a middle way, 1
μίγνυμι: to mix, mix up, mingle, 1
ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: name, 7
ὅσιος, -α, -ον: hallowed, sacred, ordained, 4
ὀχῆμα, -ατος, τό: vehicle, raft, 2
περι-ελίττω: to roll, roll around, 4
περι-έρχομαι: to go around, 6
ποιητής, οῦ, ὁ: maker, creator, poet, 6
πορεύομαι: to travel, journey, march, 7
Πυριφλεγέθων, -οντος, ὁ: Pyriphlegethon, 4
Τάρταρος, ὁ: Tartarus, 7
τελευτάω: to end, complete, finish; die, 31
ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water, 14
φύω: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by nature, 14
χωρέω: to go, come; have room for, 4

3 **λάβων**: nom. sg. aor. pple. λαμβάνω
δὺς: nom. sg. aor. pple δύω
4 **ἐναντίος**: i.e. in an opposite direction
5 **ἀπαντᾷ**: *meets (the Pyriphlegethon)*
ἐξ ἐναντίας: *from the opposite (direction)*
6 **οὐδενὶ**: *with any other (river)*; dat. of association (S 1523)
ἀλλὰ καὶ: *but also*
8 **ὄνομα...τούτῳ**: *the name of this (river)*; dat. of possession
ὡς...: *as…*
d1 **τούτων...πεφυκότων**: gen. abs., pf. pple φύω, the pf is translated 'be by nature'
ἀφίκωνται: aor. subj. in an indefinite relative clause
τετελευτηκότες: pf. pple τελευτάω (die)
2 **οἷ**: *to where*; relative adverb
3 **διεδικάσαντο**: *offer themselves for judgment*; aor. mid.
καλῶς: *well*
4 **οἱ μή (καλῶς...βιώσαντες)**: add pple
καὶ οἳ μὲν: *those who…*; answered in 113e1
ἂν δόξωσι: *they seem*; aor. subj. δοκέω
βεβιωκέναι: pf. inf. βιόω
πορευθέντες: aor. deponent pple
6 **ἐπὶ τούτων**: *upon these (rafts)*

οἰκοῦσί τε καὶ καθαιρόμενοι τῶν τε ἀδικημάτων διδόντες δίκας ἀπολύονται, εἴ τίς τι ἠδίκηκεν, τῶν τε εὐεργεσιῶν τιμὰς φέρονται κατὰ τὴν ἀξίαν ἕκαστος· οἱ δ' ἂν δόξωσιν **e** ἀνιάτως ἔχειν διὰ τὰ μεγέθη τῶν ἁμαρτημάτων, ἢ ἱεροσυλίας πολλὰς καὶ μεγάλας ἢ φόνους ἀδίκους καὶ παρανόμους πολλοὺς ἐξειργασμένοι ἢ ἄλλα ὅσα τοιαῦτα τυγχάνει ὄντα, τούτους δὲ ἡ προσήκουσα μοῖρα ῥίπτει εἰς τὸν Τάρταρον, 5 ὅθεν οὔποτε ἐκβαίνουσιν. οἱ δ' ἂν ἰάσιμα μὲν μεγάλα δὲ δόξωσιν ἡμαρτηκέναι ἁμαρτήματα, οἷον πρὸς πατέρα ἢ μητέρα ὑπ' ὀργῆς βίαιόν τι πράξαντες, καὶ μεταμέλον αὐτοῖς **114** τὸν ἄλλον βίον βιῶσιν, ἢ ἀνδροφόνοι τοιούτῳ τινὶ ἄλλῳ τρόπῳ γένωνται, τούτους δὲ ἐμπεσεῖν μὲν εἰς τὸν Τάρταρον

ἀ-δικέω: to be unjust, do wrong, injure, 3
ἀ-δίκημα, -ατος, τό: injustice, wrongdoing, 1
ἄ-δικος, -ον: unrighteous, unjust, 6
ἁμαρτάνω: miss the mark, fail, do wrong, 1
ἁμάρτημα, -ατος, τό: wrong, failure, fault, 2
ἀνδρο-φόνος, -ον: man-slaying; homicide, 2
ἀν-ίατος, -ον: incurable, incorrigible, 1
ἄξιος, -α, -ον: worthy of, deserving of, 15
ἀπο-λύω: to loosen up or from, release, 2
βίαιος, -α, -ον: forcible, violent, 1
βιόω: to live, 4
δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 15
δίκη, ἡ: justice; lawsuit, trial; penalty, 11
ἐκ-βαίνω: to step out, disembark, 5
ἐμ-πίπτω: to fall in, fall upon; attack, 3
ἐξ-εργάζομαι: accomplish, achieve, commit 1
εὐ-εργεσία, ἡ: good deed, kindness, 1
ἰάσιμος, -ον: curable, 1
ἱερό-συλια, ἡ, ὁ: temple-robbery, sacrilege, 1
καθ-αιρω: to cleanse, purify, 4
μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size, magnitude, height, 17
μετά-μελος, -ον: repenting for (+ dat), 1
μήτηρ, ἡ: a mother, 1
μοῖρα, ἡ: due measure, portion, one's lot, 2
ὅ-θεν: from where, from which, 4
οἰκέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 15
ὀργή, ἡ: anger; temperment, passion, 2
οὔ-ποτε: never, 1
παρα-νόμος, -ον: lawless, contrary to law, 1
πατήρ, ὁ: a father, 3
πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12
προσ-ήκει: it belongs, it is fitting, befits 15
τιμή, ἡ: honor; state offices, 1
τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17
φόνος, ὁ: murder, slaughter, 2

7 **καθαιρόμενοι**: passive pple
τῶν ἀδικημάτων: *from*…; gen. separation
τε...τε...: *both…and*
διδόντες δίκας: *paying the penalities*; idiom
8 **ἠδίκηκεν**: pf., τι is an inner acc.
e1 **φέρονται**: *they carry off*; mid. i.e. gain
κατὰ τὴν ἀξίαν ἕκαστος: *each according to merit*; sg. though verb is plural
οἱ δ(ὲ): *but others who*; in reply to 113d4
2 **ἀνιάτως ἔχειν**: ἔχω + adv., see p. 7
4 **ἐξειργασμένοι**: pf. mid. ἐξ-εργάζομαι
τυγχάνει: pple εἰμί; see p. 20
5 **τούτους**: i.e these bad souls
οἱ δ(ὲ): *but others who*; in reply to 113d4,e1
7 **ἡμαρτηκέναι ἁμαρτήματα**: *to have committed wrongs*; pf. inf. and cognate acc.
οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to such'
πρὸς...: *against*
114a1 **ὑπ(ὸ)**: gen. of cause
2 **τοιούτῳ...τρόπῳ**: *in*…; dat. of manner
3 **τούτους**: i.e these souls
ἐμπεσεῖν: aor. inf. ἐμπίπτω

ἀνάγκη, ἐμπεσόντας δὲ αὐτοὺς καὶ ἐνιαυτὸν ἐκεῖ γενομένους
ἐκβάλλει τὸ κῦμα, τοὺς μὲν ἀνδροφόνους κατὰ τὸν Κωκυτόν,
τοὺς δὲ πατραλοίας καὶ μητραλοίας κατὰ τὸν Πυριφλεγ-
έθοντα· ἐπειδὰν δὲ φερόμενοι γένωνται κατὰ τὴν λίμνην τὴν
Ἀχερουσιάδα, ἐνταῦθα βοῶσί τε καὶ καλοῦσιν, οἱ μὲν οὓς
ἀπέκτειναν, οἱ δὲ οὓς ὕβρισαν, καλέσαντες δ' ἱκετεύουσι
b *καὶ δέονται ἐâσαι σφᾶς ἐκβῆναι εἰς τὴν λίμνην καὶ δέξασθαι,*
καὶ ἐὰν μὲν πείσωσιν, ἐκβαίνουσί τε καὶ λήγουσι τῶν
κακῶν, εἰ δὲ μή, φέρονται αὖθις εἰς τὸν Τάρταρον καὶ
ἐκεῖθεν πάλιν εἰς τοὺς ποταμούς, καὶ ταῦτα πάσχοντες οὐ
πρότερον παύονται πρὶν ἂν πείσωσιν οὓς ἠδίκησαν· αὕτη γὰρ
ἡ δίκη ὑπὸ τῶν δικαστῶν αὐτοῖς ἐτάχθη. οἳ δὲ δὴ ἂν δόξωσι

ἀ-δικέω: to be unjust, do wrong, injure, 3
ἀνδρο-φόνος, -ον: man-slaying; homicide, 2
ἀπο-κτείνω: to kill, slay, 5
αὖθις: back again, later, 9
Ἀχερουσιάς, -άδος: Acherusian (fem. adj.), 4
βοάω: to cry aloud, to shout, 3
δέομαι: lack, need, want; ask for (+ gen.) 7
δικαστής, οῦ, ὁ: a juror, judge, 5
δίκη, ἡ: justice; lawsuit, trial; penalty, 11
ἐάω: to permit, allow, let be, suffer, 9
ἐκ-βαίνω: to step out, disembark, 5
ἐκ-βάλλω: to throw out of, cast away, 2
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
ἐκεῖ-θεν: thence, from that place, 3
ἐμ-πίπτω: to fall in, fall upon; attack, 3
ἐνιαυτός, ὁ: long period of time, year, 1
ἐνταῦθα: here, hither, there, thither, then, 5
ἱκετεύω: to beseech, beg, 1
κῦμα, -ατος, τό: wave, billow; flood, 1
Κωκυτός, ὁ: Cocytus, 2
λήγω: to leave off, cease, 1
λίμνη, ἡ: a lake, 8
μητρ-αλοίης, -ου, ὁ: matricide, 1
πατρ-αλοίης, -ου, ὁ: patricide, 1
παύω: to stop, make cease, 6
ποταμός, ὁ: river, stream 8
Πυριφλεγέθων, -οντος, ὁ: Pyriphlegethon, 4
σφεῖς: they (reflexive), 4
ταράττω: to trouble, stir, agitate, 6
Τάρταρος, ὁ: Tartarus, 7
τάττω: to post, arrange, marshall, 2
ὑβρίζω: assault, outrage (against), maltreat, 1

4 **ἀνάγκη**: *(it is) necessary*
ἐμπεσόντας: aor. pple ἐμπίπτω
ἐνιαυτὸν: *for*…; acc. duration of time
5 **τοὺς μέν...τοὺς δὲ**: *those…but those…*
κατὰ: *down the*…; acc. place to which
7 **φερόμενοι γένωνται**: *they come to be carried along*; indefinite temporal clause (ἄν + aor. subj.), pple as predicate (S 2091)
8 **οἱ μὲν...οἱ δὲ...**: *some (calling)…others (calling)…*
οὓς...: *(those) whom*…; supply an antecedent as object of calling
b1 **δέονται**: *ask (them) to…*
ἐâσαι: aor. inf.
ἐκβῆναι: aor. inf.
2 **καὶ ἐὰν...**: *and if*…
πείσωσιν: 3p aor. subj. πείθω, indefinite temporal clause
τῶν κακῶν: neut. pl. gen. separation
3 **εἰ δὲ μή**: i.e. they do not persuade
5 **πρότερον**: comparative adv.
πρὶν...πείσωσιν: *until*…; aor. subj. πείθω
6 **ἐτάχθη**: 3s aor. pass. τάττω
οἳ δὲ δὴ: *but the very ones who…*
ἂν δόξωσι: 3p aor. subj. δοκέω

διαφερόντως πρὸς τὸ ὁσίως βιῶναι, οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ τῶνδε μὲν τῶν τόπων τῶν ἐν τῇ γῇ ἐλευθερούμενοί τε καὶ ἀπαλλαττόμενοι ὥσπερ δεσμωτηρίων, ἄνω δὲ εἰς τὴν καθαρὰν οἴκησιν **c**
ἀφικνούμενοι καὶ ἐπὶ γῆς οἰκιζόμενοι. τούτων δὲ αὐτῶν οἱ φιλοσοφίᾳ ἱκανῶς καθηράμενοι ἄνευ τε σωμάτων ζῶσι τὸ παράπαν εἰς τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον, καὶ εἰς οἰκήσεις ἔτι τούτων καλλίους ἀφικνοῦνται, ἃς οὔτε ῥᾴδιον δηλῶσαι οὔτε ὁ χρόνος 5
ἱκανὸς ἐν τῷ παρόντι. ἀλλὰ τούτων δὴ ἕνεκα χρὴ ὧν διεληλύθαμεν, ὦ Σιμμία, πᾶν ποιεῖν ὥστε ἀρετῆς καὶ φρονήσεως ἐν τῷ βίῳ μετασχεῖν· καλὸν γὰρ τὸ ἆθλον καὶ ἡ ἐλπὶς μεγάλη.
τὸ μὲν οὖν ταῦτα διισχυρίσασθαι οὕτως ἔχειν ὡς ἐγὼ **d**
διελήλυθα, οὐ πρέπει νοῦν ἔχοντι ἀνδρί· ὅτι μέντοι ἢ ταῦτ᾽ ἐστὶν ἢ τοιαῦτ᾽ ἄττα περὶ τὰς ψυχὰς ἡμῶν καὶ τὰς οἰκήσεις,

---

ἆθλον, τό: prize of a contest, 1
ἄνευ: without, 9
ἄνω: up, above, 6
ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15
ἀρετή, ἡ: excellence, goodness, virtue, 9
βιόω: to live, 4
δεσμωτήριον, τό: prison, 6
δηλόω: to make clear, show, reveal, 3
δια-φερόντως: exceptionally; differently, 4
δι-έρχομαι: to go or pass through (gen) 5
δι-ισχυρίζομαι: affirm confidently; rely on, 5
ἐλευθερόω: to set free, release from (gen), 1
ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ: hope, expectation, 9
ἕνεκα: for the sake of, because of, for (gen) 13
καθ-αιρω: to cleanse, purify, 4
καλλιων, -ον: more noble or beautiful, 7
μετ-έχω: to partake of, have share in (gen) 13
νοῦς, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14
οἴκησις, ἡ: dwelling, 5
οἰκίζω: to found a colony, settle, 1
ὅσιος, -α, -ον: hallowed, sacred, ordained, 4
παρά-παν: altogether, absolutely, 3
πρέπει: it is fitting, it is suitable (impers.) 8
ῥᾴδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 9
φιλο-σοφία, ἡ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13
φρόνησις, -εως, ἡ: intelligence, wisdom, 15

7 **διαφερόντως (βιῶναι)**: *(to have lived) exceptionally*; supply aor. inf.
πρὸς...βιῶναι: *with regard to*…; governing an articular aor. inf.
τῶνδε...τόπων: *from*…; gen. of separation
τῶν ἐν τῇ γῇ: modifying τόπων
c1 **δεσμωτηρίων**: gen. of separation
2 **ἐπὶ γῆς**: *upon the earth*
τούτων...αὐτῶν : *among*…; partitive gen.
οἱ...καθηράμενοι: *those having purified themselves*; aor. mid. is reflexive in sense
3 **ζῶσι**: 3p pres. ζάω
τὸ παράπαν: *altogether*
4 **εἰς τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον**: *for future time*; 'for time thereupon'
5 **καλλίους**: καλλίο(ν)ες, comparative
ῥᾴδιον (ἐστί): *it is*…; impersonal + aor. inf.
6 **ἐν τῷ παρόντι (χρόνῳ)**: pple πάρειμι
τούτων δὴ: *these very things*; + ἕνεκα
ὧν...: *which*; gen. object of pf. διέρχομαι
8 **μετασχεῖν**: aor. inf. μετ-έχω
τὸ ἆθλον (ἐστί)...ἡ ἐλπὶς (ἐστί): add verbs
d1 **μὲν οὖν**: *certainly indeed*; as a correction
τὸ...διισχυρίσασθαι: *that to*…; articular inf. is subject of οὕτως ἔχειν (see p. 7)
2 **διελύλυθα**: pf. δι-έρχομαι
νοῦν ἔχοντι: *having sense*
ὅτι μέντοι: *however that*…; in contrast
3 **ἐστὶν**: *are the case*; i.e. are true
ἄττα: *some*; alternative to neut. pl. τινά

ἐπείπερ ἀθάνατόν γε ἡ ψυχὴ φαίνεται οὖσα, τοῦτο καὶ
5 *πρέπειν μοι δοκεῖ καὶ ἄξιον κινδυνεῦσαι οἰομένῳ οὕτως*
ἔχειν—καλὸς γὰρ ὁ κίνδυνος—καὶ χρὴ τὰ τοιαῦτα ὥσπερ
ἐπᾴδειν ἑαυτῷ, διὸ δὴ ἔγωγε καὶ πάλαι μηκύνω τὸν μῦθον.
ἀλλὰ τούτων δὴ ἕνεκα θαρρεῖν χρὴ περὶ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ ψυχῇ
e *ἄνδρα ὅστις ἐν τῷ βίῳ τὰς μὲν ἄλλας ἡδονὰς τὰς περὶ τὸ*
σῶμα καὶ τοὺς κόσμους εἴασε χαίρειν, ὡς ἀλλοτρίους τε
ὄντας, καὶ πλέον θάτερον ἡγησάμενος ἀπεργάζεσθαι, τὰς δὲ
περὶ τὸ μανθάνειν ἐσπούδασέ τε καὶ κοσμήσας τὴν ψυχὴν
5 *οὐκ ἀλλοτρίῳ ἀλλὰ τῷ αὐτῆς κόσμῳ, σωφροσύνῃ τε καὶ*
115 *δικαιοσύνῃ καὶ ἀνδρείᾳ καὶ ἐλευθερίᾳ καὶ ἀληθείᾳ, οὕτω*
περιμένει τὴν εἰς Ἅιδου πορείαν ὡς πορευσόμενος ὅταν ἡ

ἀ-θάνατος, -ον: undying, immortal, 28
Ἅιδης, -ου ὁ: Hades, 15
ἀλήθεια, ἡ: truth, 7
ἀλλότριος, -α, -ον: of another, alien, foreign 3
ἀνδρεία, ἡ: manliness, bravery, courage, 5
ἄξιος, -α, -ον: worthy of, deserving of, 15
ἀπ-εργάζομαι: produce, complete, finish, 2
δικαιοσύνη, ἡ: justice, righteousness, 4
διό: δι᾽ ὅ, on account of which, 4
ἐάω: to permit, allow, let be, suffer, 9
ἐλευθερία, ἡ: freedom, liberty, 1
ἕνεκα: for (the sake of), because of, (gen.) 13
ἐπ-ᾴδω: to chant, sing as a charm, 2
ἐπεί-περ: (the very time) when, since, 1
ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17
θαρρέω: be confident, take courage; be bold 9
κινδυνεύω: to risk, venture; it is likely, 7
κίνδυνος, ὁ: risk, danger, venture, 2
κοσμέω: to order, arrange, adorn, 5
κόσμος, ὁ: good order, world; adornments 2
μανθάνω: to learn, understand, 12
μηκύνω: to lengthen, prolong; delay, 1
μῦθος, ὁ: story, word, speech, 7
περι-μένω: to wait for, await, 6
πλέων, -ον: more, greater, 17
πορεία, ἡ: march, journey, way, 3
πορεύομαι: to travel, journey, march, 7
πρέπει: it is fitting, it is suitable (impers.) 8
σπουδάζω: to be serious, be eager, hasten 2
σωφροσύνη, ἡ: temperence, prudence, 8
χαίρω: to rejoice, be glad, enjoy; fare well 12

4 **ἀθάνατον**: *(something) immortal*; neuter nom. sg., predicate
καὶ...καὶ...: *both…and*
5 **κινδυνεῦσαι**: explanatory inf. with ἄξιον
οἰομένῳ οὕτως ἔχειν: *to one thinking that…*; dat. of interest, pple οἴομαι
6 **ὁ κίνδυνος**: *risk, venture*
7 **διὸ δὴ**: *for which very reason; for precisely which reason*
7 **καὶ πάλαι**: *for a very long time* ; καὶ is adverbial (S 2882)
μηκύνω: *I have been lengthening*; πάλαι + pres. is often pf. progressive in sense
8 **τούτων δὴ**: *these very things*; + ἕνεκα
e1 **ἄνδρα**: *that a man…*; acc. subj. of θαρρεῖν
2 **εἴασε χαίρειν**: *dismissed*; aor., ἐάω χαίρειν, ‘I allow…to say farewell’ is an idiom that relies on the fact that χαῖρε, ‘fare well’ is a common way for saying goodbye
τοὺς κόσμους: *adornments*
ὡς...ὄντας: *on the grounds that they…*; ὡς + pple εἰμί expresses alleged cause
3 **πλέον θάτερον**: *more harm than good*; an idiom, ‘more other,’ θάτερον = τὸ ἕτερον
τὰς δὲ (ἡδονὰς): *but pleasures concerning..*
5 **ἀλλοτρίῳ**: *not by another’s but one’s own adornment*; dat. means
115b2 **ὡς**: *so as going…*; expressing purpose

εἱμαρμένη καλῇ. ὑμεῖς μὲν οὖν, ἔφη, ὦ Σιμμία τε καὶ Κέβης καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι, εἰς αὖθις ἔν τινι χρόνῳ ἕκαστοι πορεύσεσθε· ἐμὲ δὲ νῦν ἤδη καλεῖ, φαίη ἂν ἀνὴρ τραγικός, ἡ εἱμαρμένη, καὶ σχεδόν τί μοι ὥρα τραπέσθαι πρὸς τὸ λουτρόν· δοκεῖ γὰρ δὴ βέλτιον εἶναι λουσάμενον πιεῖν τὸ φάρμακον καὶ μὴ πράγματα ταῖς γυναιξὶ παρέχειν νεκρὸν λούειν.

ταῦτα δὴ εἰπόντος αὐτοῦ ὁ Κρίτων, εἶεν, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες· τί δὲ τούτοις ἢ ἐμοὶ ἐπιστέλλεις ἢ περὶ τῶν παίδων ἢ περὶ ἄλλου του, ὅτι ἄν σοι ποιοῦντες ἡμεῖς ἐν χάριτι μάλιστα ποιοῖμεν;

ἅπερ ἀεὶ λέγω, ἔφη, ὦ Κρίτων, οὐδὲν καινότερον· ὅτι ὑμῶν αὐτῶν ἐπιμελούμενοι ὑμεῖς καὶ ἐμοὶ καὶ τοῖς ἐμοῖς καὶ ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς ἐν χάριτι ποιήσετε ἅττ' ἂν ποιῆτε, κἂν μὴ

αὖθις: back again, later, 9
βελτίων, -ον (-ονος): better, 7
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman, wife, 6
εἱμαρμένος, -η, -ον: destined, allotted, 3
ἐμός, -ή, -όν: my, mine, 7
ἐπι-μελέομαι: take care of, take care that, 4
ἐπι-στέλλω: to bid, instruct, send to, 2
καινός, -ή, -όν: new, novel, strange, 2
λουτρόν, τό: bath, 1
λούω: to wash, 5
νεκρός, ὁ: corpse, dead body, 3
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ: child, boy, girl; slave, 6
παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16
πίνω: to drink, 16
πορεύομαι: to travel, journey, march, 7
τραγικός, -ή, -όν: tragic, of tragedy,1
πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18
σχεδόν: nearly, almost, just about, 8
τραγικός, -ή, -όν: tragic, 1
τρέπω: to turn, 4
φάρμακον, τό: medicine, remedy, drug, 10
χάρις, χάριτος, ἡ: gratitude, thanks, favor, 2
ὥρα, ἡ: season, time, 3

3 **ἡ εἱμαρμένη (μοῖρα)**: *destined fate*
καλῇ: 3s subj. καλέω, indefinite temporal clause
μὲν οὖν: *certainly indeed*; here, a strong affirmation
4 **εἰς αὖθις**: *hereafter*; idiom for future time
5 **φαίη ἄν**: *would said*; potential opt. φημί
ἀνὴρ τραγικός: *tragedian*; i.e. τραγῳδὸς not a 'tragic man'
ἡ εἱμαρμένη (μοῖρα): add noun
6 **σχεδόν τι...ὥρα**: *(it is) just about time*
τραπέσθαι: aor. mid. τρέπω
7 **γὰρ δὴ**: *for of course*
πιεῖν: aor. πίνω
8 **πράγματα....παρέχειν**: *cause trouble for...*; 'make trouble for…' a common idiom
νεκρὸν λούειν: epexegetic (explanatory) inf. with πράγματα
b1 **ταῦτα...αὐτοῦ**: gen. abs., aor. λέγω
εἶεν: *well then*
3 **ἄλλου του**: *something else*; ἄλλου τινος
ὅτι: *which…*; ὅ τι, obj. of ποιοῦντες
ποιοῦντες: *by…*; pple is causal in sense
5 **ἅπερ**: *(the things) which…*
καινότερον (ἐστί): add a verb
ὅτι...: *(namely) that…*; in apposition to ἅπερ...λέγω
6 **ὑμῶν αὐτῶν**: *yourselves*; reflexive
7 **ἅττ(α)...**: *whatever you do*; alternative to neut. pl. interrogative τίνα
κἂν: *even if…*; καὶ εἰ ἂν

νῦν ὁμολογήσητε· ἐὰν δὲ ὑμῶν μὲν αὐτῶν ἀμελῆτε καὶ μὴ 'θέλητε ὥσπερ κατ' ἴχνη κατὰ τὰ νῦν τε εἰρημένα καὶ τὰ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν χρόνῳ ζῆν, οὐδὲ ἐὰν πολλὰ ὁμολο-
c γήσητε ἐν τῷ παρόντι καὶ σφόδρα, οὐδὲν πλέον ποιήσετε.

ταῦτα μὲν τοίνυν προθυμησόμεθα, ἔφη, οὕτω ποιεῖν· θάπτωμεν δέ σε τίνα τρόπον;

ὅπως ἄν, ἔφη, βούλησθε, ἐάνπερ γε λάβητέ με καὶ μὴ ἐκφύγω ὑμᾶς. γελάσας δὲ ἅμα ἡσυχῇ καὶ πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἀποβλέψας εἶπεν· οὐ πείθω, ὦ ἄνδρες, Κρίτωνα, ὡς ἐγώ εἰμι οὗτος Σωκράτης, ὁ νυνὶ διαλεγόμενος καὶ διατάττων ἕκαστον τῶν λεγομένων, ἀλλ' οἴεταί με ἐκεῖνον εἶναι
d ὃν ὄψεται ὀλίγον ὕστερον νεκρόν, καὶ ἐρωτᾷ δὴ πῶς με θάπτῃ. ὅτι δὲ ἐγὼ πάλαι πολὺν λόγον πεποίημαι, ὡς,

---

ἀμελέω: to have no care for, neglect (gen) 5
ἀπο-βλέπω: to look at, see, 1
γελάω: to laugh, 6
δια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 13
δια-τάττω: to arrange, appoint, 1
ἐάν-περ: εἰ ἄν, if, if really (+ subj.), 3
ἐθέλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17
ἐκ-φεύγω: to flee out away, escape, 1
ἔμ-προσθεν: before, former; earlier, 7
ἐρωτάω: to ask, inquire, question, 10
ἡσυχῇ: gently, softly, 1
θάπτω: to honor with funeral rites, 4
ἴχνος, -εος, τό: track, footprint, 1
νεκρός, ὁ: corpse, dead body, 3
νυνί: now; as it is, 2
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small, 15
ὅπως: how, in what way; in order that, that 10
πάλαι: for some time, long ago, of old, 13
πλέων, -ον: more, greater, 17
προ-θυμέομαι: to be eager, zealous, ready, 12
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18
τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17
ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; *adv*. later 17

8 **ὁμολογήσητε**: aor. subj. as protasis in a future more vivid (εἰ ἄν + subj., fut.)
ἐὰν...ἀμελῆτε,...ποιήσετε: a lengthy fut. more vivid
ὑμῶν μὲν αὐτῶν: *yourselves for your part*; reflexive and a solitary μέν (S 2896)
9 **(ἐ)θέλητε...ζῆν**: from ἐθέλω, inf. ζάω
κατ(ὰ) ἴκνη: *step by step*; 'by steps'
κατὰ τὰ...: *according to…*
εἰρημένα: pf. pass. pple λέγω (ἐρ)
10 **τὰ...χρόνῳ (εἰρημένα)**: supply participle
οὐδὲ: *not even*
πολλὰ: *many times, often*; adverbial acc. or inner acc., e.g. 'agree with many things'
c1 **ἐν τῷ παρόντι (χρόνῳ)**: pple πάρειμι
καὶ: *and*; joining adverbial πολλὰ with the adverb σφόδρα
οὐδὲν πλέον: i.e. nothing good; compare πλέον θάτερον in 114e3
3 **θάπτωμεν**: *let us…*; hortatory subj.
τίνα τρόπον: *in what…*?; interrogative
4 **ὅπως ἄν**: *however…*; relative, in reply
ἐάνπερ γε: *if at any rate*; or 'if, that is,…'
6 **πείθω**: *I am persuading*; pres. progressive
7 **ὁ...διαλεγόμενος**: *the one just now…*;
d1 **ὄψεται**: 3s fut. dep. ὁράω
ὀλίγον: *a little*; acc. extent by degree
δὴ πῶς: *just how, precisely how*; πῶς δὴ
2 **θάπτῃ**: *he is to…*; 3s deliberative subj.
ὅτι δὲ: *but that…*

ἐπειδὰν πίω τὸ φάρμακον, οὐκέτι ὑμῖν παραμενῶ, ἀλλ᾽ οἰχήσομαι ἀπιὼν εἰς μακάρων δή τινας εὐδαιμονίας, ταῦτά μοι δοκῶ αὐτῷ ἄλλως λέγειν, παραμυθούμενος ἅμα μὲν ὑμᾶς, ἅμα δ᾽ ἐμαυτόν. ἐγγυήσασθε οὖν με πρὸς Κρίτωνα, ἔφη, τὴν ἐναντίαν ἐγγύην ἣ ἣν οὗτος πρὸς τοὺς δικαστὰς ἠγγυᾶτο. οὗτος μὲν γὰρ ἢ μὴν παραμενεῖν· ὑμεῖς δὲ ἢ μὴν μὴ παραμενεῖν ἐγγυήσασθε ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνω, ἀλλὰ οἰχήσεσθαι ἀπιόντα, ἵνα Κρίτων ῥᾷον φέρῃ, καὶ μὴ ὁρῶν μου τὸ σῶμα ἢ καόμενον ἢ κατορυττόμενον ἀγανακτῇ ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ ὡς δεινὰ πάσχοντος, μηδὲ λέγῃ ἐν τῇ ταφῇ ὡς ἢ προτίθεται Σωκράτη ἢ ἐκφέρει ἢ κατορύττει. εὖ γὰρ ἴσθι, ἦ δ᾽ ὅς, ὦ ἄριστε Κρίτων, τὸ μὴ καλῶς λέγειν οὐ μόνον εἰς αὐτὸ τοῦτο πλημμελές, ἀλλὰ καὶ κακόν τι ἐμποιεῖ ταῖς ψυχαῖς. ἀλλὰ

ἀγανακτέω: to be annoyed, be troubled at, 12
ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way; in vain, 14
ἀπ-έρχομαι: to go away, depart, 14
ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent, 6
δεινός, -ή, -όν: terrible; wondrous, clever, 6
δικαστής, οῦ, ὁ: a juror, judge, 5
ἐγγυάω, ὁ: pledge, give guarantee for, 3
ἐγγύη, ἡ: pledge, guarantee, 1
ἐκ-φέρω: to carry out, bring forth, produce, 2
ἐμ-ποιέω: to create in, produce in, cause, 2
εὐ-δαιμονία, ἡ: happiness, good fortune, 2
ἦ: in truth, truly (begins open question), 5
ἵνα: in order that (+ subj.); where (+ ind.), 7
καίω: kindle, set on fire, burn, 2
καλῶς: well; beautifully, 11
κατ-ορύττω: bury in the earth, bury, 2
μάκαρος, -α, -ον: blessed, happy, 1
οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 14
οὐκ-έτι: no more, no longer, no further, 4
παρα-μένω: to abide, remain, 2
παρα-μυθέομαι: exhort, encourage, 1
πίνω: to drink, 16
πλημμελής -ές: in discord, faulty, out of tune 1
προ-τίθημι: to set out, set forth, propose, 2
ῥᾷον: more easily, 2
ταφή, ἡ: burial, funeral, 1
ὑπέρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); over, beyond (acc.), 6
φάρμακον, τό: medicine, remedy, drug, 10

3 **πίω**: aor. subj. πίνω, indefinite relative
ὡς...παραμενῶ: *that*…; assume ὡς is from d2, 1s fut.in the indirect discourse
οἰχήσομαι ἀπιὼν: fut.. οἴχομαι, governs a complementary pple (S 2099); ἀπέρχομαι
4 **εἰς μακαρων δὴ τινας εὐδαιμονίας** : *to certain happinesses of the blessed*; ‘certain joys’; τινας δή, δή is intensive (see 107d7)
5 **αὐτῷ**: *myself*; intensive pronoun with μοι
ἄλλως: *in vain*
6 **ἐγγυήσασθε...**: *give a pledge for me to Crito*; i.e. on my behalf
7 **τὴν ἐναντίαν ἐγγύην ἣ ἣν**: *the opposite pledge than (the one) which*; a cognate acc.
8 **ἠγγυᾶτο**: *tried to…*; conative impf. ἐγγυάω; Crito tried but failed to secure a pledge on Socrates’ behalf
οὗτος μὲν...ὑμεῖς...ἐγυήσασθε: *this one (pledged)…and you pledged…*; ellipsis
ἦ μὴν: *truly indeed that (I)…*; ἦ μήν introduces oaths, here in ind. disc.
ἀποθάνω: aor. subj. ἀποθνήσκω
e1 **ἵνα...**: *so that*…; purpose + 3s subj. verbs
3 **ὡς...**: *that…*
προτίθεται...: *set out, lay out*; i.e. the body
4 **Σωκράτη**: Σωκράτε-α, acc. sg.
ἴσθι: imperative οἶδα
5 **εἰς αὐτὸ τοῦτο**: *in regard to this itself*

θαρρεῖν τε χρὴ καὶ φάναι τοὐμὸν σῶμα θάπτειν, καὶ θάπτειν
116 οὕτως ὅπως ἄν σοι φίλον ᾖ καὶ μάλιστα ἡγῇ νόμιμον εἶναι.
ταῦτ᾽ εἰπὼν ἐκεῖνος μὲν ἀνίστατο εἰς οἴκημά τι ὡς λουσόμενος, καὶ ὁ Κρίτων εἵπετο αὐτῷ, ἡμᾶς δ᾽ ἐκέλευε περιμένειν.
περιεμένομεν οὖν πρὸς ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς διαλεγόμενοι περὶ τῶν
5 εἰρημένων καὶ ἀνασκοποῦντες, τοτὲ δ᾽ αὖ περὶ τῆς συμφορᾶς διεξιόντες ὅση ἡμῖν γεγονυῖα εἴη, ἀτεχνῶς ἡγούμενοι ὥσπερ πατρὸς στερηθέντες διάξειν ὀρφανοὶ τὸν ἔπειτα βίον. ἐπειδὴ
b δὲ ἐλούσατο καὶ ἠνέχθη παρ᾽ αὐτὸν τὰ παιδία—δύο γὰρ αὐτῷ υἱεῖς σμικροὶ ἦσαν, εἷς δὲ μέγας—καὶ αἱ οἰκεῖαι γυναῖκες ἀφίκοντο ἐκεῖναι, ἐναντίον τοῦ Κρίτωνος διαλεχθείς τε καὶ ἐπιστείλας ἅττα ἐβούλετο, τὰς μὲν γυναῖκας καὶ τὰ παιδία
5 ἀπιέναι ἐκέλευσεν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἦκε παρ᾽ ἡμᾶς. καὶ ἦν ἤδη

ἀνα-σκοπέω: to examine over again, 1
ἀν-ίστημι: to make stand up, raise up, 1
ἀπ-έρχομαι: to go away, depart, 14
ἀ-τεχνῶς: simply, absolutely, really, 6
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman, wife, 6
δι-άγω: to live, pass, go through, 2
δια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 13
δι-εξ-έρχομαι: to pass through, go through 5
ἐμός, -ή, -όν: my, mine, 7
ἐπι-στέλλω: to bid, instruct, send to, 2
ἕπομαι: to follow, accompany, escort, 9
ἥκω: to have come, be present, 14
θάπτω: to honor with funeral rites, 4
θαρρέω: be confident, take courage; be bold 9
λούω: to wash, 5
νόμιμος, -η, -ον: customary, lawful, 2
οἰκεῖος, -α, -ον: of the family, one's own, 4
οἴκημα, -ατος, τό: room; storeroom, 1
ὅπως: how, in what way; in order that, that 10
ὀρφανός, -ή, -όν: orphan, fatherless, bereft 1
παιδίον, τό: a little or young child, child, 3
πατήρ, ὁ: a father, 3
περι-μένω: to wait for, await, 6
σμικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little, 19
στερέω: to deprive of or from, rob, defraud, 5
συμ-φορά, ἡ: misfortune, mishap, 3
υἱός (ὑος), ὁ: son, 2
φίλος -η -ον: dear, friendly; *noun* friend, kin 8

7 **φάναι**: *to say that (you)*; inf. φημί
τοὐμὸν: τὸ ἐμὸν
116a1 **ὅπως ἄν...ᾖ...ἡγῇ**: *however*…; indefinite relative clause, 3s subj. εἰμί and 2s pres. subj. ἡγέομαι
2 **εἰπὼν**: nom. sg. aor. pple λέγω
ἀνίστατο: *was rising to go*; impf. ἀνίστημι
ὡς...: *so as..*; purpose, ὡς + fut. pple, best translated as an inf. in English
3 **εἵπετο**: impf. ἕπομαι
4 **ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς**: *ourselves*
5 **εἰρημένων**: pf. pass. pple λέγω (stem ερ)
6 **διεξιόντες**: pple διεξέρχομαι
ὅση: *how great (a misfortune)…*
γεγονυῖα εἴη: periphastic pf. opt. (pf. pple + εἰμί) fem. sg. pple γίγνομαι
7 **πατρὸς**: *from/of*…; gen. of separation
στερηθέντες: aor. pass. pple
διάξειν: *that (we)…*; add acc. subj. ἡμᾶς
τὸν ἔπειτα βίον: *life hereafter*
b1 **ἠνέχθη**: 3s pass. φέρω, plural subject
αὐτῷ: dat of possession
2 **αἱ...γυναῖκες**: *the women of the family*
ἐναντίον..Κρίτωνος: *in Crito's presence*
3 **διαλεχθείς, ἐπιστείλας**: aor pass & act. pple talking to the women, giving instructions
4 **ἅττ(α)...**: *what*…; neuter pl. pronoun, τίνα

ἐγγὺς ἡλίου δυσμῶν· χρόνον γὰρ πολὺν διέτριψεν ἔνδον. ἐλθὼν δ' ἐκαθέζετο λελουμένος καὶ οὐ πολλὰ ἄττα μετὰ ταῦτα διελέχθη, καὶ ἦκεν ὁ τῶν ἕνδεκα ὑπηρέτης καὶ στὰς παρ' αὐτόν, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔφη, οὐ καταγνώσομαί γε σοῦ **c**
ὅπερ ἄλλων καταγιγνώσκω, ὅτι μοι χαλεπαίνουσι καὶ κατα-
ρῶνται ἐπειδὰν αὐτοῖς παραγγείλω πίνειν τὸ φάρμακον
ἀναγκαζόντων τῶν ἀρχόντων. σὲ δὲ ἐγὼ καὶ ἄλλως
ἔγνωκα ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ γενναιότατον καὶ πραότατον 5
καὶ ἄριστον ἄνδρα ὄντα τῶν πώποτε δεῦρο ἀφικομένων, καὶ
δὴ καὶ νῦν εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι οὐκ ἐμοὶ χαλεπαίνεις, γιγνώσκεις γὰρ
τοὺς αἰτίους, ἀλλὰ ἐκείνοις. νῦν οὖν, οἶσθα γὰρ ἃ ἦλθον
ἀγγέλλων, χαῖρέ τε καὶ πειρῶ ὡς ῥᾷστα φέρειν τὰ ἀναγκαῖα. **d**
καὶ ἅμα δακρύσας μεταστρεφόμενος ἀπῄει.

ἀγγέλλω: to announce, proclaim, report, 3
αἴτιος, -α, -ον: responsible, blameworthy, 8
ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 14
ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 10
ἀπ-έρχομαι: to go away, depart, 14
ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent, 6
ἄρχων, οντος, ὁ: archon, leader, 1
γενναῖος, -α, -ον: noble, well-bred, 4
γιγνώσκω: learn to know, to learn, realize 12
δακρύω: to weep, shed tears, 4
δεῦρο: here, to this point, hither, 7
δια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 13
δια-τρίβω: to spend time, waste time, 5
δυσμή, ἡ: setting, 2
ἐγγύς: near (+ gen.); adv. nearby, 5
ἕν-δεκα: eleven, 3
ἔν-δον: within, 1
ἥλιος, ὁ: the sun, 7
ἵστημι: to make stand, set up, stop, establish 3
καθ-έζομαι: to sit down, 2
κατ-αράομαι: to curse, call curses upon, 1
κατα-γιγνώσκω: find fault with, judge gen 2
λούω: to wash, 5
μετα-στρέφω: to turn about, turn around, 1
παρ-αγγέλλω: to pass word along, order 4
πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 11
πίνω: to drink, 16
πρᾷος, -ον: mild, gentle, soft, 3
πώ-ποτε: ever yet, ever, 6
ῥᾷστα: most easily, 1
ὑπηρέτης, ὁ: attendant, subordinate, servant, 1
φάρμακον, τό: medicine, remedy, drug, 10
χαίρω: to rejoice, be glad, enjoy; fare well 12
χαλεπαίνω: to be sore, angry, grievous, 3

7 **ἐλθὼν**: pple ἔρχομαι
8 **λελουμένος**: pf. mid.. λούω, reflexive
ἄττα: *other things*; alternative to τινα
9 **διελέχθη**: aor. pass. deponent διαλέγομαι
τῶν ἕνδεκα: *of the Eleven*; the officials
στὰς: aor. pple ἵστημι
c1 **παρ(ὰ)...**: *alongside…*
καταγνώσομαι: fut. + σοῦ gen. sg. σύ
2 **ὅπερ**: *just as…*; 'which (fault)', inner acc.
ὅτι...: *namely that…*
3 **παραγγείλω**: aor. subj.
4 **ἀναγκαζόντων...ἀρχόντων**: gen. abs.
5 **ἔγνωκα**: 1s pf. γιγνώσκω
6 **ὄντα**: pple εἰμί, modifies σὲ
τῶν...ἀφικομένων: *than…* ; comparison
καὶ δὴ καὶ: *in particular*; 'and indeed also'
8 **τοὺς αἰτίους**: *those responsible*
οἶσθα: 2s pf. οἶδα, pres. in sense
d1 **πειρῶ**: πειρα(σ)ο, sg. pres. imperative
ὡς...: *as…as possible*; + superlative
2 **δακρύσας**: *bursting into tears*; inceptive
ἀπῄει: *began to go away*; inchoative impf.

καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ἀναβλέψας πρὸς αὐτόν, καὶ σύ, ἔφη, χαῖρε, καὶ ἡμεῖς ταῦτα ποιήσομεν. καὶ ἅμα πρὸς ἡμᾶς, ὡς ἀστεῖος, ἔφη, ὁ ἄνθρωπος· καὶ παρὰ πάντα μοι τὸν χρόνον προσῄει καὶ διελέγετο ἐνίοτε καὶ ἦν ἀνδρῶν λῷστος, καὶ νῦν ὡς γενναίως με ἀποδακρύει. ἀλλ᾽ ἄγε δή, ὦ Κρίτων, πειθώμεθα αὐτῷ, καὶ ἐνεγκάτω τις τὸ φάρμακον, εἰ τέτριπται· εἰ δὲ μή, τριψάτω ὁ ἄνθρωπος.

e καὶ ὁ Κρίτων, ἀλλ᾽ οἶμαι, ἔφη, ἔγωγε, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔτι ἥλιον εἶναι ἐπὶ τοῖς ὄρεσιν καὶ οὔπω δεδυκέναι. καὶ ἅμα ἐγὼ οἶδα καὶ ἄλλους πάνυ ὀψὲ πίνοντας, ἐπειδὰν παραγγελθῇ αὐτοῖς, δειπνήσαντάς τε καὶ πιόντας εὖ μάλα, καὶ συγγενομένους γ᾽ ἐνίους ὧν ἂν τύχωσιν ἐπιθυμοῦντες. ἀλλὰ μηδὲν ἐπείγου· ἔτι γὰρ ἐγχωρεῖ.

ἄγω: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 12
ἀνα-βλέπω: to look at, 1
ἀπο-δακρύω: to weep away, lament, 1
ἀστεῖος, -ον: of the town; urbane, refined, 1
γενναῖος, -α, -ον: noble, well-bred, 4
δειπνέω: to make dinner, eat dinner, 1
δια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 13
δύω: enter, make sink, sink, plunge, 3
ἐγ-χωρεῖ: *impers*. there is time or room, 1
ἔνιοι, -αι, -α: some, 7
ἐνί-οτε: sometimes, 7
ἐπείγω: urge on; *mid*. hurry, make haste, 1
ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for, 10
ἥλιος, ὁ: the sun, 7
λῷστος, -α, -ον: most agreeable, best, 1
μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 10
ὄρος, -εος, τό: a mountain, hill, 2
οὔ-πω: not yet, 3
ὀψέ: late, 1
παρ-αγγέλλω: to pass word along, order 4
πίνω: to drink, 16
προσ-έρχομαι: to come or go to, approach, 4
συγ-γίγνομαι: to be with, associate with, 2
τρίβω: to grind, rub, knead; wear out, 5
φάρμακον, τό: medicine, remedy, drug, 10
χαίρω: to rejoice, be glad, enjoy; fare well 12

3 **καὶ**: *too, also*; adverbial
χαῖρε: *farewell*!; imperative
πρὸς ἡμᾶς: *(he said) to us*
5 **ὡς ἀστεῖος....ὁ ἄνθρωπος**: *how*…!; in exclamation, i.e. the prison attendant
παρὰ πάντα...τὸν χρόνον: *throughout*…; acc. duration of time
6 **προσῄει...διελέγετο**: *was accustomed to…and accustomed to…*; customary impf.. προσέρχομαι, διαλέγομαι
ἦν: impf. εἰμί
7 **ἄγε δή**: *come now*; the imperative ἄγω draws attention to the following imperative
8 **πειθώμεθα**: *let us*…; hortatory subj.
ἐνεγκάτω τις: *let someone*…; 3rd pers. aor. imperative φέρω
9 **τέτριπται**: pf. pass. τρίβω i.e. the drug has been ground and prepared
τριψάτω: *let…*; 3rd pers. aor. imperative τρίβω; the missing obj. is τὸ φάρμακον
e2 **ἐπὶ...**: *over*
δεδυκέναι: pf. act. inf. δύω with οἴομαι
3 **καὶ ἄλλους**: *others also*
παραγγελθῇ: *it was*…; impersonal, aor. pass. subj. παραγγέλω
5 **ὧν ἄν**: *whomever they happened to love*
μηδὲν: *not at all*; inner acc.
6 **ἐπείγου**: ἐπείγε(σ)ο, pres. mid. imperative

καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης, εἰκότως γε, ἔφη, ὦ Κρίτων, ἐκεῖνοί τε ταῦτα ποιοῦσιν, οὓς σὺ λέγεις—οἴονται γὰρ κερδαίνειν ταῦτα ποιήσαντες—καὶ ἔγωγε ταῦτα εἰκότως οὐ ποιήσω· οὐδὲν γὰρ οἶμαι κερδανεῖν ὀλίγον ὕστερον πιὼν ἄλλο γε ἢ γέλωτα 117
ὀφλήσειν παρ᾽ ἐμαυτῷ, γλιχόμενος τοῦ ζῆν καὶ φειδόμενος οὐδενὸς ἔτι ἐνόντος. ἀλλ᾽ ἴθι, ἔφη, πείθου καὶ μὴ ἄλλως ποίει.

καὶ ὁ Κρίτων ἀκούσας ἔνευσε τῷ παιδὶ πλησίον ἑστῶτι. καὶ ὁ παῖς ἐξελθὼν καὶ συχνὸν χρόνον διατρίψας ἦκεν ἄγων 5
τὸν μέλλοντα δώσειν τὸ φάρμακον, ἐν κύλικι φέροντα τετριμμένον. ἰδὼν δὲ ὁ Σωκράτης τὸν ἄνθρωπον, εἶεν, ἔφη, ὦ βέλτιστε, σὺ γὰρ τούτων ἐπιστήμων, τί χρὴ ποιεῖν;

ἄγω: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 12
ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 14
βέλτιστος, -η, -ον: best, 14
γέλως, -ωτος, ὁ: laughter, 1
γλιχόμαι: to cling to, long for, (gen) 1
δια-τρίβω: to spend (time), waste (time), 5
δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 15
εἰκότως: reasonably, suitably, fairly, 5
ἔν-ειμι: to be in or within, 8
ἐξ-έρχομαι: to go out, come out, 5
ἐπιστήμων, -ονος: wise in, skilled in, (gen) 1
ἥκω: to have come, be present, 14
ἵστημι: to make stand, set up, stop, establish 3
κερδαίνω: to gain, make a profit, 2
κύλιξ, κύλικος, ἡ: cup, kylix, 2
νεύω: to nod, beckon, incline, 1
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small, 15
ὀφλισκάνω: to owe, be liable for; incur, 1
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ: child, boy, girl; slave, 6
πίνω: to drink, 16
πλησίος, -η, -ον: near, close to; neighbors, 4
συχνός, -ή, -όν: long, much, great, 4
τρίβω: to rub, grind, knead; wear out, 5
ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; *adv*. later 17
φάρμακον, τό: medicine, remedy, drug, 10
φείδομαι: to use sparingly, spare 2

7 **καὶ...γε**: *and…indeed*; καί...γε, as often, emphasizes the intervening word
ἐκεῖνοι: i.e. prisoners delaying execution
8 **κερδαίνειν**: *that (they)….*; add acc. subject
9 **ποιήσαντες**: *by*…; pple is causal
ποιήσω: fut. ποιέω
117a1 **κερδαίνειν**: *that (I)….*; add acc. subject
ὀλίγον ὕστερον πιὼν: *by*…; causal, πίνω; ὀλίγον, '*little*,' is an acc. extent by degree
ἄλλο γε ἤ: *other at any rate than…*
γέλωτα ὀφλήσειν παρ(ὰ) ἐμαυτῷ: *that (I) will incur laughter in my own mind*; fut. inf.ὀφλισκάνω
2 **τοῦ ζῆν**: articular inf. ζάω
φειδόμενος: *using sparingly, being thrifty* intransitive
οὐδενὸς...ἐνόντος: *nothing still being within*; Rowe sees an allusion to Hesiod *Works and Days* ll. 368-9
3 **ἴθι**: sg. imperative ἔρχομαι
πείθε(σ)ο: pres. mid. imperative
ποίει: ποιε-ε, sg. imperative ε-contract verb
4 **τῷ παιδὶ**: *to*…; dat. of interest, ὁ παῖς can denote a slave
πλησίον: adverbial acc.
ἑστῶτι: dat. sg. pf. pple, ἵστημι
ἄγων τὸν μέλλοντα δώσειν: *bringing the one intending to give*…; fut. inf. δίδωμι
6 **τετριμμένον**: *ground*; pf. pass. τρίβω
7 **ἰδὼν**: nom. sg. aor. pple. ὁράω (εἶδον)
εἶεν: *well then*
8 **σύ**: *you (are)*; add linking verb

οὐδὲν ἄλλο, ἔφη, ἢ πιόντα περιέναι, ἕως ἄν σου βάρος
b ἐν τοῖς σκέλεσι γένηται, ἔπειτα κατακεῖσθαι· καὶ οὕτως αὐτὸ ποιήσει. καὶ ἅμα ὤρεξε τὴν κύλικα τῷ Σωκράτει.

καὶ ὃς λαβὼν καὶ μάλα ἵλεως, ὦ Ἐχέκρατες, οὐδὲν τρέσας οὐδὲ διαφθείρας οὔτε τοῦ χρώματος οὔτε τοῦ προσ-
5 ώπου, ἀλλ᾽ ὥσπερ εἰώθει ταυρηδὸν ὑποβλέψας πρὸς τὸν ἄνθρωπον, τί λέγεις, ἔφη, περὶ τοῦδε τοῦ πώματος πρὸς τὸ ἀποσπεῖσαί τινι; ἔξεστιν ἢ οὔ;

τοσοῦτον, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες, τρίβομεν ὅσον οἰόμεθα μέτριον εἶναι πιεῖν.

ἀπό-σπένδω: pour out wine (as a libation), 1
βάρος, τό: weight, burden, heaviness, 1
δια-φθείρω: to destroy, corrupt, kill, lose, 6
εἴωθα: to be accustomed, 12
ἔξ-εστι: it is allowed, it is possible, 3
ἕως: until, as long as, 15
ἵλαος, -ον: propitious; gentle, (Ion. **ἵλεος**) 2
κατα-κεῖμαι: to lie down, 1
κύλιξ, κύλικος, ἡ: cup, kylix, 2
μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 10
μέτριος, -α, -ον: moderate, in due measure, 7
ὀρέγω: to stretch out, reach for, extend, 4
περι-έρχομαι: to go around, 6
πίνω: to drink, 16
προσώπον, τό: expression, face, 1
πῶμα, -ατος, τό: drink, 1
σκέλος, -εος, τό: leg, 6
ταυρ-ηδόν: like a bull, savagely, 1
τοσοῦτος, -αύτη, -οῦτο: so great, so many, 3
τρέω: to flee from fear, flee away, 1
τρίβω: to grind, rub, knead; wear out, 5
ὑπο-βλέπω: to look from under the brow, look askance at, 1
χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.) 11

9 **πιόντα**: acc. sg. aor. pple πίνω
περιέναι (χρή): i.e. to walk around
ἕως ἄν...γένηται: *until*…; ἄν + aor. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause
b1 **αὐτὸ**: *it*; nom. subject
3 **ὃς**: *and this one*; demonstrative, i.e. the attendant
λαβὼν: supply τὴν κύλικα as object
ἵλεως: *gently*; when referring to people, ‘propitiously’ when referring to the gods
οὐδὲν: *not at all*; inner acc. with pple
4 **διαφθείρας**: *losing*; aor. pple
τοῦ χρώματος: *(any) color*; partitive gen.
τοῦ προσώπου: *(any) expression*; partitive
6 **πρὸς τὸ ἀποσπεῖσαι**: *with regard to…*;
8 **τοσοῦτον...ὅσον**: *as much as*; correlatives, demonstrative and relative pronouns
τινι: *for someone*; dat. of interest
9 **πιεῖν**: epexegetic (explanatory) aor. inf. πίνω governed by μέτριον

μανθάνω, ἦ δ' ὅς· ἀλλ' εὔχεσθαί γέ που τοῖς θεοῖς ἔξεστί c
τε καὶ χρή, τὴν μετοίκησιν τὴν ἐνθένδε ἐκεῖσε εὐτυχῆ γενέ-
σθαι· ἃ δὴ καὶ ἐγὼ εὔχομαί τε καὶ γένοιτο ταύτῃ. καὶ ἅμ' εἰπὼν ταῦτα ἐπισχόμενος καὶ μάλα εὐχερῶς καὶ εὐκόλως ἐξέπιεν. καὶ ἡμῶν οἱ πολλοὶ τέως μὲν ἐπιεικῶς οἷοί τε 5
ἦσαν κατέχειν τὸ μὴ δακρύειν, ὡς δὲ εἴδομεν πίνοντά τε καὶ πεπωκότα, οὐκέτι, ἀλλ' ἐμοῦ γε βίᾳ καὶ αὐτοῦ ἀστακτὶ ἐχώρει τὰ δάκρυα, ὥστε ἐγκαλυψάμενος ἀπέκλαον ἐμαυτόν—οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἐκεῖνόν γε, ἀλλὰ τὴν ἐμαυτοῦ τύχην, οἵου ἀνδρὸς ἑταίρου ἐστερημένος εἴην. ὁ δὲ Κρίτων ἔτι πρότερος ἐμοῦ, d
ἐπειδὴ οὐχ οἷός τ' ἦν κατέχειν τὰ δάκρυα, ἐξανέστη.

ἀπο-κλάω (κλαίω): to weep aloud, wail for, 1
ἀ-στακί: not in drops, in floods, 1
βία, βίας, ἡ: bodily strength, force, might, 2
δάκρυον, τό: tear, 3
ἐγ-καλύπτω: to veil, wrap up, 1
ἐκεῖ-σε: thither, to that place, 10
ἐκ-πίνω: to drink completely, drink dry, 1
ἐν-θένδε: hence, from here, 3
ἐξ-ανίστημι: to stand up and go out, 1
ἔξ-εστι: it is allowed, is possible, 3
ἐπιεικῶς: suitably, reasonably, 2
ἐπ-ίσχω: hold up, restrain; wait, stop, 4
ἑταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate, 11
εὖ-κολος, -ον: easily contented; cheerful, 1
εὐ-τυχής, -ές: fortunate, successful, well off, 1
εὐ-χερής, -ές: cool, indifferent, unconcerned, 1
εὔχομαι: to pray, vow; boast, 3
κατ-έχω: hold fast, hold back possess, 5
μανθάνω: to learn, understand, 12
μετ-οίκησις, ἡ: departure, migration, 1
οὐκ-έτι: no more, no longer, no further, 4
πίνω: to drink, 16
στερέω: to deprive from, rob, defraud, 5
τέως: for a while, for a time, 1
τύχη, ἡ: chance, luck, fortune, 5
χωρέω: to go, come; have room for, 4

c1 **ἦ δ' ὅς**: Socrates is speaking, see p. 9
2 **τὴν μετοίκησιν...**: *that the departure*…; ind. disc. governed by εὔχεσθαι
εὐτυχῆ: εὐτυχέ-α, acc. sg. predicate
3 **ἃ δὴ καὶ**: *which very things in fact…*
γένοιτο: *may it…!*; opt. of wish, this is part of the actual prayer
ταυτῇ: *in this way*; dat. of manner
4 **εἰπὼν ταῦτα**: aor. pple λέγω
ἐπισχόμενος: *holding it up to (his lips)*
5 **ἐξέπιεν**: aor. ἐκ-πίνω
οἷοί τε ἦσαν: οἷος τε εἰμί, 'I am the sort to' is an idiom for 'I am able,' here impf.
6 **τὸ μὴ δακρύειν**: *from*…; articular inf.; verbs of hindering—including κατέχω—often govern μή + inf. (S 2739-40)
6 **ὡς δὲ**: *but as, but when*
εἴδομεν: aor. ὁράω
πίνοντά...πεπωκότα: *(him)…*; pres. and pf. pple πίνω; modifying a missing acc. sg.
7 **οὐκέτι**: i.e. no longer were able to withold...
ἐμοῦ γε βίᾳ καὶ αὐτοῦ: *against my own will and…*; dat. of manner βίᾳ + gen. often means 'against one's will'
9 **γὰρ δὴ**: *for accordingly, for of course*
ἐκεῖνον γε: i.e. for that one; i.e. Socrates
τὴν...τύχην: also obj. of ἀπέκλαον
οἵου ἀνδρὸς: *from*…; gen. of separation
d1 **ἑταίρου**: *as a companion*
ἐστερημένος εἴην: *I had been*…; 1st opt., pf. pass. periphrastic (pf. pass. pple + εἰμί), the opt. suggests implied indirect discourse
ἐμοῦ: gen. of comparison
2 **ἐξανέστη**: plpf. act. ἐξ-ανίστημι

Ἀπολλόδωρος δὲ καὶ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν χρόνῳ οὐδὲν ἐπαύετο δακρύων, καὶ δὴ καὶ τότε ἀναβρυχησάμενος κλάων καὶ ἀγανακτῶν οὐδένα ὅντινα οὐ κατέκλασε τῶν παρόντων πλήν γε αὐτοῦ Σωκράτους.

ἐκεῖνος δέ, 'οἷα, ἔφη, ποιεῖτε, ὦ θαυμάσιοι. ἐγὼ μέντοι οὐχ ἥκιστα τούτου ἕνεκα τὰς γυναῖκας ἀπέπεμψα, ἵνα μὴ
e τοιαῦτα πλημμελοῖεν· καὶ γὰρ ἀκήκοα ὅτι ἐν εὐφημίᾳ χρὴ τελευτᾶν. ἀλλ' ἡσυχίαν τε ἄγετε καὶ καρτερεῖτε.'

καὶ ἡμεῖς ἀκούσαντες ᾐσχύνθημέν τε καὶ ἐπέσχομεν τοῦ δακρύειν. ὁ δὲ περιελθών, ἐπειδή οἱ βαρύνεσθαι ἔφη τὰ σκέλη, κατεκλίνη ὕπτιος—οὕτω γὰρ ἐκέλευεν ὁ ἄνθρωπος—καὶ ἅμα ἐφαπτόμενος αὐτοῦ οὗτος ὁ δοὺς τὸ φάρμακον,

---

ἀγανακτέω: be distressed, be troubled at, 12
ἄγω: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 12
αἰσχύνω: make ugly; *pass*. be/feel ashamed 1
ἀνα-βρυχάομαι: to roar aloud, wail aloud, 1
ἀπο-πέμπω: to send away, to dismiss, 1
Ἀπολλόδωρος, ὁ: Apollodorus, 3
βαρύνω: to weigh down, oppress, 2
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman, wife, 6
δακρύω: to weep, shed tears, 4
δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 15
ἔμ-προσθεν: before, former; earlier, 7
ἕνεκα: for the sake of, (+ preceding gen.) 13
ἐπ-ίσχω: hold up, restrain; wait, stop, 4
εὐ-φημία, ἡ: (religious) silence, without inauspicious words, 1
ἐφ-άπτω: lay hold of, grasp onto (gen.), 5
ἥκιστος, -η, -ον: least; not at all, 3
ἡσυχία, ἡ: silence, quiet, stillness, rest, 1
αἰσχύνομαι: to be ashamed, feel shame, 1
θαυμάσιος, -α, -ον: wonderful, strange, 3
ἵνα: in order that (+ subj.); where (+ ind.), 7
καρτερέω: to be steadfast, patient, staunch, 1
κατα-κλάω: to make break down in wailing 1
κατα-κλίνω: to lie down, recline, 1
κελεύω: to bid, order, command, exhort, 8
κλαίω (κλάω): to weep for, cry, wail, 1
παύω: to stop, make cease, 6
περι-έρχομαι: to go around, 6
πλημμελέω: make a false note, err, offend 1
πλήν: except, but (+ gen.), 7
σκέλος, -εος, τό: leg, 6
ὕπτιος, -α, -ον: on one's back, prone, 1
φάρμακον, τό: medicine, remedy, drug 10

3 **καὶ**: *also*
οὐδὲν: *not at all*; inner acc.
4 **καὶ δὴ καὶ**: *in particular*; 'and indeed also'
ἀναβρυχησάμενος: *bursting to wailing*
οὐδένα ὅντινα οὐ κατέκλασε: *(there is) no one whom he did not make break down*; οὐδείς (ἐστιν) ὅντινα οὐ...; nom. οὐδείς is attracted into acc. of ὅντινα (S 2534)
τῶν παρόντων: partitive, pple πάρειμι
7 **οἷα**: i.e. what sort of conduct…!; in exclamation
μέντοι: *certainly*
8 **ἥκιστα**: superlative adverb
ἵνα μὴ...: *so that…might…*; purpose, + opt. in secondary seq.; τοιαῦτα is an inner acc.
e1 **ἀκήκοα**: 1s pf. ἀκούω
ἄγετε: *keep*; pl. imperative
3 **ᾐσχύνθημεν**: 1p aor. pass. αἰσχύνω
ἐπέσχομεν: aor.. ἐπ-ίσχω
τοῦ δακρύειν: *from…*; gen. separation
4 **περιελθών**: i.e. walking around
οἱ: *his*; 'to him' dat. of possession, ἕ
5 **κατεκλίνη**: 3s aor. pass. dep.
ὁ ἄνθρωπος: i.e. the prison attendant
6 **αὐτοῦ**: *him*; partitive with verb of touching
ὁ δοὺς...: *the one...;* aor. pple δίδωμι

διαλιπὼν χρόνον ἐπεσκόπει τοὺς πόδας καὶ τὰ σκέλη, κἄπειτα σφόδρα πιέσας αὐτοῦ τὸν πόδα ἤρετο εἰ αἰσθάνοιτο, ὁ δ᾽ οὐκ ἔφη. καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο αὖθις τὰς κνήμας· καὶ ἐπανιὼν 118
οὕτως ἡμῖν ἐπεδείκνυτο ὅτι ψύχοιτό τε καὶ πήγνυτο. καὶ αὐτὸς ἥπτετο καὶ εἶπεν ὅτι, ἐπειδὰν πρὸς τῇ καρδίᾳ γένηται αὐτῷ, τότε οἰχήσεται.

ἤδη οὖν σχεδόν τι αὐτοῦ ἦν τὰ περὶ τὸ ἧτρον ψυχόμενα, 5
καὶ ἐκκαλυψάμενος—ἐνεκεκάλυπτο γάρ—εἶπεν—ὃ δὴ τελευταῖον ἐφθέγξατο— ‘ὦ Κρίτων, ἔφη, τῷ Ἀσκληπιῷ ὀφείλομεν ἀλεκτρυόνα· ἀλλὰ ἀπόδοτε καὶ μὴ ἀμελήσητε.’

ἀλλὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, ἔσται, ὁ Κρίτων· ἀλλ᾽ ὅρα εἴ τι ἄλλο λέγεις. 10

αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 11
ἀλεκτρυών, -όνος, ὁ: rooster, cock, 1
ἀμελέω: to have no care for, neglect, 5
ἀπο-δίδωμι: to give back, return, render, 5
ἅπτω: fasten, grasp (gen); kindle, set fire; 11
Ἀσκληπιός, ὁ: Asclepius, 1
αὖθις: back again, later, 9
δια-λείπω: to leave (an interval) between, 2
ἐγ-καλύπτω: cover over, wrap up, 1
ἐκ-καλύπτω: uncover, disclose, 2
ἐπαν-έρχομαι: to go back, return, 2
ἐπι-δείκνυμι: to indicate, point out, prove, 5
ἐπι-σκοπέω: to examine, inspect, 3
ἔρομαι: to ask, enquire, question, 12
ἧτρον, -ου, τό: lower abdomen, abdomen, 1
καρδία, ἡ: the heart, 1
κνήμα, ἡ: shin (tibia), lower leg, 1
οἴχομαι: to go, be gone, depart, 14
ὀφείλω: to owe, 1
πήγνυμι: freeze, stiffen; *pass*. grow stiff, 1
πιέζω: to squeeze, pinch, press down on, 1
πούς, ποδός, ὁ: a foot, 2
σκέλος, -εος, τό: leg, 6
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18
σχεδόν: nearly, almost, just about, 8
τελευταῖος, -α, -ον: last, final, 5
φθέγγομαι: to utter a sound, voice, speak, 2
ψύχω: to make cold; *pass*. grow cold, 2

7 **διαλιπὼν χρόνον**: aor. pple
8 **κἄπειτα**: καὶ ἔπειτα
εἰ αἰσθάνοιτο: pres. opt. in secondary seq.
118a1 **ὁ δ᾽οὐκ ἔφη**: *and he said "No."*
κατὰ μετὰ...κνήμας: parallel to l. 8 above
ἐπανιὼν: aor. pple ἐπανέρχομαι
2 **ψύχοιτο...πήγνυτο**: pres. pass. opt. in ind. disc. in secondary seq.; for πήγνυτο rather than πήγνυοιτο, see S 750d, cf. 77b4
3 **αὐτὸς**: *he himself*; i.e. the attendant
ἥπτετο: *kept holding (him)*; impf. ἅπτω
πρὸς: *near…*; dat. of place where
γενήται: *it…*; aor. subj. γίγνομαι in an indefinite temporal clause
4 **οἰχήσεται**: a euphemism for death
5 **σχεδόν τι**: *just about*; τι, extent of degree
αὐτοῦ...τὰ περὶ τὸ ἧτρον: *those (regions) around his lower abdomen*
ἦν ψυχόμενα: periphrasic impf. pass. (pres. pass. pple + impf. εἰμί)
6 **ἐνεκεκάλυπτο**: plpf. ἐγκαλύπτω
8 **ἀπόδοτε**: pl. aor. imperative, ἀποδίδωμι
μὴ ἀμελήσητε: *Don't…*; prohibitive subj. (μη + aor. subj.), ἀμελέω
9 **ἔσται**: fut. εἰμί
ὅρα: ὅρα-ε, sg. α-contract imperative

ταῦτα ἐρομένου αὐτοῦ οὐδὲν ἔτι ἀπεκρίνατο, ἀλλ᾽ ὀλίγον χρόνον διαλιπὼν ἐκινήθη τε καὶ ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἐξεκάλυψεν αὐτόν, καὶ ὃς τὰ ὄμματα ἔστησεν· ἰδὼν δὲ ὁ Κρίτων συνέλαβε τὸ στόμα καὶ τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς.

ἦδε ἡ τελευτή, ὦ Ἐχέκρατες, τοῦ ἑταίρου ἡμῖν ἐγένετο, ἀνδρός, ὡς ἡμεῖς φαῖμεν ἄν, τῶν τότε ὧν ἐπειράθημεν ἀρίστου καὶ ἄλλως φρονιμωτάτου καὶ δικαιοτάτου.

ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 14
ἀπο-κρίνομαι: to answer, reply, 13
ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent, 6
δια-λείπω: to leave (an interval) between, 2
δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right(eous), fair, 13
ἐκ-καλύπτω: to uncover, disclose, 2
ἔρομαι: to ask, enquire, question, 12
ἑταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate, 11
ἵστημι: to make stand, fix, set up, stop, 3
κινέω: to set in motion, move, agitate, 3
ὄμμα, -ατος, τό: the eye, 5
ὀφθαλμός, ὁ: the eye, 3
πειράω: to try, test, make trial of (gen.), 11
στόμα, -ατος, τό: mouth, 1
συλ-λαμβάνω: hold together, close; help, 1
τελευτή, ἡ: an end, completion; death, 1
φρόνιμος, -ον: sensible, wise, prudent, 8

11 **ταῦτα...αὐτοῦ**: gen. abs., αὐτοῦ refers to Crito
12 **διαλιπὼν**: aor. pple, see 117e7
ἐκινήθη: 3s aor. pass., the poison creates violent convulsions, which Plato, likely out of respect, does not emphasize in the narrative
13 **ὃς**: *this one*; demonstrative, i.e. Socrates
ἔστησεν: transitive aor. ἵστημι
ἰδὼν: nom. sg. aor. pple ὁράω (εἶδον)
16 **ὡς**: *as*…; parenthentical remark
φαῖμεν ἄν: *could*…; potential opt. φημί
τῶν τότε: *of those (men) at that time*; partitive gen.
ὧν ἐπειράθημεν: *whom we made trial of, whom we experienced*; aor. pass. deponent, πειράω
καὶ ἄλλως: *and otherwise*; i.e. and also

Glossary

Declensions

ἡ κρήνη, τῆς κρήνης - spring		ὁ ἀγρός, τοῦ ἀργοῦ - field		ὁ παῖς, τοῦ παιδός - child	
Nom. ἡ κρήνη	αἱ κρῆναι	ὁ ἀγρός	οἱ ἀγροί	ὁ παῖς	οἱ παῖδ-ες
Gen. τῆς κρήνης	τῶν κρηνῶν	τοῦ ἀγροῦ	τῶν ἀγρῶν	τοῦ παιδ-ός	τῶν παίδ-ων
Dat. τῇ κρήνῃ	ταῖς κρήναις	τῷ ἀγρῷ	τοῖς ἀγροῖς	τῷ παιδ-ί	τοῖς παι-σί(ν)
Acc. τὴν κρήνην	τὰς κρήνᾱς	τὸν ἀγρόν	τοὺς ἀγρούς	τὸν παῖδ-α	τοὺς παῖδ-ας
Voc. ὦ κρήνη	ὦ κρήναι	ὦ ἀγρέ	ὦ ἀγροί		

Personal Pronouns

Nom.	ἐγώ	I	ἡμεῖς	we
Gen.	ἐμοῦ μου	my	ἡμῶν	our
Dat.	ἐμοί μοι	to me	ἡμῖν	to us
Acc.	ἐμέ	me	ἡμᾶς	us
Nom.	σύ	you	ὑμεῖς	you
Gen.	σοῦ σου	your	ὑμῶν	your
Dat.	σοί σοι	to you	ὑμῖν	to you
Acc.	σέ	you	ὑμᾶς	you

Nom.	αὐτός	(himself)	αὐτή	(herself)	αὐτό	(itself)
Gen.	αὐτοῦ	his	αὐτῆς	her	αὐτοῦ	its
Dat.	αὐτῷ	to him	αὐτῇ	to her	αὐτῷ	to it
Acc.	αὐτόν	him	αὐτήν	her	αὐτό	it
Nom.	αὐτοί	(themselves)	αὐταί	(themselves)	αὐτά	(themselves)
Gen.	αὐτῶν	their	αὐτῶν	their	αὐτῶν	their
Dat.	αὐτοῖς	to them	αὐταῖς	to them	αὐτοῖς	to them
Acc.	αὐτούς	them	αὐτᾱ́ς	them	αὐτά	them

Relative Pronoun – who, which, that

	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
Nom.	ὅς	ἥ	ὅ	οἵ	αἵ	ἅ
Gen.	οὗ	ἧς	οὗ	ὧν	ὧν	ὧν
Acc.	ὅν	ἥν	ὅ	οἵς	αἵς	οἵς
Abl.	ὅν	ἥν	ὅ	οὕς	ἅς	ἅ

Indefinite Relative Pronoun – whoever, anyone who; whatever, anything which

Nom.	ὅστις	ἥτις	ὅ τι
Gen.	οὑτινος (ὅτου)	ἥστινος	οὑτινος (ὅτου)
Dat.	ὅτινι (ὅτῳ)	ἥτινι	ὅτινι (ὅτῳ)
Acc.	ὅντινα	ἥντινα	ὅ τι
Nom.	οἵτινες	αἵτινες	ἅτινα
Gen.	ὅντινων (ὅτων)	ὅντινων	ὅντινων (ὅτων)
Dat.	οἷστισιν (ὅτοις)	αἷστισιν	οἷστισιν (ὅτοις)
Acc.	οὕστινας	ἅστινας	ἅτινα

Correlative Adverbs

Interrogative	Indefinite	Demonstrative	Relative	Indefinite Relative
ποῦ *where?*	που *somewhere*	ἐνθάδε *here* ἐκεῖ *there*	οὗ *where*	ὅπου *where(ver)*
ποῖ *to where?*	ποι *to somewhere*	δεῦρο *to here* ἐκείσε *to there*	οἷ *to where*	ὅποι *to where(ver)*
πόθεν *from where?*	ποθεν *from anywhere*	ἐνθένδε *from here* (ἐ)κεῖθεν *from there*	ὅθεν *from where*	ὁπόθεν *from where(ver)*
πότε *when?*	ποτέ *at some time ever, then*	τότε *at that time, then*	ὅτε *when*	ὁπότε *when(ever)*
πῶς *how?*	πως *somehow*	ὧδε, οὕτως *thus, so in this way*	ὡς *how, as*	ὅπως *how(ever)*

Correlative Pronouns

Interrogative	Indefinite	Demonstrative	Relative	Indefinite Relative
τίς, τί *who, what?*	τις, τι *someone/thing anyone/thing*	ὅδε οὗτος *this* (ἐ)κεῖνος *there*	ὅς, ἥ, ὅ *who, which*	ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι *anyone who, whoever*
πότερος *which of two?*	ποτερος *one of two*	ἕτερος *one (of two)*	ὁπότερος *which of two*	
πόσος *how much?*	ποσός *of some amount*	τοσόσδε *so much/many*	ὅσος *as much/ many as*	ὁπόσος *of whatever size/ number*
ποῖος *of what sort?*	ποιός *of some sort*	τοιόσδε *such* τοιοῦτος *such*	οἷος *of which sort, such as, as*	ὁποῖος *of whatever sort*
πηλίκος *how old/large?*	πηλικος *of some age*	τηλικόσδε τηλικοῦτος *so old/young/ of such an age*	ἡλίκος of which age	ὁπηλίκος *of whatever age/ size*

λύω, λύσω, ἔλυσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι, ἐλύθην: loosen, ransom

	PRESENT		**FUTURE**		
	Active	Middle/Pass.	Active	Middle	Passive
Primary Indiative	λύω λύεις λύει λύομεν λύετε λύουσι(ν)	λύομαι λύε(σ)αι λύεται λυόμεθα λύεσθε λύονται	λύσω λύσεις λύσει λύσομεν λύσετε λύσουσι(ν)	λύσομαι λύσε(σ)αι λύσεται λυσόμεθα λύσεσθε λύσονται	λυθήσομαι λυθήσε(σ)αι λυθήσεται λυθησόμεθα λυθήσεσθε λυθήσονται
Secondary Indicative	ἔλυον ἔλυες ἔλυε(ν) ἐλύομεν ἐλύετε ἔλυον	ἐλυόμην ἐλύε(σ)ο ἐλύετο ἐλυόμεθα ἐλύεσθε ἐλύοντο			
Subjunctive	λύω λύῃς λύῃ λύωμεν λύητε λύωσι(ν)	λύωμαι λύῃ λύηται λυώμεθα λύησθε λύωνται			
Optative	λύοιμι λύοις λύοι λύοιμεν λύοιτε λύοιεν	λυοίμην λύοιο λύοιτο λυοίμεθα λύοισθε λύοιντο	λύσοιμι λύσοις λύσοι λύσοιμεν λύσοιτε λύσοιεν	λυσοίμην λύσοιο λύσοιτο λυσοίμεθα λύσοισθε λύσοιντο	λυθησοίμην λυθήσοιο λυθήσοιτο λυθησοίμεθα λυθήσοισθε λυθήσοιντο
Imp	λῦε λύετε	λύε(σ)ο λύεσθε			
Pple	λύων, λύουσα, λύον	λυόμενος, λυομένη, λυόμενον	λύσων, λύσουσα, λύσον	λυσόμενος, λυσομένη, λυσόμενον	λυθησόμενος, λυθησομένη, λυθησόμενον
Inf.	λύειν	λύεσθαι	λύσειν	λύσεσθαι	λυθήσεσθαι

2nd sg. mid/pass -σ is often dropped except in pf. and plpf. tenses: ε(σ)αι → η,ει ε(σ)ο → ου

AORIST			**PERFECT**		
Active	Middle	Passive	Middle	Passive	
			λέλυκα λέλυκας λέλυκε λελύκαμεν λέλύκατε λελύκασι(ν)	λέλυμαι λέλυσαι λέλυται λελύμεθα λελύσθε λελύνται	**Primary Indiative**
ἔλυσα ἔλυσας ἔλυε(ν) ἐλύσαμεν ἐλύσατε ἔλυσαν	ἐλυσάμην ἐλύσα(σ)ο ἐλύσατο ἐλυσάμεθα ἐλύσασθε ἐλύσαντο	ἐλύθην ἐλύθης ἐλύθη ἐλύθημεν ἐλύθητε ἐλύθησαν	ἐλελύκη ἐλελύκης ἐλελύκει ἐλελύκεμεν ἐλελύκετε ἐλελύκεσαν	ἐλελύμην ἐλέλυσο ἐλέλυτο ἐλελύμεθα ἐλελύσθε ἐλέλυντο	**Secondary Indiative**
λύσω λύσῃς λύσῃ λύσωμεν λύσητε λύσωσι(ν)	λυσώμαι λύσῃ λύσηται λυσώμεθα λύσησθε λύσωνται	λυθῶ λυθῇς λυθῇ λυθῶμεν λυθῆτε λυθῶσι(ν)	λελύκω λελύκῃς λελύκῃ λελύκωμεν λελύκητε λελύκωσι(ν)	λελυμένος ὦ ——— ἦς ——— ἦ ——— ὦμεν ——— ἦτε ——— ὦσιν	**Subjunctive**
λύσαιμι λύσαις λύσαι λύσαιμεν λύσαιτε λύσαιεν	λυσαίμην λύσαιο λύσαιτο λυσαίμεθα λύσαισθε λύσαιντο	λυθείην λυθείης λυθείη λυθεῖμεν λυθεῖτε λυθεῖεν	λελύκοιμι λελύκοις λελύκοι λελύκοιμεν λελύκοιτε λελύκοιεν	λελυμένος εἴην ——— εἴης ——— εἴη ——— εἴημεν ——— εἴητε ——— εἴησαν	**Optative**
λῦσον λῦσατε	λῦσαι λῦσασθε	λύθητι λύθητε		λέλυσο λέλυσθε	**Imp**
λῦσᾱς, λῦσᾱσα, λῦσαν	λυσάμενος, λυσαμένη, λυσάμενον	λύθείς, λυθεῖσα, λυθέν	λελυκώς, λελυκυῖα λελυκός	λελυμένος, λελυμένη λελυμένον	**Pple**
λῦσαι	λῦσασθαι	λυθῆναι	λελυκέναι	λελύσθαι	**Inf.**

Adapted from a handout by Dr. Helma Dik (http://classics.uchicago.edu/faculty/dik/niftygreek)

ἵημι, ἥσω, ἧκα, εἷκα, εἶμαι, εἵθην: send, release, let go

	Present	**Imperfect**	**Aorist**
Active	ἵημι ἵεμεν ἵης ἵετε ἵησιν ἱᾶσι	ἵην ἵεμεν ἵεις ἵετε ἵει ἵεσαν	ἧκα εἷμεν ἧκας εἷτε ἧκεν εἷσαν
Imp	ἵει ἵετε		ἕς ἕτε
Pple	ἱείς, ἱεῖσα, ἱέν ἵεντος, ἱείσης, ἵεντος		εἵς, εἷσα, ἕν ἕντος, εἵσης, ἕντος
Inf.	ἱέναι, epic ἰέμεναι		εἶναι
Middle	ἵεμαι ἱέμεθα ἵεσαι ἵεσθε ἵεται ἵενται	ἱέμην ἱέμεθα ἵεσο ἵεσθε ἵετο ἵεντο	εἵμην εἵμεθα εἷσο εἷσθε εἷτο εἷντο
Imp	ἵεσο ἵεσθε		οὗ ἕσθε
Pple	ἱέμενος, η, ον		ἕμενος, η, ον
Inf.	ἵεσθαι		ἕσθαι

ἵστημι, στήσω, ἔστην, ἕστηκα, ἕσταμαι, ἐστάθην: stand, stop, set

	Present	**1st Aorist (transitive)**	**Aorist (intransitive)**
Active	ἵστημι ἵσταμεν ἵστης ἵστατε ἵστησιν ἱστᾶσιν	ἔστησα ἐστήσαμεν ἔστησας ἐστήσατε ἔστησε ἔστησαν	ἔστην ἔστημεν ἔστης ἔστητε ἔστη ἔστ(ησ)αν
Imp	ἵστη ἵστατε	στῆσον στήσατε	στῆθι στῆτε
Pple	ἱστάς, ἱστᾶσα, ἱστάν ἱστάντος, ἱστᾶσα, ἱστάντος	στήσας, ᾶσα, άν	στάς, στᾶσα, στάν στάντος στάσης στάντος
Inf.	ἱστάναι	στῆσαι	στῆναι, στήμεναι
Middle	ἵσταμαι ἱστάμεθα ἵστασαι ἵστασθε ἵσταται ἵστανται		ἐστησάμην ἐστησάμεθα ἐστήσω ἐστήσασθε ἐστήσατο ἐστήσαντο
Imp	ἵστασο ἵστασθε		στῆσαι στήσασθε
Pple	ἱστάμενος, η, ον		στησάμενος, η, ον
Inf.	ἵστασθαι		στήσασθαι

δίδωμι, δώσω, ἔδωκα, δέδωκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθην: give

	Present	**Imperfect**	**Aorist**
Active	δίδωμι δίδομεν δίδως δίδοτε δίδωσιν διδόᾱσιν	ἐδίδουν ἐδίδομεν ἐδίδους ἐδίδοτε ἐδίδου ἐδίδοσαν	ἔδωκα ἔδομεν ἔδωκας ἔδοτε ἔδωκεν ἔδοσαν
Imp	δίδου δίδοτε		δός δότε
Pple	διδούς, διδοῦσα, διδόν διδόντος, -ούσης, -όντος		δούς, δοῦσα, δόν δόντος, δούσης, δόντος
Inf.	διδόναι		δοῦναι, δόμεναι
Middle	δίδομαι διδόμεθα δίδοσαι δίδοσθε δίδοται δίδονται	ἐδιδόμην ἐδιδόμεθα ἐδίδοσο ἐδίδοσθε ἐδίδοτο ἐδίδοντο	ἐδόμην ἐδόμεθα ἔδου ἔδοσθε ἔδοτο ἔδοντο
Imp	δίδου δίδοσθε		δοῦ δόσθε
Pple	διδόμενος, η, ον		δόμενος, η, ον
Inf.	δίδοσθαι		δόσθαι

τίθημι, θήσω, ἔθηκα, τέθηκα, τέθειμαι, ἐτέθην: put, place; make

	Present	**Imperfect**	**Aorist**
Active	τίθημι τίθεμεν τίθης τίθετε τίθησιν τιθέᾱσιν	ἐτίθην ἐτίθεμεν ἐτίθεις ἐτίθετε ἐτίθει[75] ἐτίθεσαν	ἔθηκα ἔθεμεν ἔθηκας ἔθετε ἔθηκεν ἔθεσαν
Imp	τίθει τίθετε		θές θέτε
Pple	τιθείς, τιθεῖσα, τιθέν τιθέντος, -εῖσης, -έντος		θείς, θεῖσα, θέν θέντος, θεῖσα, θέντος
Inf.	τιθέναι		θεῖναι
Middle	τίθεμαι τιθέμεθα τίθεσαι τίθεσθε τίθεται τίθενται	ἐτιθέμην ἐτιθέμεθα ἐτίθεσο ἐτίθεσθε ἐτίθετο ἐτίθεντο	ἐθέμην ἐθέμεθα ἔθου ἔθεσθε ἔθετο ἔθεντο
Imp	τίθεσο τίθεσθε		θοῦ θέσθε
Pple	τιθέμενος, η, ον		θέμενος, η, ον
Inf.	τίθεσθαι		θέσθαι

οἶδα: to know (pf. with pres. sense)

	Perfect	**Pluperfect**	
Active	οἶδα ἴσμεν οἶσθα ἴστε οἶδε ἴσᾱσι	ᾔδη ᾖσμεν ᾔδησθα ᾖστε ᾔδει ᾖσαν	
Imp	ἴσθι ἴστε		
Pple	εἰδώς, εἰδυῖα, εἰδός εἰδότος, εἰδυίᾱς, εἰδότος		
Inf.	εἰδέναι		
subj/opt	εἰδῶ εἰδῶμεν εἰδῇς εἰδῆτε εἰδῇ εἰδῶσι	εἰδείην εἰδεῖμεν εἰδείης εἰδεῖτε εἰδείη εἰδεῖεν	

εἰμί (to be)

	Present	**Imperfect**	
Active	εἰμί ἐσμέν εἶ ἐστέ ἐστίν εἰσίν	ἦ, ἦν ἦμεν ἦσθα ἦτε ἦν ἦσαν	
Imp	ἴσθι ἔστε		
Pple	ὤν, οὖσα, ὄν ὄντος, οὔσης, ὄντος		
Inf.	εἶναι		
subj/opt	ὦ ὦμεν ᾖς ἦτε ᾖ ὦσιν	εἴην εἶμεν εἴης εἶτε εἴη εἶεν	

εἶμι (will go; present is employed as the fut. of ἔρχομαι)

	Present	**Imperfect**	
Active	εἶμι ἴμεν εἶ ἴτε εἶσι ἴᾱσιν	ᾖα ᾖμεν ᾔεισθα ᾖτε ᾔειν ᾖσαν	
Imp	ἴθι ἴτε		
Pple	ἰών, ἰοῦσα, ἰόν ἰόντος, ἰούσης, ἰόντος		
Inf.	ἰέναι		
subj/opt	ἴω ἴωμεν ἴῃς ἴητε ἴῃ ἴωσιν	ἴοιμι ἴοιμεν ἴοις ἴοιτε ἴοι ἴοιεν	

φύω

φύω is transitive or intransitive depending on the form. The present active, future active, and 1st aorist forms are transitive (produce, beget), while the present middle, future middle, 2nd aorist active, and perfect active are intransitive (be, be born). As the superscripts reveal below, the forms of φύω and its compounds ἐμφύω and ἐκφύω are employed once each is in the present and future but numerous times in the 1st aorist, 2nd aorist, and perfect tenses.

transitive (*bring forth, beget, produce*): φύω, φύσω, ἔφυσα
intransitive (*be (by nature), be born*): φύομαι, φύσομαι, ἔφυν, πέφυκα

	1st aorist (*begat*)		2nd aorist (formed as -μι verb) (*be, be born*)	
	ἔφυσα	ἐφύσαμεν	ἔφυν	ἔφυμεν
	ἔφυσας	ἐφύσατε	ἔφυς	ἔφυτε
	ἔφυσε	ἔφυσαν	ἔφυ	ἔφυσαν
pple	φύσας, φύσασα, φύσαν		φύς, φῦσα, φύν	

There are two additional points worth noting: (1) The 2nd aorist ἔφυν and its participle are employed often in the tragedy and follow the paradigm of 2nd aorist -μι verb, as above. (2) The 2nd aorist ἔφυν and perfect πέφυκα are very often translated with the present tense of the verb "to be" and govern nominative predicates.

φαίνω

φαίνω is also transitive or intransitive depending on the form. The 1st aorist active, 1st perfect, and 1st aorist passive are transitive (*show, reveal*), while the 2nd aorist active, 2nd perfect, and 2nd aorist passive are intransitive (*appear*). Some forms, such as the future passive and perfect passive, can be translated either way depending on the context. As the superscripts reveal, the forms of φαίνω and its compounds ἐκφαίνω and προφαίνω are employed with the following frequencies:

transitive (*show, reveal*):
φαίνω, φανέω (φανέομαι), ἔφηνα, πέφαγκα, πέφασμαι, ἐφάνθην
show, will show, showed, have shown, have been shown, were shown

intransitive (*appear*):
φαίνομαι, φανήσομαι (φανέομαι), ---, πέφηνα, πέφασμαι, ἐφάνην
appear, will appear, appeared, have appeared, have appeared, appeared

In some instances, it is difficult to decide between "was shown (to be)" and "appeared," and so the frequencies above are but approximations. Note that both the future φανέω and aorist pass. ἐφάνην, which employs the stem φαν- in participles and subjunctives, share a similar stem. Since both forms are found somewhat frequently, readers must be careful to distinguish the future from the perfect passive stem by the endings and context

Plato's *Phaedo*
Alphabetized Vocabulary (20 or more times)

The following is an alphabetized list of all words that occur twenty or more times in *Phaedo*. These words are not included in the commentary and therefore must be reviewed as soon as possible. The number of occurrences, indicated at the end of the dictionary entry, were tabulated by the author. A .doc file of these core words and a "10 to 19 times" list may be downloaded from the website.

ἀ-θάνατος, -ον: undying, immortal, 28
ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good, brave, capable, 28
ἀεί: always, forever, in every case, 47
αἰτία, ἡ: cause, responsibility, blame, 31
ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, ἀκήκοα, ἠκούσθην: to hear, listen to, 42
ἀληθής, -ές: true, 63
ἀλλά: but; well, 217
ἀλλήλος, -α, -ον: one another, 28
ἄλλος, -η, -ο: othother, 200
ἅμα: at once, at the same time; along with, 26
ἄν: modal adv., 264
ἀναγκαῖος, -α, -ον: necessary, inevitable, 20
ἀνάγκη, ἡ: necessity, force, constraint, 36
ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ: a man, 31
ἄνθρωπος, ὁ: human being, 66
ἀπ-όλλυμι, -ολῶ, -ώλεσα, -όλωλα: to destroy, lose; *mid*. perish, die, 16
ἀπο-θνῄσκω, -θανοῦμαι, -έθανον, -τέθνηκα: to die off, perish, 39
ἀπό: from, away from. (+ gen.), 31
ἆρα: introduces a yes/no question, 37
ἄρα: then, therefore, it seems, it turns out, 51
ἁρμονία, ἡ: harmony, a fastening, joint, 44
αὖ: again, once more; further, moreover, 42
αὐτός, -ή, -ό: -self; he, she, it; the same, 455
αὑτοῦ (ἑαυτοῦ), -ῆς, -οῦ: himself, herself, itself, themselves, 37
ἀφ-ικνέομαι, ἀφίξομαι, ἀφικόμην, —, ἀφῖγμαι, —: to come, arrive, 32

βίος, ὁ: life, 28
βούλομαι: to wish, be willing, desire, 28

γάρ: for, since, 322
γε: at least, at any rate; indeed, 172
γῆ, γῆς ἡ: earth, land, ground, 44
γίγνομαι, γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην, γέγονα: come to be, be born, 143

δέ: but, and, on the other hand, 474
δεῖ: it is necessary, must, ought (+ inf.), 37
δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην, δέδεγμαι, ἐδέχθην: to receive, accept, 26

δή: indeed, surely, really, certainly, just, 169
διά: through (gen), on account of, because of (acc), 89
δοκέω, δόξω, ἔδοξα, δέδογμαι: to seem (good), think, imagine, 109
δύο: two, 23

ἐάν: εἰ ἄν, if (+ subj.), 30
ἑαυτοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ: himself, herself, itself, themselves, 24 (see also **αὐτοῦ**)
ἔγω-γε: I for my part, 39
ἐγώ: I, 201
εἴ-περ: if really, if that is to say (to imply doubt), 20
εἰ: if, whether, 138
εἰμί, ἔσομαι: to be, exist, 680
εἶπον: *aor*. said, spoke, 41
εἷς, μία, ἕν: one, single, alone, 25
εἰς: into, to, in regard to (+ acc.), 102
ἐκ, ἐξ: out of, from (+ gen.), 106
ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: each, every one, 42
ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ον: that, those, 109
ἐλάττων, -ον: smaller, fewer; less, 26
ἐμαυτοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ: myself, 20
ἐν: in, on, among. (+ dat.), 179
ἐναντίος, -α, -ον: opposite, contrary, 63
ἔοικα: to be like, seem likely (dat.), 24
ἔπ-ειτα: then, next, secondly, 20
ἐπειδάν: whenever, 29
ἐπειδή: when, since, after, 24
ἐπί: near, at (gen.), to (acc), near, at (dat.), 51
ἐπιστήμη, ἡ: knowledge, understand, 20
ἐρέω: will speak (fut. **λέγω**), 24
ἔρχομαι, εἶμι, ἦλθον, ἐληλυθα, —, —: to come or go, 31
ἕτερος, -α, -ον: one of two, other, different, 58
ἔτι: still, besides, further, 56
Ἐχεκράτης, ὁ: Echecrates, 24
ἔχω, ἕξω, ἔσχον, ἔσχηκα: have, hold, possess; be able; be disposed, 161

ζάω: to live, 35

ἤ: or (either...or); than, 265
ἡγέομαι, ἡγήσομαι, ἡγησάμην,, ἡγήθην: lead; consider, believe (dat), 23
ἡμεῖς: we, 139
ἡμέρα, ἡ: day,
ἠμί: to say, (ἦ δ' ὅς – 'he said'), 57
θάνατος, ὁ: death, 35
θεός, ὁ: a god, divinity, 32
θνήσκω, θανοῦμαι, ἔθανον, τέθνηκα: to die, 31

ἱκανός, -ή, -όν: enough, sufficient; capable, 27
ἴσος, -η, -ον: equal to, the same as, like, 30

καθαρός, -ά, -όν: clean, pure, spotless, 22
καί: and; also, even, too, in fact, 1371
κακός, -ή, -όν: bad, base, cowardly, evil, 20
καλέω, καλέω, ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην: to call, summon, 24
καλός, -ή, -όν: beautiful, fair, noble, fine, 32
κατά: down from (gen), down along (acc), 78
Κέβης, Κέβητος ὁ: Cebes, 90
Κρίτων, Κρίτωνος ὁ: Crito, 22

λαμβάνω, λήσω, ἔλαθον, λέληθα: to take, receive, catch, grasp, 29
λέγω, λέξω (ἐρέω), ἔλεξα (εἶπον), εἰλοχα, ἐλέγην: to say, speak, tell, 214
λόγος ὁ: word, speech, discourse, account 115

μάλιστα: most of all; certainly, especially, 28
μᾶλλον: more, rather, 38
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: big, great, important, 25
μείζων, μείζον: larger, greater, 26
μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
μέν: on the one hand, 214
μέντοι: however, nevertheless; certainly, 37
μετά: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 30
μη-δέ: and not, but not, nor, 20
μή: not, lest, 151
μηδ-είς, μηδ-εμία, μηδ-έν: no one, nothing, 24
μήν: truly, surely, certainly, 22
μόνος, -η, -ον: alone, only, solitary, 28

νῦν: now; as it is, 55

ὁ, ἡ, τό: the, 2279
ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε: this, this here, 45
οἶδα: to know, 38
οἴομαι (οἶμαι), οἰήσομαι, ᾠήθην: to suppose, think, imagine, 71
οἷος, -α, -ον: of what sort, as, 56
ὁμο-λογέω: to agree, acknowledge, 25
ὁμοῖος, -α, -ον: similar, resembling, 24
ὅπως: how, in what way; in order that, that 10
ὁράω, ὄψομαι, εἶδον, ἑώρακα, ἑώραμαι, ὤθην: to see, behold, 135
ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: straight, upright, right, 25
ὅς, ἥ, ὅ: who, which, that, 360
ὅσος -η -ον: as many as; all who, all which 22
ὅσπερ, ἥπερ, ὅπερ: the very one who, very thing which, 42
ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι: whoever, whichever, whatever, 30

ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι: whoever, whichever, whatever, 30
ὅταν: ὅτε ἄν, whenever, 28
ὅτι: that; because, 116
οὐ-δέ: and not, but not, nor, not even, 73
οὔ-τε: and not, neither...nor, 34
οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ: not, 306
οὐδ-είς, οὐδε-μία, οὐδ-έν: no one, nothing, 94
οὐκοῦν: therefore, then, accordingly, 42
οὖν: and so, then; at all events, 130
οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο: this, these, 459
οὕτως: in this way, thus, so, 104

πάλιν: again, once more; back, backwards, 26
πάνυ: quite, entirely, exceedingly, 70
πάρ-ειμι: to be near, be present, be at hand, 29
παρά: from, beside, alongside; in respect to 36
πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν: every, all, the whole, 122
πάσχω, πείσομαι, ἔπαθον, πέπονθα: to suffer, experience, 43
πείθω, πείσω, ἔπεισα, πέποιθα, πέπεισμαι, ἐπείσθην: persuade, win over, trust; *mid*. obey, 29
περί: around, about, concerning, 123
ποιέω, ποιήσω, ἐποίησα, πεποίηκα, πεποίημαι, ἐποιήθην: do, make, 64
πολύς, πολλά, πολύ: much, many, 102
ποτέ: ever, at some time, once, 27
πού: somewhere, I suppose, 48
πρίν: until, before, 28
πρός: to (acc), near, in addition to (dat), 62
πρότερος, -α, -ον: before, previous; earlier, 29
πρῶτος, -η, -ον: first, earliest, 25
πῶς: how? in what way?, 34
Σιμμίας, Σιμμίου, ὁ: Simmias, 85
σκοπέω (for ther tenses, use **σκέπτομαι)**: to look at, examine, consider, 30
σύ: you, 112
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, earnestly 18
Σωκράτης, -ους, ὁ: Socrates, 117
σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body, 104

τε: and, both, 152
τελευτάω, τελευτήσω, ἐτελεύτησα, τετελεύτηκα,: to end, finish; die, 31
τις, τι: anyone, anything, someone, -thing, 283
τίς, τί: who? which? 117
τοί-νυν: well then; therefore, accordingly, 21
τοιόσδε, -άδε, -όνδε: such, 20
τοιοῦτος, -αύτη, -οῦτο: such, 103

τόπος, ὁ: a place, region, 22
τότε: then, at that time, 30
τυγχάνω, τεύξομαι, ἔτυχον, τετύχημα: chance upon, meet, get; happen 51
ὑμεῖς: you, 28
ὑπό: by, because of, from (gen), under (dat)50

Φαίδων, -ωνος, ὁ: Phaedo, 31
φαίνω, φανῶ, ἔφηνα, ἐφάνθην (ἐφάνην): show; *mid*. appear, seem, 46
φέρω, οἴσω, ἤνεκγκα, ἐνήνοχα, ἠνέχθην: to bear, carry, bring, convey, 20
φημί, φήσω, ἔφησα: to say, claim, assert, 304

χρή: it is necessary, is fitting; must, ought, 23
χρόνος, ὁ: time, 47

ψυχή, ἡ: breath, life, spirit, soul, 138

ὦ: O! oh! 164
ὡς: as, thus, so, that; when, since, 166
ὥσπερ: as, just as, as if, 81
ὥστε: so that, that, so as to, 23